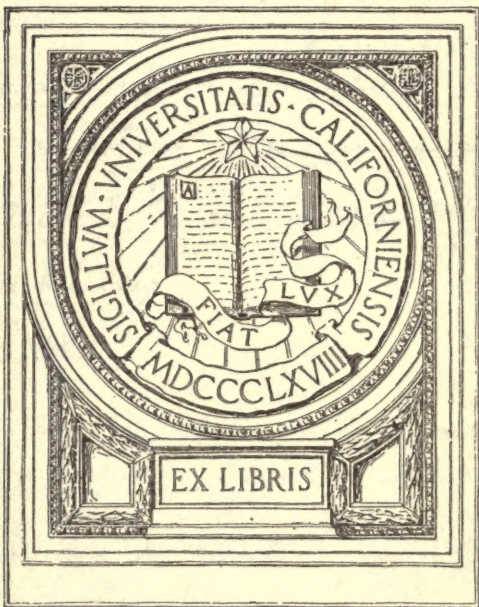


Ransom.

ig. I wish you wouldn't write such stuff.

IN MEMORIAM
Frederick Slate
Professor of Physics



EX LIBRIS

760
A 427
sh

99

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S

SHORTER LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES

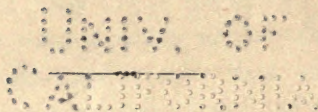
Condensed and Revised

BY

JAMES BRADSTREET GREENOUGH

ASSISTED BY

ALBERT A. HOWARD



BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON
GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS

The Athenæum Press

1896

COPYRIGHT, 1896
By GINN & COMPANY

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

IN MEMORIAM

Frederick Slate
Professor of Physics

TO THE
LIBRARY OF
THE UNIVERSITY OF
CHICAGO

PREFACE.



THE present editors hold as the result of their experience, that a book designed to instruct in the principles of Latin construction, intended for the use of pupils and young teachers, ought to contain practically the whole grammar of the language. This is especially true of the teachers, because the book from which one teaches is very likely to limit one's own acquisitions. They are, however, aware that a more compendious book may be sufficient with some teachers, and under certain conditions even superior. They have, therefore, endeavored to abbreviate their complete work by omitting from it such portions as could not give appreciable information to the students in preparatory schools. This has been done by noting all the references in the books used in such schools, and saving these along with all the general principles under which they came. It is hoped that by this method nothing has been omitted which was essential, and nothing retained which might not at some time answer a question raised even among preparatory pupils. In order to facilitate the use of the two books side by side, and the later substitution of the larger work, the original notation of sections and subsections has been carefully retained.

In the treatment of the subject, with the exception of all general linguistic lore, the lines of the other work have been pursued. For such lore the student and teacher are referred to the larger grammar.

But in regard to hidden quantities, a subject which has only lately begun to be studied, and whose uncertainties ought not to be allowed to trouble the beginner, the editors have pursued an even more conservative course than before, marking only such vowels long as could, in their opinion, be reasonably proved to be so, and leaving as presumably short all others, even those which many persons, and even the editors themselves, were inclined to think long.

CAMBRIDGE, September 1, 1896.

CONTENTS.



	PAGES
INTRODUCTION : Elementary Definitions	1-3

PART I. — ETYMOLOGY.

1. <i>Letters and Sounds</i>	4-11
ALPHABET : Classification ; Phonetic Variations	4- 8
Pronunciation ; Quantity and Accent	9-11
2. <i>Words and their Forms</i>	11-14
INFLECTION : Root and Stem	11
The Parts of Speech	12
Gender, Number, and Case	12-14
3. <i>Declension of Nouns</i>	14-34
General Rules of Declension	14
First Declension	15, 16
Second Declension	17-19
THIRD DECLENSION : Mute Stems	20
Liquid Stems	21
Vowel Stems	22-26
Irregular Nouns	26
Greek Forms	27
Rules of Gender	28
Fourth Declension	29
Fifth Declension	30
Defective and Variable Nouns	31-33
Proper Names	33, 34

	PAGES
4. Adjectives	34-49
First and Second Declensions	34-36
Third Declension	36-42
Comparison	42-45
Numerals	46-49
 5. Pronouns	 50-58
Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative	50-54
Relative, Interrogative, Indefinite	54-57
Correlatives (Pronouns and Adverbs)	58
 6. Verbs	 59- 95
Inflection	59, 60
SIGNIFICATION: Voice, Mood, Tense	60- 64
Personal Endings	64
FORMS: Verb-Endings	64- 66
The Verb <i>Sum</i>	66- 68
The Three Stems	68
REGULAR VERB: The Four Conjugations	68, 69
Formation of the Three Stems	69, 70
Synopsis of the Verb	70, 71
Special Forms	71
First Conjugation	72- 75
Periphrastic Conjugations	74
Second Conjugation	76, 77
Third Conjugation	78- 81
Fourth Conjugation	81, 82
Deponent Verbs	83- 85
Irregular Verbs	85- 90
Defective Verbs	90- 93
Impersonal Verbs	93- 95
 7. Particles	 96-104
Adverbs	96- 99
Prepositions	99
Conjunctions	100-104
Interjections	104

	PAGES
8. Formation of Words	104-123
Roots and Stems	104
SUFFIXES: Primary ; Significant Endings	105, 106
Derivation of Nouns and Adjectives	106-117
Derivation of Verbs	118-121
Compound Words	121-123

PART II. — SYNTAX.

Introductory Note	124
-------------------	-----

1. The Sentence

DEFINITIONS: Subject and Predicate ; Modification	125-131
AGREEMENT: the Four Concords	131
NOUNS: Apposition ; Predicate Agreement	131-133
ADJECTIVES: Rules of Agreement	133-135
Special Uses	135-138
PRONOUNS: Personal and Demonstrative	138-140
Reflexive	141-143
Possessive	143, 144
Relative	145-149
Indefinite	149, 150
Alius and Alter	150, 151
VERBS: Subject, Incomplete Sentences	151-154
PARTICLES: Adverbs, Conjunctions, Negatives	154-157
Questions	158-161

2. Construction of Cases

GENITIVE: With Nouns	161-166
Possessive	162-163
Material, Quality	164
Partitive	164-166
Objective	166
With Adjectives	166, 167
With Verbs	168-171

	PAGES
GENITIVE: With Verbs: Remembering and Forgetting	168
Accusing, etc.	169
Feeling	170
Interest and Rêfert; other Verbs	170, 171
Peculiar Genitives: Exclamatory, etc.	171, 172
DATIVE: Indirect Object with Transitives	172-174
Indirect Object with Intransitives	174-177
With Compounds	178, 179
Of Possession; of Agency	180, 181
Purpose or End; Dative with Adjectives	181-183
Reference; Ethical	183-185
ACCUSATIVE: Direct Object	185-187
Cognate Accusative; Two Accusatives	187-191
Idiomatic and Special Uses	191, 192
VOCATIVE	193
ABLATIVE: its Several Uses	193, 194
Of Separation and Privation	194, 195
Source, Material, Cause	195-198
Agent, of Comparison	198-200
Manner, Means, Instrument, Accompaniment	200-202
Difference, Quality, Price, Specification	202-205
Locative: Special Uses	205, 206
Absolute	206-208
Time and Place	208-214
Use of Prepositions	214-217
 3. <i>Syntax of the Verb</i>	 218-255
MOODS: Indicative	218
Subjunctive: General Use	219
" Hortatory	220
" Optative	221
" Deliberative	222
Imperative	222-224
Infinitive	225-230
TENSES: Of Incomplete Action	230
Present	230-232
Imperfect	232-234
Future	234
Of Completed Action	234
Perfect	234-236
Pluperfect	236

	PAGES
Future Perfect	236, 237
Epistolary Tenses	237
Of the Subjunctive	237
Sequence of Tenses	237-242
Of the Infinitive	242, 243
PARTICIPLES :	244-250
Distinctions of Tense	244, 245
Adjective Use	246
Predicate Use	247-249
Future Participle	249
Gerundive	250
Gerund and Gerundive	251-254
Supines	254

4. *Conditional Sentences* 256-271

Protasis and Apodosis	256
Classification of Forms	257-259
Simple Conditions	259
Future Conditions	260, 261
Conditions Contrary to Fact	262
General Conditions	263
Condition Disguised	264
Condition Omitted	265
Potential Subjunctive	265
Subjunctive of Modesty	266
Verbs of Necessity	266
Complex Conditions	267
Particles of Comparison	267
Concessive Clauses	268
Proviso	269
Use of <i>Si</i> and its Compounds	270

5. *Dependent Constructions* 271-304

RELATIVE CLAUSES :	271-284
Conditional Relative Clauses	271
Clauses of Purpose	272-275
Clauses of Result	275-277
Clauses of Characteristic	277-279
Causal Clauses	279

	PAGES
RELATIVE CLAUSES: Relations of Time	280-284
Postquam, etc.	281
Cum Temporal	281
Cum Causal	282
Antequam, Priusquam	283
Dum, Dōnec, and Quoad	284
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES:	285-295
Infinitive Clauses	285-287
Clauses of Purpose	287-290
Clauses of Result	290-293
Clauses with Quod	293
Indirect Questions	294, 295
INDIRECT DISCOURSE:	295-304
Formal Indirect Discourse	296
Subordinate Clauses	297
Tenses in Indirect Discourse	298, 299
Conditions, Questions, Commands	299-303
Informal Indirect Discourse	303
Integral Clauses	304
Important Rules of Syntax	305-311
 6. Arrangement	 312-316
General Rule	312
Special Rules	314
Structure of the Period	315

PART III.—PROSODY.

1. Quantity	317-322
General Rules of Quantity	317
Quantity of Final Syllables	318, 319
Quantity of Penultimates	320
 2. Rhythm	 322-324
MEASURES OF RHYTHM: Feet	322
The Musical Accent	323

	PAGES
3. <i>Versification</i>	324-326
The Verse	324
DACTYLIC VERSE : Hexameter	325
Elegiac Stanza	326
MISCELLANEOUS : Reckoning of Time	327, 328
Measures of Value	329
Glossary of Terms	332-335
Abbreviations	336
INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS	337



LATIN GRAMMAR.



INTRODUCTION.

ELEMENTARY DEFINITIONS.

1. The study of Grammar includes : (1) the *Forms of Words* (**Etymology**); (2) the *Uses of Words*, or the ways of connecting them in sentences (**Syntax**); (3) the *Forms of Verse* (**Prosody**).

PARTS OF SPEECH.

2. Words are *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, or Interjections*. These are called **Parts of Speech**.

NOTE. — There is no word in Latin for the Articles *a, an, the*.

3. A **Noun** is the name of a person, place, or thing : as, *Cæsar, Rome, house, strength, glory*. Names of persons and places are Proper Nouns ; the others are Common Nouns.

4. An **Adjective** is a word which describes a noun : as, a *brave* man, a *green* tree.

5. A **Pronoun** is a word which denotes a person, place, or thing without naming or describing it. It may be —

a. Personal: *I, we* (1st person); *thou, ye, you* (2d person); *he, she, it, they* (3d person).

NOTE. — There is in Latin no personal pronoun of the 3d person, but a demonstrative may be used instead ; and the others are used only for emphasis, being commonly given in the verb-ending.

b. Possessive : *my, mine; thy, thine; his, her, hers; our, ours; your, yours; their, theirs; myself, himself, themselves*, and the like.

c. Reflexive : these end, in English, in *-self* or *-selves*, following a verb or preposition : as, *I blame myself; he came to himself.*

d. Demonstrative : *this, these; that, those.*

e. Relative : *who, which; whoever, whatever.*

f. Interrogative : *who? which? what?*

NOTE. — Possessives, demonstratives, relatives, and interrogatives all have the form of adjectives, and are called Adjective Pronouns.

The relatives *whoever, whatever* are called Indefinite Relatives.

6. A Verb is a word which asserts, asks, or commands : as, he *speaks*, do you *know*? *come* to me.

7. A Participle is an adjective which describes the act or condition asserted by a verb : as, *speaking, chosen.*

8. An Adverb is a word used with a verb or adjective to express time, place, or manner : as, *now, here, nobly* done.

9. A Preposition is a word connecting a noun in a dependent relation with other words in the same sentence : as, *in, from, among, into, beyond.*

10. A Conjunction is a word used to connect sentences or parts of sentences : such words are *and, or, if, but.*

NOTE. — Some words, — as, *while, because, till, nevertheless*, — used both to define and to connect, are called Adverbial Conjunctions.

11. Interjections are mere exclamations, and are not, strictly, Parts of Speech : as, *ah! ho! alas!*

THE SENTENCE.

12. A Sentence is a form of words containing an Assertion, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command ; and it is, accordingly, *declaratory, interrogative, exclamatory, or imperative.*

13. The **Subject** of a sentence denotes the person or thing spoken of: it may be (1) a Noun, a Pronoun, or a Phrase; or (2) it may be given in the ending of a Verb.

NOTE.—This latter case is regular in Latin: as, *doce-o, I teach; doce-t, he (or she) teaches; doce-nt, they teach.*

14. The **Predicate** is that which is spoken of the Subject. It may be a Verb; and it must contain a verb. Thus a whole Latin sentence may consist of a verb alone.

NOTE.—If the Predicate is a verb alone—as, “the sun *shines*”—this verb is called Neuter, or Intransitive; if the verb requires an Object—as, “I *see* the sun”—it is called Transitive. A noun or adjective used with a neuter verb to complete the statement—as, “these men are *brave*”—is called the Complement.

15. The **Object** of a verb denotes the person or thing affected by the action: as, I wrote *the letter*.

NOTE.—The Object may be *direct* or *indirect*: in the sentence, “I wrote you a letter,” *letter* is the Direct object, and *you* the Indirect.

16. A **Phrase** is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, which may be used as an adjective or adverb: as, “a man *of great virtue*” (Adjective Phrase); “I will come *within three days*” (Adverbial Phrase).

17. A **Clause** is a group of words, with subject and predicate of its own, used to add something to a sentence, or to qualify its meaning: as, “I spoke *and* he listened”; “*when* he had heard, he went away.”

NOTE.—A sentence so modified is called *compound*; if one part (as in the second example) depends on the other, it is called *complex*.

18. A noun, pronoun, adjective, or verb is said to **AGREE** with another word, when it is required to be in the same *gender, number, case, or person*. A verb or preposition is said to **GOVERN** a noun, when it requires a noun in connection to be in a particular Case.

PART FIRST.—ETYMOLOGY.



1. LETTERS AND SOUNDS.

ALPHABET.

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English (which, in fact, was borrowed from it), except that it has no **w**.

Classification of the Letters.

1. The letters are divided into Vowels (*litterae vōcālēs*) and Consonants (*litterae cōnsonantēs*). Two vowels united so as to express one sound are called a Diphthong.

The VOWELS are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The rest of the letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are **ae, au, ei, eu, oe, ui**.

2. **Consonants.** — *a.* **p, b, c (k), q, g, t, d**, as also **ch** and **th**, are called Mutes (Explosives, Momentary sounds).

These are produced by an entire stoppage of the breath and a subsequent explosion. They are classified as follows:—

1. **p, c (k), q, t, s**, are called Surds (*tenuēs*).

These are without vocal tone.

2. **b, g, d, z**, are called Sonants (*mediae*).

These are accompanied by a slight vocal tone.

3. **ch** and **th** are called Aspirates.

In these a breath follows the explosion. They are found chiefly in words borrowed from the Greek. **ph**, which also was borrowed from the Greek, probably was never sounded as an aspirate in Latin.

b. **m** and **n** are called Nasals.

These are pronounced with the same position of the organs as **b** and **d**, except that the nasal passage is opened instead of closed. A third nasal, **n adulterinum** (like *n* in *ink*), corresponding in the same way to **g**, existed in the language, but had no separate sign.

3. From the organs of speech chiefly used in the utterance of the mutes and nasals they are divided into Labials (pronounced with the lips), Palatals (with the palate), and Linguals (with the tongue).

Their relations are seen in the following table:—

	SURD.	SONANT.	ASPIRATE.	NASAL.
<i>Labial:</i>	p	b	wanting	m
<i>Palatal:</i>	c (k), q	g	ch	n (as in <i>ink</i>)
<i>Lingual:</i>	t	d	th	n (as in <i>rent</i>).

a. Other useful special classes of sounds are distinguished, as, —

Liquids: **l, m, n, r.**

Fricatives (Spirants): **f, ph, th** (not aspirate, the same as in *thin*), **h, s, z.**

Sibilants: **s, z.**

Double Consonants: **x (cs), z (ds).**

Semi-vowels: **i, v** (see § 4).

b. **h** is merely a breathing.

4. **Semi-Vowels.** — **i** and **v (u)** before a vowel in the same syllable are consonants and have the sound of English consonant **y** and **w** respectively. (Cf. **i** and **u** in *pinion, unguent*.) They are sometimes called *Semi-Vowels*.

NOTE. — The Latin alphabet had no separate signs for the semi-vowels; but used **i** for both vowel and consonant **i**, and **v** or **u** (without distinction) for both vowel and consonant **v (u)**. The character **j** was unknown in classical times, and **u** was but a graphic variation of **v**. In mediæval Latin **j** and **v** came to be used to indicate the consonant sounds of **i** and **v (u)**, and this usage is often followed by modern editors in writing small letters. In writing capitals, however, the forms **J** and **U** are avoided. Thus, **iuuenis**, **iuuenis**, or **iuenis**, — but **IVVENIS**.

In this book vowel and consonant **i** are both represented by the same character, **i**; but **v** is used for the consonant, **u** for the vowel sound of **v (u)**. Thus, **iūstus**, **vir**, **iuuenis**.

5. The Romans distinguished Long vowels from Short in sound, but had no regular means to express the difference. This difference is called **Quantity**, and such vowels are said to be long or short by nature.

In modern times short vowels are marked thus: **ă, ě**; and long, thus: **ā, ē**; those that may be pronounced either long or short, thus: **ǣ, ǝ**. In this book all simple vowels not marked are supposed to be short. But final **o** and **i** are marked according to their prevailing quantity in poetry, though they sometimes vary from this.

6. The character **c** (surd palatal) originally stood for the sonant palatal (**g**).

Hence, **a, b, c**, but Alpha, Beta, Gamma. This force it always retained in the abbreviations **C.** (for **Gāius**), and **Cn.** (**Gnaeus**).

7. Till after the age of Augustus the use of **u** (vowel) after **u** (**v**) was avoided. This was done either by preserving **o**, when but for this tendency it would have become **u**, as in **voltus** (but **cultus**), **servōs** (but **dominus**); or in case of **quū**, by writing **cu**, as in **ecus** (for **equos**, later **equus**).

Hence, where in inflection **quū** would appear, it should be written and pronounced **cu**, as, **ecus**, **equī**, **sequitur**, **secuntur**.

Phonetic Variations.

8. Variations of sound are of two classes:—

a. Inherited differences of form in the same root (see § 22).

b. Unconscious changes of sounds developed in course of time in the language itself.

9. Inherited differences appear in variations of vowels, and less commonly in liquids connected with vowels.

a. Vowels vary between long and short of the same kind: as, **emō**, *I buy*, **ēmī**, *I bought*; **regō**, *I rule*, **rēgīna**, *a queen*.

b. Vowels vary in quality: as, **pendō**, *I weigh*, **pondus**, *weight*.

c. Vowels vary between a short vowel of one quality and a long vowel or diphthong of another: as, **miser**, *wretched*, **maestus**, *sad*.

d. Liquids are transposed with vowels, sometimes with change of the vowel: as, **spernō**, *I spurn*, **sprēvī**, *I spurned*.

10. Unconscious changes occur in both vowels and consonants.

a. Vowels and diphthongs are weakened: as, **factus**, *made*, **cōnfectus**, *made up*; **āgmen**, *a march*, **āgminis**, *of a march*.

b. Two vowels coming together are very often contracted: as, **cōgō** for **co-agō**; **obit** for **obiit**; **nīl** for **nihil**.

c. Vowels are often lost between two consonants (*syncope*): as, **audācter** for **audāciter**.

d. Vowels are inserted between two consonants in the effort to pronounce a difficult combination of sounds (cf. sailors' *hellum* for *helm*): as, **Herculēs** for **Herclēs**, **drachuma** for **drachma**.

11. a. Consonants are substituted one for another. Thus: **r** for **s** between two vowels or before **m** or **n**: as, **eram** (root **ES**), **generis** (for †**genesis**, from **genus**), **maereō** (cf. **maestus**).

b. Consonants are omitted: as, **exāmen** (**exāgmen**), **caementum** (**caed-mentum**), **autumnus** (**auctumnus**, root **AUG**), **pērgō** (**per-regō**).

Especially **h**: as, **dēbeō** (**dē-habeō**). And consonant **i** and **v**: as, **cōniciō** (**con-iaciō**), **prōrsus** (**prō-vorsus**).

c. Consonants are unconsciously inserted in passing from one sound to another: as, **sūmō**, *I take*, **sūmpsī**, *I took*.

d. Consonants and vowels are unconsciously changed (*dissimilation*) to avoid a repetition of the same sound in two successive syllables: **parilia** (for **palilia**, from **Palēs**), **meridiēs** (for **medidiēs**).

e. A consonant is changed by the influence of a neighboring sound, —

1. Into the same sound as the neighbor (*complete assimilation*): as, **cēssī** (**cēd-sī**), **summus** (**sup-mus**), **sella** (**sed-la**).

2. Into a sound of the same organ or the same quality (or both) as the neighbor (*partial assimilation*) (see table of mutes, § 3): as, **conterō** (**com-terō**, labial to lingual), **scriptus** (**scrib-tus**, sonant to surd), **sēgmentum** (†**secmentum**, surd to sonant), **imperō** (**in-perō**, lingual to labial).

12. Variations of Spelling occur in manuscripts and inscriptions, and especially in modern editions. Most are provided for in Vocabularies.

a. The letters and sounds of **ci** and **ti** are interchanged before a vowel: **nūntiō** (**nūnciō**), **contiō** (**conciō**), **condiciō** (**conditiō**).

b. Several words are written sometimes with and sometimes without an initial **h**: as, **harēna** (**arēna**), **erus** (**herus**), **umerus** (**humerus**), **ūmor** (**hūmor**).

c. In later Latin, **ē**, **ae**, and **oe** became alike in sound (like *a* in *fate*), and are often confounded in writing: as, **faenus** (**fēnus**, **foenus**).

d. Other words variously spelled are: **adulēscēns**, **adolēscēns**; **ahēneus**, **aēneus**; **ānulus**, **annulus**.

Combinations.

13. Two words are often united in writing, and sometimes in sound. Thus, —

a. Conjunctions or other particles and pronouns are sometimes connected: as in *etenim*, *ūnusquisque*, *iamdūdum*, *iamdiū*, *siquis*, *siquidem*; also a few short phrases, as, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *rēs-pūblica*, *iūsiūrandum*, *paterfamiliās*, *tēcum*.

b. The verb *est*, *is*, is joined with the preceding word, especially in the old poets, when the two would be united by elision: as, *homōst*, *periculumst*, *quālist* (*quālis est*) (like *thou'rt*, *I've*).

c. Similar contractions are found in *vīn'* (*vīsne*), *scīn'* (*scīsne*), *sīs* (*sī vīs*), *sōdēs* (*sī audēs*), *sūltis* (*sī vultis*). So in English, *don't*, *won't* (*wol not*).

Syllables.

14. In Latin every word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. In the division of words into syllables a single consonant or a mute followed by a liquid between two vowels must be written and pronounced with the latter.

b. This rule is sometimes improperly extended to doubled consonants, or any combination of consonants which can be used to begin a word: as, *ho-spes*, *mā-gnus*; but usage varies.

c. In compounds, the parts should be separated: as, *ab-est*, *ob-lātus*.

Kindred Forms.

15. In English words derived from the Latin, the original letters are retained (as *ambition* from *ambitiō*). But in native English words which are cognate with the Latin, the original sounds are represented in the two languages by closely related letters which regularly correspond: as, —

LATIN.	ENGLISH.
t	TH: tū, <i>thou</i> ; trēs, <i>three</i> ; tenuis, <i>thin</i> .
d	T: duo, <i>two</i> ; dēns, <i>tooth</i> ; sedeō, <i>sit</i> .
p	F: pater, <i>father</i> ; pullus, <i>foal</i> ; paucī, <i>few</i> .

Sounds of the Letters.

NOTE.—The pronunciation of Latin is different in different countries. In America, it usually follows what may be called the *Roman* (or *Phonetic*) method.

16. By the Roman method, *every letter has always the same sound.*

NOTE.—A long vowel in our enunciation almost necessarily acquires a slightly different quality from a short one, as in *boot* and *foot*, *machine* and *holiest*. See also *bs* below.

VOWELS :	<i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i> ;	<i>ǣ</i> as in <i>idea</i> .
	<i>ē</i> as <i>eh</i> ? (prolonged); <i>they</i> ;	<i>ĕ</i> as <i>eh</i> ? (clipped).
	<i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i> ;	<i>ĭ</i> as in <i>holiest</i> .
	<i>ō</i> as in <i>holy</i> ;	<i>ŏ</i> as in <i>obey</i> .
	<i>ū</i> as <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> ;	<i>ŭ</i> as <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i> .
	<i>y</i> between <i>u</i> and <i>i</i> (German <i>ü</i>).	
DIPHTHONGS :	<i>ae</i> like <i>ay</i> ; <i>oe</i> like <i>oy</i> ; <i>au</i> like <i>ow</i> in <i>now</i> .	
	<i>ei</i> as in <i>eight</i> ; <i>eu</i> as <i>eh'oo</i> ; <i>ui</i> as <i>oo'ee</i> .	
CONSONANTS, as in English, except that :	<i>c</i> and <i>g</i> are always hard, as in <i>come</i> , <i>get</i> .	
	<i>s</i> is always sharp, as in <i>sea</i> , <i>lips</i> .	
	<i>i</i> cons. is like <i>y</i> in <i>young</i> ; <i>v</i> (cons. <i>u</i>), like <i>w</i> in <i>wing</i> ; <i>qu</i> as in English.	
	<i>bs</i> is like <i>ps</i> ; <i>ch</i> like <i>k</i> ; <i>ph</i> like <i>f</i> .	
	<i>n</i> before <i>s</i> or <i>f</i> was combined with the preceding vowel somewhat as French nasal <i>n</i> , making the vowel long.	
	<i>z</i> as <i>dz</i> in <i>adze</i> .	
	<i>th</i> as in <i>rathole</i> , later as in <i>thin</i> .	

When two consonants come together (as in *con-dō*, *pos-terī*), or a consonant is doubled (as in *an-nus*, *ūl-lus*, *mīt-tō*), care should be taken to pronounce both letters distinctly.

17. Roman names in English (as *Julius Cæsar*), scientific terms, titles of books, and familiar quotations (as *e pluribus unum*; *viva voce*; *vice versa*; *veni, vidi, vici*, etc.) should be pronounced by the English method. In this the letters have the same sounds as in English.

Quantity and Accent.

18. The Accent in Latin depends on the Quantity (or length) of the last syllable but one. A long *vowel* makes a long *syllable*. A short *vowel* may make a long *syllable* if obstructed by consonants. The following are simple rules for quantity.

- a.* A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short : as in **vīa**, **nīhil**.
- b.* A diphthong is long : as in **āēdēs**, **fōēdus**. So, also, a vowel derived from a diphthong : as, **exclūdō** (**ex-claudō**).
- c.* A vowel formed by contraction is long : as, **nīl** (**nihil**).
- d.* A *syllable* in which a vowel is followed by two consonants (except a mute with **l** or **r**), or a double consonant (**x**, **z**) is long by Position ; as in **pingō**, **saxum**, **Mezentius**. Before **nf** and **ns**, **gn** and **gm**, and **i** consonant the vowel itself becomes long by nature : as in **īnferō**, **praesēns**, **māgnus**, **āgmen**, **hūius**.
- e.* A syllable in which a *short vowel* is followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common ; *i.e.* it may be long in verse : as in **alacris**, **multiplex**.
- f.* A vowel before **nd**, **nt** is regularly short by nature : as, **amānt**, **amāndus** from **amāre**.

19. The accent in words of more than one syllable is on the last syllable but one (Penult), or the last but two (Antepenult).

- a.* Words of two syllables are always accented on the first syllable : **Rō'ma**, **ve'hō**, **i'pse**.
- b.* Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long : as, **amī'cus**, **praesen'tis** ; if it is short or common, on the Antepenult : as, **do'mīnus**, **a'lācris**, **la'tēbrae**, **conti'nūō**, **praete'rītum**, **dissociā'bilis**.

NOTE.— In words of more than four syllables a secondary accent usually arises at a convenient distance from the main accent : as, **nāvigā''tiō'nibus**, **pecū''liā'ria**.

- c.* When an Enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short : as, **dēā'que**, **āmārē've**, **tībī'ne**, **itā'que** (*and . . . so*), as distinguished from **i'tāque** (*therefore*).

d. EXCEPTION: Certain apparent compounds of **faciō** retain the accent of the simple verb: as, **benefă'cīt**, **calefă'cit** (see § 169. *a*). (These are not true compounds, but phrases.)

2. WORDS AND THEIR FORMS.

INFLECTION.

20. Latin is an inflected language: *i.e.* changes are made in the forms of words to show their grammatical relations.

Such changes sometimes take place in the body of a word, or at the beginning, but oftener in the termination: as, **vōx**, *a voice*; **vōcis**, *of a voice*; **tangit**, *he touches*; **tetigit**, *he touched*.

Root and Stem.

21. The **Stem** is the body of a word, of which the terminations are changed.

22. A **Root** is the shortest and simplest form that can express the main idea of a word. It is common also to other words either in the same or kindred languages.¹

Thus the root of the stem **rēg-** (in **rēx**) is **REG**, which does not mean *to rule*, or *I rule*, or *ruling*, but merely expresses vaguely the idea of *directing*, and cannot be used as a part of speech without added terminations.

23. The Stem is sometimes the same as the root: as in **duc-is**, *of a leader*; **fer-t**, *he bears*; but it is more frequently formed from the root, —

1. By changing or lengthening its vowel: as in **scob-s**, *sawdust* (**SCAB**, *shave*); **rēg-is**, *of a king* (**REG**, *direct*); **vōc-is**, *of a voice* (**VOC**, *call*).

2. By the addition of a simple suffix (originally another root): as in **fug-a**, *flight* (**FUG** + **a**); **fugi-s**, *you fly* (**FUG** + **yo**); **pangō**, *I fasten* (**PAG** + **no**).

¹ For example, the root **STA** is found in the Greek **στημι**, Latin **sistere** and **stāre**, German **stehen**, and English *stand*.

3. By two or more of these methods: as in **dūc-it**, *he leads* (DUC + o); **tollō**, *I raise* (TUL + yo).

4. By derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language. (See §§ 158 ff.)

24. Inflectional terminations are variously modified by combination with the final vowel or consonant of the Stem, leading to the various forms of Declension and Conjugation (see § 32).

The Parts of Speech.

25. Words are divided into nine **Parts of Speech**: Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections. These are more fully treated in the Introduction, pp. 1 and 2.

26. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles have inflections of *declension*, to show gender, number, and case. Verbs have inflections of *conjugation*, to show voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

NOTE. — Adjectives are often said to have inflections of *comparison* to indicate degree. These inflections are, however, properly stem-formations made by derivation (cf. § 89).

27. Parts of speech which are not inflected are called **Particles**: such are Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

Gender.

28. The genders distinguished in Latin are three: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

a. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*. Natural gender is distinction as to the sex of the object denoted: as, **puer**, *boy*; **puella**, *girl*; **dōnum**, *gift*.

b. Grammatical gender is a formal distinction as to sex where no actual sex exists in the object. It shows itself only in the form of the adjective joined with the noun: as, **lapis māgnus** (M.), *a great stone*; **manus mea** (F.), *my hand*.

NOTE. — A few neuter nouns are used to designate persons as belonging to a class: as, **mancipium tuum**, *your slave*.

Names of *classes* or *bodies* of persons may be of any gender: as, **exercitus** (M.), *army*; **aciēs** (F.), *army*; **āgmen** (N.), *army*; **operæ** (F. pl.), *workmen*; **cōpiæ** (F. pl.), *troops*.

29. *a.* Names of Male beings, Rivers, Winds, Months, and Mountains, are *masculine*.

b. Names of Female beings, Cities, Countries, Plants, Trees, and Gems, of many Animals (especially Birds), and of most abstract Qualities, are *feminine*.

To each of these there are some exceptions.

c. Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, words, terms or phrases used as nouns, or quoted merely for their form, are neuter : as, —

fās, *right*; *nihil*, *nothing*; *gummī*, *gum*; *scīre tuum*, *your knowledge* (to know).

30. Many nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the object. These are said to be of Common Gender : as, *exsul*, *exile*; *bōs*, *ox* or *cow*.

a. If a noun signifying a thing without life may be either masculine or feminine, — as, *diēs*, *day*; *finis*, *end*, — it is sometimes said to be of Doubtful Gender.

b. Several names of animals have a grammatical gender, independent of sex. These are called Epicene. Thus *lepus*, *hare*, is always masculine, and *vulpēs*, *fox*, is always feminine.

Number and Case.

31. Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and Participles have two Numbers, *singular* and *plural*; and six Cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, *ablative*.

a. The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence.

b. The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or by the Objective with the preposition *of*.

c. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object (§ 177). It may usually be translated by the Objective with the preposition *to* or *for*; but sometimes by the Objective without a preposition.

d. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb (Intr. § 15, § 177). It is used also with many Prepositions.

e. The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

f. The Ablative may usually be translated by the Objective with *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*, or *at*. It is also often used with prepositions.

g. All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, may be used as object-cases; and are sometimes called *Oblique Cases*.

h. In names of towns and a few other words appear traces of another case (the *Locative*), denoting the *place where*.

3. DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

32. Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, distinguished by the case-ending of the Genitive Singular, and by the final letter (*characteristic*) of the Stem.

DECL.	1.	Gen. Sing.	ae	Characteristic	ă (anciently ā)
"	2.	"	ī	"	ō
"	3.	"	īs	"	ī or a Consonant
"	4.	"	ūs (uis)	"	ŭ
"	5.	"	ēī	"	ē

a. The Stem of a noun may be found, if a consonant-stem, by omitting the case-ending; if a vowel-stem, by substituting for the case-ending the characteristic vowel.

b. The Nominative of most masculine and feminine nouns (except in the first declension) is formed from the stem by adding **s**. But many end in **o**, or in the liquids, **l**, **n**, **r**.

33. The following are general Rules of Declension:—

a. The Vocative is always the same as the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns in **us** of the second declension.

b. In neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in **ă**.

c. The Accusative singular of all masculines and feminines ends in **m**; the Accusative plural in **s**.

d. In the last three declensions (and in a few cases in the others) the Dative singular ends in **ī**.

e. The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

f. The Genitive plural always ends in **um**.

g. Final **i**, **o**, **u** of inflection are always *long*; final **a** is *short*, except in the Ablative singular of the first declension; final **e** is *long* in the first and fifth declensions, *short* in the second and third.

34. The Case-endings of the several declensions are the following, rare forms being given in *parenthesis*, Greek forms in *italics*:—

DECL. I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>Sing.</i>				
N. ă, ě, ās, ēs, us, um, er, os, on, eus s (or modified stem)			us, ū	ēs
G. ae (āi) ēs i (īus) ō, ū, ei		īs, yos, ōs	ūs (uis)	ēi (ē)
D. ae (ai) ō (ī) ei, eō		i (ĭ, rare)	ui (ū)	ēi (ē)
A. am, ān, ēn um, on, ea		em (im) in, yn, ā	um, ū	em
V. ă, ě, ā ě (ī) er, eu		(as nom.) ĭ, y	us, ū	ēs
A. ā, ě ō, eō		e (ī), i, yē	ū	ē
<i>Plur.</i>				
N.V. ae i, ā		ēs, a, ia, ěs	ūs, ua	ēs
G. ārum (ūm) ōrum (ūm, ōm) ōn		um, ium, eōn	uum	ērum
D.A. is (ābus) is (ōbus)		ibus	ibus (ūbus)	ēbus
A. ās ōs		ēs (is), a, ia, ās	ūs, ua	ēs

FIRST DECLENSION.

35. The Stem of nouns of the First Declension ends in **ă** (originally **ā**), and except in Greek nouns the nominative is like the stem.

Nouns of the First Declension are thus declined:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. stellă, a (or <i>the</i>) <i>star</i> .	stellae, stars.
GEN. stellae, of a star.	stellārum, of stars.
DAT. stellae, to (or <i>for</i>) <i>a star</i> .	stellis, to (or <i>for</i>) <i>stars</i> .
ACC. stellam, a star.	stellās, stars.
VOC. stella, thou star!	stellae, ye stars!
ABL. stellā, with, from, etc., a star.	stellis, with, from, etc., stars.

GENDER. — Nouns of the first declension are Feminine.

EXCEPTIONS: Nouns masculine from their meaning: as, **nauta, sailor**. So a few family or personal names: as, **Mūrēna, Scaevola**.

36. CASE-FORMS. — *a.* The Genitive singular anciently ended in **-āi**, which is occasionally found: as, **aulāi**.

b. An old genitive in **-ās** is preserved in the word **familiās**, used in the combinations **pater (māter, filius, filia) familiās, father, etc., of a family** (plur. **patrēs familiās** or **familiārum**).

c. The Locative form (§ 31. *h*) for the singular ends in *-ae* ; for the plural in *-is* : as, **Rōmae**, at Rome ; **Athēnis**, at Athens.

d. The Genitive plural is sometimes found in *-ūm* instead of *-ārum*, especially in compounds with *cōla* and *gēna* : as, **caelicolūm**, of the celestials ; **Trōiugenūm**, of the sons of Troy ; **Aeneadūm**, of the sons of Æneas ; so **amphora** and **drachma**.

e. The Dative and Ablative plural of **dea**, goddess, **filia**, daughter, end in an older form *-ābus*.

Greek Nouns.

37. Many nouns of the first declension borrowed from the Greek are entirely Latinized, but many retain traces of their Greek forms in various degrees.

a court (F.). *Electra* (F.). *a synopsis* (F.). *the art of music* (F.).

NOM.	aula	Ēlectrā (ā)	epitomē	mūsica (ē)
GEN.	aulae	Ēlectrae	epitomēs	mūsicae (ēs)
DAT.	aulae	Ēlectrae	epitomae	mūsicae
ACC.	aulam	Ēlectram (ān)	epitomēn	mūsicam (ēn)
VOC.	aula	Ēlectra	epitomē	mūsica (ē)
ABL.	aulā	Ēlectrā	epitomē	mūsicā (ē)

Andromache (F.). *Æneas* (M.). *Leonidas* (M.). *a Persian* (M.).

NOM.	Andromachē (a)	Aenēās	Leōnidās	Persēs (a)
GEN.	Andromachēs (ae)	Aenēae	Leōnidae	Persae
DAT.	Andromachae	Aenēae	Leōnidae	Persae
ACC.	Andromachēn (am)	Aenēān (am)	Leōnidam	Persēn (am)
VOC.	Andromachē (a)	Aenēā (ā)	Leōnidā (ā)	Persa
ABL.	Andromachē (ā)	Aenēā	Leōnidā	Persē (ā)

Anchises (M.). *son of Æneas* (M.). *comet* (M.).

NOM.	Anchisēs	Aeneadēs (ā)	comētēs (a)
GEN.	Anchisae	Aeneadae	comētae
DAT.	Anchisae	Aeneadae	comētae
ACC.	Anchisēn (am)	Aeneadēn	comētēn (am)
VOC.	Anchisē (ā, ā)	Aeneadē (ā)	comētā
ABL.	Anchisē (ā)	Aeneadē (ā)	comētā (ē)

a. Many Greek nouns vary between the first, the second, and the third declensions : as, **Boōtae** (gen. of **Boōtēs**, *-is*), **Thūcȳdidās** (acc. plur. of **Thūcȳdidēs**, *-is*). See § 43. *a* and § 63.

b. Greek forms are found only in the singular; the plural is regular: as, *comētae*, *-ārum*, etc.

Gen. Dat. Acc. S.
Nom. Gen. Dat. S.

SECOND DECLENSION.

38. The Stem of nouns of the Second Declension ends in *ō* (as of *vir*, *virō*; *servos* (-us), *servō*; *dominus*, *dominō*). The nominative is formed from the stem by adding *s* in masculines and feminines, *m* in neuters, the *ō* being weakened to *ū*. But the ending *-quo* makes *-cus* (not *quus*).

In most nouns whose stem ends in *rō* the *s* is not added, but *o* is lost, and *e* intrudes before *r*, if not already present (cf. *chamber* from Fr. *chambre*): as, *ager*, stem *agrō*, Greek *ἀγρός*.

Nouns of the Second Declension are thus declined:—

Sing.	<i>slave</i> (M.).	<i>boy</i> (M.).	<i>field</i> (M.).	<i>man</i> (M.).	<i>war</i> (N.).
STEM	<i>servo-</i>	<i>puero-</i>	<i>agro-</i>	<i>viro-</i>	<i>bello-</i>
NOM.	<i>servus</i> (os)	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
GEN.	<i>servī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bellī</i>
DAT.	<i>servō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
ACC.	<i>servum</i> (om)	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>bellum</i>
VOC.	<i>serve</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
ABL.	<i>servō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
Plur.					
NOM.	<i>servī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
GEN.	<i>servōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>servīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>
ACC.	<i>servōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>bella</i>
VOC.	<i>servī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
ABL.	<i>servīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>

NOTE.—Stems in *-quo*, like *equo*—have *ecus* (*equos*), *equī*, *equō*, *ecum* (*equom*), *eque*. The rest is regular.

39. GENDER.—Nouns ending in *us* (os), *er*, *ir*, are Masculine; those ending in *um* (on) are Neuter.

a. Names of towns in *us* (os) are Feminine: as, *Corinthus*. Also many names of plants and gems, and some others.

b. The following in **us** are Neuter ; their accusative is the same as the nominative : **pelagus** (nom. acc. plur. **pelagē**), *sea*; **virus**, *poison*; **vulgus** (rarely **M.**), *the crowd*; so **cētē**, *sea-monsters* (nom. plur. without singular).

40. CASE-FORMS. — a. The Locative form of this declension ends for the singular in **i** : as, **humī**, *on the ground*; **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*; for the plural, in **is** : as, **Philippis**, *at Philippi*.

b. The genitive of nouns in **ius** or **ium** ends in a single **i** : as, **fili**, *of a son*; but the accent of the nominative is retained : as, **ingē'nī**, *of genius*.¹ The same contraction occurs in the genitive singular and the dative and ablative plural of nouns in **-āius** and **-ēius** : as, **Grāis**, *for the Greeks*; **Pompēi**, *of Pompey*.

c. Proper names in **-ius** lose **e** in the vocative, retaining the accent of the nominative : as, **Vergī'li**; also, **filius**, *son*; **genius**, *divine guardian*; as, **audi, mī fili**, *hear, my son*.

d. Greek names in **-ius** have the vocative **-īe**. Adjectives in **-ius** form the vocative in **-ie**, and some of these are occasionally used as nouns : as, **Lacedaemonie**, *O Spartan!*

e. The genitive plural often has **ūm** or (after **v**) **ōm** (cf. § 7) for **ōrum**, especially in the poets : as, **deūm**, **superūm**, **divōm**, *of the Gods*, **virūm**, *of men*. Also in compounds of **vir**, and in many words of money, measure, and weight : as, **Sēvirūm**, *of the Seviri*, **nummūm**, *of coins*, **iūgerūm**, *of acres*.

f. **Deus**, *god*, has vocative **deus**; plural : nominative and vocative **deī** or **dī** (for **dīi**); genitive **deōrum**, **deūm**; dative and ablative **deīs** or **dīs** (for **dīis**). For the genitive plur. **divūm** or **divōm** (from **divus**, *divine*) is often used.

41. The following stems in **ero**, in which **e** belongs to the stem, retain the **e** throughout : —

adulter , <i>adulterer</i> ;	gener , <i>son-in-law</i> ;	puer , <i>boy</i> ;
socer , <i>father-in-law</i> ;	vesper , <i>evening</i> .	

Also, compounds in **fer** and **ger** (stem **fero**-, **gero**-) : as, **lūcifer**, *morning star*; **armiger**, *squire*.

a. Some of these have an old nominative in **-erus** : as, **socerus**. So vocative **puere**, *a boy*, as from **puerus** (regularly **puer**).

¹ The genitive in **ii** occurs twice in Virgil, and constantly in Ovid, but was unknown to Cicero. The first **i** was probably retained in sound as **y**.

b. **Vir**, *man*, has gen. **virī**; the adjective **satur**, *sated*, has **saturī**; **vesper**, *evening*, has abl. **vespere** (loc. **vesperī**, *in the evening*).

c. **Liber** (a name of Bacchus) has gen. **Liberī**; so, too, the adjective **liber**, *free*, of which **liberī**, *children*, is the plural (§ 82. b).

42. The following not having **e** in the stem insert it in the nominative and vocative singular. (Cf. § 10. d.)

ager , <i>field</i> , st. agro ;	coluber , <i>snake</i> ;	magister , <i>master</i> ;
aper , <i>boar</i> ;	conger , <i>sea-eel</i> ;	minister , <i>servant</i> ;
arbiter , <i>judge</i> ;	culter , <i>knife</i> ;	oleaster , <i>wild-olive</i> ;
auster , <i>south wind</i> ;	faber , <i>smith</i> ;	onager (-grus), <i>wild-ass</i> ;
cancer , <i>crab</i> ;	fiber , <i>beaver</i> ;	scomber (-brus), <i>mackerel</i> .
caper , <i>goat</i> ;	liber , <i>book</i> ;	

[N.B. — For the corresponding forms of Adjectives, see § 82.]

43. Greek nouns retain many original forms and are declined as follows in the Singular, the Plural being regular:—

fable (M.). *mock-sun* (N.). *Delos* (F.). *Athos* (M.). *Orpheus* (M.).

NOM.	mýthos	parêlion	Dēlos	Athōs (ō)	Orpheus
GEN.	mýthi	parêlii	✓ Dēli	Athō (ī)	Orpheī (eos)
DAT.	mýthō	parêliō	Dēlō	Athō	Orpheī
ACC.	mýthon	parêlion	Dēlon (um)	Athōn (um)	Orphea
VOC.	mýthe	parêlion	Dēle	Athōs	Orpheu
ABL.	mýthō	parêliō	Dēlō	Athō	Orpheō

a. Many names in **-ēs** belonging to the third declension have also a genitive in **-ī**: as, **Thūcýdidēs**, **Thūcýdidī** (see §§ 37. b and 52).

b. Several names in **-er** have also a nom. in **-us**: as, **Teucer** or **Teucrus**. The name **Panthūs** has the vocative **Panthū** (§ 63. i).

c. The genitive plural of certain titles of books takes the Greek termination **-ōn**: as, **Geōrgicōn**, *of the Georgics*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns of the Third Declension are best classed according to their stems, as ending (1) in a Mute, (2) in a Liquid (l, n, r), (3) in a Vowel (ī).

A few whose stems end in u, formerly long (**grūs**, **sūs**), are treated as consonant-stems.

Adulter, gen. vesper

1. Mute-Stems.

44. Masculine and Feminine nouns, whose stem ends in a Mute, form the nominative by adding *-s*. If the mute is a *lingual* (t, d), it is suppressed before *-s*; if it is a *palatal* (c, g), it unites with *-s*, forming *-x*: as, —

op-is, Ops, help; *custōd-is, custōs, guardian*; *rēg-is, rēx, king*.¹

Neuters have for the nominative the simple stem (for some modifications, see § 45): —

capit-is, caput, head; *poēmat-is, poēma, poem*.

45. The vowel before the final consonant of the stem is often modified: as, —

adip-is, adeps; *particip-is, particeps*; *aucup-is, auceps*; *hospit-is, hospes*; *capit-is, caput*; *cord-is, cor*; *poēmat-is, poēma*; *apīc-is, apex*; *indīc-is, index*; but, *cornīc-is, cornix*.

46. Nouns of this class are declined as follows: —

Sing. *help* (F.). *king* (M.). *guide* (C.). *soldier* (M.). *head* (N.).

STEM	op-	rēg-	duc-	milit-	capit-
NOM.	[ops]	rēx	dux	mīles	caput
GEN.	opis	rēgis	ducis	mīlitis	capitis
DAT.	opī	rēgī	ducī	mīlitī	capitī
ACC.	opem	rēgem	ducem	mīlitem	caput
VOC.	ops	rēx	dux	mīles	caput
ABL.	ope	rēge	duce	mīlite	capite
Plur.	<i>wealth</i>				
NOM.	opēs	rēgēs	ducēs	mīlitēs	capita
GEN.	opum	rēgum	ducum	mīlitum	capitum
DAT.	opibus	rēgibus	ducibus	mīlitibus	capitibus
ACC.	opēs	rēgēs	ducēs	mīlitēs	capita
VOC.	opēs	rēgēs	ducēs	mīlitēs	capita
ABL.	opibus	rēgibus	ducibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

¹ In these the genitive is given first to show the stem as it is shown in vocabularies.

47. In like manner are declined —

princeps, -ipis (C.), <i>chief</i> ;	ariēs, -etis (M.), <i>ram</i> ;
lapis, -idis (M.), <i>stone</i> ;	iūdex, -icis (M.), <i>judge</i> ;
custōs, -ōdis (C.), <i>guard</i> ;	cornix, -īcis (F.), <i>raven</i> ;
comes, -itis (C.), <i>companion</i> ;	poēma, -atis (N.), <i>poem</i> (§ 47. b).

a. Many apparent mute-stems,¹ having the genitive plural in **-ium**, are for convenience classed with **i-stems** (§ 54).

b. Greek neuters (as **poēma**), with nominative singular in **-a**, frequently end in the dative and ablative plural in **-īs**, and in the genitive plural rarely in **-ōrum**.

c. A few apparent **i-stems** belong here: **canis**, or **canēs**, gen. **canis** (stem orig. **can-**), *dog* (cf. § 54).

II 2. Liquid-Stems.

48. In nouns whose stem ends in a Liquid (**l, n, r**), the nominative is the same as the (modified) stem, as follows:—

As **leōn-is**, **leō**, *lion*; **legiōn-is**, **legiō**, *legion*; **virgin-is**, **virgō**, *maiden*; **homin-is**, **homō**, *man*; **turbin-is**, **turbō**, *whirlpool*; **Apollin-is**, **Apollō**; **carn-is**, **carō**, *flesh* (see § 61); **Aniēn-is**, **Aniō**; **cornicin-is**, **cornicen** (M.), *horn-blower*; **carmin-is**, **carmen** (N.), *song*; **patr-is**, **pater**, *father*; **oper-is** (originally **opesis**), **opus**, *work*; **ciner-is**, **cinis**, *ashes*.

NOTE.—A few Masculine and Feminine stems have a nom. in **-s** as well as **-r**: as, **honōr-is**, **honōs** (or *honor*); **arbōr-is**, **arbōs** (or *arbor*), *tree*.

Stems in **ll-**, **rr-** (N.) lose one of their liquids in the nominative: as, **farr-is**, **far**, *grain*; **fell-is**, **fel**, *gall*.

49. Nouns of this class are declined as follows:—

Sing.	<i>consul</i> (M.).	<i>lion</i> (M.).	<i>maiden</i> (F.).	<i>name</i> (N.).
STEM	cōnsul-	leōn-	virgin-	nōmin-
NOM.	cōnsul	leō	virgō	nōmen
GEN.	cōnsulis	leōnis	virginis	nōminis
DAT.	cōnsulī	leōnī	virginī	nōminī
ACC.	cōnsulem	leōnem	virginem	nōmen
VOC.	cōnsul	leō	virgō	nōmen
ABL.	cōnsule	leōne	virgine	nōmine

¹ That is, as appears from the nominative. No fast line can be drawn between mute-stems and **i-stems**, as they were confused in both ways.

Plur.

NOM. cōsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
GEN. cōsulūm	leōnum	virginūm	nōminūm
DAT. cōsulibus	leōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus
ACC. cōsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
VOC. cōsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
ABL. cōsulibus	leōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus

Sing. *body* (N.). *race* (N.). *ivory* (N.). *plain* (N.).

STEM corpor- , orig. -os-	gener- , orig. -es-	ebor-	aequor-
NOM. corpus	genus	ebur	aequor
GEN. corporis	generis	eboris	aequoris
DAT. corpori	generi	ebori	aequori
ACC. corpus	genus	ebur	aequor
VOC. corpus	genus	ebur	aequor
ABL. corpore	genere	ebore	aequore

Plur.

NOM. corpora	genera	ebora	aequora
GEN. corporum	generum	eborum	aequorum
DAT. corporibus	generibus	eboribus	aequoribus
ACC. corpora	genera	ebora	aequora
VOC. corpora	genera	ebora	aequora
ABL. corporibus	generibus	eboribus	aequoribus

50. In like manner are declined —

pater, patris (M.), <i>father</i> ;	arbor (-ōs), -oris (F.), <i>tree</i> ;
furfur, -uris (M.), <i>bran</i> ;	honor (-ōs), -ōris (M.), <i>honor</i> ;
opus, -eris (N.), <i>work</i> ;	pignus, -eris or -oris, <i>pledge</i> .

The following real or apparent liquid-stems have the genitive plural in -ium, and are for convenience classed with the i-stems : **imber, linter, ūter, venter** ; **fūr, glīs, lār, mās, mūs** [†rēn] ; also **virēs** (pl. from **vis** : see § 61). T

3. Vowel-Stems.

51. Vowel-stems of the Third Declension end in i- (as **turris**, stem **turri-** ; **mare**, stem **mari-**). The nominative, except in neuters, is formed by adding -s to the stem.

a. Thirty-five nouns change *ī* and *ē* in the nominative, and many others vary between *i* and *ē*: as, *cīvēs*, or *civis*, *citizen*: *canēs* or *canis* (treated as *i*-stem), *dog*.

b. The nominative of a few stems in *bri*- and *tri*- does not add *-s*, but loses *i*, inserting *e* before *r*. These are *imber*, *linter*, *ūter*, *venter* (§ 54, and cf. *ager*).

c. The nominative of neuters is the same as the stem, with the change of *ī* to *ē* (as in *mare*). But when *i* is preceded by *al* or *ar*, the *e* is lost, as in *animal* (§ 53. *c*).

52. Nouns of this class are declined as follows :—

Sing.	<i>thirst</i> (F.).	<i>tower</i> (F.).	<i>cloud</i> (F.).	<i>seat</i> (N.).	<i>animal</i> (N.).
STEM	siti-	turri-	nūbi-	sedīli-	animāli-
NOM.	sitis	turris	nūbēs	sedile	animal
GEN.	sitis	turris	nūbis	sedilis	animālis
DAT.	sitī	turri	nūbī	sedilī	animālī
ACC.	sitim	turrem (im)	nūbem	sedile	animal
VOC.	sitis	turris	nūbēs	sedile	animal
ABL.	sitī	turre (ī)	nūbe	sedilī	animālī
Plur.					
NOM.		turrēs	nūbēs	sedilia	animālia
GEN.		turrium	nūbium	sedilium	animālium
DAT.		turribus	nūbibus	sedilibus	animālibus
ACC.		turrīs (ēs)	nūbīs (ēs)	sedilia	animālia
VOC.		turrēs	nūbēs	sedilia	animālia
ABL.		turribus	nūbibus	sedilibus	animālibus

53. Nouns of this class include —

a. Nouns in *-ēs* or *-is* (mostly feminine) or *e* (neuter) having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive (*parisyllabic*).

b. Those in *-er*, except *pater*, *māter*, *frāter*, *accipiter*.

c. Neuters in *-al*, *-ar* (originally neuters of adjectives in *ālis*, *-āris*) which have lost a final *-e*.

54. Many nouns with apparently consonant-stems were originally *i*-stems or confused with them.¹ These are —

¹ The *i*-declension was confused even to the Romans, nor was it stable at all periods of the language, early Latin having *i*-forms which later disappeared. Nouns tended to lose the *i*-forms, Adjectives, to gain them.

1. Monosyllables with stem apparently ending in two consonants : *ās*, *urbs*, *mōns* (gen. *montis*), *nox* (gen. *noctis*), *arx* ; together with *imber*, *linter*, *ūter*, *venter* (§ 51. *b*).

2. Stems in *tāt-* (as *cīvitās*, *-ātis*),¹ or in *d* or *t* preceded by a consonant (including participles used as nouns) ; also the monosyllables *dōs*, [*† faux*], *fūr*, *glīs*, *lis*, *mās*, *mūs*, *nix*, [*† rēn*], *strix*, *vis*, *scrobs* (cf. § 50).

3. Nouns denoting birth or abode, having stems in *āt-*, *it-*, originally adjectives : as, *Arpinās*, *-ātis* (§ 164. *c*), with *penātēs* and *optimātēs* (§ 76. 2).

They are thus declined : —

Sing.	<i>city</i> (F.).	<i>night</i> (F.).	<i>age</i> (F.).	<i>mouse</i> (M.).	<i>shower</i> (M.).
STEM	<i>urbi-</i>	<i>nocti-</i>	<i>aetāti-</i>	<i>mūri-</i>	<i>imbri-</i>
NOM.	<i>urbs</i>	<i>nox</i>	<i>aetās</i>	<i>mūs</i>	<i>imber</i>
GEN.	<i>urbis</i>	<i>noctis</i>	<i>aetātis</i>	<i>mūris</i>	<i>imbris</i>
DAT.	<i>urbī</i>	<i>noctī</i>	<i>aetātī</i>	<i>mūrī</i>	<i>imbri</i>
ACC.	<i>urbem</i>	<i>noctem</i>	<i>aetātem</i>	<i>mūrem</i>	<i>imbrem</i>
VOC.	<i>urbs</i>	<i>nox</i>	<i>aetās</i>	<i>mūs</i>	<i>imber</i>
ABL.	<i>urbe</i>	<i>nocte</i>	<i>aetāte</i>	<i>mūre</i>	<i>imbre</i> (<i>i</i>)
Plur.					
NOM.	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>noctēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>	<i>mūrēs</i>	<i>imbrēs</i>
GEN.	<i>urbium</i>	<i>noctium</i>	<i>aetātum</i> (<i>ium</i>)	<i>mūrium</i>	<i>imbrium</i>
DAT.	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>noctibus</i>	<i>aetātibus</i>	<i>mūribus</i>	<i>imbribus</i>
ACC.	<i>urbīs</i> (<i>ēs</i>)	<i>noctīs</i> (<i>ēs</i>)	<i>aetātīs</i> (<i>ēs</i>)	<i>mūrīs</i> (<i>ēs</i>)	<i>imbrīs</i> (<i>ēs</i>)
VOC.	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>noctēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>	<i>mūrēs</i>	<i>imbrēs</i>
ABL.	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>noctibus</i>	<i>aetātibus</i>	<i>mūribus</i>	<i>imbribus</i>

NOTE.— The declension of these nouns in the singular is exactly like that of consonant-stems, and in the plural like that of vowel-stems.

55. Vowel-stems (real or confused) show the *i* of the stem in the following forms :—

a. They almost all have the genitive plural in *-ium*, but some monosyllables lack it entirely. Exceptions are *canis* and *iuvenis* (originally consonant-stems), patrials in *-ās*, *ātis* and *is*, *itis*, and a few others occasionally for metrical reasons, or from confusion ; as, *Arpinās*, *Arpinātum* ; *Samnis*, *Samnitum* ; *clādēs*, *clādum*.

¹ These, however, more commonly have the genitive plural in *-um*.

- b.* All neuters have the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia**.
- c.* The accusative plural (M. or F.) is regularly **-is**.
- d.* The accusative singular (M. or F.) of a few ends in **-im** (§ 56).
- e.* The ablative singular of all neuters, and of many masculines and feminines, ends in **-ī** (see § 57).

56. The regular case-ending of the accusative singular of *i*-stems (M. or F.) would be **-im**: as, **sitis, sitim** (cf. **stella, -am; servos, -om**); but in most nouns this is changed to **-em** (following the consonant declension).

- a.* The accusative in **-im** is found exclusively —
 1. In Greek nouns and names of rivers.
 2. In **būris, cucumis, rāvis, sitis, tussis, vīs**.
 3. In adverbs in **-tim** (being accusatives of nouns in **-tis**), as **partim**; and in **amussim**.
- b.* The accusative in **-im** is found sometimes in **febris, puppis, restis, turris, secūris, sēmentis**, and rarely in many other words.

57. The regular ablative singular of *i*-stems would end in **-ī**: as, **sitis, siti**; but in most nouns this is changed to **-e**.

- a.* The ablative in **-ī** is found exclusively —
 1. In nouns having the accusative in **-im** (§ 56); also, **secūris**.
 2. In **aequālis, annālis, aquālis, cōsulāris, gentilis, molāris, primipilāris, tribūlis** used as nouns.
 3. In neuters (whose nominative ends in **-e, -al, -ar**): except **baccar, iubar**, and sometimes (in verse) **mare, rēte**.
- b.* The ablative in **-ī** is found sometimes —
 1. In **avis, clāvis, febris, finis, ignis,¹ imber, nāvis, ovis, pelvis, puppis, sēmentis, strigilis, turris**.
 2. In **affinis, bipennis, canālis, familiāris, nātālis, rivālis, sapiēns, tridēns, trirēmis, vōcālis** used as nouns.
- c.* The ablative of **famēs** is always **famē**. The defective **māne** has sometimes locative **mānī** used as ablative.
- d.* Most names of towns in **-e**, — as **Praeneste, Tergeste**, — and **Sōracte**, a mountain, have the ablative in **-e**. **Caere** has **Caerēte**.
- e.* For **canis**, see § 47. *c*.

¹ Always in the formula **aquā et ignī interdicī** (§ 243. *a*).

58. The regular Nominative plural of *i*-stems would end in *-īs*, but this is very rarely found in nouns. The regular Accusative in *-īs* is common, but not exclusively used in any word.

59. The following have *-um* (not *-ium*) in the genitive plural: *canis*, *iuvenis* (originally consonant-stems); *ambāgēs*, *mare* (once only, otherwise wanting), *volucris*; also (sometimes) *apis*, *caedēs*, *clādēs*, *mēnsis*, *sēdēs*, *struēs*, *subolēs*, *vātēs*, and patrials in *-ās*, *-ātis*; *-is*, *-itis*; as, *Arpinās*, *Arpinātum*; *Samnis*, *Samnitum*.

4. Irregular Nouns.

60. In many nouns the stem is irregularly modified in the nominative or other cases. Thus, —

a. The vowel-stems *grū-*, *sū-* add *s* in the nominative, and are inflected like mute-stems: *grūs* has also a nominative *gruis*; *sūs* has both *suibus* and *subus* in the dative and ablative plural.

b. In the stem *bov-* (*bou-*) the diphthong *ou* becomes *ō* in the nominative (*bōs*, *bōvis*). In *nāv-* (*nau-*) an *i* is added (*nāvis*, *-is*). In *Iōv-* (= *Zeús*) the diphthong (*ou*) becomes *ū* in *Iū-piter* (for *-pāter*), gen. *Iōvis*, etc.

c. In *iter*, *itineris* (N.), *iecur*, *iecinoris* (N.), *supellex*, *supellectilis* (F.), the nominative is formed from a shorter stem, in *senex*, *senis* from a longer; so that these words show a mixture of two distinct forms. The shorter form is found in the genitive *iecor-is*.

d. Of the many original *s*-stems, only *vās*, *vāsis* (N.) (pl. *vāsa*, *-ōrum*), retains its proper form in the nominative.

61. Some peculiar forms are thus declined:—

Sing. *ox, cow* (C.). *old man* (M.). *flesh* (F.). *bone* (N.). *force* (F.). *swine* (C.).

N., V.	<i>bōs</i>	<i>senex</i>	<i>carō</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>sūs</i>
GEN.	<i>bōvis</i>	<i>senis</i>	<i>carnis</i>	<i>ossis</i>	<i>vīs</i> (rare)	<i>suis</i>
DAT.	<i>bovī</i>	<i>senī</i>	<i>carnī</i>	<i>ossī</i>	<i>vī</i> (rare)	<i>suī</i>
ACC.	<i>bovem</i>	<i>senem</i>	<i>carnem</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>suem</i>
ABL.	<i>bove</i>	<i>sene</i>	<i>carne</i>	<i>osse</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>sue</i>
Plur.	<i>cattle</i>				<i>strength</i>	
N., A., V.	<i>bovēs</i>	<i>senēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>	<i>ossa</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>
GEN.	<i>bovm</i>	<i>senum</i>	<i>carnium</i>	<i>ossium</i>	<i>vīrium</i>	<i>suum</i>
D., ABL.	<i>bōbus</i>	<i>senibus</i>	<i>carnibus</i>	<i>ossibus</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>sūbus</i>
	(<i>būbus</i>)					(<i>suibus</i>)

5. Case-Forms.

62. The LOCATIVE form ends in the singular in *-ī* or *-e*: as, *rūrī*, *in the country*; *Carthāginī* or *Carthāgine*, *at Carthage*; in the plural in *-ibus*: as, *Trallibus*, *at Tralles*.

6. Greek Forms.

63. Many nouns originally Greek — mostly proper names — retain Greek forms of inflection.

a. Stems in *īn-* (*i* long): *delphīnus*, *-ī* (M.), has also the form *delphīn*, *-īnis*; *Salamīs*, *-īnis* (F.), has acc. *Salamīna*.

b. Most stems in *īd-* (nom. *-is*) often have also the forms of *i*-stems: as, *tigris*, *-īdis* (*-īdos*) or *-is*; acc. *-īdem* (*-īda*) or *-im* (*-in*); abl. *-īde* or *-ī*. But many, including most feminine proper names, have acc. *-idem* (*-īda*), abl. *-īde*, — not *-im* or *-ī*. (These stems are irregular also in Greek.)

c. Stems in *on-* sometimes retain *-n* in the nominative: as, *Agamemnōn* (or *Agamemnō*), *-ōnis*, accusative *-ōna*.

d. Stems in *ont-* form the nom. in *-ōn*: as, *horizōn*, *Xenophōn*; but a few are occasionally Latinized into *ōn-* (nom. *-ō*): as, *Dracō*, *-ōnis*.

e. Stems in *ant-*, *ent-* have the nom. in *-ās*, *-īs*: as *adamās*, *-antis*; *Simoīs*, *-entis*. So a few in *ūnt-* (contracted from *oēnt-*) have *-ūs*: as, *Trapezūs*, *-ūntis*. Occasionally the Latin form of nominative is also found: as, *Atlāns*, *elephāns*, as well as *Atlās*, *elephās*.

f. Many Greek nouns have gen. *-ōs*, acc. *-ā*; plur. nom. *-ēs*, acc. *-ās*: as, *āēr*, *aethēr*, *crātēr*, *hērōs* (*-ōis*), *lampas* (*-ādis* or *-ādos*), *lynx* (*-cis* or *-cōs*), *nāis* (*-idos*), *Orpheus* (*-eos*: see § 43).

g. A few in *-ys* have acc. *-yn*, voc. *-y*, abl. *-yē*: as, *chelys*, *-yn*, *-y*; *Capys*, *-yos*, *-yi*, *-yn*, *-y*, *-yē*.

h. Several feminine names in *-ō* have gen. sing. *-ūs*, all the other cases ending in *-ō*; they may also have regular forms: as, *Dīdō*, gen. *Dīdōnis* or *Dīdūs*; dat. *Dīdōnī* or *Dīdō*, etc.

i. Several Greek forms are irregularly retained in the vocative: as, *Panthūs*, voc. *Panthū*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*; *Atlās*, *Atlā*; *Daphnis*, *Daphnī*; *Periclēs*, *Periclē* (cf. § 43).

64. Some of these forms are seen in the following examples: —

Sing. <i>hero</i> (M.).	<i>torch</i> (F.).	<i>base</i> (F.).	<i>naiad</i> (F.).	<i>tiger</i> (C.).
STEM <i>hērō-</i>	<i>lampad-</i>	<i>basi-</i>	<i>naid-</i>	<i>tigrid-</i> (<i>tigri-</i>)
N., V. <i>hērōs</i>	<i>lampas</i>	<i>basis</i>	<i>nāis</i>	<i>tigris</i>
GEN. <i>hērōis</i>	<i>lampados</i>	<i>baseōs</i>	<i>nāidos</i>	<i>tigris</i> (<i>idos</i>)
DAT. <i>hērōi</i>	<i>lampadi</i>	<i>basī</i>	<i>nāidī</i>	<i>tigrī</i>
ACC. <i>hērōa</i>	<i>lampada</i>	<i>basin</i>	<i>nāida</i>	<i>tigrin</i> (<i>ida</i>)
ABL. <i>hērōe</i>	<i>lampade</i>	<i>basī</i>	<i>nāide</i>	<i>tigrī</i> (<i>ide</i>)
Plur.				
N., V. <i>hērōēs</i>	<i>lampadēs</i>	<i>basēs</i>	<i>nāidēs</i>	<i>tigrēs</i>
GEN. <i>hērōum</i>	<i>lampadum</i>	<i>basium</i> (<i>eōn</i>)	<i>nāidum</i>	<i>tigrium</i>
D., A. ¹ <i>hērōibus</i>	<i>lampadibus</i>	<i>basibus</i>	<i>nāidibus</i>	<i>tigribus</i>
ACC. <i>hērōās</i>	<i>lampadās</i>	<i>basīs</i> (<i>ēis</i>)	<i>nāidās</i>	<i>tigrīs</i> (<i>idās</i>)

PROPER NAMES.

NOM. <i>Atlās</i>	<i>Dīdō</i>	<i>Simoīs</i>	<i>Capys</i>	<i>Daphnis</i>
GEN. <i>Atlantis</i> ✓	<i>Dīdōnis</i> (<i>ūs</i>) ✓	<i>Simoentis</i>	<i>Capyos</i>	<i>Daphnidis</i>
DAT. <i>Atlantī</i>	<i>Dīdōnī</i> (<i>ō</i>) ✓	<i>Simoentī</i> ✓	<i>Capyī</i> ✓	<i>Daphnidī</i>
ACC. <i>Atlanta</i>	<i>Dīdōnem</i> (<i>ō</i>)	<i>Simoenta</i>	<i>Capyn</i>	<i>Daphnim</i> (<i>in</i>)
VOC. <i>Atlās</i> (<i>ā</i>)	<i>Dīdō</i>	<i>Simoīs</i>	<i>Capy</i>	<i>Daphnī</i>
ABL. <i>Atlante</i>	<i>Dīdōne</i> (<i>ō</i>)	<i>Simoente</i>	<i>Capye</i>	<i>Daphnī</i>

NOTE. — The regular Latin forms can be used for most of the above.

7. Rules of Gender.

65. The following are general Rules for the Gender of nouns of the third declension, classed according to the *termination of the nominative*.

a. Masculine endings are *-ō*, *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, *-ēs* (gen. *-īdis*, *-ītis*).

b. Feminine endings are *-ās* (gen. *ātis*), *-ēs* (gen. *-is*), *-is*, *-ys*, *-x*, *-s* (following a consonant); also, *-dō*, *-gō* (gen. *-inis*), *-iō* (abstract and collective), and *-ūs* (gen. *ūdis*, *-ūtis*).

c. Neuter endings are *-a*, *-e*, *-ī*, *-y*; *-c*, *-l*, *-t*; *-men* (gen. *-mīnis*); *-ar*, *-ur*, *-ūs* (gen. *-eris*, *-oris*).

NOTE. — All these have exceptions.

66. For general Rules for the Gender of nouns of the third declension, classed according to their stems, see Allen and Greenough's larger grammar.

¹ Dative, *hērōisin* (once only).

67. For the Forms of Inflection of nouns of the third declension, classed according to their stems, see Allen and Greenough's larger grammar.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

68. The Stem of nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in u, weakened to i, before -bus. Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative by adding -s; neuters have for nominative the simple stem, but with ū (long).

Nouns of the Fourth Declension are thus declined:—

Sing.	<i>hand</i> (F.).	<i>lake</i> (M.).	<i>knee</i> (N.).
	STEM <i>manu-</i>	<i>lacu-</i>	<i>genu-</i>
NOM.	<i>manus</i>	<i>lacus</i>	<i>genū</i>
GEN.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>lacūs</i>	<i>genū (ūs)</i>
DAT.	<i>manui (ū)</i>	<i>lacui (ū)</i>	<i>genū</i>
ACC.	<i>manum</i>	<i>lacum</i>	<i>genū</i>
VOC.	<i>manus</i>	<i>lacus</i>	<i>genū</i>
ABL.	<i>manū</i>	<i>lacū</i>	<i>genū</i>
Plur.			
NOM.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>lacūs</i>	<i>genua</i>
GEN.	<i>manuum</i>	<i>lacuum</i>	<i>genuum</i>
DAT.	<i>manibus</i>	<i>lacubus</i>	<i>genibus</i>
ACC.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>lacūs</i>	<i>genua</i>
VOC.	<i>manūs</i>	<i>lacūs</i>	<i>genua</i>
ABL.	<i>manibus</i>	<i>lacubus</i>	<i>genibus</i>

69. GENDER. — *a.* Most nouns in -us are Masculine. The following are Feminine: *acus*, *anus*, *colus*, *domus*, *idūs* (pl.), *manus*, *nurus*, *porticus*, *quinquātrūs* (pl.), *socrus*, *tribus*, with a few names of plants and trees. Also, rarely, *arcus*, *penus*, *specus*.

b. The only neuters are *cornū*, *genū*, *pecū*, *verū*.

70. CASE-FORMS. — *a.* The uncontracted form -uis (sometimes -uos) is sometimes found in the genitive, as *senātuos*; and an old (irregular) genitive in -ī is used by some writers: as, *ornāti*, *senāti*.

b. The nominative plural has rarely the form -uus.

c. The genitive plural is sometimes contracted into -um.

d. The following retain the regular dative and ablative plural in **-ūbus**: **artus**, **partus**, **portus**, **tribus**, **verū** (but sometimes **portibus**, **veribus**); also dissyllables in **-cus**: **as**, **lacus**.

e. Most names of plants, and **colus**, *distaff*, have also forms of the second declension.

f. **Domus**, *house*, has two stems, ending in **u-** and **o-** (cf. gen. in **-ī**, § 70. *a*), and is declined as follows: ¹—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	domus	domūs
GEN.	domūs (domī , loc.)	domuum (domōrum)
DAT.	domuī (domō)	domibus
ACC.	domum	domōs (domūs)
ABL.	domō (domū)	domibus

g. The only locative form of the fourth declension is **domuī**. But even this is rare, and **domī** is almost universally used instead.

71. Most nouns of the fourth declension are formed from verb-stems, or roots, by means of the suffix **-tus** (**-sus**) (cf. § 163. *b*): **as**, **cantus**, *song*, **CAN**, **canō**, *sing*.

a. The accusative and ablative (or dative, perhaps both) of these nouns form the Supines of verbs (§ 109. *c*): **as**, **audītum**, **visū**.

b. Of many verbal derivatives only the ablative is used as a noun: **as**, **iūssū** (**meō**), *by (my) command*; so **iniūssū**, *without orders*. Of some only the dative: **as**, **memorātui**, **divisui**.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

72. The Stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in **ē-**. The nominative is formed from it by adding **-s**.

These nouns are thus declined:—

	SING. <i>thing</i> (F.) PLUR.		SING. <i>day</i> (M.) PLUR.		<i>faith</i> (F.).
	STEM rē-		diē-		fidē-
NOM.	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs	fidēs
GEN.	rēī	rērum	diēī (diē)	diērum	fidēī
DAT.	rēī	rēbus	diēī (diē)	diēbus	fidēī
ACC.	rem	rēs	diem	diēs	fidem
VOC.	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs	fidēs
ABL.	rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus	fidē

¹ The forms in parenthesis, except **domī** (cf. § 70. *g*), are less common.

NOTE.—The *ē* has been shortened in the genitive and dative singular of *fidēs*, *spēs*, *rēs*, but in these it is found long in early Latin.

73. GENDER.—All nouns of this declension are feminine, except *diēs* (usually M.), *day*, and *merīdiēs* (M.), *noon*. *Diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular, regularly so when used of time in general : as, *longa diēs*, *a long time* ; *cōstitutā diē*, *on a set day* ; also in the poets : as, *pulchra diēs*, *a fine day*.

74. CASE-FORMS.—*a.* The Genitive singular anciently ended in *-ēs* (cf. *-ās* of first declension, § 36. *b.*). The genitive ending *-ēi* was sometimes contracted into *-ei*, *-i*, or *-ē* : as, *diī* (*Æn.* i. 636), and the phrases *plēbi-scitum*, *tribūnus plēbei*.

b. The fifth declension is only a variety of the first, and several nouns have forms of both : as, *māteria*, *-iēs* ; *saevitia*, *-iēs*.

c. The Locative of this declension ends in *-ē*. It is found in certain adverbs and expressions of time : as, *hodiē* (for *hoi-diē*, cf. *huic*), *to-day* ; *perendiē*, *day after to-morrow* ; *diē quārtō* (old, *quārti*), *the fourth day* ; *prīdiē*, *the day before*.

d. Of nouns of the fifth declension, *diēs* and *rēs* only are declined throughout. Most want the plural, which is found, however, in the nominative and accusative in the following : *aciēs*, *effigiēs*, *ēluviēs*, *faciēs*, *glaciēs*, *seriēs*, *speciēs*, *spēs*.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

75. Some nouns are ordinarily found in the Singular number only (*sīngulāria tantum*). These are —

1. Most proper names : as *Caesar*, *Cæsar*, *Gallia*, *Gaul*.
2. Names of things not counted, but reckoned in mass : as, *aurum*, *gold* ; *āēr*, *air* ; *trīticum*, *wheat*.
3. Abstract nouns : as, *ambitiō*, *ambition* ; *fortitūdō*, *courage* ; *calor*, *heat*.

But many of these are used in the plural in some other sense. Thus,—

a. A proper name may be applied to two or more persons or places, or even things, and so become strictly common : as, *duodecim Caesarēs*, *the twelve Cæsars* ; *Galliae*, *the two Gauls* (Cis- and Trans-alpine) ; *Castōrēs*, *Castor and Pollux* ; *Iovēs*, *images of Jupiter*.

b. Particular objects may be denoted : as, **aera**, *bronze utensils*, **nivēs**, *snowflakes*; or different kinds of a thing : as, **āeres**, *airs* (good and bad).

c. The plural of abstract nouns denotes *instances* of the quality, or the like : as, **quaedam excellentiae**, *some cases of superiority*; **calōrēs**, **frīgora**, *times of heat and cold*. (See also § 79. *d.*)

76. Some nouns are commonly found only in the Plural (*plūrālia tantum* [cf. § 79. *c*]). Such are —

1. Many proper names : as, **Athēnae**, *Athens*, **Thūrii**, **Philippi**, **Vēii**, names of towns, especially names of festivals and games : as, **Olympia**, *the Olympic Games*; **Bacchānālia**, *feast of Bacchus*; **lūdi Rōmāni**, *the Roman Games*.

2. Names of classes : as, **optimātēs**, *the upper classes*; **māiōrēs**, *ancestors*; **liberī**, *children*; **penātēs**, *household gods*.

3. Words plural by signification : as, **arma**, *weapons*; **artūs**, *joints*; **dīvitiae**, *riches*; **scālae**, *stairs*; **valvae**, *folding-doors*.

These often have a corresponding singular in some form or other, as noun or adjective.

a. As noun, to denote a single object : as, **Bacchānal**, *a spot sacred to Bacchus*; **optimās**, *an aristocrat*.

b. As adjective : as, **Catō Māior**, *Cato the Elder*.

c. In another sense : as, **scāla**, *a ladder*; **artus**, *a joint*.

77. Many nouns are defective in case forms. For lists, see Allen and Greenough's larger grammar.

VARIABLE NOUNS.

78. Many nouns vary either in Declension or Gender. For lists, see Allen and Greenough's larger grammar. The dictionary gives sufficient information in each case.

79. Many nouns have irregularities of Number either in their ordinary or occasional use.

a. Many nouns vary in meaning in the Singular and Plural: as, —

aedēs, -is (F.), <i>temple</i> ;	aedēs, -ium , <i>house</i> .
aqua (F.), <i>water</i> ;	aquae , <i>a watering-place</i> .
auxilium (N.), <i>help</i> ;	auxilia , <i>auxiliaries</i> .
bonum (N.), <i>a good</i> ;	bona , <i>property</i> .
carcer (N.), <i>dungeon</i> ;	carcerēs , <i>barriers</i> (of race-course).
castrum (N.), <i>fort</i> ;	castra , <i>camp</i> .
comitium (N.), <i>place of assembly</i> ;	comitia , <i>an election</i> (town meeting).
cōpia (F.), <i>plenty</i> ;	cōpiae , <i>troops</i> .
fidēs (F.), <i>harp string</i> ;	fidēs , <i>lyre</i> .
finis (M.), <i>end</i> ;	finēs , <i>bounds, territories</i> .
grātia (F.), <i>favor</i> (rarely, <i>thanks</i>);	grātiae , <i>thanks</i> (also, <i>the Graces</i>).
impedimentum (N.), <i>hindrance</i> ;	impedimenta , <i>baggage</i> .
littera (F.), <i>letter</i> (of alphabet);	litterae , <i>epistle</i> .
locus (M.), <i>place</i> [pl. loca (N.)];	loci , <i>topics</i> .
lūdus (M.), <i>sport</i> ;	lūdī , <i>public games</i> .
opera (F.), <i>work</i> ;	operae , <i>day-laborers</i> ("hands").
[ops] opis (F.), <i>help</i> (§ 46);	opēs , <i>resources, wealth</i> .
pars (F.), <i>a part</i> ;	partēs , <i>part</i> (on the stage), <i>party</i> .
rōstrum (N.), <i>beak of a ship</i> ;	rōstra , <i>speaker's platform</i> .
sāl (M. or N.), <i>salt</i> ;	salēs , <i>witticisms</i> .

b. The singular of a noun usually denoting an individual is sometimes used collectively to denote a group: as, **Poenus**, *the Carthaginians*; **mīles**, *the soldiery*; **eques**, *the cavalry*.

c. Of many nouns the plural is usually, but not exclusively, used: as, **cervicēs**, *the neck*; **Quirītēs**, *Romans*; **vīscera**, *flesh*.

d. The poets often use the plural for the singular for metrical reasons, or from a mere fashion: as, **ōra** (for **ōs**), *the face*; **scēptra** (for **scēptrum**), *sceptre*; **silentia** (for **silentium**), *silence*.

PROPER NAMES.

80. A Roman had regularly three names, denoting the *person*, the *gens*, and the *family*.

a. Thus, in the name **Mārcus Tullius Cicerō**, we have **Mārcus** the *praenōmen*, or personal name; **Tullius**, the *nōmen* (properly an

adjective), *i.e.* the name of the gens, or house, whose supposed original head was a Tullus ; **Cicerō**, the *cōgnōmen*, or family name.

NOTE. — When two persons of the same family are mentioned together, the cognomen is usually in the plural : as **Pūblius et Servius Sullae**.

b. A fourth or fifth name was sometimes given. Thus the complete name of Scipio the Younger was **Pūblius Cornēlius Scipiō Africānus Aemiliānus**: **Africānus**, from his exploits in Africa ; **Aemiliānus**, as adopted from the Æmilian gens.

c. Women had commonly in classical times no personal names, but were known only by the *nōmen* of their gens. Thus, the wife of Cicero was **Terentia**, and his daughter **Tullia**. A younger daughter would have been called **Tullia secunda** or **minor**, and so on.

d. The commonest prænomens are thus abbreviated : —

A. Aulus.	L. Lūcius.	Q. Quintus.
App. Appius.	M. Mārcus.	Ser. Servius.
C. (G.) Gāius (Caius) (cf. § 6).	M'. Mānius.	Sex. Sextus.
Cn. (Gn.) Gnaeus (Cneius).	Mam. Māmercus.	Sp. Spurius.
D. Decimus.	N. Numerius.	T. Titus.
K. Kaesō (Caeso).	P. Pūblius.	Tl. Tiberius.

4. ADJECTIVES.

INFLECTION.

Adjectives and Participles are formed and declined like Nouns, differing only in their use. They distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, and agree with their nouns in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. They are (1) of the First and Second Declensions, or (2) of the Third Declension.

1. First and Second Declensions.

81. Adjectives of the first and second declensions (*a-* and *o-*stems) are declined in the Masculine like **servus**, in the Feminine like **stella**, and in the Neuter like **bellum** ; as, —

bonus, good.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
STEM bono-		bona-	bono-			
NOM. bonus	bonā	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona	
GEN. bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum	
DAT. bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	
ACC. bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona	
VOC. bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona	
ABL. bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	

NOTE. — Stems in **quo-** have nominative **-cus**, **-qua**, **-cum**, accusative **-cum**, **-quam**, **-cum**, to avoid **-quū**, (see § 7). Thus, —

NOM. relicus (-quos)	reliqua	relicum (-quom)
GEN. reliquī	reliquae	reliquī, etc.

a. The masculine genitive singular of Adjectives in **-ius** ends in **-iī**, and the vocative in **-ie**; not in **-ī**, as in Nouns (cf. § 40. *b, c*): as, **Lacedaemonius, -iī, -ie**.

82. Stems ending in **ro-** preceded by **ě** or a consonant (also **satur**) form the masculine nominative-like noun-stems in **ro-** of the second declension (cf. **puer, ager**, § 38). They are thus declined: —

Sing.	miser, wretched.			niger, black.		
	STEM miserō-, a-, o-			nigrō-, a-, o-		
N. miser	misera	miserum	niger	nigra	nigrum	
G. miserī	miserae	miserī	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī	
D. miserō	miserae	miserō	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō	
Ac. miserum	miseram	miserum	nigrum	nigram	nigrum	
V. miser	misera	miserum	niger	nigra	nigrum	
Ab. miserō	miserā	miserō	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō	
Plur.						
N. miserī	miserae	misera	nigrī	nigrae	nigra	
G. miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum	
D. miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs	
Ac. miserōs	miserās	misera	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra	
V. miserī	miserae	misera	nigrī	nigrae	nigra	
Ab. miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs	

NOTE. — Which type is followed is shown by the dictionary.

a. Stems in **ěro-** (as **prōcērus**), with **mōrigērus, propērus**, have the regular nominative masculine in **-us**.

83. The following *o*-stems with their compounds have the genitive singular in *-īus* (one only having *-ūs*) and the dative in *-ī* in all genders : —

alius (N. aliud), <i>other.</i>	tōtus , <i>whole.</i>	alter , -terius , <i>the other.</i>
nūllus , <i>no, none.</i>	ūllus , <i>any.</i>	neuter , -trius , <i>neither.</i>
sōlus , <i>alone.</i>	ūnus , <i>one.</i>	uter , -trius , <i>which (of two).</i>

Of these the singular is thus declined : —

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	utrius	utrius	utrius
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utri	utri	utri
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
GEN.	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACC.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

a. The plural of these words is regular, like that of **bonus**.

b. The *i* of the genitive-ending *-īus*, may be short in verse.

Instead of **alius**, **alterius** is commonly used, or in the possessive sense the adjective **aliēnus**, *belonging to another, another's*.

In compounds sometimes both parts are declined, sometimes only the latter. Thus, **alterī utri** or **alterutri**, *to one of the two*.

2. Third Declension.

Adjectives of the third declension are of *one, two, or three terminations*.

84. Adjectives of the third declension having stems in *i* — distinguished by being *parisyllabic* (§ 53. *a*) — have but one form for both masculine and feminine, with one for the neuter, and hence are called *adjectives of two terminations*. In the neuter the nominative ends in *-e*.

They are declined as follows :—

lēvis (stem **levi-**), *light*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	lēvis	leve	levēs	levia
GEN.	lēvis	lēvis	levium	levium
DAT.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus
ACC.	levem	leve	levīs (ēs)	levia
ABL.	levī	levī	levibus	levibus

a. The following stems in **ri-** have a masc. nom. in **-er**; **ācer**, **alacer**, **campester**, **celeber**, **equester**, **palūster**, **pedester**, **puter**, **salūber**, **silvester**, **terrester**, **volucer**, and are called adjectives of *three terminations*. So, also, **celer**, **celeris**, **celere**; and names of months in **-ber** (cf. § 51. b): as, **Octōber**.

These are declined as follows :—

ācer, *keen*.

STEM **ācri-**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N., V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (ēs)	ācrīs (ēs)	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

NOTE.—This formation is comparatively late, and hence, in the poets, either the masculine or the feminine form was sometimes used for both genders: as, **coetus alacris** (*Enn.*). In others, as **faenebris**, **fūnebris**, **illūstris**, **lūgubris**, **mediocris**, **muliebris**, there is no separate masculine form. Thus,—

illūstris, *brilliant*.

STEM **illūstri-**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	illūstris	illūstre	illūstrēs	illūstria
GEN.	illūstris	illūstris	illūstrium	illūstrium
DAT.	illūstrī	illūstrī	illūtribus	illūtribus
ACC.	illūstrem	illūstre	illūstrīs (ēs)	illūstria
ABL.	illūstrī	illūstrī	illūtribus	illūtribus

b. CASE-FORMS. — Adjectives of two and three terminations, being true *i*-stems, retain in the ablative singular *-ī*, in the neuter plural *-ia*, in the genitive plural *-ium*, and in the accusative plural regularly *-is*. But the forms of some are doubtful.

NOTE. — An ablative in *-e* is sometimes found in poetry.

c. **celer**, *swift*, as a noun, denoting a military rank, has **celerum** in the genitive plural. The name **Celer** has the ablative in *-e*.

85. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are Consonant-stems ; but all except Comparatives have the form of *i*-stems in the ablative singular *-ī*, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter *-ia*, and the genitive plural *-ium*. In the other cases they follow the rule of Consonant-stems.

NOTE. — The ablative singular of these words often has *-e*.

These adjectives (except comparatives) have the same nominative singular for all genders, and hence are called *adjectives of one termination*. All except stems in *l-* or *r-* form the nominative singular from the stem by adding *-s*.

a. Adjectives of one termination are declined as follows :—

atrōx, fierce.			egēns, needy.		
STEM atrōc-			STEM egent-		
Sing.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.	
N., V.	atrōx	atrōx	egēns	egēns	
GEN.	atrōcis	atrōcis	egentis	egentis	
DAT.	atrōcī	atrōcī	egenti	egenti	
ACC.	atrōcem	atrōx	egentem	egēns	
ABL.	atrōcī (e)	atrōcī (e)	egenti (e)	egenti (e)	
Plur.					
N., V.	atrōcēs	atrōcia	egentēs	egentia	
GEN.	atrōcium	atrōcium	egentium	egentium	
DAT.	atrōcibus	atrōcibus	egentibus	egentibus	
ACC.	atrōcis (ēs)	atrōcia	egentis (ēs)	egentia	
ABL.	atrōcibus	atrōcibus	egentibus	egentibus	

δ. Other examples are the following : —

	<i>concoris, harmonious.</i>		<i>iēns, going.</i>		<i>pār, equal.</i>	
	STEM <i>concord-</i>		eunt-		par-	
Sing.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	concoris	concoris	iēns	iēns	pār	pār
GEN.	concordis	concordis	euntis	euntis	pāris	pāris
DAT.	concordī	concordī	euntī	euntī	parī	parī
ACC.	concordem	concoris	euntem	iēns	parem	pār
ABL.	concordī	concordī	eunte (i)	eunte (i)	parī	parī
Plur.						
N., V.	concordēs	concordia	euntēs	euntia	pares	paria
GEN.	concordium	concordium	euntium	euntium	parium	parium
D., ABL.	concordibus	concordibus	euntibus	euntibus	paribus	paribus
ACC.	concordis(ēs)	concordia	euntis(ēs)	euntia	paris(ēs)	paria

	<i>praeceps, headlong.</i>		<i>dīves, rich.</i>		<i>ūber, fertile.</i>	
	STEM <i>praecipit-</i>		dīvit-		ūber-	
Sing.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	praeceps	praeceps	dīves	dīves	ūber	ūber
GEN.	praecipitis	praecipitis	dīvitis	dīvitis	ūberis	ūberis
DAT.	praecipitī	praecipitī	dīvitī	dīvitī	ūberī	ūberī
ACC.	praecipitem	praeceps	dīvitem	dīves	ūberem	ūber
ABL.	praecipitī	praecipitī	dīvite	dīvite	ūbere	ūbere
Plur.						
N., V.	praecipitēs	praecipitia	dīvitēs	[dītia]	ūberēs	ūbera
GEN.	[praecipitium] ¹		dīvitum	dīvitum	ūberum	ūberum
D., ABL.	praecipitibus	praecipitibus	dīvitibus	dīvitibus	ūberibus	ūberibus
ACC.	praecipitis(ēs)	praecipitia	dīvitis(ēs)	[dīvitia]	ūberēs	ūbera

vetus, old.

STEM *veter-* (for *vetes* or *vetos-*)

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
GEN.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
DAT.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
ACC.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
ABL.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

¹ Given by grammarians, but not found.

NOTE. — Of these *vetus* is originally an *s*-stem. In most *s*-stems the *r* has intruded itself into the nominative also, as *bi-corpor* (for *bi-corpos*), *dē-gener* (for *dē-genēs*).

c. A few of these adjectives used as nouns, have a feminine form in *-a*: as, *clienta*, *hospita*, so the appellative *Iūnō Sōspita*.

3. Comparatives.

86. Comparatives are declined as follows:—

<i>melior, better.</i>			<i>plūs, more.</i>	
STEM <i>melior-</i> for <i>melios-</i>			<i>plūr-</i> for <i>plūs-</i>	
Sing.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N., V.	<i>melior</i>	<i>melius</i>	—	<i>plūs</i>
GEN.	<i>meliōris</i>	<i>meliōris</i>	—	<i>plūris</i>
DAT.	<i>meliōrī</i>	<i>meliōrī</i>	—	—
ACC.	<i>meliōrem</i>	<i>melius</i>	—	<i>plūs</i>
ABL.	<i>meliōre (ī)</i>	<i>meliōre (ī)</i>	—	<i>plūre</i>
Plur.				
N., V.	<i>meliōrēs</i>	<i>meliōra</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
GEN.	<i>meliōrum</i>	<i>meliōrum</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
DAT.	<i>meliōribus</i>	<i>meliōribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>
ACC.	<i>meliōrīs (ēs)</i>	<i>meliōra</i>	<i>plūrīs (ēs)</i>	<i>plūra</i>
ABL.	<i>meliōribus</i>	<i>meliōribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>

a. The stem of comparatives properly ended in *os-*; but this became *or-* except in the neuter singular (nom., acc., voc.), where *s* is retained, and *ō* is changed to *ū* (cf. *honōr*, *corpus*). Thus comparatives appear to have two terminations.

b. The neuter singular *plūs* is used only as a noun. The genitive (rarely ablative) is used as an expression of value (cf. § 252. *a*). The dative is not found in classic use. The compound *complūrēs*, *several*, has sometimes neuter plural *complūria*.

All other comparatives are declined like *melior*.

4. Case-Forms.

87. In adjectives of Consonant stems the following Case-forms are to be remarked:—

a. The ablative singular commonly ends in *-ī*; but adjectives used as nouns (as *superstes*, *survivor*) have *-e*. Participles in *-ns*

used *as such*, or as nouns, regularly have *-e*; but when used as adjectives, *-ī*.

The following have uniformly *-ī*: *āmēns*, *anceps*, *concoris* (and other compounds of *cor*), *cōnsors* (but as a substantive, *-e*), *dēgener*, *hebes*, *ingēns*, *inops*, *memor* (and its compounds), *pār* (in prose), *perpes*, *praeceps*, *praepes*, *teres*.

b. The following have regularly *-e*: *caeles*, *compos* [*†dēses*], *dīves*, *hospes*, *pauper*, *particeps*, *prīnceps*, *superstes*, *sōspes*; also patrials (see § 54. 3) and stems in *āt-*, *īt-*, *nt-*, *rt-*, when used as nouns; and sometimes when used as adjectives.

c. The genitive plural ends commonly in *-ium*. The accusative plural regularly ends in *-īs*, even in comparatives, which are less inclined to the *i-* declension.

d. The genitive plural ends in *-um*:—

1. Always in *dīves*, *compos*, *inops*, *particeps*, *prīnceps*, *praepes*, *supplex*, and compounds of nouns which have *-um*: as, *quadru-pēs*, *bi-color*.

2. Sometimes, in poetry, in participles in *-ns*: as, *silentum concilium*, *a council of the silent shades* (Virg.).

e. In *vetus* (gen. *-ēris*), *pūbes* (gen. *-ēris*), *ūber* (gen. *-ēris*), which did not become *i*-stems, the endings *-e* (abl. sing.), *-a* (neut. nom. acc. plur.), *-um* (gen. plur.) are regular. (*Ūber* has also *-ī* in abl.)

f. 1. Several adjectives vary in declension: as, *gracilis* (*-us*), *hilaris* (*-us*), *inermis* (*-us*), *bicolor* (*-ōrus*).

2. A few are indeclinable: as, *damnās*, *frūgī*, *nēquam*.

3. Several are defective: as, *expēs* (only nom.), *exlēx*, *exlēgem* (only nom. and acc. sing.), *pernox*, *pernocte* (only nom. and abl. sing.); *prīmōris*, *sēminecis*, which lack the nom. sing.

5. Special Uses.

88. The following special uses are to be observed:—

a. Many adjectives have the meaning and construction of nouns: as, *amicus*, *a friend*; *aequālis*, *a contemporary*; *māiōrēs*, *ancestors*.

b. Many adjectives, from their signification, can be used only in the masculine and feminine. Such are *adulēscēns*, *youthful*; [*†dēses*], *-idis*, *slothful*; *inops*, *-opis*, *poor*; *sōspes*, *-ītis*, *safe*. So, *senex*, *old man*, and *iuvenis*, *young man*, are masculine only.

c. Many nouns may be used as adjectives: as, **pedes**, *a footman* or *on foot*: so especially nouns in **-tor** (M.) and **-trix** (F., also as N.), denoting the *agent*: as, **victor exercitus**, *the conquering army*; **victricia arma**, *victorious arms*.

d. Certain forms of many adjectives are regularly used as adverbs. These are the accusative and ablative of the neuter singular: as, **multum**, **multō**, *much*; and the neuter singular of comparatives: as, **melius**, *better*; **levius**, *more lightly*.

COMPARISON.

Latin, as English, has three degrees of comparison: the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

1. Regular Comparison.

89. The Comparative is formed by adding **-ior** (neuter **-ius**), the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a**, **-um**) to the stem of the Positive, which loses its final vowel: as, —

cārus, *dear* (st. **cāro-**); **cārior**, *dearer*; **cāriissimus**, *dearest*.
aecus, *equal* (st. **aequo**); **aequior**, *more equal*; **aequissimus**, *most equal*.
levis, *light* (st. **levi-**); **levior**, *lighter*; **levissimus**, *lightest*.
fēlix, *happy* (st. **fēlic-**); **fēlicior**, *happier*; **fēlicissimus**, *happiest*.
hebes, *dull* (st. **hebet-**); **hebetior**, *duller*; **hebetissimus**, *dullest*.

a. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative. The comparative is regular: as, —

ācer, *keen*; **ācrior**, **ācerrimus**.
miser, *wretched*; **miserior**, **miserrimus**.

So **vetus** (gen. **veteris**) **veterrimus**; and **mātūrus**, besides its regular superlative (**mātūrissimus**) has a rare form **mātūrrimus**.

For the comparative of **vetus**, **vetustior** (from **vetustus**), is used.

b. The following in **-lis** add **-limus** to the stem clipped of its vowel: **facilis** (st. **facili-**), **difficilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, **gracilis**, **humilis**. The comparative is regular: as, **facilis**, **facilior**, **facillimus**.

c. Compounds in **-dicus** (*saying*), **-ficus** (*doing*), **-volus** (*willing*) take in comparison the forms of corresponding participles in **-ns**: as, —

maledicus, *slandering*; **maledicentior**, **maledicentissimus**.
malevolus, *spiteful*; **malevolentior**, **malevolentissimus**.

d. Adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel rarely have forms of comparison, but take the adverbs **magis**, *more*; **māximē**, *most*: as, —

idōneus, *fit*; **magis idōneus**, **māximē idōneus**.

So, also, most derivatives in **-īcus**, **-īdus**, **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-īlis**, **-ūlus**, **-undus**, **-timus**, **-īnus**, **-īvus**, **-ōrus**, with many compounds (as **dēgener**, **inops**) take **magis** and **māximē**.

e. Participles used as adjectives are regularly compared: as, —

patiēns, *patient*; **patientior**, **patientissimus**.

apertus, *open*; **apertior**, **apertissimus**.

f. A form of diminutive is made upon the stem of some comparatives: as, **grandius-culus**, *a little larger* (see § 164. a).

2. Irregular and Defective Comparison.

90. Several adjectives have in their comparison irregular forms: as, —

bonus, **melior**, **optimus**, *good, better, best*.

malus, **pēior**, **pessimus**, *bad, worse, worst*.

māgnus, **māior**, **māximus**, *great, greater, greatest*.

parvus, **minor**, **minimus**, *small, less, least*.

multus, **plūs** (N.), **plūrimus**, *much, more, most*.

multī, **plūrēs**, **plūrimī**, *many, more, most*.

nēquam (indecl.), **nēquior**, **nēquissimus**, *worthless*.

frūgī (indecl.), **frūgālior**, **frūgālissimus**, *useful, worthy*.

dexter, **dexterior**, **dextimus**, *on the right, handy*.

NOTE. — These irregularities arise from the use of different stems.

91. Some Comparatives and Superlatives appear without a Positive: —

a. The following are formed from stems not used as adjectives: —

cis, **citrā** (adv. *on this side*): **citerior**, **citimur**, *hither, hithermost*.

in, **intrā** (prep. *in, within*): **interior**, **intimus**, *inner, inmost*.

prae, **prō** (prep. *before*): **prior**, **primus**, *former, first*.

prope (adv. *near*): **propior**, **proximus**, *nearer, next*.

ultrā (adv. *beyond*): **ulterior**, **ultimus**, *farther, farthest*.

b. Of the following the positives are rare, except as nouns :—

exterus, exterior, **extrēmus** (**extimus**), *outer, outmost*.
[inferus], inferior, **īfimus** (**īmus**), *lower, lowest* (§ 82. d).
[posterus], posterior, **postrēmus** (**postumus**), *latter, last*.
[superus], superior, **suprēmus** or **summus**, *higher, highest*.

But the plurals **exterī**, *foreigners*; **inferī**, *the gods below*; **posterī**, *posterity*; **superī**, *the heavenly gods*, are common.

c. From **iuvenis**, *youth*, **senex**, *old man* are formed **iūnior**, *younger*, **senior**, *older*. For these **minor nātū** and **māior nātū** are sometimes used (**nātū** being often omitted). The superlative is regularly expressed by **minimus** and **māximus**, with or without **nātū**.

d. In the following, one or other of the forms of comparison is wanting :—

1. The positive is wanting in **dēterior**, **dēterrīmus**; **ōcior**, **ōcisīmus**; **potior**, **potissīmus**.

2. The comparative is wanting in **bellus**, **caesius**, **falsus**, **fidus** (with its compounds), **inclutus**, **invictus**, **invītus**, **novus**, **pīus**, **sacer**, **vafer**, **vetus** (§ 89. a).

3. The superlative is wanting in **agrestis**, **alacer**, **arcānus**, **caecus**, **diūturnus**, **exilis**, **ingēns**, **iēiūnus**, **longīnus**, **oblicus**, **opīmus**, **prōclivis**, **propīnus**, **satur**, **sēgnis**, **sērus**, **supīnus**, **surdus**, **taciturnus**, **tempestivus**, **teres**, **vīcīnus**, and in some adjectives in **-ilis**.

NOTE. — Many adjectives — as **aureus**, *golden* — are from their meaning incapable of comparison; but each language has its own usage.

3. Comparison of Adverbs.

92. The comparative of an Adverb is the neuter accusative of the comparative of the corresponding Adjective; the superlative is the Adverb in **-ē** formed regularly from the superlative of the Adjective : as, —

cārē, *dearly* (from **cārus**, *dear*); **cārius**, **cārissimē**.
misere, *wretchedly* (from **miser**, *wretched*); **miserius**, **miserrimē**.
leviter (from **levis**, *light*); **levius**, **levissimē**.
audācter (**audāciter**) (from **audāx**, *bold*); **audācius**, **audācissimē**.
benē, *well* (from **bonus**, *good*); **melius**, **optimē**.
malē, *ill* (from **malus**, *bad*); **pēius**, **pessimē**.
antiquē, *anciently*, (from **antīcus**), **antīquius**, **antīquissimē**.

The following are irregular or defective : —

diū, long (in time) ; diūtius, diūtissimē.

potius, rather ; potissimum, first of all, in preference to all.

saepe, often ; saepius, oftener, again ; saepissimē.

satis, enough ; satius, preferable.

secus, otherwise ; sēcius, worse.

multum (multō), magis, māximē, much, more, most.

parum, not enough, minus, less, minimē, least.

4. Signification.

93. Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows : —

a. The Comparative denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality : as, brevior, rather short ; audacior, too bold.

b. The Superlative (of eminence) may denote a very high degree of a quality with no distinct comparison, often strengthened by quam, vel, or ūnus : as, māximus numerus, a very great number ; quam plūrimī, as many as possible ; quam māximē potest (māximē quam potest), as much as can be ; virum ūnum doctissimum, the one most learned man.

c. With quisque, each, the superlative has a peculiar signification. Thus the phrase dītissimus quisque means, all the richest (each richest man) ; primus quisque, all the first (each first man in his order).¹ Two superlatives with quisque imply a proportion : as, —

sapientissimus quisque aequissimō animō moritur (Cat. Maj. 83), the wisest men die with the greatest equanimity.

d. A high degree of a quality is also denoted by such adverbs as admodum, valdē, very, or by per or prae in composition : as, valdē malus, very bad ; permāgnus, very great ; praealtus, very high.

e. A low degree of a quality is indicated by sub in composition (as, subrūsticus, rather clownish) : or by minus, not very ; minimē, not at all ; parum, not enough ; nōn satis, not much.

¹ As in taking things one by one off a pile, each thing is uppermost when you take it.

NUMERALS.

1. Cardinal and Ordinal.

94. Cardinal numbers are the regular numbers used in counting. Ordinal numbers are adjectives derived from these to express order or place.

NOTE. — Cardinal numbers answer the question *quot?* *how many?* Ordinal numbers, the question *quotus?* *which in order?* *one of how many?*

These two series are as follows : —

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN NUMERALS.
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i> .	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first</i> .	I.
2. duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i> .	secundus (alter), <i>second</i> .	II.
3. trēs, tria, <i>three</i> .	tertius, <i>third</i> .	III.
4. quattuor (quātuor)	quārtus	IV.
5. quīnque	quīntus	V.
6. sex	sextus	VI.
7. septem	septimus	VII.
8. octō	octāvus	VIII.
9. novem	nōnus	IX.
10. decem	decimus	X.
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI.
12. duodecim	duodecim	XII.
13. tredecim (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII.
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIV.
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV.
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI.
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII.
18. <u>duodēvīgintī</u> (octōdecim)	duodēvīcēsimus	XVIII.
19. ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvīcēsimus	XIX.
20. vīgintī	vīcēsimus (vīgēsimus)	XX.
21. vīgintī ūnus	vīcēsimus prīmus	XXI.
(or ūnus et vīgintī)	(ūnus et vīcēsimus, etc.)	
30. trīgintā	trīcēsimus	XXX.
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	XL.
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	L.
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	LX.
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	LXX.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN NUMERALS.
80. octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX.
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	XC.
100. centum	centēnsimus	C.
101. centum (et) ūnus, <i>etc.</i>	centēnsimus prīmus, <i>etc.</i>	CI.
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC.
300. trecentī	trecentēnsimus	CCC.
400. quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC.
500. quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus	LD, <i>or</i> D.
600. sexcentī (sēscentī)	sexcentēnsimus	DC.
700. septingentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC.
800. octingentī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC.
900. nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC.
1000. mille	millēnsimus	CI, <i>or</i> M.
5000. quīnque mīlia (millia)	quīnquiēns millēnsimus	LD.
10,000. decem mīlia (millia)	deciēns millēnsimus	CCLD.
100,000. centum mīlia (millia)	centiēns millēnsimus	CCCLD.

NOTE.—The forms in **-ēnsimus** are often written without the **n**: as, **vicēsimus**, *etc.*

a. For the inflection of **ūnus**, see § 83. It often has the meaning of *same* or *only*. The plural is used in this sense; but also, as a simple numeral, with a plural noun of a singular meaning: as, **ūna castra**, *one camp* (cf. § 95. *b*). The plural occurs also in the phrase **ūnī et alterī**, *one party and the other* (the ones and the others).

b. **Duo**, *two*, and **ambō**, *both*, are thus declined:—

NOM.	duo	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

c. **Trēs**, **tria**, *three*, is an **i**-stem, and is regularly declined like the plural of **levis** (see § 84). The other cardinal numbers, up to **centum** (100), are indeclinable.

The forms **octōdecim**, **novendecim** are rare, **duodēvigintī**, **undēvigintī** being used instead. Similar forms for higher numbers are occasionally found: as, **duōdēquadrāgintā**, *thirty-eight*; **undēcentum**, *ninety-nine*.

d. The hundreds, up to 1000, are *o*-stems, and are regularly declined like the plural of **bonus**.

e. **Mille**, *a thousand*, is in the singular an indeclinable adjective. In the plural (**mīlia** or **millia**, *thousands*), it is a neuter noun, followed by a genitive plural. Thus, **cum mille hominibus**, *with a thousand men*; but **cum duōbus milibus hominum**, *with two thousand men*.

NOTE. — The singular **mille** is sometimes found as a noun in the nominative and accusative: as **mille hominum misit**; rarely in the other cases.

f. The ordinals are *o*-stems, and are declined like **bonus**.

2. Distributives.

95. Distributive Numerals are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

NOTE. — These answer the question **quotēnī**? *how many of each*, or *at a time?* as, —

1. sīngulī, <i>one by one</i> .	18. octōnī dēnī <i>or</i>	100. centēnī
2. bīnī, <i>two-and-two</i> .	duodēvicēnī	200. ducēnī
3. ternī, trīnī	19. novēnī dēnī <i>or</i>	300. trecēnī
4. quaternī	ūndēvicēnī	400. quadringēnī
5. quīnī	20. vīcēnī	500. quīngēnī
6. sēnī	21. vīcēnī sīngulī, <i>etc.</i>	600. sēscēnī
7. septēnī	30. tricēnī	700. septingēnī
8. octōnī	40. quadrāgēnī	800. octingēnī
9. novēnī	50. quīnquāgēnī	900. nōngēnī
10. dēnī	60. sexāgēnī	1000. millēnī
11. ūndēnī	70. septuāgēnī	2000. bīna mīlia
12. duodēnī	80. octōgēnī	10,000. dēna mīlia
13. ternī dēnī, <i>etc.</i>	90. nōnāgēnī	100,000. centēna mīlia

Distributives are used as follows : —

a. In the sense of *so many apiece* or *on each side*: as, **sīngula sīngulīs**, *one apiece* (one each to each one); **agrī septēna iūgera plēbī dīvīsa sunt**, *i.e. seven jugera to each citizen*, etc.

b. Instead of cardinals, to express simple number, with a noun plural in form but singular in meaning: as, **bīna castra**, *two camps* (**duō castra** would mean *two forts*). But the plural **ūnī** is used (instead of **sīngulī**) to signify *one* (see § 94. *a*), and **trīnī** (not **ternī**) for *three*.

c. In multiplication : as, **bis bīna**, *twice two* ; **ter septēnis diēbus**, *in thrice seven days*.

d. By the poets freely instead of cardinals, particularly where *pairs* or *sets* are meant : as, **bīna hastīlia** *two shafts* (two in a set).

3. Numeral Adverbs.

96. The Numeral Adverbs answer the question **quotiēns** (**quotiēs**), *how many times, how often*.

1. semel, <i>once</i> .	12. duodeciēns	40. quadrāgiēns
2. bis, <i>twice</i> .	13. terdecīēns	50. quīnquāgiēns
3. ter, <i>thrice</i> .	14. quaterdecīēns	60. sexāgiēns
4. quater	15. quīndeciēns	70. septuāgiēns
5. quīnquiēns (-ēs)	16. sēdecīēns	80. octōgiēns
6. sexiēns (-ēs)	17. septiēsdecīēns	90. nōnāgiēns
7. septiēns (-ēs)	18. duodēvīciēns	100. centiēns
8. octiēns	19. ūndēvīciēns	200. ducentiēns
9. noviēns	20. vīciēns	300. trecentiēns
10. deciēns	21. semel et vīciēns, <i>etc.</i>	1000. mīliēns
11. ūndeciēns	30. trīciēns	10,000. deciēns mīliēns

NOTE. — They are used, in combination with **mille**, to express the higher numbers : as, **ter et trīciēns** (**centēna milia**) **sēstertiūm**, 3,300,000 *sesterces*. Forms in **-ns** are often written without the **n** : as, **quīnquiēs**.

4. Other Numerals.

97. The adjectives **simplex**, *single*, **duplex**, *double*, **two-fold**, **triplex**, **quadru-**, **quīncu-**, **septem-**, **decem-**, **centu-**, **sēsqui-** ($1\frac{1}{2}$), **multi-plex**, *manifold*, are called Multiplicatives.

a. PROPORTIONALS are : **duplus**, **triplus**, *etc.*, *twice as great, etc.*

b. TEMPORALS : **bīmus**, **trīmus**, *of two or three years' age* ; **biennīs**, **triennīs**, *lasting two or three years* ; **bīmēstris**, *of two months* ; **bīdūm**, **biennium**, *a period of two days or years*.

c. PARTITIVES : **binārius**, **ternārius**, *of two or three parts*.

d. FRACTIONS : **dīmidia pars**, *a half* ; **tertia pars**, *a third*.

NOTE. — But fractions are regularly expressed by special words denoting the parts of the **ās** (*pound* or *unit*) : as, **triēns**, *a third* ; **bēs**, *two-thirds*.

e. Other derivatives are : **ūniō**, *unity* ; **biniō**, *the two* (of dice) ; **primānus**, *of the first legion* ; **primārius**, *of the first rank* ; **dēnārius**, *a sum of 10 asses* ; **bīnus** (*distributive*), *double, etc.*

5. PRONOUNS.

98. Pronouns have special forms of declension.

1. Personal Pronouns.

The Personal pronouns of the *first person* are **ego**, *I*, **nōs**, *we*; of the *second person*, **tū**, *thou*, **vōs**, *ye or you*.

FIRST PERSON.

NOM.	ego , <i>I</i> .	nōs , <i>we</i> .
GEN.	mei , <i>of me</i> .	nostrūm (-trī), <i>of us</i> .
DAT.	mihi (mī), <i>to me</i> .	nōbis , <i>to us</i> .
ACC.	mē , <i>me</i> .	nōs , <i>us</i> .
VOC.	—	—
ABL.	mē , <i>by me</i> .	nōbis , <i>by us</i> .

SECOND PERSON.

NOM.	tū , <i>thou or you</i> .	vōs , <i>ye or you</i> .
GEN.	tui .	vostrūm , vostrī ; vestrūm (-trī)
DAT.	tibi	vōbis
ACC.	tē	vōs
VOC.	tū	vōs
ABL.	tē	vōbis

a. The personal pronouns of the *third person* — *he, she, it, they* — are wanting in Latin, a demonstrative being used for them when required.

b. The plural **nōs** is often used for the singular **ego**; the plural **vōs** never for the singular **tū**.

2. Reflexive Pronouns.

Reflexive pronouns are used in the Oblique Cases to refer to the Subject of the sentence or clause (see § 196).

a. In the first and second persons the oblique cases of the Personal pronouns are used as Reflexives: as, **tē laudās**, *you praise yourself*; **nōbis persuādēmus**, *we persuade ourselves*.

b. The reflexive pronoun of the Third Person has a special form, the same for both singular and plural. It is thus declined : —

GEN. **sui**, of himself, herself, themselves.

DAT. **sibi**, to himself, herself, themselves.

ACC. **sē** (**sēsē**), himself, herself, themselves.

ABL. **sē** (**sēsē**), by (etc.) himself, herself, themselves.

3. Possessive Pronouns.

The Possessive pronouns are, for the first person : **meus**, *my*, **noster**, *our*; for the second person : **tuus**, *thy*, *your*, **voster**, *vester*, *your*; for the third person : **suus**, *his*, *her*, *their*. These are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions (see §§ 81, 82). But **meus** has regularly **mī** (rarely **meus**) in the vocative singular masculine.

NOTE. — **Suus** is always reflexive, referring to the subject. For a possessive pronoun of the third person not referring to the subject, the genitive of a demonstrative must be used. Thus, **patrem suum occidit**, *he killed his (own) father*; but **patrem eius occidit**, *he killed his (somebody else's) father*.

99. In the meaning and use of the Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive pronouns it is to be observed that —

a. To express Possession and similar ideas the possessive pronouns must be used, not the genitive of the personal or reflexive pronouns. Thus, *my father is* **pater meus**, never **pater mei**.

b. The forms **nostrū**, **vostrū**, etc., are used *partitively*: as, —

ūnusquisque nostrū, *each one of us*;

but also **vostrū omnium**, *of all of you*.

c. The genitives **meī**, **tui**, **sui**, **nostrī**, **vestrī** are chiefly used *objectively* (see § 213. N.): as, —

memor sis nostrī, *be mindful of us (me)*.

mē tui pudet, *I am ashamed of you*.

d. The reciprocals *one another* and *each other* are expressed by **inter sē** or **alter . . . alterum**: as, —

alter alterius ōva frangit, *they break each other's eggs* (one . . . of the other).

inter sē amant, *they love one another*.

e. The preposition cum, *with*, is joined with the ablative of the personal and reflexive pronouns : as, tēcum loquitur, *he talks with you*.

f. To the personal and reflexive (and sometimes to the possessive) pronouns certain enclitics are joined for emphasis : ~~-met~~ to all except tū (nom.) ; ~~-te~~ to tū (tūte, also tūtīmet) ; ~~-pte~~ to the ablative singular of the adjectives, and in early Latin to the others, as, —

vōsmetipsōs prōditis, *you betray your own very selves*.

suōpte pondere, *by its own weight*.

4. Demonstrative Pronouns.

100. The Demonstrative pronouns are hic, *this* ; is, ille, iste, *that* ; with the Intensive ipse, *self*, and īdem, *same*.

a. Ille is a later form of ollus (olle), which is sometimes used in poetry ; a genitive singular in -ī, -ae, -ī occurs in ille and iste.

b. Hic is compounded of the stem ho- with the demonstrative -ce. In most of the forms final e is dropped, in some the whole termination. But in these latter it is sometimes retained for emphasis ; as, hūius-ce, hīs-ce. īdem is the demonstrative is with the affix -dem.

101. The demonstratives are used either *with nouns* as Adjectives, or *alone* as Pronouns. From their signification they cannot (except ipse) have a vocative. They are thus declined : —

	<u>hic</u> , <i>this</i> .			<u>is</u> , <i>that</i> .		
Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<u>hic</u>	<u>haec</u>	<u>hōc</u>	<u>is</u>	<u>ea</u>	<u>īd</u>
GEN.	<u>hūius</u>	<u>hūius</u>	<u>hūius</u>	<u>ēius</u>	<u>ēius</u>	<u>ēius</u>
DAT.	<u>huic</u>	<u>huic</u>	<u>huic</u>	<u>eī</u>	<u>eī</u>	<u>eī</u>
ACC.	<u>hunc</u>	<u>hanc</u>	<u>hōc</u>	<u>eum</u>	<u>eam</u>	<u>īd</u>
ABL.	<u>hōc</u>	<u>hāc</u>	<u>hōc</u>	<u>eō</u>	<u>eā</u>	<u>eō</u>
Plur.						
NOM.	<u>hī</u>	<u>hae</u>	<u>haec</u>	<u>ī</u> (<u>eī</u>)	<u>eae</u>	<u>ea</u>
GEN.	<u>hōrum</u>	<u>hārum</u>	<u>hōrum</u>	<u>eōrum</u>	<u>eārum</u>	<u>eōrum</u>
DAT.	<u>hīs</u>	<u>hīs</u>	<u>hīs</u>	<u>eīs</u> (<u>īs</u>)	<u>eīs</u> (<u>īs</u>)	<u>eīs</u> (<u>īs</u>)
ACC.	<u>hōs</u>	<u>hās</u>	<u>haec</u>	<u>eōs</u>	<u>eās</u>	<u>ea</u>
ABL.	<u>hīs</u>	<u>hīs</u>	<u>hīs</u>	<u>eīs</u> (<u>īs</u>)	<u>eīs</u> (<u>īs</u>)	<u>eīs</u> (<u>īs</u>)

Sing.	ille, <i>that</i> .			ipse, <i>self</i> .		
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	illius	illius	illius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
DAT.	illi	illi	illi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
VOC.	—	—	—	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
Plur.						
NOM.	illi	illae	illa	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	illōs	illās	illa	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
VOC.	—	—	—	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

idem, the same.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.	īdem	eādem	īdem	dem (eī-)	eaedem	eādem
G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ieōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eisdem(is-)	eīsdem(is-)	eīsdem(is-)
AC.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem
AB.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem(is-)	eīsdem(is-)	eīsdem(is-)

iste, ista, istud, that (yonder), is declined like *ille*.

Ille and *iste* are combined with the demonstrative *-ce*. Thus, —

Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	illīc	illaec	illōc (illūc)	istic	istaec	istōc (istūc)
ACC.	illunc	illanc	illōc (illūc)	istunc	istanc	istōc (istūc)
ABL.	illōc	illāc	illōc	istōc	istāc	istōc
Plur.						
N., ACC.	—	—	illaec	—	—	istaec

NOTE. — This appended *-ce* is also found with pronouns in numerous combinations: as, *hūiusce, hunce, hōrunce, hārunce, hōsce, hīsce* (cf. § 100. *b*), *illiusce, isce*; also with the interrogative *-ne*, in *hōcine, hōscine, istūcine, illicine*, etc. The intensive *-pse* is found in the forms *eapse* (nom.), *eumpse, eampse, eōpse, eāpse* (abl.).

a. The combinations *hūiusmodi* (*hūiuscemodi*), *ēiusmodi*, etc., are used as indeclinable adjectives, equivalent to *tālis, such*: as, *rēs ēiusmodi, such a thing* (a thing of that sort; cf. § 215).

102. In the use of these demonstratives it is to be observed that —

a. Hic is used of what is *near the speaker* (in time, place, thought, or on the written page). It is sometimes used of the speaker himself; sometimes for “the latter” of two persons or things mentioned in speech or writing; more rarely for “the former,” when that, though more remote *on the written page*, is nearer the speaker in *time, place, or thought*.

b. Ille is used of what is *remote* (in time, etc.). It is sometimes used to mean “the former” (see under *hic*, *a*); also (usually following its noun) of what is *famous* or *well-known*.

c. Iste is used of what is *between the two others* in remoteness: often in allusion to the person addressed, — hence called the *demonstrative of the second person*. It especially refers to an opponent, and frequently implies a kind of antagonism or contempt.

d. Is is a weaker demonstrative than the others and does not denote any special object, but refers to one just mentioned, or to be afterwards explained by a relative. It is used oftener than the others as a personal pronoun; and is often merely a correlative to the relative *quī*: as, *eum quem, one whom*; *eum cōsulem quī nōn dubitet* (Cic.), *a consul who will not hesitate*.

e. Ipse may be used with a personal pronoun of either person, or a noun: as *nōs ipsī (nōsmetipsī), we ourselves*; *ipsī fontēs, the very fountains*; also independently (the verb or the context implying the pronoun), as *ipsī adestis, you are yourselves present*.

NOTE. — In English, the pronouns *himself*, etc., are used both intensively (as, *he will come himself*) and reflexively (as, *he will kill himself*): in Latin the former would be *ipse*; the latter, *sē* or *sēsē*.

f. The pronouns hic, ille, and is are used to point in either direction, back to something mentioned or forward to something to be mentioned. The neuter forms are used to refer to a clause, phrase, or idea: as, *est illud quidem vel māximum animum vidēre* (Tusc. i. 22, 52), *that is in truth a very great thing, to see the soul*.

5. Relative Pronouns.

103. The relative pronoun *quī, who, which*, is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

6. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns.

104. The interrogative or indefinite **quis** (quī), *who?* *which?* *any*, is declined in the singular as follows:—

NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

The plural is the same as that of the Relative. The singular **quis** is rare as an indefinite (see § 105. *d*).

NOTE.—The Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns are originally of the same Stem, and most of the forms are the same.

CASE-FORMS. — *a*. The relative has always **quī**, **quae**, **quod**. The interrogative and indefinite have **quis**, **quae**, **quid**, *substantive*, and **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *adjective*: as, **quis vocat?** *who calls?* **quid vidēs?** *what do you see?* **quī homō vocat?** *what man calls?* **quod templum vidēs?** *what temple do you see?*

NOTE.—But **quī** is often used without any apparent adjective force; and **quis** is very common as an adjective, especially with words denoting a person: as, **quī nōminat mē?** *who calls my name?* **quis diēs fuit?** *what day was it?* **quis homō?** *what man?* but often **quī homō?** *what sort of a man?* **nesciō quī sis,** *I know not who you are.*

b. Old forms for the genitive and dative are **quōius**, **quoi**.

c. The form **quī** is used for the ablative of both numbers and all genders; but especially as an adverb (*how*, *by which way*, *in any way*), and in the combination **quicum**, *with whom*, as an interrogative or an indefinite relative.

d. A dative and ablative plur. **quīs** is old, but not infrequent.

e. The preposition **cum** is joined to all forms of the ablative, as with the personal pronouns: as, **quōcum**, **quicum**, **quibuscum**.

f. The accusative form **quom**, **cum** (stem **quo-**) is used only as a conjunctive adverb, meaning *when* or *since*.

g. The adjective **uter** is used as an interrogative and indefinite relative. For its peculiar declension, see § 83.

105. The pronouns **quis** and **quī** appear in various combinations.

a. The adverb **-cumque** (**-cunque**) with the relative makes an indefinite relative, declined like the simple word : as, **quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *whoever, whatever* ; **cūiuscunque**, etc.

NOTE. — This suffix, with the same meaning, may be used with any relative : as, **quāiscumque**, *of whatever sort* ; **quandōcumque** (also rarely **quandōque**), *whenever* ; **ubicumque**, *wherever*.

b. The interrogative form doubled makes an indefinite relative : as, **quisquis**, *whoever* (so **utut**, *however*, **ubiubi**, *wherever*). Of **quisquis** both parts are declined, but the feminine is wanting in classic use : thus —

Sing. NOM.	quisquis (quīquī)	quidquid (quicquid)
ACC.	quemquem	quidquid (quicquid)
ABL.	quōquō quāquā	quōquō

Plur. NOM.	quīquī
D., ABL.	quibusquibus

c. Indefinite compounds are : **quidam**, *a, a certain* ; **quispiam**, *any* ; **quīvīs**, **quīlibet**, *any you please* ; **quisquam**, *any at all*. Of these the former part is declined like **quis** and **quī**, but all have both **quod** (adjective) and **quid** (substantive) in the neuter.

d. The indefinite **quis**, otherwise rare, is found in the compound **aliquis**, *some one*, and the combinations **sī quis**, *if any* ; **nē quis**, *lest any, that none* ; **ecquis**, **num quis**, *whether any*, and a few others.

These are declined like **quis**, but have generally **qua** instead of **quae**, except in the nominative plural feminine. The forms **aliquae**, **ecquae**, nominative singular feminine, occur rarely.

NOTE. — The compounds **quispiam**, **aliquis**, and **quisquam** are often used instead of **quis** with **sī**, **nē**, and **num**, and are rather more emphatic, as **sī quis**, *if any one*, **sī aliquis**, *if some one*, **sī quisquam**, *if any one (ever, cf. h)*.

These compounds are thus declined:—

Sing.	aliquis, <i>some</i> .		
NOM.	aliquis (aliqui)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquid)
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquid)
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
Plur.			
NOM.	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D., ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua

The forms in **-quī** and **-quod** are adjective; those in **-quis** and **-quid**, substantive: as, *aliquid bonum, some good thing*; but *aliquid boni, something good* (something of good).

e. The enclitic particle **que** added to the interrogative gives a universal: as, *quisque, every one, uterque, either of two, or both*. In this combination **quis** is declined regularly.

In the compound **ūnusquisque**, *every single one*, both parts are declined, and they are sometimes separated by other words.

Quotus quisque has the signification *how many, pray?* often in a disparaging sense.

f. The relative and interrogative have a possessive adjective **cūius** (**-a, -um**), *whose*; and a patril **cūiās** (**cūiātis**), *of what country*.

g. **Quantus**, *how great*, **quālis**, *of what sort*, are derivative adjectives from the interrogative. They are either interrogative or relative, corresponding to the demonstratives **tantus**, **tālis**.

h. **Quisquam**, with **ūllus**, *any*, **unquam**, *ever*, **usquam**, *anywhere*, are used only in negative sentences, or where there is an implied negative (as in interrogative or conditional sentences, or after **quam**, *than*; **sine**, *without*; **vix**, *scarcely*): as, *nec quisquam ex āgmine tantō, and nobody from that great throng*; *sī quisquam est timidus, is ego sum, if any one is timorous, I am the man*; *sine ūllō dominō, without any master*.

i. **Quisnam** is *emphatic*: *pray who?* **ecquis** and **numquis** are compounded from the indefinite particle **ēn** and the interrogative **num**; they mean not *who*, but *any* in a question: as, *ecquis nōs videt? does any one see us?* *num quid hōc dubitās, do you at all doubt this?*

7. Correlatives.

106. Many pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and adverbs have corresponding *demonstrative, relative, interrogative* and *indefinite* forms. Such parallel forms are called **CORRELATIVES**. They are shown in the following table :—

DEMONSTR.	RELATIVE.	INTERROG.	INDEF. RELATIVE.	INDEF.
is , <i>that, he</i>	quī , <i>who</i>	quis? <i>who?</i>	quisquis , <i>whoever</i>	aliquis , ^{<i>some one</i>}
tantus , <i>so great</i>	quantus	quantus?	(quantuscumque)	aliquantus
tālis , <i>such</i>	quālis	quālis?	(quālescumque)	—
ibi , <i>there</i>	ubi	ubi?	ubiubi	alicubi
eō , <i>thither</i>	quō	quō?	quōquō	aliquō
eā , <i>that way</i>	quā	quā?	quāquā	aliquā
inde , <i>thence</i>	unde	unde?	(undecumque)	alicunde
tum , <i>then</i>	quom , cum	quandō?	(cumcumque)	aliquandō
tot , <i>so many</i>	quot	quot?	quotquot	aliquot
totiēs , <i>so often</i>	quotiēs	quotiēs?	(quotiēscumque)	aliquotiēs

a. The forms **tot** *so many*, **quot**, *how (as) many*, **aliquot**, *several*, **totidem**, *as many*, are indeclinable, and may take any gender or case: as, **per tot annōs**, **tot proeliis**, **tot imperātōrēs** (Cic.), *so many commanders, for so many years, in so many battles*.

b. The relative word in a pair of correlatives is often to be rendered simply *as*: thus, **tantum argenti quantum aeris**, *as much (of) silver as (of) copper*.

c. A frequent form of correlative is found in the ablative **quō** or **quantō**, *by how much*; **eō** or **tantō**, *by so much*, used with comparatives (rendered in English *the . . . the*): as, —

quō magis cōnāris, **eō longius prōgrederis**, *the more you try, the farther on you get*.

107. Certain relative and demonstrative adverbs are used correlatively as conjunctions: as, —

ut (rel.) . . . **ita**, **sic** (dem.), *as (while) . . . so (yet)*.

tam (dem.) . . . **quam** (rel.), *so (as) . . . as*.

cum (rel.) . . . **tum** (dem.), *both . . . and; while . . . so also; not only . . . but also*.

Compare **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*; **aut (vel) . . . aut (vel)**, *either . . . or*; **sive (seu) . . . sive**; **utrum . . . an**, *whether . . . or*.

6. VERBS.

I. INFLECTION OF THE VERB.

1. Voice, Mood, Tense.

108. The inflection of the Verb denotes Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

a. The VOICES are two : Active and Passive.

b. The MOODS are four : Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

c. The TENSES are six, viz. : —

1. For continued action, Present, Imperfect, Future.

2. For completed action, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

d. PERSON and NUMBER. — There are separate terminations for each of the three PERSONS, — First, Second, and Third, — both in the singular and in the plural.

2. Noun and Adjective Forms.

109. The following Noun and Adjective forms are also included in the inflection of the Latin Verb : —

a. FOUR PARTICIPLES, viz. : —

Active : the Present and Future Participles.

Passive : the Perfect Participle and the Gerundive.

b. The GERUND : this is in form a neuter noun of the second declension, used only in the oblique cases of the singular. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive (see § 114. note).

c. The SUPINE : see §§ 71. *a* and 114. *b*.

3. Defective Forms.

110. Special forms for some of the tenses are wanting in certain parts of the verb : —

a. The Subjunctive mood wants the Future and the Future Perfect.

b. In the Passive voice in all moods the tenses of completed action are supplied by the Perfect Participle with the present, imperfect, and future of the verb **esse**, TO BE : as, **occisus est**, *he was killed*.

c. The Imperative mood has only the Present and the Future.

d. In the Infinitive mood the Present (active and passive) and the Perfect (active) only are formed by inflection. A Future in the active voice is formed by the Future Participle with the infinitive **esse** TO BE : as, **amātūrus esse**, *to be going to love* ; in the passive, by the Former Supine with **iri** (infin. pass. of **ire**, *to go*) : as, **amātum iri**, *to be about to be loved*. For the Perfect passive, see *b* above.

II. SIGNIFICATION OF THE FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. Voices.

111. The Active and Passive Voices in Latin generally correspond to the active and passive in English ; but —

a. The passive voice often has a reflexive meaning : as, **induitur vestem**, *he puts on his (own) clothes* ; **vertitur**, *he turns (himself)*.

b. Many verbs are used only in the passive form, but with an active or reflexive meaning. These are called **DEPONENTS** (*dēpōnentia*), *i.e.* verbs which have laid aside (*dēpōnere*) the active form and the passive meaning (see § 135).

c. Three verbs have a passive form in the tenses of completed action : **audeō, ausus sum** ; **gaudeō, gāvisus sum** ; **fido, fisus sum**.

2. Moods.

112. The Moods are used as follows : —

a. The Indicative is used for *direct assertions* and *interrogations* : as, **valēsne? valeō**, *are you well? I am well* ; and also in some other idiomatic forms of predication.

b. The Subjunctive has many uses, as in *commands, conditions*, and various *dependent clauses*. It is often translated by the Indicative ; often with the auxiliaries *may, might, would, should* ; often by the Infinitive ; or by the Imperative. Thus,—

eāmus, *let us go*.

cum vēnisset, *when he had come*.

adsum ut videam, *I am here to see* (that I may see).

tū nē quaesieris, *do not thou inquire*.

nēmō est quī ita existimet, *there is no one who thinks so*.

beātus sis, *may you be blessed*.

nē abeat, *let him not depart.*

quid morer, *why should I delay?*

sunt quī putent, *there are some who think.*

imperat ut scribam, *he orders me to write* (that I write).

nesciō quid scribam, *I know not what to write.*

licet eās, *you may go* (it is permitted that you go).

cave cadās, *don't fall.*

vereor nē eat, *I fear he will go.*

vereor ut eat, *I fear he will not go.*

sī moneam audiat (pres.), *if I should warn, he would hear.*

sī vocārem audiret (imperf.), *if I were (now) calling, he would hear.*

c. The IMPERATIVE is used for *exhortation, entreaty, or command*; but the Subjunctive is often used instead.

d. The INFINITIVE is used chiefly as an indeclinable noun, as the subject or object of another verb. In special uses it takes the place of the Indicative, and may be translated by that mood.

NOTE. — For the Syntax of the Moods, see §§ 264 ff.

3. Participles.

113. The Participles are used as follows :—

a. The Present participle (ending in **-ns**) has commonly the same meaning as the English participle in **-ING** : as, **vocāns**, *calling*; **legentēs**, *reading*. (For its inflection, see **egēns**, § 85.)

b. 1. The Future participle (ending in **-ūrus**) is oftenest used to express what is *likely* or *about* to happen.

NOTE. — With the tenses of **esse**, TO BE, it forms the First Periphrastic conjugation : as, **urbs est cāsūra**, *the city is about to fall*.

2. It is also used, more rarely, to express purpose (see § 293. *b*) : as, **vēnit auditūrus**, *he came to hear* (about to hear).

c. The Perfect participle (ending in **-tus**, **-sus**) has two uses :—

1. It is sometimes equivalent to the English Perfect Passive participle in **-ED** : as, **tēctus**, *sheltered*; **acceptus**, *accepted*; **ictus**, *having been struck*; and often has simply an adjective meaning : as, **acceptus**, *acceptable*.

2. It is also used to form certain tenses of the passive (§ 110. *b*) : as, **vocātus est**, *he was* (has been) *called*.

NOTE.—There is no Perfect Active or Present Passive participle in Latin. The perfect participle of deponents, however, is generally used in an active sense : as, *secūtus*, *having followed*. In the case of other verbs some different construction is used for these missing participles : as, *cum vēnisset*, *having come* (when he had come); *equitātū praemissō*, *having sent forward the cavalry* (the cavalry having been sent forward); *dum verberātur*, *while he is (being) struck*.

d. 1. The Gerundive (ending in *-ndus*) is often used as an adjective implying obligation or necessity (*ought* or *must*) : as, *audiendus est*, *he must be heard*.

NOTE.—With the tenses of *esse*, TO BE, it forms the Second Periphrastic conjugation ; as, *dēligendus erat*, *he ought to have been chosen*.

2. In the oblique cases the Gerundive commonly has the same meaning as the Gerund (cf. § 114. a), though its construction is different. (For examples, see §§ 295 ff.)

e. The Participles may all be used as simple adjectives ; and the present and perfect are sometimes compared : as *amāns*, *amantior*, *more fond* ; *dilēctus*, *dilēctissimus*, *dearest*.

f. The Present and Perfect participles are (like adjectives) often used as nouns : as, *regentēs*, *rulers* ; *mortuī*, *the dead*.

g. As an adjective, the participle is often used predicatively to indicate some special circumstance or situation : as, *moritūrī vōs salūtāmus*, *we at the point of death (about to die) salute you*.

4. Gerund and Supine.

114. The Gerund and Supine are used as follows :—

a. The GERUND is, in form, the neuter singular of the Gerundive. It is a verbal noun, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun in *-ING* (§ 295) : as, *loquendī causā*, *for the sake of speaking*.

NOTE.—The Gerund is found only in the oblique cases. A corresponding nominative is supplied by the Infinitive : thus, *scribere est ūtile*, *writing (to write) is useful* ; but, *ars scribendī*, *the art of writing*.

b. The SUPINE is in form a noun of the fourth declension (§ 71. a), found only in the accusative, ending in *-tum*, *-sum*, and the ablative (or dative, probably both), ending in *-tū*, *-sū*. These are sometimes called the Former and the Latter Supine. The Former is used after verbs and the Latter after adjectives (§§ 302, 303) : as, —

1. *vēnit spectātum*, *he came to see*.

2. *mirābile dictū*, *wonderful to tell*.

5. Tenses.

115. The tenses of the verb are of two classes, viz.: —

1. *Of continued action.*

1. PRESENT : **scribō**, *I am writing.*
2. IMPERFECT : **scribēbam**, *I was writing.*
3. FUTURE : **scribam**, *I shall write.*

2. *Of completed action.*

4. PERFECT : **scripsī**, *I have written, I wrote.*
5. PLUPERFECT : **scripseram**, *I had written.*
6. FUTURE PERFECT : **scripserō**, *I shall have written.*

a. Tenses of the Indicative.

a. The tenses of the Indicative have, in general, the same meaning as the corresponding tenses in English ; but are in some cases distinguished differently in their use. Thus, —

1. The Future or Future Perfect is often used in subordinate clauses, where the English uses the Present : as, —

sī quid habēbō dabō, *if I have (shall have) anything, I will give.*
cum vēnerō scribam, *when I come (shall have come), I will write.*

2. The Present and Imperfect are often used to express *continued action* where the English uses tenses of *completed action* : as, —

iam diū aegrōtō, *I have long been (and still am) sick.*
iam diū aegrōtābam, *I had long been (and still was) sick.*

NOTE. — Here the Perfect, **aegrōtāvī**, would imply that I am now well ; the Pluperfect, that I was well at the past time designated.

b. The Imperfect is used to *describe* in past time a *continued action* or a *condition of things* : as, **scribēbat**, *he was writing ;*
ardēbat, *it was on fire.*

c. The Perfect, having two separate uses, is divided into the Perfect Definite and the Perfect Historical (or Indefinite).

1. The Perfect Definite represents the action of the verb as completed in present time, and corresponds to the English (present- or compound-) perfect : as, **scripsī**, *I have written.*

2. The Perfect Historical *narrates* a simple act or state in past time without representing it as in progress. It corresponds to the English past or preterite : as, **scripsit**, *he wrote ;* **arsit**, *it blazed up.*

b. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

d. The tenses of the Subjunctive Mood are chiefly used in dependent clauses, following the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (see § 286); but have also special idiomatic uses (see Syntax).

III. PERSONAL ENDINGS.

116. Verbs have regular terminations for each of the three Persons, both singular and plural, active and passive. These are called Personal endings.

IV. FORMS OF THE VERB.

117. Every Latin verb-form (except the adjective and noun forms) is made up of two parts, viz.:—

1. The STEM. This is either the root or a modification of it.
2. The ENDING, consisting of—
 - a. the signs of mood and tense.
 - b. the personal ending (see § 116).

118. The Verb-endings, as they are formed by the signs for mood and tense combined with personal endings, are exhibited in the following table:

ACTIVE.			PASSIVE.		
INDIC.		SUBJ.	INDIC.		SUBJ.
<i>Present.</i>					
<i>Sing.</i> 1. -ō	Vowel-Change: I. to ē; II. to eā; III. to ā; IV. to ū.	-m	-or	Vowel-Change: as in Active.	-r
2. -s		-s	-ris or -re		-ris or -re
3. -t		-t	-tur		-tur
<i>Plur.</i> 1. -mus		-mus	-mur		-mur
2. -tis		-tis	-mini		-mini
3. -nt		-nt	-ntur		-ntur
<i>Imperfect.</i>					
<i>Sing.</i> 1. -ba-m		-re-m	-ba-r		-re-r
2. -bā-s		-rē-s	-bā-ris (-re)		-rē-ris (-re)
3. -ba-t		-re-t	-bā-tur		-rē-tur
<i>Plur.</i> 1. -bā-mus		-rē-mus	-bā-mur		-rē-mur
2. -bā-tis		-rē-tis	-bā-mini		-rē-mini
3. -ba-nt		-re-nt	-ba-ntur		-re-ntur

¹ These numerals refer to the four conjugations given later (see § 122).

ACTIVE.			PASSIVE.		
INDICATIVE.			INDICATIVE.		
	I. II. ¹	III. IV.		I. II.	III. IV.
<i>Sing.</i>	1. -b-ō	<i>Vowel-Change: as indicated in italics; verbs in ïd retaining i before these vowels.</i> { -a-m -ē-s -e-t -ē-mus -ē-tis -e-nt		-bo-r	<i>Vowel-Change: as in Active.</i> { -a-r -ē-ris (re) -ē-tur -ē-mur -ē-mini -e-ntur
	2. -bi-s			-be-ris (-re)	
	3. -bi-t			-bi-tur	
<i>Plur.</i>	1. -bi-mus			-bi-mur	
	2. -bi-tis			-bi-mini	
	3. -bu-nt			-bu-ntur	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	Perfect.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Sing.</i>	1. -ī	-eri-m	-tus(-ta, -tum) { sum es est		sim
	2. -i-stī	-eri-s			sīs
	3. -i-t	-eri-t			sit
<i>Plur.</i>	1. -i-mus	-eri-mus	-tī (-tae, -ta) { sumus estis sunt		simus
	2. -i-stis	-eri-tis			sītis
	3. -ēru-nt or -ēre	-eri-nt			sint
Pluperfect.					
<i>Sing.</i>	1. -era-m	-isse-m	-tus(-ta, -tum) { eram erās erat		essem
	2. -erā-s	-issē-s			essēs
	3. -era-t	-isse-t			esset
<i>Plur.</i>	1. -erā-mus	-issē-mus	-tī (-tae, -ta) { erāmus erātis erant		essēmus
	2. -erā-tis	-issē-tis			essētis
	3. -era-nt	-isse-nt			essent
Future Perfect.					
<i>Sing.</i>	1. -er-ō	-tus(-ta, -tum) { erō eris erit			
	2. -eri-s				
	3. -eri-t				
<i>Plur.</i>	1. -eri-mus	-tī (-tae, -ta) { erimus eritis erunt			
	2. -eri-tis				
	3. -eri-nt				
IMPERATIVE.					
Present.					
<i>Sing.</i>	2. —	<i>Plur.</i>	2. -te	<i>Sing.</i>	2. -re <i>Plur.</i> 2. -minī
Future.					
	2. -tō	2. -tōte		2. -tor	2. —
	3. -tō	3. -ntō		3. -tor	3. -ntor

¹ These numerals refer to the four conjugations given later (see § 122).

For convenience, a table of the Noun and Adjective forms of the verb is here added.

INFINITIVES.

<i>Pres.</i> -re (Pres. stem)	I. II. IV. -rī; III. -ī
<i>Perf.</i> -isse (Perf. stem)	-tus (-ta, -tum) esse
<i>Fut.</i> -tūrus (-a, -um) esse	-tum iri

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> -ns, -ntis	_____
<i>Perf.</i> _____	-tus, -ta, -tum
<i>Fut.</i> -tūrus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i> -ndus, -a, -um

GERUND.

-ndī, -ndō, -ndum -ndō

SUPINE.

-tum, -tū

THE VERB SUM.

119. The verb *sum*, *be*, is irregular and has no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

Its conjugation is given at the outset, as it is used in the inflection of all other verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Pres. *sum*, Infin. *esse*, Perf. *fui*,
Fut. Part. *futūrus*.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. <i>sum</i> , I am.
2. <i>ēs</i> , thou art (you are).
3. <i>est</i> , he (she, it) is.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. <i>sumus</i> , we are.
2. <i>estis</i> , you are.
3. <i>sunt</i> , they are.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>sim</i> ¹
<i>sīs</i>
<i>sit</i>
<i>simus</i>
<i>sītis</i>
<i>sint</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. <i>eram</i> , I was.	<i>essem</i> (forem)
2. <i>erās</i> , you were.	<i>essēs</i> (forēs)
3. <i>erat</i> , he (she, it) was.	<i>esset</i> (foret)
<i>Plur.</i> 1. <i>erāmus</i> , we were.	<i>essēmus</i>
2. <i>erātis</i> , you were.	<i>essētis</i>
3. <i>erant</i> , they were.	<i>essent</i> (forent)

¹ No translations of the subjunctive are given, as all are misleading.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

- Sing.* 1. **erō**, *I shall be.*
 2. **eris**, *you will be.*
 3. **erit**, *he will be.*
Plur. 1. **erimus**, *we shall be.*
 2. **eritis**, *you will be.*
 3. **erunt**, *they will be.*

Perfect.

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. fui , <i>I was (have been).</i> | fuerim |
| 2. fuisti , <i>you were.</i> | fueris |
| 3. fuit , <i>he was.</i> | fuerit |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. fuimus , <i>we were.</i> | fuerimus |
| 2. fuistis , <i>you were.</i> | fueritis |
| 3. fuērunt , fuēre , <i>they were.</i> | fuerint |

Pluperfect.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. fueram , <i>I had been.</i> | fuissem |
| 2. fuerās , <i>you had been.</i> | fuissēs |
| 3. fuerat , <i>he had been.</i> | fuisset |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. fuerāmus , <i>we had been.</i> | fuissēmus |
| 2. fuerātis , <i>you had been.</i> | fuissētis |
| 3. fuerant , <i>they had been.</i> | fuissent |

Future Perfect.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. fuerō , <i>I shall have been.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> 1. fuerimus , <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. fueris , <i>you will have been.</i> | 2. fueritis , <i>you will have been.</i> |
| 3. fuerit , <i>he will have been.</i> | 3. fuerint , <i>they will have been.</i> |

IMPERATIVE.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>Present.</i> <i>Sing.</i> 2. ēs , <i>be thou.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> 2. este , <i>be ye.</i> |
| <i>Future.</i> 2. estō , <i>thou shalt be.</i> | 2. estōte , <i>ye shall be.</i> |
| 3. estō , <i>he shall be.</i> | 3. suntō , <i>they shall be.</i> |

INFINITIVE.

- Present.* **esse**, *to be.*
Perfect. **fuisse**, *to have been.*
Future. **fore** or **futūrus esse**, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future. futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

a. The present participle appears in **ab-sēns**, **prae-sēns**; and as **ēns** in **pot-ēns**.

b. For **essem**, etc., **forem**, **forēs**, etc., are often used.

120. The verb **sum** appears in numerous compounds, which are treated under Irregular Verbs (§ 137).

The Three Stems.

121. The parts of the Latin verb are formed upon three different stems (partly real and partly supposed), called the Present, the Perfect, and the Supine Stem.

a. The tenses of continued action, both active and passive, together with the Gerund and Gerundive, are formed upon the PRESENT STEM, and collectively are called the Present System.

b. The tenses of completed action in the active voice are formed upon the PERFECT STEM, and are called the Perfect System.

c. The Perfect and Future Participles and the Supine are formed upon the SUPINE STEM, and are called the Supine System.

V. REGULAR VERBS.

122. There are four regular forms of Present Stems ending respectively in **ā-**, **ē-**, **ō-**, **i-**. With this difference most other differences of conjugation coincide.

a. Verbs are accordingly classed in Four Regular Conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before **-re** in the Present Infinitive Active.

b. The PRINCIPAL PARTS of a verb, which determine its conjugation throughout, are —

1. The Present Indicative } showing the *present stem* and
2. The Present Infinitive } the *conjugation*.
3. The Perfect Indicative, showing the *perfect stem*.
4. The Supine, showing the *supine stem*.

c. The regular forms of the conjugations are seen in the following:—

First : Active, **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love.**

Passive, **amor, amārī, amātus.**

Present stem **amā-**, Perfect stem **amāv-**, Supine stem **amāt-**.

Second : Active, **dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, blot out.**

Passive, **dēleor, dēlēri, dēlētus.**

Present stem **dēlē-**, Perfect stem **dēlēv-**, Supine stem **dēlēt-**.

Third : Active, **tegō, tegēre, tēxī, tēctum, cover.**

Passive, **tegor, tegī, tēctus.**

ROOT **TEG**, Present stem **tegē-**, Perfect stem **tēx-**, Supine stem **tēct-**.

Fourth : Active, **audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum, hear.**

Passive, **audior, audiri, auditus.**

Present stem **audī-**, Perfect stem **audīv-**, Supine stem **audit-**.

In the Second conjugation, the characteristic **ē-** rarely appears in the perfect and supine : the type of this conjugation is, therefore —

Second : Active, **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, warn.**

Passive, **moneor, monēri, monitus.**

d. In many verbs the principal parts take forms belonging to two or more different conjugations : as, —

1, 2, **domō, domāre, domuī, domitum, subdue.**

2, 3, **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain.**

3, 4, **petō, petēre, petivī, petitum, seek.**

4, 3, **vinciō, vincire, vinxi, vinctum, bind.**

Such verbs are referred to the conjugation to which the Present stem conforms.

1. Present Stem.

123. The Present Stem is formed from the Root in regular verbs in several ways, as appears in dictionaries.

2. Perfect Stem.

124. The Perfect Stem is formed as follows:—

a. The suffix **v** (**u**) is added to the present stem : as, **vocā-v-ī**, **audī-v-ī**; or to the root : as, **son-u-ī** (**son-āre**), **mon-u-ī** (**mon-ēre**, **MON** treated as a root).

NOTE. — In a few verbs the vowel of the root is transposed and lengthened (see § 9. *d*): as, **strā-v-ī** (**ster-nō**), **sprē-v-ī** (**sper-nō**).

b. The suffix **s** is added to the root : as, **carp-s-ī** (**carp-ō**), **tēx-ī** (for **teg-s-ī**, **teg-ō**).

c. The root is *reduplicated* by prefixing the first consonant — generally with **ē**, sometimes with the root-vowel : as, **ce-cid-ī** (**cad-ō**), **to-tond-ī** (**tond-eō**).

NOTE. — In **fid-ī** (for † **fe-fid-ī**, **find-ō**), **scid-ī** (for † **sci-scid-ī**, **scindō**), the reduplication has been lost, leaving merely the root.

d. The root-vowel is lengthened : as, **ēg-ī** (**āg-ō**), **fūg-ī** (**fūg-i-ō**).

e. The root itself is used as the perfect stem : as, **vert-ī** (**vert-ō**), **solv-ī** (**solv-ō**, **SOLV** treated as a root).

f. Sometimes the perfect is formed from a lost or imaginary stem : as, **petī-v-ī** (as if from † **peti-ō**, † **peti-re**, **pet-ō**).

3. Supine Stem.

125. The Supine Stem is formed by adding **t-** (or, by a phonetic change, **s-**):—

a. To the present stem : as, **amā-t-um**, **dēlē-t-um**, **audī-t-um**.

b. To the root, with or without **ī**: **cap-t-um** (**cap-iō**), **moni-t-um** (**mon-eō**, **MON** treated as a root), **cās-um** (for **cad-t-um**).

126. Omitted in this edition.

4. Synopsis of the Verb.

127. The following synopsis shows the forms of the verbs arranged according to the several stems. **Amō**, a regular verb of the first conjugation, is taken as a type.

PRESENT STEM, **amā-**; PERFECT STEM, **amāv-**; SUPINE STEM, **amāt-**.

	PRES.	IMPERF.	FUT.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
ACTIVE.	IND. amō	amā-bam	amā-bō	amāv-ī	amāv-eram	amāv-erō
	SUB. ame-m	amā-rem	—	amāv-erim	amāv-issem	—
	IMP. 2. amā	—	amā-tō	—	—	—
	INF. amā-re	—	amāt-ūrus esse	amāv-isse	—	—
	PART. amā-ns	—	amāt-ūrus	—	—	—
PASSIVE.	IND. am-or	amā-bar	amā-bor	amāt-us sum	— eram	— erō
	SUB. ame-r	amā-rer	—	amāt-us sim	— essem	—
	IMP. 2. amā-re	—	amā-tor	—	—	—
	INF. amā-rī	—	amā-tum iri	amāt-us esse	—	—
	PART.	—	Ger. ama-ndus	amāt-us	—	—

128. SPECIAL FORMS. — *a.* In tenses formed upon the perfect stem, **v** between two vowels is often lost. Thus, —

1. Perfects in **-āvī, -ēvī, -ōvī** often contract the two vowels into **ā, ē, ō** respectively : as, **amāsse** for **amāvisse** ; **amārim** for **amāverim** ; **cōnsuērat** for **cōnsuēverat** ; **flēstis** for **flēvistis**. So where the **v** is a part of the present stem : as, **commōrat** for **commōverat**.

2. Perfects in **-ivī** regularly omit **v**, but rarely contract the vowels except before **st** and **ss** : as, **audieram** for **audīveram** ; **audisse** for **audīvisse** ; **audistī** for **audīvistī** ; **abūt** for **abīvīt**.

b. In many forms from the perfect stem, **is, iss, sis** are lost in like manner when **s** would be repeated : as, **dixitī** for **dixistī** (**x = cs**).

c. Four verbs, — **dicō, dūcō, faciō, ferō**, — with their compounds, drop the vowel-termination in the imperative, making **dic, dūc, fac, fēr** ; but compounds in **-ficiō** retain it : as, **cōnfice** (**cōn-ficio**).

d. For the imperative of **sciō**, the future form **scitō** is always used in the singular, and **scitōte** usually in the plural.

e. The following ancient forms are chiefly found in poetry : —

1. In the fourth conjugation **-ībam, -ībō** for **-iēbam, -iam** (future).

2. In the present subjunctive **-im** : as in **duim** (for **dem**).

3. In the perfect subjunctive and future perfect **-sim, -sō** : as, **faxim, faxō** (= **fēcerō**, etc.) ; **ausim** (= **ausus sim**).

4. In the passive infinitive **-ier** : as, **irier** for **iri** ; **agier** for **agi**.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : Pres. **amō**, Infin. **amāre**, Perf. **amāvī**,
Supine **amātum**.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

amō, *I love.*
amās, *thou lovest (you love).*
amat, *he (she, it) loves.*
amāmus, *we love.*
amātis, *you love.*
amant, *they love.*

amem
amēs
amet
amēmus
amētis
ament

Imperfect.

amābam, *I loved.*
amābās, *you loved.*
amābat, *he loved.*
amābāmus, *we loved.*
amābātis, *you loved.*
amābant, *they loved.*

amārem
amārēs
amāret
amārēmus
amārētis
amārent

Future.

amābō, *I shall love.*
amābis, *you will love.*
amābit, *he will love.*
amābimus, *we shall love.*
amābitis, *you will love.*
amābunt, *they will love.*

Perfect.

amāvī, *I loved.*
amāvistī, *you loved.*
amāvit, *he loved.*
amāvimus, *we loved.*
amāvistis, *you loved.*
amāverunt (-ēre), *they loved.*

amāverim
amāveris
amāverit
amāverimus
amāveritis
amāverint

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
amāveram, <i>I had loved.</i>	amāvissem
amāverās, <i>you had loved.</i>	amāvissēs
amāverat, <i>he had loved.</i>	amāvisset
amāverāmus, <i>we had loved.</i>	amāvissēmus
amāverātis, <i>you had loved.</i>	amāvissētis
amāverant, <i>they had loved.</i>	amāvissent

Future Perfect.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amāverō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	amāverimus, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
amāveris, <i>you will have loved.</i>	amāveritis, <i>you will have loved.</i>
amāverit, <i>he will have loved.</i>	amāverint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> 2. amā, <i>love thou.</i>	amāte, <i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> 2. amātō, <i>thou shalt love.</i>	amātōte, <i>ye shall love.</i>
3. amātō, <i>he shall love.</i>	amantō, <i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i> amāre, <i>to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> amāvisse or amāsse, <i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i> amāns, -antis, <i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i> amātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

GEN. amandī, <i>of loving.</i>	ACC. amandum, <i>loving.</i>
DAT. amandō, <i>for loving.</i>	ABL. amandō, <i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

<i>Former.</i> amātum	<i>Latter.</i> amātū, <i>to love.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------------------------

129. The so-called Periphrastic conjugations are formed by combining the tenses of esse with the Future Active Participle and with the Gerundive : as, —

First Periphrastic Conjugation.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>amātūrus sum, I am about to love.</i>	— <i>sim</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amātūrus eram, I was about to love.</i>	— <i>essem</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>amātūrus erō, I shall be about to love.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>amātūrus fui, I was about, etc.</i>	— <i>fuierim</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>amātūrus fueram, I had been about, etc.</i>	— <i>fuissem</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about, etc.</i>	

INFINITIVE : *Pres. amātūrus esse* *Perf. amātūrus fuisse*

Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>amandus sum, I am to be loved.</i>	— <i>sim</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus eram, I was to be loved.</i>	— <i>essem</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>amandus erō, I shall be [worthy] to be loved.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>amandus fui, I was to be loved.</i>	— <i>fuierim</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>amandus fueram, I had been, etc.</i>	— <i>fuissem</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuerō, I shall have been, etc.</i>	

INFINITIVE : *Pres. amandus esse* *Perf. amandus fuisse*

FIRST CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *Pres. amor*, *Infin. amārī*, *Perf. amātus sum*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>Present.</i>	
<i>amor, I am loved.</i>		<i>amer</i>
<i>amāris (-re), you are loved.</i>		<i>amēris (-re)</i>
<i>amātur, he is loved.</i>		<i>amētur</i>
<i>amāmur, we are loved.</i>		<i>amēmur</i>
<i>amāmini, you are loved.</i>		<i>amēmini</i>
<i>amantur, they are loved.</i>		<i>amentur</i>

	<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>amābar, I was loved.</i>		<i>amārer</i>
<i>amābāris (-re), you were loved.</i>		<i>amārēris (-re)</i>
<i>amābātur, he was loved.</i>		<i>amārētur</i>
<i>amābāmur, we were loved.</i>		<i>amārēmur</i>
<i>amābāmini, you were loved.</i>		<i>amārēmini</i>
<i>amābantur, they were loved.</i>		<i>amārentur</i>

INDICATIVE.

Future.

amābor, *I shall be loved.*
 amāberis (-re), *you will be loved.*
 amābitur, *he will be loved.*
 amābimur, *we shall be loved.*
 amābimini, *you will be loved.*
 amābuntur, *they will be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

amātus sum, <i>I was loved.</i>	amātus sim
amātus es, <i>you were loved.</i>	amātus sis
amātus est, <i>he was loved.</i>	amātus sit
amātī sumus, <i>we were loved.</i>	amātī simus
amātī estis, <i>you were loved.</i>	amātī sitis
amātī sunt, <i>they were loved.</i>	amātī sint

Pluperfect.

amātus eram, <i>I had been loved.</i>	amātus essem
amātus erās, <i>you had been loved.</i>	amātus essēs
amātus erat, <i>he had been loved.</i>	amātus esset
amātī erāmus, <i>we had been loved.</i>	amātī essēmus
amātī erātis, <i>you had been loved.</i>	amātī essētis
amātī erant, <i>they had been loved.</i>	amātī essent

Future Perfect.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amātus erō, <i>I shall have been loved.</i>	amātī erimus, <i>we shall have, etc.</i>
amātus eris, <i>you will have, etc.</i>	amātī eritis, <i>you will have, etc.</i>
amātus erit, <i>he will have, etc.</i>	amātī erunt, <i>they will have, etc.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. 2. amāre, <i>be thou loved.</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye loved.</i>
Fut. 2. amātor, <i>thou shalt be loved.</i>	_____
3. amātor, <i>he shall be loved.</i>	amantor, <i>they shall be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present. amārī, *to be loved.*
 Perfect. amātus esse, *to have been loved.*
 Future. amātum iri (amātus fore), *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. amātus, *loved (beloved, or having been loved).*

Future. (Gerundive.) amandus, -a, -um, *to-be-loved (lovely).*

130. There are about 360 simple verbs of this conjugation, most of them formed directly on a noun- or adjective-stem : as, armō, arm (arma, arms); caecō, to blind (caecus, blind); exsulō, be an exile (exsul, an exile) (§ 166. a). Their conjugation is usually regular, like amō; though of many only a few forms are found in use.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *Active*, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum ;
Passive, moneor, monērī, monitus sum.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Present.</i>			
moneō, <i>I warn.</i>	moneam	moneor	monear
monēs, <i>you warn.</i>	moneās	monēris (-re)	moneāris(-re)
monet, <i>he warns.</i>	moneat	monētur	moneātur
monēmus	moneāmus	monēmur	moneāmur
monētis	moneātis	monēmini	moneāmini
monent	moneant	monentur	moneantur
<i>Imperfect.</i>			
monēbam	monērem	monēbar	monērer
monēbās	monērēs	monēbāris (-re)	monērēris (-re)
monēbat	monēret	monēbātur	monērētur
monēbāmus	monērēmus	monēbāmur	monērēmur
monēbātis	monērētis	monēbāmini	monērēmini
monēbant	monērent	monēbantur	monērentur

Future.

monēbō	monēbor
monēbis	monēberis (-re)
monēbit	monēbitur
monēbimus	monēbimur
monēbitis	monēbimini
monēbunt	monēbuntur

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Perfect.</i>			
monuī	monuerim	monitus sum	monitus sim
monuistī	monueris	monitus es	monitus sis
monuit	monuerit	monitus est	monitus sit
monuimus	monuerimus	monitī sumus	monitī simus
monuistis	monueritis	monitī estis	monitī sitis
monuērunt (-re)	monuerint	monitī sunt	monitī sint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>			
monueram	monuissē	monitus eram	monitus essem
monuerās	monuissēs	monitus erās	monitus essēs
monuerat	monuisset	monitus erat	monitus esset
monuerāmus	monuissēmus	monitī erāmus	monitī essēmus
monuerātis	monuissētis	monitī erātis	monitī essētis
monuerant	monuissent	monitī erant	monitī essent
<i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
monuerō		monitus erō	
monueris		monitus eris	
monuerit		monitus erit	
monuerimus		monitī erimus	
monueritis		monitī eritis	
monuerint		monitī erunt	

IMPERATIVE.

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i> 2. monē	monēte	monēre	monēmini
<i>Fut.</i> 2. monētō	monētōte	monētor	—
3. monētō	monentō	monētor	monentor

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> monēre	monēri
<i>Perf.</i> monuisse	monitus esse
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus esse	monitum iri (monitus fore)

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> monēns	<i>Perf.</i> monitus
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus	<i>Ger.</i> monendus

GERUND : monendī, -dō, -dum, -dō SUPINE : monitum, monitū

131. There are nearly 120 simple verbs of this conjugation, most of them denominative verbs of *condition*, having a corresponding noun and adjective from the same root, and an inceptive in *-scō* (§ 167. a): as, *caleō*, *be warm*; *calor*, *warmth*; *calidus*, *warm*; *calēscō*, *grow warm*; *timeō*, *fear*; *timor*, *fear*; *timidus*, *timid*.

Most verbs of this conjugation form their perfect and supine like *moneō*. The following have *-ēvī* and *-ētum*: *dēleō*, *destroy*; *fleō*, *weep*; *neō*, *spin*; *vieō*, *plait*; and compounds of *-pleō*, *fill*; *-oleō*, *grow*.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *Active*, *tegō*, *tegēre*, *tēxī*, *tēctum* ;
Passive, *tegor*, *tegi*, *tēctus sum*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Present.</i>			
<i>tegō</i> , <i>I cover.</i>	<i>tegā</i>	<i>tegor</i>	<i>tegar</i>
<i>tegis</i> , <i>you cover.</i>	<i>tegās</i>	<i>tegeris</i> (-re)	<i>tegāris</i> (-re)
<i>tegit</i> , <i>he covers.</i>	<i>tegat</i>	<i>tegitur</i>	<i>tegātur</i>
<i>tegimus</i>	<i>tegāmus</i>	<i>tegimur</i>	<i>tegāmur</i>
<i>tegitis</i>	<i>tegātis</i>	<i>teginī</i>	<i>tegāminī</i>
<i>tegun</i>	<i>tegant</i>	<i>tegun</i>	<i>tegantur</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>			
<i>tegēbam</i>	<i>tegerem</i>	<i>tegēbar</i>	<i>tegerer</i>
<i>tegēbās</i>	<i>tegerēs</i>	<i>tegēbāris</i> (-re)	<i>tegerēris</i> (-re)
<i>tegēbat</i>	<i>tegeret</i>	<i>tegēbātur</i>	<i>tegerētur</i>
<i>tegēbāmus</i>	<i>tegerēmus</i>	<i>tegēbāmur</i>	<i>tegerēmur</i>
<i>tegēbātis</i>	<i>tegerētis</i>	<i>tegēbāminī</i>	<i>tegerēminī</i>
<i>tegēbant</i>	<i>tegerent</i>	<i>tegēbantur</i>	<i>tegerentur</i>

Future.

<i>tegā</i>	<i>tegar</i>
<i>tegēs</i>	<i>tegēris</i> (-re)
<i>teget</i>	<i>tegētur</i>
<i>tegēmus</i>	<i>tegēmur</i>
<i>tegētis</i>	<i>tegēminī</i>
<i>tegent</i>	<i>tegentur</i>

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Perfect.</i>			
tēxī	tēxerim	tēctus sum	tēctus sim
tēxistī	tēxeris	tēctus es	tēctus sis
tēxit	tēxerit	tēctus est	tēctus sit
tēximus	tēxerimus	tēctī sumus	tēctī simus
tēxistis	tēxeritis	tēctī estis	tēctī sitis
tēxērunt (-re)	tēxerint	tēctī sunt	tēctī sint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>			
tēxeram	tēxissem	tēctus eram	tēctus essem
tēxerās	tēxisseās	tēctus erās	tēctus esses
tēxerat	tēxisset	tēctus erat	tēctus esset
tēxerāmus	tēxissemus	tēctī erāmus	tēctī essemus
tēxerātis	tēxissetis	tēctī erātis	tēctī essetis
tēxerant	tēxissent	tēctī erant	tēctī essent
<i>Future Perfect.</i>			
tēxerō		tēctus erō	
tēxeris		tēctus eris	
tēxerit		tēctus erit	
tēxerimus		tēctī erimus	
tēxeritis		tēctī eritis	
tēxerint		tēctī erunt	

IMPERATIVE.

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres. 2. tege, cover.</i> tegite		tegere	teginī
<i>Fut. 2. tegitō</i>	tegitōte	tegitōr	—
3. tegitō	teguntō	tegitōr	teguntor

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. tegere</i>	tegi
<i>Perf. tēxisse</i>	tēctus esse
<i>Fut. tēctūrus esse</i>	tēctum iri (tēctus fore)

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres. tegēns</i>	<i>Perf. tēctus</i>
<i>Fut. tēctūrus</i>	<i>Ger. tēgendus (-undus)</i>

GERUND : tegendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

SUPINE : tēctum, tēctū

VERBS IN -IŌ.

Verbs of the third conjugation in -iŏ have certain forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. They retain the *i* of the stem before *a*, *ŏ*, *u*, and *ē*, but lose it elsewhere except in the future and in the participle and gerund. They are conjugated as follows :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS : capiŏ, capĕre, cĕpi, captum ;
capior, capi, captus sum.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Present.</i>			
capiŏ, <i>I take.</i>	capiam	capior	capiar
capis, <i>you take.</i>	capiās	caperis (-re)	capiāris (-re)
capit, <i>he takes.</i>	capiat	capitur	capiātur
capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
capitis	capiātis	capimini	capiāmini
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
<i>Imperfect.</i>			
capiebam	caperem	capiebar	caperer
<i>Future.</i>			
capiam		capiar	
capies		capieris (-re)	
capiet, etc.		capietur, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>			
cĕpi	cĕperim	captus sum	captus sim
<i>Pluperfect.</i>			
cĕperam	cĕpissem	captus eram	captus essem
<i>Future Perfect.</i>			
cĕperŏ		captus erŏ	

IMPERATIVE.

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i> 2. cape	capite	capere	capimini
<i>Fut.</i> 2. capitŏ	capitŏte	capitor	_____
3. capitŏ	capiunto	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE.

SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i> capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse	captum iri

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns	<i>Perf.</i> captus
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus	<i>Ger.</i> capiendus

GERUND : capiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō SUPINE : captum, -tū

132. List of verbs omitted in this edition, see larger grammar.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *Active*, audiō, audire, audīvi, auditum ;
Passive, audior, audīrī, audītus sum.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Present.</i>			
audiō, <i>I hear.</i>	audiam	audior	audiar
audis, <i>you hear.</i>	audiās	audīris (-re)	audiāris (-re)
audit, <i>he hears.</i>	audiat	audītur	audiātur
audimus	audiāmus	audimur	audiāmur
auditis	audiātis	audīmini	audiāmini
audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
<i>Imperfect.</i>			
audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris (-re)	audīrēris (-re)
audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audīrētur
audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāmini	audīrēmini
audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur

Future.

audiam	audiar
audiēs	audiēris (-re)
audiet	audiētur
audiēmus	audiēmur
audiētis	audiēmini
audient	audientur

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Perfect.</i>			
audīvī	audīverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
audīvistī	audīveris	audītus es	audītus sis
audīvit	audīverit	audītus est	audītus sit
audīvimus	audīverimus	audītī sumus	audītī simus
audīvistis	audīveritis	audītī estis	audītī sitis
audīvērunt (-re)	audīverint	audītī sunt	audītī sint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>			
audīveram	audīvissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
audīverās	audīvissēs	audītus erās	audītus essēs
audīverat	audīvisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
audīverāmus	audīvissēmus	audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
audīverātis	audīvissētis	audītī erātis	audītī essētis
audīverant	audīvissent	audītī erant	audītī essent
<i>Future Perfect.</i>			
audīverō		audītus erō	
audīveris		audītus eris	
audīverit		audītus erit	
audīverimus		audītī erimus	
audīveritis		audītī eritis	
audīverint		audītī erunt	

IMPERATIVE.

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i> 2. audī	audīte	audīre	audīmini
<i>Fut.</i> 2. audītō	audītōte	audītor	—
3. audītō	audiunto	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> audīre	audīrī
<i>Perf.</i> audīvisse	audītus esse
<i>Fut.</i> audītūrus esse	audītum irī (audītus fore)

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> audiēns	<i>Perf.</i> audītus
<i>Fut.</i> audītūrus	<i>Ger.</i> audiendus

GERUND : audiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō SUPINE : audītum, audītū

133. There are — besides a few deponents and some regular derivatives in *-ūriō*, as *ēsuriō*, *be hungry* (cf. § 167. *e*) — about 60 verbs of this conjugation, a large proportion of them being *descriptive* verbs.

Parallel Forms.

134. Many verbs have more than one set of forms, of which only one is generally found in classic use : as, —

lavō, *lavāre* or *lavēre*, *wash*.

DEPONENT VERBS.

135. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice, with an active or reflexive signification : as, —

1st conj. *mīror*, *mīrārī*, *mīrātus*, *admire*.

2d conj. *vereor*, *verērī*, *veritus*, *fear*.

3d conj. *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus*, *follow*.

4th conj. *partior*, *partirī*, *partitus*, *share*.

INDICATIVE.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mīror</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>sequor</i>	<i>partior</i>
	<i>mīrāris (-re)</i>	<i>verēris (-re)</i>	<i>sequeris (-re)</i>	<i>partīris (-re)</i>
	<i>mīrātur</i>	<i>verētur</i>	<i>sequitur</i>	<i>partitur</i>
	<i>mīrāmur</i>	<i>verēmur</i>	<i>sequimur</i>	<i>partimur</i>
	<i>mīrāminī</i>	<i>verēminī</i>	<i>sequiminī</i>	<i>partiminī</i>
	<i>mīrantur</i>	<i>verentur</i>	<i>secuntur</i>	<i>partiuntur</i>
<i>Impf.</i>	<i>mīrābar</i>	<i>verēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>partiēbar</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mīrābor</i>	<i>verēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>partiar</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus sum</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>	<i>partitus sum</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>mīrātus eram</i>	<i>veritus eram</i>	<i>secūtus eram</i>	<i>partitus eram</i>
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>mīrātus erō</i>	<i>veritus erō</i>	<i>secūtus erō</i>	<i>partitus erō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mīrer</i>	<i>verear</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>partiar</i>
<i>Impf.</i>	<i>mīrārer</i>	<i>verērer</i>	<i>sequerer</i>	<i>partīrer</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus sim</i>	<i>veritus sim</i>	<i>secūtus sim</i>	<i>partitus sim</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>mīrātus essem</i>	<i>veritus essem</i>	<i>secūtus essem</i>	<i>partitus essem</i>

IMPERATIVE.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
mīrāre, -ātor, etc. verēre, -ētor		sequere, -itor	partire, -itor

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> mīrārī	verērī	sequī	partirī
<i>Perf.</i> mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partitus esse
<i>Fut.</i> mīrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partitūrus esse

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
<i>Fut.</i> mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partitūrus
<i>Perf.</i> mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	partitus
<i>Ger.</i> mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND.

mīrandī, -ō, etc. verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.
---------------------------------	----------------	-----------------

SUPINE.

mīrātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	partitum, -tū
--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

a. Deponents have the participles of both voices : as, —

<i>sequēns, following.</i>	<i>secūtūrus, about to follow.</i>
<i>secūtus, having followed.</i>	<i>sequendus, to-be-followed.</i>

b. The perfect participle generally has an active sense, but in verbs otherwise deponent it is often passive : as, *mercātus, bought* ; *adeptus, gained* (or *having gained*).

c. The future infinitive is always in the active form : thus, *sequor* has *secūtūrus esse* (not *secūtum iri*).

d. The gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in transitive verbs, or neuter verbs used impersonally : as, —

hōc cōnfītendum est, this must be acknowledged.
moriendum est omnibus, all must die.

e. Most deponents are neuter or reflexive in meaning.

f. Some deponents are occasionally used in a passive sense : as, *crīminor, I accuse, or I am accused.*

g. About twenty verbs are, with an active meaning, found in both active and passive forms : as, *mereō or mereor, I deserve.*

h. More than half of all deponents are of the First Conjugation, and all of these are regular.

Semi-Deponents.

136. A few verbs having no perfect stem are regular in the present, but appear in the tenses of completed action as deponents. These are called *semi-deponents* or *neuter passives*. They are —

audeō, audēre, ausus, dare.	gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus, rejoice.
fidō, fidēre, fīsus, trust.	soleō, solēre, solitus, be wont.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

137. Several verbs add some of the personal endings of the present system directly to the root, or combine two verbs in their inflection. These are called Irregular Verbs. They are *sum*, *volō*, *ferō*, *edō*, *queō*, *eō*, *fiō*, and their compounds.

Sum has already been inflected in § 119.

a. Sum is compounded without any change of inflection with the prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *dē*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *prae*, *prō* (*prōd*), *sub*, *super*.

In the compound *prōsum*, *prō* retains its original *d* before *e*. Thus, —

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>prōsum, I help.</i>	<i>prōsim</i>
	<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōsis</i>
	<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsit</i>
	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsint</i>
<i>Impf.</i>	<i>prōderam, I was helping.</i>	<i>prōdessem</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>prōderō, I shall help.</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>prōfui, I helped.</i>	<i>prōfuerim</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>prōfueram, I had helped.</i>	<i>prōfuissem</i>
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>prōfuerō, I shall have helped.</i>	

IMPER. *prōdes, prōdestō, etc.*

INFIN. *Pres. prōdesse Perf. prōfuisse Fut. prōfutūrus esse*

PART. *prōfutūrus, about to help.*

b. **Sum** is also compounded with the adjective **potis**, or **pote**, *able*, making the verb **possum**. This is inflected as follows :—

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	possum , <i>I can.</i>	possim
	potes , <i>you can.</i>	possis
	potest , <i>he can.</i>	possit
	possumus , <i>we can.</i>	possimus
	potestis , <i>you can.</i>	possitis
	possunt , <i>they can.</i>	possint
<i>Impf.</i>	poteram , <i>I could.</i>	possem
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō , <i>I shall be able.</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī , <i>I could.</i>	potuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram	potuissem
<i>F. P.</i>	potuerō , <i>I shall have been able.</i>	
INFIN. <i>Pres.</i>	posse	<i>Perf.</i> potuisse
PART.	potēns (adj.), <i>powerful.</i>	

138. **Volō** and its compounds are inflected as follows :—

volō, *velle*, **voluī**, *wish*.
nōlō (for **nē volō**), **nōlle**, **nōlui**, *be unwilling*.
mālō (for **magis** or **mage volō**), **mālle**, **mālui**, *wish rather, prefer*.

Present.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim	mālō	mālim
vis	velis	nōnvis	nōlis	māvis	mālis
vult (vult)	velit	nōnvult	nōlit	māvult	mālit
volumus	velimus	nōlumus	nōlimus	mālumus	mālimus
vultis (vul-)	velitis	nōnvultis	nōlitis	māvultis	mālitis
volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlint	mālunt	mālint

Imperfect.

volēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem	mālēbam	māllem
----------------	---------------	----------------	---------------	----------------	---------------

Future.

volam , volēs , etc.	nōlam , nōlēs , etc.	mālam , mālēs , etc.
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Perfect.

voluī	voluerim	nōlui	nōluerim	mālui	māluerim
--------------	-----------------	--------------	-----------------	--------------	-----------------

Pluperfect.

volueram	voluissem	nōlueram	nōluissem	mālueram	māluissem
-----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------

Future Perfect.

voluerō

nōluerō

māluerō

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.

nōlī

nōlite, *do not.*

Fut.

nōlitō

nōlitōte, *thou shalt not, ye shall not.*

nōlitō

INFINITIVE.

velle voluisse

nolle

nōluisse

malle

māluisse

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. volēns, *willing.*nōlens, *unwilling.*

GERUND: volendī (lāte)

139. Ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātum, *bear.*

ACTIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

Pres.

ferō

feram

fers

ferās

fert

ferat

ferimus

ferāmus

fertis

ferātis

ferunt

ferant

Impf.

ferēbam

ferrem

Fut.

feram

Perf.

tūlī

tulerim

Plup.

tuleram

tulissem

F. P.

tulerō

PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

feror

ferar

ferris

ferāris (-re)

fertur

ferātur

ferimur

ferāmur

feriminī

ferāminī

feruntur

ferantur

ferēbar

ferrer

ferar

lātus sum

lātus sim

lātus eram

lātus essem

lātus erō

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.

fer

ferte

ferre

feriminī

Fut.

fertō

fertōte

fertor

fertō

feruntō

fertor

feruntor

INFINITIVE.

Pres.

ferre

ferri

Perf.

tulissee

lātus esse

Fut.

lāturus esse

lātum iri (lātus fore)

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.

ferēns

Perf. lātus

Fut.

lāturus

Ger. ferendus

GERUND: ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

SUPINE: lātum, -tū

140. **Edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum, eat**, is regular of the third conjugation, but has also some forms directly from the root (ED) without the characteristic vowel. These are in full-faced type.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Present.</i>			
edō	edam (edim)	edor	edar
edis (ēs)	edās (edīs)	ederis (-re)	edāris (-re)
edit (ēst)	edat (edit)	editur (ēstur)	edātur
edimus	edāmus (edimus)	edimur	edāmur
editis (ēstis)	edātis (editis)	ediminī	edāminī
edunt	edant (edint)	eduntur	edantur
<i>Imperfect.</i>			
edēbam	ederem (ēassem)	edēbar	ederer
edēbās	ederēs (ēssēs)	edēbāris (-re)	ederēris (-re)
edēbat	ederet (ēasset)	edēbātur	ederētur (ēssētur)
<i>Future.</i>			
edam		edar	
edēs		edēris	
edet, etc.		edētur, etc.	
<i>Perfect.</i>			
ēdī	ēderim	ēsus sum	ēsus sim
<i>Pluperfect.</i>			
ēderam	ēdissem	ēsus eram	ēsus essem
<i>Future Perfect.</i>			
ēderō		ēsus erō	
IMPERATIVE.			
ede (ēs)	edite (ēste)	edere	ediminī
editō (ēstō)	editōte (ēstōte)	editor	_____
editō (ēstō)	eduntō	editor	eduntor
INFINITIVE.			
edere (ēsse)		edī	
ēdisse		ēsus esse	
ēsūrus esse		ēsum irī	
PARTICIPLES.			
<i>Pres.</i>	edēns	<i>Perf.</i>	ēsus
<i>Fut.</i>	ēsūrus	<i>Ger.</i>	edendus
GERUND: edendī, -dō, -dum, -dō		SUPINE: ēsum, -sū	

141. **EŌ**, *ire*, *ivī*, *itum*, *go*.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	eō , <i>is</i> , <i>it</i>
<i>P.</i>	imus , <i>itis</i> , <i>eunt</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	ibam , <i>ibās</i> , <i>ibat</i> ibāmus , <i>ibātis</i> , <i>ibant</i>
<i>Future.</i>	ibō , <i>ibis</i> , <i>ibit</i> ibimus , <i>ibitis</i> , <i>ibunt</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	ivī (<i>ī</i>)
<i>Pluperf.</i>	iveram (<i>ieram</i>)
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	iverō (<i>ierō</i>)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

eam , <i>eās</i> , <i>eat</i>
eāmus , <i>eātis</i> , <i>eant</i>
irem , <i>irēs</i> , <i>iret</i> irēmus , <i>irētis</i> , <i>irent</i>
iverim (<i>ierim</i>)
ivissem (<i>issem</i>)

IMPERATIVE.

i, *ite*, **itō**, *itō*, **itōte**, *euntō*

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. ire</i>	<i>Perf. iviasse</i> (<i>isse</i>)	<i>Fut. itūrus esse</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------------

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres. iēns</i> , <i>euntis</i>	<i>Fut. itūrus</i>	<i>Ger. eundum</i>
-----------------------------------	--------------------	--------------------

GERUND : **eundī**, **-dō**, **-dum**, **-dō**

SUPINE : **itum**, **itū**

a. The compounds **adeō**, *approach*, **ineō**, *enter*, and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive : —

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	adeor	<i>Impf.</i>	adībar
	adīris	<i>Fut.</i>	adībor
	adītur	<i>Perf.</i>	aditus sum
	adīmur	<i>Plup.</i>	aditus eram
	adīmini	<i>F. P.</i>	aditus erō
	adeuntur		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	adear
<i>Impf.</i>	adīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	aditus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	aditus essem
INFIN.	adīrī , aditus esse
PART.	aditus adeundus

Thus inflected, the forms of **eō** are used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive : as, **itum est** (§ 146. *d*). The infinitive **irī** is used with the supine in **-um** to make the future infinitive passive (§ 147. *c. i*). The verb **vēneō**, *be sold* (*i.e.* **vēnum eō**, *go to sale*), has also several forms in the passive.

b. In the perfect system of **eō** and its compounds the forms with **v** are extremely rare.

c. The compound **ambiō**, inflected regularly like a verb of the fourth conjugation, has also **ambībat** in the imperfect indicative.

d. **Prō** with **eō** retains its original **d** : as, **prōdeō**, **prōdis**, **prōdit**.

142. *Faciō, facere, feci, factum, make*, is regular. But it has imperative *fac* in the active, and besides the regular forms the future perfect *faxō*, perfect subjunctive *faxim*. The passive of *faciō* is —

fiō, fiērī, factus sum, be made, or become.

The tenses of the first stem of *fiō* are regular of the fourth conjugation, but the subjunctive imperfect is *fierem*, and the infinitive *fiērī*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres. S.</i>	<i>fiō, fis, fit</i>	<i>fiam, fiās, fiat</i>
<i>P.</i>	<i>finus, fitis, fiunt</i>	<i>fiāmus, fiātis, fiant</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>fiēbam, fiēbās, etc.</i>	<i>fierem, fierēs, etc.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>fiam, fiēs, etc.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>factus eram</i>	<i>factus essem</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>factus erō</i>	
IMPER.	<i>fi, fite, fitō, fitōte, fiuntō</i>	
INFIN.	<i>Pres. fierī</i>	<i>Perf. factus esse</i>
PART.	<i>Perf. factus</i>	<i>Ger. faciendus</i>
		<i>Fut. factum iri</i>

a. Most compounds of *faciō* with prepositions change *ā* to *ī* (present stem), or *ē* (supine stem), and are inflected regularly : as, —

cōficiō, cōficere, cōfeci, cōfectum, finish.
cōficior, cōfici, cōfectus.

b. Other compounds retain *a*, and have *-fiō* in the passive : as, *benefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum* ; pass. *benefiō, -fierī, -factus, benefit*. These retain the accent of the simple verb : as, *bene-fā'cia* (§ 19. *d*).

c. A few isolated forms of *-fiō* occur in other compounds : viz., —

<i>cōfit, it happens.</i>	<i>dēfit, it lacks.</i>	<i>infīt, he begins (to speak).</i>
<i>cōfiet</i>	<i>dēfiunt</i>	<i>infīunt</i>
<i>cōfiat</i>	<i>dēfiet</i>	<i>effieri, to be effected.</i>
<i>cōfieret</i>	<i>dēfiat</i>	<i>interfieri, to perish.</i>
<i>cōfierī</i>	<i>dēfieri</i>	<i>interfiat, let him perish.</i>

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

143. Some verbs have lost their Present stem, and use only tenses of the Perfect, in which they are inflected regularly. These are —

a. **Coepī**, *I began*; Infin. **coepisse**; Fut. Part. **coeptūrus**; Perf. Pass. Part. **coeptus**.

The passive is used with the passive infinitive: as, **coeptus sum vocārī**, *I began to be called*, but **coepī vocāre**, *I began to call*. For the present **incipiō** is used.

b. **Ōdī**, *I hate*; perfect participle **ōsus**, *hating or hated* (**perōsus**, *utterly hateful*), future participle **ōsūrus**, *likely to hate*.

c. **Memini**, *I remember*; with the Imperative **mementō**, **memento**; Part. **meminēns**.

NOTE. — **Ōdī** and **memini** have a perfect form with a present meaning, and are called *preteritive verbs*. **Nōvī** and **cōnsuēvī** (usually referred to **nōscō** and **cōnsuēscō**) are often used in the sense of *I know* (have learned), and *I am accustomed* (have become accustomed), as preteritive verbs. Many other verbs are occasionally used in the same way (see § 279. Remark).

144. Many verbs are found only in the present system. Such are **maereō**, **-ēre**, *be sorrowful* (cf. **maestus**, *sad*); **feriō**, **-īre**, *strike*.

In many the simple verb is incomplete, but the missing parts occur in its compounds: as, **vādō**, **vādere**, **invāsī**, **invāsum**.

Some verbs occur very commonly, but only in a few forms: as, —

a. **Āiō**, *I say*: —

INDIC. Pres. **āiō**, **ais**, **ait**; — — **āiunt**

Impf. **āiēbam** (**aībam**), **āiēbās**, etc.

SUBJ. Pres. **āiās**, **āiat**, **āiant**

IMPER. **ai**

PART. **āiēns**

b. **Inquam**, *I say* (used only, except in poetry, in direct quotations, like the English *quoth*, which is possibly from the same root): —

INDIC. Pres. **inquam**, **inquis**, **inquit**

inquimus, **inquitis** (late), **inquiunt**

Impf. **inquiēbat**

Fut. **inquiēs**, **-et**

Perf. **inquistī**, **inquit**

IMPER. **inque**, **inquitō**

c. The deponent **fāri**, *to speak*, forms the perfect tenses regularly : as, **fātus sum**, **eram**, etc. It has also —

INDIC.	Pres.	fātur , fantur
	Fut.	fābor , fābitur
IMPER.		fāre
INFIN.		fāri
PART.	Pres.	(dat.) fantī
	Perf.	fātus , <i>having spoken.</i>
	Ger.	fandus , <i>to be spoken of.</i>
GER.		fandī , -dō
SUP.		fātū

Several forms compounded with the prepositions **ex**, **prae**, **prō**, **inter**, occur : as, **praefātur**, **affāri**, **prōfātus**, **interfātur**, etc. The compound **infāns** is regularly used as a noun (*child*). **Infandus**, **nefandus**, are used as adjectives, *unspeakable*, *abominable*.

d. **Quaesō**, *I ask*, **beg** (original form of **quaerō**), has —

INDIC.	Pres.	quaesō , quaesumus
INFIN.		quaesere
PART.		quaesēns

e. **Ovāre**, *to triumph*, has the following : —

INDIC.	Pres.	ovat
SUBJ.	Pres.	ovet
	Impf.	ovāret
PART.		ovāns , ovātūrus , ovātus
GER.		ovandī

f. A few verbs are found chiefly in the Imperative : as, —

Pres.	sing.	salvē , plur. salvēte , <i>hail!</i> (from salvus , <i>safe and sound</i>). An infin. salvēre also occurs.
Pres.	sing.	avē (or havē), plur. avēte , Fut. avētō , <i>hail or farewell.</i>
Pres.	sing.	cedo , plur. cedite (cette), <i>give, tell.</i>
Pres.	sing.	apage! <i>begone!</i> (properly a Greek word).

g. **Queō**, *I can*, **nequeō**, *I cannot*, are conjugated like **eō**. They are rarely used except in the present.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Present.</i>			
queō	queam	nequeō (nōn queō)	nequeam
quis	queās	nōnquis	nequeās
quit	queat	nequit	nequeat
quimus	queāmus	nequimus	nequeāmus
quitis	queātis	nequitis	nequeātis
queunt	queant	nequeunt	nequeant
<i>Imperfect.</i>			
quibam	quirem	nequibam	nequirem
quibat	quiret	nequibat	nequiret
quibant	quirent	nequibant	nequirent
<i>Future.</i>			
quibō	—	—	—
quibunt	—	nequibunt	—
<i>Perfect.</i>			
quivī	—	nequivī	—
—	—	nequivisti	—
quivit	quiverit	nequivit	—
quivērunt	—	nequivērunt	—
<i>Pluperfect.</i>			
—	quissent	—	nequisset
INFINITIVE.			
quire	quivisse (quisse)	nequire	nequivisse
PARTICIPLES.			
quiēns, queuntis	—	nequiēns	—

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

145. Many verbs, from their meaning, appear only in the *third person singular*, the *infinitive*, and the *gerund*. These are called Impersonal Verbs, as having no personal subject. Their synopsis may be given as follows :—

CONJ. I.	II.	III.	IV.	PASS. CONJ. I.
<i>it is plain.</i>	<i>it is allowed.</i>	<i>it chances.</i>	<i>it results.</i>	<i>it is fought.</i>
cōnstat	licet	accidit	ēvenit	pūgnātur
cōnstābat	licēbat	accidēbat	ēveniēbat	pūgnābātur
cōnstābit	licēbit	[est accidet	ēveniet	pūgnābitur
cōnstitit	licuit, -itum	accidit	ēvenit	pūgnātum est
cōnstitērat	licuerat	acciderat	ēvēnerat	pūgnātum erat
cōnstitērit	licuerit	acciderit	ēvēnerit	pūgnātum erit
cōnset	liceat	accidat	ēveniat	pūgnētur
cōnstāret	licēret	accideret	ēveniret	pūgnārētur
cōnstitērit	licuerit	acciderit	ēvēnerit	pūgnātum sit
cōnstitisset	licuisset	accidisset	ēvēnisset	pūgnātum esset
cōnstāre	licēre	accidēre	ēvenire	pūgnārī
cōnstitisse	licuisse	accidisse	ēvēnisse	pūgnātum esse
-stātūrum esse	-itūrum esse	—	-tūrum esse	pūgnātum iri

146. Impersonal Verbs may be classified as follows : —

a. Verbs expressing the *operations of nature* and the *time of day* : as, *pluit, it rains* ; *ningit, it snows* ; *grandinat, it hails* ; *fulgurat, it lightens* ; *vesperāscit* (inceptive, § 167. a), *it grows late* ; *lūciscit hōc iam, it is getting light now*.

NOTE. — In these no subject is distinctly thought of. Sometimes, however, the verb is used personally with the name of a divinity as the subject : as, *Iūppiter tonat, Jupiter thunders*. In poetry other subjects are occasionally used : as, *fundae saxa pluunt, the slings rain stones*.

b. Verbs of *feeling*, where the person who is the proper subject becomes the object, as being himself affected by the feeling expressed in the verb (§ 221. b). Such are *miseret, it grieves* ; *paenitet* (*poenitet*), *it repents* ; *piget, it disgusts* ; *pudet, it shames* ; *taedet, it wearies* : as, *miseret mē, I pity* (it distresses me).

NOTE. — Such verbs often have also a passive form : as, *misereor, I pity* (am moved to pity) ; and occasionally other parts : as, *paenitūrus* (as from † *paeniō*), *paenitendus, pudendus, pertaesum est, pigitum est*.

c. Verbs which have a *phrase* or *clause* as their subject (§§ 270. a, 330, 332. a) : as, —

accidit, contingit, ēvenit, obtingit, obvenit, fit, it happens.	
libet, it pleases.	dēlectat, iuvat. it delights.
licet, it is permitted.	necessae est, } it is needful.
certum est, it is resolved.	oportet, }
cōnstat, it is clear.	praestat, it is better.
decet, it is becoming.	interest, rēfert, it concerns.

NOTE. — Many of these verbs may be used personally. *Libet* and *licet* have also the passive forms *libitum* (*licitum*) *est*, etc. The participles *libēns* and *licēns* are used as adjectives.

d. The *passive of intransitive verbs* is very often used impersonally: as, *pūgnātur*, *there is fighting* (it is fought); *itur*, *some one goes* (it is gone); *parcitur mihi*, *I am spared* (it is spared to me, see § 230).

Periphrastic Forms.

147. The following periphrastic forms are found in the inflection of the verb : —

a. The so-called “Periphrastic Conjugations” (see § 129).

b. The tenses of completed action in the passive formed by the tenses of *esse* with the perfect participle: as, *amātus est*.

c. The future infinitive passive, formed as follows : —

1. By the infinitive passive of *eō*, *go*, used impersonally with the supine in *-um*: *amātum iri*.

2. By *fore* (or *futūrum esse*), with the perfect participle (as *amātus fore*).

3. By *fore* with *ut* and the subjunctive (cf. § 288. *f*).

NOTE.

Origin and History of Verb-Forms.

The forms that make up the conjugation of a verb are composed of formations from a root, originally separate, but gradually grouped together, and afterwards supplemented by new formations made on old lines to supply deficiencies. Some of these forms were inherited, already made, by the Latin language; others were developed in the course of the history of the language itself.

7. PARTICLES.

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are called PARTICLES. In their origin they are (1) *case-forms*, actual or extinct, (2) *compounds* and *phrases*, or (3) meaningless *exclamations*.

I. ADVERBS.

1. Derivation.

148. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives as follows : —

a. From adjectives of the *first and second declensions*, by changing the characteristic vowel of the stem to *-ē* : as, *cārē*, *dearly*, from *cārus*, *dear* (stem *cāro-*).

b. From adjectives of the *third declension* by adding *-ter* to the stem. Stems in *nt-* (nom. *-ns*) lose the *-t*. All others are treated as *i*-stems. Thus, —

fortiter, *bravely*, from *fortis* (stem *forti-*), *brave*.

ācriter, *eagerly*, from *ācer* (stem *ācri-*), *eager*.

vigilanter, *watchfully*, from *vigilāns* (stem *vigilant-*).

prūdentē, *prudently*, from *prūdēns* (stem *prūdent-*).

aliter, *otherwise*, from *alius* (old stem *ali-*).

c. Some adjectives of the first and second declensions have adverbs of both forms (*-ē* and *-ter*). Thus, *dūrus*, *hard*, *dūrē* and *dūriter*.

d. The *neuter accusative* of adjectives and pronouns is often used as an adverb : as, *multum*, *much*; *facilē*, *easily*; *quid*, *why*.

So, regularly in the comparative degree : as, *ācrius*, *more keenly* (positive *ācriter*) ; *facilius*, *more easily* (positive *facilē*).

2. Classification.

149. Adverbs are classified as follows : —

a. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

hīc, *here*.

hūc, *hither*.

hinc, *hence*.

hāc, *by this way*.

b. ADVERBS OF TIME.

quandō ? *when* ? (interrog.) ; *cum* (*quom*), *when* (relat.).

c. ADVERBS OF DEGREE OR CAUSE.

quam, *how, as*; **tam**, *so*; **quamvis**, *however much, although*; **quōmodō**, *how*.

d. INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.

an, **-ne**, **anne**, **utrum**, **utrumne**, **num**, *whether*.

e. NEGATIVE PARTICLES.

nōn, *not* (in simple denial); **haud** (**hau**, **haut**), **minimē**, *not* (in contradiction); **nē**, *not* (in prohibition); **nēve**, **neu**, *nor*; **nēdum**, *much less*.

f. ADVERBS OF MANNER (see § 148).

g. NUMERAL ADVERBS (see § 96).

3. Peculiar Uses of Adverbs.

150. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative :
as, —

nēmō nōn audiet, *every one will hear* (nobody will not hear).

a. Many compounds of which **nōn** is the first part express an *indefinite* affirmative : **as**, —

nōnnūllus, *some*; **nōnnūllī** (= aliquī), *some few*.

nōnnihil (= aliquid), *something*.

nōnnēmō (= aliquot), *sundry persons*.

nōnnumquam (= aliquotiēns), *sometimes*.

necnōn, *also* (nor not).

b. Two negatives of which the second is **nōn** (belonging to the predicate) express a *universal* affirmative : **as**, —

nēmō nōn, **nūllus nōn**, *nobody* [does] *not*, *i.e. everybody* [does] (cf. **nōnnēmō**, *above, not nobody, i.e. somebody*).

nihil nōn, *everything*.

numquam nōn, *never not, i.e. always* (cf. **nōnnumquam**, *above, not never, i.e. sometimes*).

151. The following adverbs require special notice : —

a. **Etiam** (**et iam**), *also, even*, is stronger than **quoque**, *also*, and usually precedes the emphatic word, while **quoque** follows it : **as**, —

nōn verbis solum sed etiam vī (Verr. II. ii, 64), *not only by words, but also by force*.

hōc quoque malefīcium (Rosc. Am. 118), *this crime too*.

b. Nunc (for †*num-ce*) means definitely *now*, in the immediate present, and is not used as in English of past time. *Iam* means *now*, *already*, *at length*, *presently*, and includes a reference to previous time through which the state of things described has been or will be reached. It may be used of *any* time. With negatives it means (*no*) *longer*.

Tum, *then*, is correlative to *cum*, *when*, and may be used of any time. *Tunc*, *then*, at that time, is a strengthened form of *tum* †*tum-ce*, cf. *nunc*). Thus, —

ut iam antea dixi, as *I have already said before*.

sī iam satis aetatis atque roboris haberet (Rosc. Am. 149), *if he had attained a suitable age and strength* (lit. *if he now had*, as he will by and by).

nōn est iam lēnitātī locus, *there is no longer room for mercy*.

quod iam erat institūtum, *which had come to be a practice* (had now been established).

nunc quidem dēlēta est, *tunc florēbat* (Lael. 13), *now ('tis true) she [Greece] is ruined, then she was in her glory*.

tum cum regnābat, *at the time when he reigned*.

c. Certō means *certainly*; *certē* (usually), *at any rate*: as, *certō sciō*, *I know for a certainty*; *ego certē*, *I at any rate*.

d. Primum means *first*, "*firstly*" (*first in order* or *for the first time*), and implies a series of events or acts. *Prīmō* means *at first*, as opposed to *afterwards*, giving prominence merely to the difference of time: as, —

hōc primum sentiō, *this I hold in the first place*.

aedēs primō ruere rēbāmur, *at first we thought the house was falling*.

In enumerations, *primum* (or *primō*) is often followed by *deinde*, *secondly*, in the next place, or by *tum*, *then*, or by both in succession. *Deinde* may be several times repeated (*secondly*, *thirdly*, etc.). The series is often closed by *dēnique* or *postrēmō*, *lastly*, *finally*. Thus, —

primum dē genere bellī, deinde dē māgnitudine, tum dē imperātōre dēligendō (Manil.), *first of the kind of war, next of its magnitude, then of the choice of a commander*.

e. Quidem, *to be sure*, gives emphasis, and often has a concessive meaning, especially when followed by *sed*, *autem*, etc.: as, —

hōc quidem vidēre licet (Lael. 54), *THIS surely one may see*. [Emphatic.] (*sēcūritās*) *speciē quidem blanda, sed reāpse multis locis repudianda* (id. 47), (*tranquility*) *in appearance, 'tis true, attractive, but in reality to be rejected for many reasons*. [Concessive.]

Nē . . . **quidem** means *not even* or *not . . . either*. The emphatic word or words must stand between **nē** and **quidem**.

senex **nē** quod spēret **quidem** habet (C. M. 68), *an old man has NOT anything to hope for* **EVEN**.

sed **nē** Iugurtha **quidem** quiētus erat (Jug. 51), *but Jugurtha was not quiet* **EITHER**.

II. PREPOSITIONS.

152. Prepositions are regularly used either with the Accusative or with the Ablative.

a. The following are used with the Accusative : —

ad , to.	extrā , outside.	post , after.
adversus , against.	in , into.	praeter , beyond.
adversum , towards.	infrā , below.	prope , near.
ante , before.	inter , among.	propter , on account of.
apud , at, near.	intrā , inside.	secundum , next to.
circā , around.	iuxtā , near.	sub , under.
circum , around.	ob , on account of.	suprā , above.
circiter , about.	penes , in the power.	trāns , across.
cis , citrā, this side.	per , through.	ultrā , on the further side.
contra , against.	pōne , behind.	versus , towards.
ergā , towards.		

b. The following are used with the Ablative : —

ā , āb , aba , away from, by.	in , in.
absque , without, but for.	prae , in comparison with.
cōram , in presence of.	prō , in front of, for.
cum , with.	sine , without.
dē , from.	sub , under.
ē , ex , out of.	tenus , up to, as far as.

c. The following may be used with either the Accusative or the Ablative, but with a difference in meaning : —

in , into, in.	sub , under.
subter , beneath.	super , above.

In and **sub**, when followed by the accusative, indicate *motion to*, when by the ablative, *rest in*, a place : as, —

vēnit in aedēs, *he came into the house* ; erat in aedibus, *he was in the house*.

sub ilice cōsēderat, *he had seated himself under an ilex*.

sub lēgēs mittere orbem, *to subject the world to laws* (to send the world under laws).

153. The uses of the Prepositions are various, and are explained in the dictionaries.

III. CONJUNCTIONS.

154. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences. They are of two classes : —

a. CO-ORDINATE, connecting co-ordinate or similar constructions (see § 180. *a*). These are —

1. Copulative or disjunctive, implying a connection or opposition of thought as well as of words : as, **et**, *and*.
2. Adversative, implying a connection of words, but a contrast in thought : as, **sed**, *but*.
3. Causal, introducing a cause or reason : as, **nam**, *for*.
4. Illative, denoting an inference : as, **igitur**, *therefore*.

b. SUBORDINATE, connecting a subordinate or dependent clause with that on which it depends (see § 180. *b*). These are —

1. Conditional, denoting a condition or hypothesis : as, **sī**, *if*; **nisi**, *unless*.
2. Comparative, implying comparison as well as condition : as, **āc sī**, *as if*.
3. Concessive, denoting a concession or admission : as, **quamquam**, *although* (lit. *however* much it may be true that, etc.).
4. Temporal : as, **postquam**, *after*.
5. Consecutive, expressing result : as, **ut**, *so that*.
6. Final, expressing purpose : as, **ut**, *in order that*; **nē**, *that not*.

155. Conjunctions are more numerous and more accurately distinguished in Latin than in English. For classified lists, see larger grammar.

156. The following are the principal conjunctions whose meaning requires to be noticed :—

a. **Et**, *and*, simply connects words or clauses; **-que** combines more closely into one connected whole. **-que** is always enclitic to the word connected or to the first or second of two or more words connected. Thus, —

cum coniugibus et liberis, *with [their] wives and children.*
 ferrō ignique, *with fire and sword.* [Not as separate things, but as the combined means of devastation.]

aquā et igni interdictus, *forbidden the use of water and fire.* [In a legal formula, where they are considered separately.]

Atque (āc) adds with some emphasis or with some implied reflection on the word added. Hence it is often equivalent to *and so*, *and yet*, *and besides*. But these distinctions depend very much upon the feeling of the speaker, and are often untranslatable: as,—

omnia honesta atque inhonesta, *everything honorable and dishonorable*
 (too, without the slightest distinction).

ūsus atque disciplīna, *practice and theory beside* (the more important or less expected).

atque ego crēdō, *and yet I believe* (for my part).

In the second of two connected ideas, *and not* is expressed by **neque** (nec): as,—

neque vērō hōc solum dixit, *and he not only said this.*

Atque (āc), in the sense of *as*, *than*, is also used after words of comparison and likeness: as,—

nōn secus (aliter) āc sī, *not otherwise than if.*

prō eō āc dēbuī, *as was my duty* (in accordance as I ought).

b. Sed and the more emphatic **vērūm** or **vērō**, *but*, introduce something in opposition to what precedes, especially after negatives (*not this . . . but* something else). **At** introduces with emphasis a new point in an argument, but is also used like the others.

At enim almost always introduces a supposed objection which is presently to be overthrown. **At** is more rarely used alone in this sense. **Autem**, *however*, *now*, is the weakest of the adversatives, and often has hardly any adversative force perceptible. **Atqui**, *however*, *now*, sometimes introduces an objection and sometimes a fresh step in the reasoning. **Quod sī**, *but if*, *and if*, *now if*, is used to continue an argument. **Ast** is old or poetic and is equivalent to **at**.

NOTE.—A concessive is often followed by an adversative either in a co-ordinate or a subordinate clause: as, **etiāmsī quod scribās nōn habēbis, scribitō tamen** (Cic.), *though you have nothing to write, still write all the same.*

c. Aut, *or*, excludes one alternative; **vel** and **-ve** give a choice between two. But this distinction is sometimes neglected. Thus,—

sed quis ego sum aut quae est in mē facultās, but who am I, or what special capacity have I? [Here **vel** could not be used, because in fact a negative is implied and both alternatives are excluded.]

quam tenui aut nullā potius valētudine, what feeble health [he had], or rather none at all. [Here **vel** might be used, but would refer only to the expression, not to the fact.]

vita tālis fuit vel fortunā vel gloriā, his life was such either in respect to fortune or fame (whichever way you look at it).

sī propinquos habeant imbēcilliores vel animo vel fortunā, if they have relatives beneath them either in spirit or in fortune (in either respect, for example).

cum cogniti sunt et aut deorum aut regum filii inventi, sons either of gods or of kings. [Here one case would exclude the other.]

Sive (**seu**) is properly used in disjunctive conditions (*if either . . . or if*), but also with alternative words and clauses, especially with two names for the same thing : as, —

sive arridens sive quod ita putaret (De Or. i. 91), *either laughingly or because he really thought so.*

Vel is often used with no alternative force : as, —

vel minimus, the very least.

d. Nam and **namque**, *for*, usually introduce a real reason, formally expressed, for a previous statement ; **enim** (always postpositive), a less important explanatory circumstance put in by the way ; **etenim** (*for, you see; for, you know*, and its negative **neque enim** introduce something self-evident or needing no proof.

(*ea vita*) *quae est sola vita nominanda. nam dum sumus in his inclusis compagibus corporis munere quodam necessitatis et gravi opere perfungimur. est enim animus caelestis, etc.* (Cat. Maj. 77).

harum trium sententiarum nulli prorsus assentior. nec enim illa prima vera est, for of course that first one is n't true.

e. Ergo, *therefore*, is used of things proved formally, but often has a weakened force. **Igitur**, *then, accordingly*, is weaker than **ergo** and is used in passing from one stage of an argument to another. **Itaque**, *therefore, accordingly, and so*, is used in proofs or inferences from the nature of things rather than in formal logical proof.

All of these are often used merely to resume a train of thought broken by a digression or parenthesis. **Idcirco**, *for this reason, on this account*, is regularly followed (or preceded) by a correlative : as,

quia, quod, si, ut, nō, and refers to the special point introduced by the correlative.

nē aegrī quidem quia nōn omnēs convalēscunt, idcirco ars nulla medicinae est.

malum mihi videtur mors. est miserum igitur, quoniam malum. certē.

ergo et ei quibus evenit iam ut morerentur et ei quibus eventurum est miseri. mihi ita videtur. nemō ergo nōn miser. (Tusc. i. 9.)

meministis enim cum illius nefarii gladiatoris vocēs percrebuissem quās, etc.—tum igitur (Mur. 50).

f. Quia, because, regularly introduces a fact; *quod,* either a fact or a statement. *Quoniam* (for *quom iam*), *inasmuch as, since, when now, now that,* has reference to motives, excuses, or justifications, and the like. *Quandō,* *since,* is mostly archaic or late.

possunt quia posse videntur, they can because they think they can.

locus est a me quoniam ita Murena voluit retractandus (Mur. 54), I must review the point, since Murena has so wished.

me reprehendis quod idem defendam (as he had not) quod lege punierim (Mur. 67), you blame me because [as you say] I defend the same charge which I have punished by law.

In the denial of a reason, *nōn quō* is used as well as *nōn quod, nōn quia,* and *nōn quā,* but not *nōn quoniam.* Thus,—

nōn quia multis debeo . . . sed quia saepe concurrunt aliquōrum bene de me meritōrum inter ipsos contentiōnēs (Planc. 78), not because I am indebted to many, but because, etc.

nōn quā parī virtūte et voluntāte alii fuerint, sed tantam causam nōn habuerunt (Phil. vii. 6), not that there were not others of equal courage and good-will, but they had not so much reason.

g. Cum (quom), when, is always a relative, and is often correlative with *tum,* (see *h. 1,* below); *quandō,* *when* (rarely *since*), is used as interrogative, relative, and indefinite: as, *quandō? hodiē, when? to-day; si quandō, if ever.*

h. 1. Conjunctions, especially those of relative origin, frequently have a correlative in another clause, to which they correspond: as,—
ut sementem feceris, ita metēs, as you sow, so shall you reap.

2. Often the same conjunction is repeated in two co-ordinate clauses. Examples are—

et . . . et, both . . . and.

modo . . . modo, now . . . now.

nunc . . . nunc, now . . . now.

i. The concessives (**etsī**, **quamvis**, etc., *although*) may introduce either a fact or a mere supposition, and are often followed by the correlative **tamen**, *yet*, *nevertheless*; **quamquam** regularly introduces an admitted fact and not a mere supposition.

Quamquam (and rarely **etsī**, **tametsī**) in the sense of *though* (and *yet*, *but*, *however*) may also introduce an independent statement made to limit or correct the preceding: as, —

ille volt diū vīvere, hīc diū vīxit, **quamquam**, ō dī bonī, quid est in hominis vītā diū? (Cat. M. 68), *the one wishes to live long, the other has lived long, though (after all) Good Heavens! what is there that is long in the life of man?*

k. **Autem**, **enim**, and **vērō** are postpositive, *i.e.* they always follow one or more words of their clause; so, generally, **igitur** and often **tamen**.

INTERJECTIONS.

Ō, **ēn**, **ecce**, **ehem**, **papae**, **vāh** (of *astonishment*).

iō, **ēvae**, **ēvoe**, **euhoe** (of *joy*).

heu, **ēheu**, **vae**, *alas* (of *sorrow*).

heus, **eho**, **ehodum**, *ho* (of *calling*); **st**, *hist*.

ēia, **euge** (of *praise*).

prō (of *attestation*): as, **prō pudor**, *shame!*

FORMATION OF WORDS.

NOTE.—All formation of words is originally a process of composition. An element significant in itself is added to another significant element, and thus the meaning of the two is combined.

I. ROOTS AND STEMS.

157. Roots¹ are of two kinds:—

1. *Verbal*, expressing ideas of action or condition (sensible phenomena).

2. *Pronominal*, expressing ideas of position and direction.

¹ For the distinction between Roots and Stems, see §§ 21, 22.

Stems are divided into (1) Noun- (including Adjective-) stems, and (2) Verb-stems.

158. Words are formed by inflection :—

1. From roots inflected as stems, —

a. Without change : as, **duc-is** (**dux**), DUC ; **nec-is** (**nex**) ; **is**, **id**. So in verbs : as, **est**, **fert**, **ēst**.

b. With change of the root-vowel : as, **lūc-is** (**lūx**), LUC ; **pāc-is** (**pāx**). So in verbs : **ī-s** for **†eis**, from **eō**, **īre** ; **fātur**, from **for**, **fārī**.

NOTE. — It is impossible to say whether the form of root in *a* or in *b* is the original one. But for convenience the above order is adopted.

c. With reduplication : as, **fur-fur**, **mar-mor**, **mur-mur**. So in verbs : as, **si-stō** (root STA).

2. From derived stems ; see § 159.

II. SUFFIXES.

159. Stems are derived from roots or from other stems by means of *suffixes*. These are —

1. Primary : added to the root, or (later by analogy) to verb-stems.

2. Secondary : added to a noun- or adjective-stem.

Both primary and secondary suffixes are for the most part pronominal roots (§ 157. 2), but a few are of doubtful origin. Thus a word regularly consists of a verbal root and one or more pronominal roots and inflectional terminations.

1. Primary Suffixes.

160. The words in Latin formed immediately from the root by means of Primary suffixes are few.

a. Inherited words so formed were mostly further developed by the addition of other suffixes, as we might make an adjective *lone-ly-some-ish*, meaning nothing more than *lone*, *lonely*, or *lonesome*.

b. By such accumulation of suffixes, new compound suffixes were formed which crowded out even the old types of derivation : thus, —

A word like **mēns, mentis**, by the suffix **ōn-** (nom. **-ō**) gave **mentiō**, and this being divided into **men** + **tiō**, gave rise to a new type of abstract nouns in **-tiō** (phonetically **-siō**): as, **lēgātiō**, *embassy*.

A word like **audītor**, by the suffix **io-** (nom. **-ius**), gave rise to adjectives like **audītōrius**, of which the neuter is used to denote the place where the action of the verb is performed. Hence **-tōrium**, N., becomes a regular suffix (§ 164. i. 5).

So in English such a word as *mechanically* gives a suffix **-ally**, making *telegraphically*, though there is no such word as *telegraphical*.

c. Examples of primary suffixes are —

1. Vowel suffixes: as, —

a, found in nouns and adjectives of a- and o-stems: as, **sonus, ludus, vagus, scrība, toga** (root **TEG**).

2. Suffixes with a consonant: as, —

ta (in the form **to-**) in the regular perfect passive participle, as **tēctus, tēctum**; sometimes with an active sense, as in **pōtus, prānsus**; and found in a few words not recognized as participles, as **putus** (cf. **pūrus**), **altus** (**alō**).

va (commonly **uo-**) with an active or passive meaning, as in **ecus, arvum, cōnspicius, exiguus, vacivus** (**vacuus**).

2. Significant Endings.

161. Both primary and secondary suffixes, especially in the form of compound suffixes, were used in Latin with more or less consciousness of their meaning. They may therefore be called Significant Endings.

They form: 1. Nouns of Agency; 2. Names of Action; 3. Adjectives (active or passive).

III. DERIVATION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

1. Nouns of Agency.

162. Nouns of Agency properly denote the *agent* or *doer* of an action. But they include many words in which the idea of agency has entirely faded out, and also many words used as adjectives. Their significant endings are —

a. -tor (-sor), M., -trix, F., added to roots or verb-stems to denote the *agent* or *doer* of an action.

canō, *sing* (CAN, supine †cantum); cantor, *singer*; cantrix, *songstress*.

tondeō, *shear* (TOND as root, sup. tōnsum); tōnsor, tōnstrix, *hair-cutter*.

By analogy -tor is sometimes added to noun-stems as if stems of lost verbs : as, viātor, *traveller*, from *via*, *way* (but cf. inviō).

b. t- (originally ta-, cf. § 160. c), c., added to verb-stems making nouns in -es (-itis, -etis, stem -it-, -et-) descriptive of a character : as, —

teges (verb-stem tege-, cf. tegō, *cover*), *a coverer, a mat*.

c. -ō (gen. -ōnis, stem ōn-), M., added to stems conceived as verb-stems (but perhaps originally noun-stems) to indicate a person employed in some specific art or trade : as, —

gerō (GES in gerō, gerere, *carry*, but compare -ger in armiger, *squire*), *a carrier*.

com-bibō (BIB as root in bibō, bibere, *drink*), *a pot-companion*.

2. Names of Actions.

163. Names of Actions are derived (1) really or apparently from roots and verb-stems (*primary*) or (2) from noun-stems (*secondary*).

NOTE. — These easily pass into pure Concrete nouns denoting the result, means, or instrument of the action. Compare *an apparition, a congregation, a rainfall, a large following, a drive of logs*.

1. Real or Apparent Primary Formations.

a. -or (st. ōr-, earlier ōs-), M., -ēs (gen. -is, st. i-, earlier es-), F., -us (st. ēs-, or os-), N., added to roots make names of actions : as, —

timeō, *fear* (verb); tim-or, *fear* (noun).

sedeō, *sit*; sēd-ēs, *seat*.

decet, *it is becoming*; dec-us, *grace, beauty*.

NOTE. — Many nouns of this class are formed by analogy from imaginary roots : as, facinus (from a supposed root FACIN).

b. -iō (st. iōn-), -tiō (st. tiōn-), -tūra (st. tūra-), F., -tus (st. tu-), M., (phonetically -siō, -sūra, -sus), apparently added to roots or verb-stems, make *verbal abstracts*.

legō, enroll; **leg-iō** (an enrolling, the thing enrolled), a legion.

regō, direct; **reg-iō**, a direction, a region.

inserō (SA), implant; **insi-tiō**, grafting.

vocō, call; **vocā-tiō**, a calling.

mōlior, toil; **mōli-tiō**, a toiling.

pingō (PIG), paint; **pic-tūra**, the art of painting, a painting.

sentiō, feel; **sēn-sus**, feeling, perception, a feeling.

fruor, enjoy (for †**fruguor**); **frūc-tus**, enjoyment, fruit, a fruit.

c. **-men**, **-mentum**, **-mōnium**, N., **-mōnia**, F., apparently added to roots or verb-stems denote ACTS, or MEANS and RESULTS of acts.

agō, root AG, lead; **āg-men**, line of march, a company.

regi- (stem seen in **regō**, direct); { **regi-men**, rule.
regi-mentum, rule.

So **colu-men**, pillar; **mō-men**, movement; **nō-men**, name.

fruor, enjoy; **frū-mentum**, grain.

testor, witness; **testi-mōnium**, testimony.

queror, complain; **queri-mōnia**, complaint.

Also **flā-men** (M.), a priest (**flō**, blow, of the sacrificial fire).

REMARK. — **-mōnium** and **-mōnia** are also used as secondary, forming nouns from other nouns and from adjectives: as, **sancti-mōnia**, sanctity (**sanctus**, holy); **mātri-mōnium**, marriage (**māter**, mother).

d. **-bulum**, **-culum**, **-brum**, **-crum**, **-trum**, N., added to verb-stems or roots (rarely to noun-stems), denote MEANS, INSTRUMENT, or PLACE: as, —

pāscō, feed; **pā-bulum**, fodder.

stō, stand; **sta-bulum**, stall (standing-place).

tūs (gen. **tūris**), incense; **tūri-bulum**, a censer.

vehō, carry; **vehi-culum**, wagon.

piō, purify; **piā-culum**, an expiation.

flō, blow; **flā-bra** (pl.), blasts.

candēla, a candle; **candēlā-brum**, a candlestick.

sepeliō, bury; **sepul-crum**, tomb (place for burying).

claudō, shut; **claus-trum**, a bar.

A few Masculines and Feminines of the same formation occur as nouns and adjectives: as, —

for, speak; **fā-bula**, tale.

rīdēō, laugh; **rīdi-culus**, laughable.

faciō, *make*; **fa-ber**, *smith*.

lateō, *hide*; **late-bra**, *hiding-place*.

terō, *bore*; **tere-bra**, *auger*.

mulgeō, *milk*; **mūlc-tra**, *milk-pail*.

ūrō, *burn*; **Aus-ter**, *South wind*.

2. Secondary Formations.

e. **-ia**, **-tia** (**-iēs**, **-tiēs**), **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tūdō**, *F.*, are added to adjective stems and a few to nouns to make abstracts. So **-dō** and **-gō**, *F.*, but associated with verbs, and apparently added to verb-stems. Thus, —

audāx, *bold*; **audāc-ia**, *boldness*. So, **fidūc-ia**, *confidence* († **fidūx**).

prūdēns, *wise*; **prudent-ia**, *wisdom*.

superbus, *proud*; **superb-ia**, *pride*.

trīstis, *sad*; **trīsti-tia**, *sadness*.

pauper, *poor*; **pauper-iēs**, *poverty*.

sēgnis, *lazy*; **sēgni-tiēs**, *laziness*.

bonus, *good*; **boni-tās**, *goodness*.

cīvis, *citizen*; **cīvi-tās**, *citizenship*.

senex, *old*; **senec-tūs**, *age*.

sōlus, *alone*; **sōli-tūdō**, *solitude*.

dulcis, *sweet*; **dulcē-dō**, *sweetness* (probably from a lost stem **dulcē**, cf. **dulcē-scō**).

cupiō, *I desire*; **cupi-dō** (as if from stem **cupī**-, cf. **cupī-vī**).

lumbus, *the loin*; **lumbā-gō**, *lumbago* (as if from † **lumbō**, *āre*).

rubus, *bramble* (red bush); **rūbi-gō**, *rust* (redness).

prūriō, *itch*; **prūri-gō**, *itching*.

Stems ending in **o**- or **a**- lose these vowels before **-ia** (as **superb-ia**), and change them to **i** before **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tia** (as **boni-tās**, above).

Consonant-stems often insert **-i** before **-tās**: as, **loquāx** (stem **loquāc**-), **loquāci-tās**; but **hones-tās**, **māies-tās** (as if from old adjectives in **-es**), **ūber-tās**, **volup-tās**. **o** after **i** is changed to **e**: as, **pīus** (stem **pīo**-), **pīe-tās**; **socius**, **socie-tās** (see § 11. *d*).

f. **-ium**, **-tium**, added to noun- and perhaps verb-stems, form *neuter abstracts*, which easily pass into *concretes* denoting **OFFICES** and **GROUPS**: as, —

hospes (gen. **hospit-is**), *a guest*; **hospit-ium**, *hospitality*, *an inn*.

servus, *a slave*; **servi-tium**, *slavery*, *the slave class*.

collēga, a colleague; *collēg-ium*, collegueship, a college.

auspex, a soothsayer; *auspic-ium*, soothsaying, an omen.

gaudeō, rejoice; *gaud-ium*, joy.

benefaciō, benefit; *benefic-ium*, a kindness (but cf. *beneficus*).

dē-siderō, miss (from † *dē-sidēs*, out of place, of missing soldiers);
dēsider-ium, longing.

effugiō, escape; *effug-ium*, an escape (cf. *profugus*).

ad verbum, [added] to a verb; *adverb-ium*, an adverb.

inter-lūnās, between moons; *interlūn-ium*, time of new moon.

rēgis fuga, flight of a king; *rēgifug-ium*, flight of kings.

Vowel-stems lose their vowel before *-ium*, as *collēg-ium*, from *collēga*.

Less commonly *-nia*, F., *-nium*, *-lium*, *-cinium*, N., are added to noun-stems, but confused with verb-stems: as, —

pecū, cattle; *pecū-nia*, property consisting of cattle, money
(cf. *chattels*).

conticēscō, hush; *contici-nium*, the hush of night.

augeō, increase; *auxi-lium*, help.

pecū, cattle; *pecū-lium*, private property (cf. *pecūlor*, implying
a noun † *pecūlum*).

lātrō, robber; *lātrō-cinium*, robbery (cf. *lātrōcinor*, rob, implying
an adj. † *lātrōcinus*).

3. Adjectives.

164. Derivative adjectives are *Nominal* (from nouns or adjectives) or *Verbal* (as from roots or verb-stems).

I. NOMINAL.

a. *-ulus* (*-a*, *-um*) (after a vowel *-olus*), *-culus*, *-ellus*, *-illus*, make an important class of adjectives, usually appropriated to one gender, that of the Primitive, and used as DIMINUTIVE NOUNS: as, —

rīvus, a brook; *rīv-ulus*, a streamlet.

gladius, a sword; *gladi-olus*, a small sword.

filius, a son; *fili-olus*, a little son.

filia, a daughter; *fili-ola*, a little daughter.

ātrium, a hall; *ātri-olum*, a little hall.

homō, a man; *homun-culus*, a dwarf.

auris, *an ear*; **auri-cula**, *a little ear*.

mūnus, N., *a gift*; **mūnus-culum**, *a little gift*.

†**puera** (cf. **puer**, *a boy*); **puella** (for †**puer-ula**), *a girl*.

cōdex, *a block*; **cōdic-illī**, *writing-tablets*.

miser, *wretched*; **mis-ellus**, *rather wretched*.

liber, *a book*; **lib-ellus**, *a little book*.

aureus (-a, -um), *golden*; **aure-olus** (-a, -um), *golden*.

parvus (-a, -um), *little*; **parv-olus** (later **parv-ulus**), *very small*.

māior (old **māiōs**), *greater*; **māius-culus**, *somewhat larger*.

REMARK.—**-ciō**, added to stems in **n-**, has the same diminutive force, but is added to masculines only: as, **homun-ciō**, *a dwarf* (from **homō**, *a man*).

b. **-adēs**, M., **-ās**, F., **-idēs**, **-idēs**, M., **-is**, **-ēis**, F., **-ēus**, **-eus**, M., are added to proper names, forming PATRONYMICS, to indicate *descent or relationship*.

These, originally Greek adjectives, have almost all become nouns in Latin: as,—

Tyndareus: **Tyndar-idēs**, *Castor or Pollux*; **Tyndar-is** (gen. **-idis**), *Helen, daughter of Tyndarus*.

Atlās: **Atlanti-adēs**, *Mercury*; **Atlant-idēs** (Gr. pl.), *the Pleiads*.

Scipiō: **Scipi-adēs**, *son of Scipio*.

Anchisēs: **Anchisi-adēs**, *Aeneas*.

Thēseus: **Thēs-idēs**, *son of Theseus*.

Tydeus: **Tyđ-idēs**, *Diomedes, son of Tydeus*.

Oileus: **Āiāx Oil-ēus**, *son of Oileus*.

Thaumās: **Thaumanti-as** (gen. **-adis**), *Iris, daughter of Thaumās*.

Hesperus: **Hesper-idēs** (from **Hesper-is**, **idis**), F. pl., *the daughters of Hesperus, the Hesperides*.

c. **ānus**, **-ēnus**, **-īnus**; **-ās**, **-ēnsis**, **-acus** (**-ācus**), **-icus**; **-ēus** (generally shortened to **-ēus**), **-ēius**, **-icius**, form adjectives with the sense of BELONGING TO.

1. So from common nouns: as,—

mōns (st. **monti-**), *mountain*; **mont-ānus**, *of the mountains*.

ante lūcem, *before light*; **antelūc-ānus**, *before daylight*.

egēō, *lack*; **eg-ēnus**, *needy*.

terra, *earth*; **terr-ēnus**, *earthly*.

collis, *hill*; **coll-īnus**, *of a hill*.

libertus, *one's freedman*; **libert-īnus**, *of the class of freedmen*.

vitulus, *a calf*; **vitul-īna** (sc. **carō**), *veal*.

quis, *who?* **cūi-ās**, *of what country?*

īnfinus, *lowest*; **īnfin-ās**, *of the lowest rank*.

forum, *a market-place*; **for-ēnsis**, *of a market-place, or the Forum*.

merum, *pure wine*; **mer-ācus**, *pure*.

cīvis, *a citizen*; **cīv-icus**, *civic, of a citizen*.

fēmina, *a woman*; **fēmin-eus**, *of a woman, feminine*.

lāc, *milk* (st. **lacti-**); **lact-eus**, *milky*.

plēbēs, *the commons*; **plēb-ēius**, *of the commons, plebeian*.

pater, *father*; **patr-icius**, *patrician*.

2. But especially from proper nouns (names of places, peoples, and persons) denoting BELONGING TO OR COMING FROM : as, —

Rōma : **Rōm-ānus**, *Roman*.

Sulla : **Sull-ānī**, *Sulla's veterans*.

Cŷzicus : **Cŷzic-ēnī**, *Cyzicenes, people of Cyzicus*.

Liguria : **Ligur-īnus**, *of Liguria*.

Arpīnum : **Arpīn-ās**, *of Arpinum* (cf. **Samnium** : **Samnīs**, gen. **-ītis**, *a Samnite*).

Sicilia : **Sicili-ēnsis**, *Sicilian*.

Īlum, *Troy*; **Īli-acus**, *Trojan* (a Greek form).

Platō : **Platōn-icus**, *Platonic*.

Aquila : **Aquil-ēius**, *a Roman name*; **Aquilēia**, *a town in Italy*.

3. Many derivative adjectives with these endings have by usage become nouns. Thus, —

silva, *woods*; **Silv-ānus**, M., *a god of the woods*.

membrum, *limb*; **membr-āna**, F., *skin*.

• **Aemilia** (**gēns**) ; **Aemill-ānus**, M., *name of Scipio Africanus*.

lanius, *butcher*; **lāni-ēna**, F., *a butcher's stall*.

† **Aufidius** (**Aufidus**), M.; **Aufidi-ēnus**, *a Roman name*.

incola, *an inhabitant*; **inquil-īnus**, M., *a lodger*.

caecus, *blind*; **Caec-īna**, used as M., *a Roman name*.

gallus, *a cock*; **gall-īna**, F., *a hen*.

ruō, *fall* (no noun existing); **ru-īna**, F., *a fall*.

doctor, *teacher*; **doctr-īna**, F., *learning*.

d. -ālis, -āris, -ēlis, -īlis, ūlis, -nus, PERTAINING TO, of various modes of *relation* or *possession*, but not used as Gentile adjectives : as, —

nātūra, *nature* ; nātūr-ālis, *natural*.

populus, *a people* ; popul-āris, *fellow-countryman*.

patruus, *uncle* ; patru-ēlis, *cousin*.

hostis, *an enemy* ; host-īlis, *hostile*.

currus, *chariot* ; sella cur-ūlis, *curule chair*.

vēr, *spring* ; vēr-nus, *vernal*.

e. -ter (-tris), -ester (-estris), -timus, -ernus, -urnus, -ternus (-turnus), BELONGING TO, of *places*, *times*, and the like (but some are *general* adjectives).

palūs, *a marsh* ; palūs-ter, *of the marshes*.

pedes, *a footman* ; pedes-ter, *of the foot*.

sex mēnsēs, *six months* ; sēmēs-tris, *semi-annual*.

silva, *a wood* ; silv-ester, silv-estris, *woody*.

finis, *an end* ; finī-timus, *neighboring, on the borders*.

herī (old hesī), *yesterday* ; hēs-ternus, *of yesterday*.

diū, *long* (in time) ; diū-turnus, *lasting*.

hodiē, *to-day* ; hodi-ernus, *of to-day*.

diēs, *day* ; di-urnus, *daily*.

f. -ātus, -ītus, -ūtus, PROVIDED WITH, make adjectives with participial ending, formed from nouns, but in reference to an imaginary verb-stem (cf. the English *horned*, *crested*, *hooked*).

barba, *a beard* ; barb-ātus, *bearded*.

auris, *an ear* ; aur-ītus, *long-eared*.

versus, *a turning* ; vers-ūtus, *crafty, adroit* (full of turns).

So -tus, added directly to nouns without reference to any verb : as, —

fūnus, *death* ; fūnes-tus, *deadly*.

honor, *honor* ; hones-tus, *honorable*.

favor, *favor* ; faus-tus (for †faves-tus), *favorable*.

g. -eus, -ius, -āceus, -īcius, -āneus (-neus), -ticus, MADE OF OR BELONGING TO, form adjectives of various meanings : as, —

aurum, *gold* ; aur-eus, *golden*.

pater, *a father* ; patr-ius, *paternal*.

uxor, *a wife* ; uxōr-ius, *uxorious*.

rosa, a rose; *ros-āceus*, of roses.

later, a brick; *later-īcius*, of brick.

praesēns, present; *praesent-āneus*, operating instantly.

extrā, without; *extr-āneus*, external.

sub terrā, underground; *subterr-āneus*, subterranean.

salix, willow; *salig-neus*, of willow.

volō, fly; *volā-ticus*, winged (*volātus*, a flight).

domus, a house; *domes-ticus*, of the house, domestic.

silva, a wood; *silvā-ticus*, sylvan.

h. -ārius, -tōrius (-sōrius), BELONGING TO, make many adjectives often fixed as nouns (see *i*).

ōrdō, rank, order; *ōrdin-ārius*, regular.

argentum, silver; *argent-ārius*, of silver or money.

extrā, outside; *extr-ārius*, stranger.

meritus, earned; *meri-tōrius*, profitable.

dēvorsus, turned aside; *dēvor-sōrius*, of an inn (cf. *i. 5*).

i. Many fixed forms of the above adjective suffixes make nouns, more or less regularly used in particular senses: as, —

1. *-ārius* (regular), *person employed about anything*: as, —
argent-ārius, silversmith, broker (from *argentum*).

2. *-āria*, *thing connected with something*: as, —
arēn-āriae, F. pl., sandpits (from *arēna*, sand).
Asin-āria, F., name of a play (from *asinus*, ass).

3. *-ārium* (regular), *place of a thing* (with a few of more general meaning): as, —

aer-ārium, N., treasury (from *aes*, copper).

tepid-ārium, N., warm bath (from *tepidus*, warm).

sūd-ārium, N., a towel (cf. *sūdō*, -āre, sweat).

sal-ārium, N., salt money, salary (from *sāl*, salt).

calend-ārium, N., a note-book (from *calendae*, calends).

4. *-tōria (-sōria)*: as, —

Agitā-tōria, F., a play of Plautus, *The Carter* (from *agitātor*).

vor-sōria, F., a tack (from *vorsus*, a turn).

5. *-tōrium (-sōrium)* (regular), *place of action* (with a few of more general meaning): as, —

dēvor-sōrium, N., *an inn* (as from **dēvortō**, *turn aside*).
audi-tōrium, N., *a lecture-room* (as from **audiō**, *hear*).
ten-tōrium, N., *a tent* (as from **tendō**, *stretch*).
tēc-tōrium, N., *plaster* (as from **tegō**, **tēctus**, *cover*).
por-tōrium, N., *toll* (cf. **portō**, *carry*, and **portus**, *harbor*).

6. **-ile**, *animal-stall*: as, —

bov-ile, N., *cattle-stall* (**bōs**, **bōvis**, *ox, cow*).

ov-ile, *sheep-fold* (**ovis**, st. **ovi-**, *sheep*).

7. **-al** for **-āle**, *thing connected with the primitive*: as, —

capit-al, N., *head-dress, capital crime* (**caput**, *head*).

penetr-āle (esp. in pl.), N., *inner apartment* (cf. **penetrō**).

Sāturn-ālia, N. pl. (the regular form for *names of festivals*), *feast of Saturn* (from **Sāturnus**).

8. **-ētum**, N. (cf. **-ātus**, **-ūtus**, see *f*), *place of a thing*: as, —

querc-ētum, N., *oak grove* (from **quercus**, *oak*).

Argil-ētum, N., *The Clay-pit* (from **argilla**, *clay*).

9. **-cus** (sometimes with inserted **i**, **-icus**), **-īcus**, in any one of the genders, with various meanings: as, —

vili-cus, M., **vili-ca**, F., *a steward (stewardess)* (from **villa**, *farm-house*).

fabr-ica, F., *a workshop* (from **faber**, *workman*).

bubul-cus, M., *ox-tender* (from **būb-ulus**, dim., cf. **bōs**, *ox*).

cant-icum, N., *song* (from **cantus**, *act of singing*).

rubr-ica, F., *red paint* (from **ruber**, *red*).

10. **-eus**, **-ea**, **-eum**, with various meanings: as, —

alv-eus, M., *a trough* (from **alvus**, *the belly*).

capr-ea, F., *a roe* (from **caper**, *he-goat*).

flamm-eum, N., *a bridal veil* (from **flamma**, *flame*, from its color).

11. **-ium**, confounded with the primary suffix (see § 163. *f*).

12. **-ter** (stem **tro-**) and **-ter** (stem **tri-**), **-aster** **-ester**: as, —

Aus-ter, M., *South wind* (from **ūrō**, *burn*).

eques-ter, M., *knight* (for **tequet-ter**).

sequ-ester, M., *a stake-holder* (from derivative of **sequor**, *follow*).

ole-aster, M., *wild olive* (from **olea**) (cf. **surd-aster**, from **surdus**).

k. -ōsus, -(o)lēns, -(o)lentus, FULL OF, PRONE TO : as, —
flūctus, wave ; *flūctu-ōsus*, billowy.
forma, beauty ; *form-ōsus*, beautiful.
periculum, peril ; *pericul-ōsus*, full of danger.
pestis, pest ; *pesti-lēns*, *pesti-lentus*, pestilent.
vinum, wine ; *vino-lentus*, *vin-ōsus*, given to drink.

II. VERBAL.

l. -āx, -idus, -ulus, -vus- (-uus, -ivus, -tivus), PRONE TO, FITTED TO, apparently¹ added to verb-stems, form adjectives, to express the action of a verb as a QUALITY or TENDENCY. -āx, denotes a *faulty* or *aggressive* tendency ; -tivus is oftener *passive*. Thus, —

pūgnō, fight ; *pūgn-āx*, pugnacious.
audeō, dare ; *aud-āx*, bold.
cupiō, desire ; *cup-idus*, eager.
bibō, drink ; *bib-ulus*, thirsty (as dry earth, etc.).
prōterō, trample ; *proter-vus*, violent, wanton.
noceō, do harm ; *noc-uus* (*noc-ivus*), hurtful, injurious.
capiō, take ; *cap-tivus*, captive, M., a prisoner of war.
recidō, fall back ; *recid-ivus*, restored.

m. -ilis, -bilis, -ius, -tilis (-silis), express PASSIVE QUALITIES, but occasionally active : as, —

frangō (FRAG), break ; *frag-ilis*, frail, breakable.
nōscō (GNO), know ; *nō-bilis*, well known, famous.
eximō, take out, select ; *exim-ius*, choice, rare (cf. *ē-greg-ius*).
agō, drive ; *ag-ilis*, active.
habeō, hold ; *hab-ilis*, handy.
alō, nourish ; *al-tilis*, fattened.

n. -minus, -mnus, are properly *participial* (cf. Greek *-μενος*, and *amā-minī*). They form a few nouns in which the participial force is discernible : as, —

FE, produce ; *fē-mina*, woman (the producer).
alō, nourish ; *alu-mnus*, a foster child, nursling.

o. -ndus (the same as the gerund-ending) forms a few *active* or *reflexive* adjectives : as, —

¹ The forms felt as verbal are, like the nominal forms, derived from noun-stems, and the two are constantly confounded.

sequor, follow; *secu-ndus*, second (the following), favorable.
rotō, whirl (from *rota*, wheel); *rotu-ndus*, round (whirling).¹

p. -bundus, -cundus, with a *participial* meaning, but denoting *continuance* of the act or quality.

iocus, a jest; *iū-cundus*, pleasant (cf. *iuvō*, -āre).

vītō, shun; *vītā-bundus*, dodging about.

tremō, tremble; *treme-bundus*, trembling.

moriōr, die; *mori-bundus*, at the point of death.

for, speak; *fā-cundus*, eloquent.

FE, produce; *fē-cundus*, fruitful.

So, ira, anger; *irā-cundus*, irascible (cf. *irā-scor*).

III. IRREGULAR DERIVATIVES.

q. The primary suffix *ōn*, (nom. *-ō*) is used as secondary to form nouns (originally adjectives), denoting POSSESSED OF and so expressing a *character*, often used as *proper names*²: as, —

epulae, a feast; *epul-ō*, a feaster.

nāsus, a nose; *nās-ō*, with a large nose (also as a proper name).

-volus (in *bene-volus*), wishing; *vol-ōnēs* (pl.), volunteers.

frōns, forehead; *front-ō*, big-head (also as a proper name).

So, *cūria*, a curia; *cūri-ō*, head of a curia (also as proper name).

restis, a rope; *resti-ō*, a rope-maker.

† *vespertīlis*, of the evening; *vespertīlī-ō*, a bat.

r. Rarely suffixes are added to compound stems imagined, but not used in their compound form: as, —

ad-verb-ium, adverb; *ad*, to, and *verbum*, verb, but without the intervening † *adverbus*.

lāti-fund-ium, large estate; *lātus*, wide, *fundus*, estate.

su-ove-taur-ilia, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and a bull; *sūs*, swine, *ovis*, sheep, *taurus*, bull, where the primitive would be impossible in Latin.

¹ Compare *volvendīs mēnsibus*, in the revolving months (Virg.).

² This suffix is the same as in § 162. c, but not connected with a verb.

IV. DERIVATION OF VERBS.

165. Verbs may be classed as *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

1. Primitive verbs are those inherited by the Latin from the parent speech.

2. Derivative verbs are those formed in the development of the Latin as a separate language. They are of two main classes :—

a. DENOMINATIVE VERBS, formed from nouns or adjectives.

b. Verbs apparently derived from other verbs (see § 167).

1. Denominative Verbs.

166. Verbs were formed in Latin from almost every form of noun- and adjective-stem.

a. 1. Verbs of the first conjugation are formed directly from *a*-stems, regularly with a transitive meaning : as, **fuga**, *flight*; **fugō**, *put to flight*; **belliger**, **belligero** (not **bellum** and **gero**, which would be impossible).

NOTE.—Originally particular forms of stem formed particular conjugations of verbs, but from changes of stem and from various cross-analogies the relation between conjugations and stem-forms became entirely confused. Thus **poena** should make † **pūnāre**, but it really makes **pūnīre**, as if an *i*-stem (as in **impūni-s**) ; **servus** makes **servāre** in one sense, **servīre** in another.

2. Many verbs of the First Conjugation (commonly transitive) are formed from *o*-stems, changing the *o*- into *ā*-. Thus, —

stimulus, *a goad* (stem **stimulo-**) ; **stimulō** (*-āre*), *incite*.

aecus, *even* (stem **aequo-**) ; **aequō** (*-āre*), *make even*.

hibernus, *of the winter* (stem **hiberno-**) ; **hibernō**, *pass the winter*.

albus, *white* (stem **albo-**) ; **albō** (*-āre*), *whiten*.

pīus, *pure* (stem **pio-**) ; **piō** (*-āre*), *expiate*.

3. A few verbs, generally neuter, are formed by analogy from consonant- and *u*- stems, adding *ā* to the stem : as, —

vigil, *awake* ; **vigilō** (*-āre*), *watch*.

exsul, *an exile* ; **exsulō** (*-āre*), *be in exile*.

hiemps (stem **hiem-**), *winter*; **hiemō** (**-āre**), *pass the winter*.

aestus, *tide, seething*; **aestuō** (**-āre**), *surge, boil*.

levis (stem **levi-**), *light*; **levō** (**-āre**), *lighten*.

b. A few verbs of the Second Conjugation (generally intransitive) are recognizable as formed from noun-stems, but most are inherited, or the primitive noun-stem is lost : as, —

albus, *white*; **albeō**, *be white* (cf. **albō**, **-āre**, *whiten*, under *a. 2*).

cānus (stem **cāno-**), *hoary*; **cāneō**, *be hoary*.

tumulus, *hill* (implying † **tumus**, *swelling*); **tumeō**, *swell*.

prō-vidus, *foreseeing*; **prō-videō**, *foresee*.

But **moneō**, *remind*; cf. **meminī**, *remember*.

algeō, *be cold*; cf. **algidus**, *cold*.

c. Some verbs in **-uō**, **-uere** are formed from noun-stems in **u-** where probably an **i** has been lost : as, —

status, *position*; **statuō**, *set up*.

metus, *fear*; **metuō**, *fear*.

d. Many verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are formed from real or imagined **i**-stems : as, —

mōlēs (**-is**), *mass*; **mōlior**, **-īrī**, *toil*.

finis, *end*; **finiō**, **-īre**, *bound*.

sītis, *thirst*; **sitiō**, **-īre**, *thirst*.

stabilis, *stable*; **stabiliō**, **-re**, *establish*.

Some wrongly from other stems treated as if **i**-stems : as, —

bullā, *bubble*; **bulliō**, **-īre**, *boil*.

condus, *storekeeper*; **condiō**, **-īre**, *preserve*.

īnsānus, *mad*; **īnsāniō**, **-īre**, *rave*.

gestus, *gesture*; **gestiō**, **-īre**, *show wild longing*.

custōs, *guardian*; **custodiō**, **-īre**, *guard*.

2. Verbs from other Verbs.

167. The following classes of verbs regularly derived from other verbs have special meanings connected with their terminations.

a. INCEPTIVES or INCHOATIVES add **-scō** to the present stem of verbs. They denote the *beginning* of an action. Of some there is no simple verb in existence. Thus, —

caleō, *be warm*; **calē-scō**, *grow warm*.

labō, *totter*; **labā-scō**, *begin to totter*.

sciō, *know*; **sci-scō**, *determine*.

cupiō, *desire*; **con-cupi-scō**, *conceive a desire for*.

alō, *feed*; **ale-scō**, *grow*.

So, **irā-scor**, *get angry*; cf. **irā-tus**.

iuvene-sco, *grow young*; cf. **iuvenis**, *young man*.

vesperā-scit, *it is getting late*; cf. **vesper**, *evening*.

NOTE. — Inceptives properly have only the present stem, but many use the perfect and supine systems of simple verbs: as, **calēscō**, **calui**; **profiscor**, **profectus**.

b. INTENSIVES or ITERATIVES end in **-tō** or **-itō** (rarely **-sō**), and denote a *forcible* or *repeated* action: as, —

iaciō, *throw*; **iac-tō**, *hurl*.

dicō, *say*; **dict-itō**, *keep on saying*.

quatiō, *shake*; **quas-sō**, *shatter*.

They are of the first conjugation, and are properly denominative, derived from the participle in **-tus** (stem **to-**).

c. Another form of Intensives — sometimes called Meditatives, or verbs of *practice* — ends in **-essō** (rarely **-issō**). These denote *energy* or *eagerness* of action: as, —

capiō, *take*; **cap-essō**, *lay hold on*.

faciō, *do*; **fac-essō**, *do* (with energy).

petō, *seek*; **pet-issō**, *seek* (eagerly).

These are of the third conjugation, usually having the perfect and supine of the fourth: as, —

laccessō, **laccessēre**, **laccessivī**, **laccessitum**, *provoke*.

d. DIMINUTIVES (derived from real or supposed diminutive nouns) end in **-illō**, and denote a *feeble* or *petty* action: as, —

cavilla, *raillery*; **cav-illor**, *jest*.

cantō, *sing*; **cant-illō**, *chirp* or *warble*.

e. DESIDERATIVES end in **-turiō** (**-suriō**), and express *longing* or *wishing*. They are of the fourth conjugation, and only three are in common use: —

emō, *buy*; **emp-turiō**, *want to buy*.

edō, *eat*; **ē-suriō**, *be hungry*.

pariō, *bring forth*; **par-turiō**, *be in labor*.

NOTE. — Desideratives are derived from some noun of agency: as, **empturiō**, from **emptor**, *buyer*. **Visō**, *go to see*, is an inherited desiderative of a different formation.

3. Compound Words.

A Compound Word is one whose stem is made up of two or more simple stems.

Only noun-stems can be thus compounded. A preposition, however, often becomes attached to a verb.

168. New stems are formed by composition, as follows: ¹

a. The second part is simply added to the first: as, —

su-ove-aurilia (**sūs, ovis, taurus**), *the sacrifice of a hog, sheep, and bull* (cf. § 164. *r*).

septen-decim (**septem, decem**), *seventeen*.

b. The first part modifies the second as an adjective or adverb (*Determinative Compounds*): as, —

lāti-fundium (**lātus, fundus**), *a large landed estate*.

c. The first part has the force of a case, and the second a verbal force (*Objective Compounds*): as, —

agri-cola (**ager, †cola** akin to **colō**), *a farmer*.

armi-ger (**arma, †ger** akin to **gerō**), *armor-bearer*.

corni-cen (**cornū, †cen** akin to **canō**), *horn-blower*.

carni-fex (**carō, †fex** akin to **faciō**), *executioner*.

¹ In these compounds only the second part receives inflection, commonly the proper inflection of the last stem; but, as this kind of composition is older than inflection, the compounded stem sometimes has an inflection of its own (as, **cornicen**, **-cinis**; **lūcifer**, **-feri**; **iūdex**, **-diciis**), from stems not occurring in Latin. Especially do compound adjectives take the form of *i*-stems: as, **animus**, **exanimis**; **nōrma**, **abnōrmis** (see note, p. 23). In composition stems regularly have their uninflected form: as, **igni-spiciūm**, *divining by fire*. But *o*- and *a*-stems weaken the final vowel of the stem to *i*-, as in **ālī-pēs** (from **āla**); and *i*-is so common a termination of compounded stems, that it is often added to stems which do not properly have it: as, **foederi-fragus** (for **†foeder-fragus**: **foedus, †fragus**), *treaty-breaking*.

d. Compounds of the above kinds, in which the last word is a noun, acquire the signification of adjectives, meaning *possessed of* the quality denoted (*Possessive Compounds*) : as, —

ālī-pēs (**āla**, **pēs**), *wing-footed*.

māgn-animus (**māgnus**, **animus**), *great-souled*.

con-cors (**con-**, **cor**), *harmonious*.

an-ceps (**amb-**, **caput**), *double* (having a head at both ends).

NOTE. — Many compounds of the above classes appear only in the form of some further derivative, the proper compound being not found in Latin.

169. In many apparent compounds, complete words — not stems — have grown together in speech.

These are not strictly compounds in the etymological sense. They are called *Syntactic Compounds*. Examples are —

a. Compounds of **faciō**, **factō**, with an actual or formerly existing noun-stem confounded with a verbal stem in **e-**. These are CAUSATIVE in force : as, **cōnsuē-faciō**, *habituate* (cf. **cōnsuē-scō**, *become accustomed*) ; **cale-faciō**, **cale-factō**, *to heat* (cf. **calē-scō**, *grow warm*).

b. An adverb or noun combined with a verb : as, **bene-dicō** (**bene dicō**), *to bless* ; **sat-agō** (**satis agō**), *to be busy enough*.

c. Many apparent compounds : as, **fidē-iubeō** (**fidei iubeō**), *to give surety* ; **mān-suētus** (**manui suētus**), *tame* ; **Iūppiter** (**†Iūs-pater**) ; **Mārci-por** (**Mārci puer**), *slave of Marcus*.

d. A few *phrases* forced into the inflections of nouns : as, —

prō-cōnsul, *proconsul* (for **prō cōnsule**, *instead of a consul*).

trium-vir, *triumvir* (singular from **trium virōrum**).

septem-triō, *the Bear*, a constellation (supposed singular of **septem triōnēs**, *The Seven Oxen*).

170. Many syntactic compounds are formed by prefixing a Particle to some other part of speech : —

a. Prepositions are prefixed to Verbs or Adjectives and in these compounds retain their original adverbial sense : ¹ as, —

¹ The prepositions sometimes, however, especially **ad**, **in**, **circum**, **trāns**, have their ordinary force as prepositions, and govern the case of a noun : as, **trānsire flūmen**, *to cross a river* (see § 239. *b.* Rem.).

ā, **ab**, AWAY : **au-ferre** (**ab-ferō**), *to take away*.

ad, TO, TOWARDS : **af-ferre** (**ad-ferō**), *to bring*.

ante, BEFORE : **ante-ferre**, *to prefer* ; **ante-cellere**, *to excel*.

circum, AROUND : **circum-mūnīre**, *to fortify completely*.

com-, **con-** (**cum**), TOGETHER OR FORCIBLY : **cōn-ferre**, *to bring together* ; **col-locāre**, *to set firm*.

dē, DOWN, UTTERLY : **dē-spīcere**, *despise* ; **dēstruere**, *destroy*.

ē, **ex**, OUT : **ef-ferre** (**ec-ferō**), *to carry forth, uplift*.

in (with verbs), IN, ON, AGAINST : **īn-ferre**, *to bear against*.

inter, BETWEEN, TO PIECES : **inter-rumpere**, *to interrupt*.

ob, TOWARDS, TO MEET : **of-ferre**, *to offer* ; **ob-venīre**, *to meet*.

sub, UNDER : **sub-struere**, *to build beneath*.

super, UPON, OVER AND ABOVE : **super-fluere**, *to overflow* ; **superstes**, *a survivor*.

NOTE. — In these compounds short *a* of the root is weakened to *i* before one consonant, to *e* before two : as, **faciō**, **cōficiō**, **cōfectus** ; **iaciō**, **ēiciō**, **ēiectus**. But long *a* is retained : as, **perāctus**.

b. Verbs are also compounded with the following inseparable particles, which do not appear as prepositions in Latin : —

amb- (**am-**, **an-**), AROUND : **amb-īre**, *to go about* (cf. **ἀμφί**, *about*).

dis-, **dī-**, ASUNDER, APART : **dis-cēdere**, *to depart* (cf. **duo**, *two*).

por-, FORWARD : **por-tendere**, *to hold forth, predict* (cf. **porrō**, *forth*).

red-, **re-**, BACK, AGAIN : **red-īre**, *to return* ; **re-clūdere**, *to open* (from **claudō**, *shut*) ; **re-ficere**, *to repair* (make again).

sēd-, **sē-**, APART : **sē-cernō**, *to separate* (cf. **sed**, *but*).

c. An Adjective is sometimes modified by an adverbial prefix.

Of these, **per** (less commonly **prae**), *very* ; **sub**, *somewhat* ; **in-**, *not*, are regular, and may be prefixed to almost any adjective : as, —

per-māgnus, *very large*.

prae-longus, *very long*.

sub-rūsticus, *rather clownish*.

īn-fīnītus, *boundless*.

NOTE. — **Per** and **sub**, in these senses, are also prefixed to verbs : as, **perterreō**, *terrify* ; **sub-rideō**, *smile*. In **ignōscō**, **in-** appears to be the negative prefix.

d. Many Verbals are found compounded with a preposition, like the verbs to which they correspond. Thus, —

per-fuga, *deserter* ; cf. **per-fugiō**.

trādux, *vine-branch* ; cf. **trāns-dūcō**.

PART SECOND.—USE OF WORDS (SYNTAX).

INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

THE study of formal grammar arose at a late period in the history of language, and deals with language as fully developed. The terms of Syntax correspond accordingly to the logical habits of thought that have grown up at such a period, and have therefore a logical as well as a simply grammatical meaning. But Syntax as thus developed is not essential to language. A form of words—like *ō puerum pulcrum! oh! beautiful boy*—may express a thought, and in some languages might even be a sentence, while it does not logically declare anything, and does not, strictly speaking, make what we call a sentence at all.

In the fully developed methods of expression to which we are almost exclusively accustomed, the unit of expression is the SENTENCE¹; that is, the completed statement, with its distinct Subject and Predicate. Originally every sentence is simple. But two simple sentences may be used together, without the subordination of either, to express a more complex form of thought than can be denoted by one alone. This is *parataxis* (arrangement side by side). In time, two sentences, thus habitually used in connection, come to be regularly associated with each other, in certain relations, as parts of one logical idea, and the one is felt to *depend* upon the other. This is *syntaxis* (arrangement together). In this way, through various courses of development, which correspond to the growth of our habitual forms of thought, there are produced various forms of *complex sentences*. Thus, *timeō nē id accidat* was originally two simple sentences: *I fear. Let that not happen!* and these, becoming attached, formed the complex sentence: *I fear (lest) that may happen.* The results of these processes constitute the subject-matter of Syntax as shown in the annexed Outline.

I. A SENTENCE may be either Simple or Compound: viz., —

- | | | |
|---------------|---|--|
| 1. SIMPLE : | { | Containing a single statement (Subject and Predicate) (§ 180). |
| 2. COMPOUND : | { | <i>a.</i> Containing two or more Co-ordinate Clauses (§ 180. <i>a.</i>).
<i>b.</i> Modified by Subordinate Clauses (<i>complex</i>) (§ 180. <i>b.</i>). |

¹ The meaning of Sentence is "Thought" (*sententia*, from *sentire*). The grammatical form of the sentence is the form in which the thought is expressed.

II. The Essential Parts of the Sentence are —

1. The SUBJECT : con-
sisting of { *a.* Noun or its equivalent (§ 174. 1).
b. Pronoun contained in verb-ending (§
174. 2).
2. The PREDICATE :
consisting of { *a.* Neuter (intransitive) Verb (§ 175. *a*).
b. Copula with Predicate Noun or Adjec-
tive (§ 172. note).
c. Verb with Object (§§ 175. *b*, 177).

III. The Subject and Predicate may be MODIFIED as follows : —

1. The Noun (*Subject
or Object*) by { *a.* Noun in Apposition (§ 184).
b. Adjective or Participle (§ 186).
c. Noun in Oblique Case (§ 178. *a*, *b*).
d. Preposition with its case (§ 260).
e. Relative Clause (§ 180. *c*).
2. The VERB (*predi-
cate*) by { *a.* Adverb or Adverbial Phrase (§§ 179,
207).
b. Predicate Adjective (§ 191).
c. Subordinate Clause (§ 180. *b*).

- IV. Hence : { *a.* Rules of AGREEMENT (*the Four Concords*) (§ 182).
b. Rules of GOVERNMENT (*Construction of Cases*) (§§ 213 ff.).

THE SENTENCE.

1. Definitions.

171. A SENTENCE is a form of words which contains a Statement, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command.

a. A sentence in the form of a Statement is called a DECLARATIVE SENTENCE : as, **ecus currit**, *the horse runs*.

b. A sentence in the form of a Question is called an INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE : as, **ecusne currit?** *does the horse run?*

c. A sentence in the form of an Exclamation is called an EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE : as, **quam celeriter currit ecus!** *how fast the horse runs!*

d. A sentence in the form of a Command, an Exhortation, or an Entreaty is called an IMPERATIVE SENTENCE : as, **currat ecus**, *let the horse run*; **ī, curre per Alpēs**, *go run across the Alps*.

172. Every sentence consists of a Subject and a Predicate.

The SUBJECT of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of.

The PREDICATE is that which is said of the Subject.

Thus, in *ecus currit, the horse runs*, *ecus* is the subject, and *currit* the predicate.

NOTE. — Every complete sentence must contain a subject (§ 174) and a verb. The verb itself is usually the predicate, but when any form of *sum* is used simply to connect a noun or adjective as an attribute with the subject, such word is called the *predicate noun* or *adjective*, and *sum* is known as the *copula* (or connective) (§ 176. a). Thus, in *Caesar cōsul erat*, *Cæsar* was consul, *Caesar* is the subject, *cōsul* the predicate noun, and *erat* the copula.

But *sum* in the sense of *exist* makes a complete predicate alone. It is then called the *substantive verb*: as, *sunt viri fortēs*, *there are (exist) brave men*.

2. Subject and Predicate.

173. I. (RULE 13.) The Subject of a Finite verb is in the NOMINATIVE CASE: as, —

ecus currit, the horse runs.

rēgīna sedet, the queen sits.

2. (RULE 36.) The Subject of an Infinitive is in the ACCUSATIVE (see § 240. f).

NOTE. — A finite verb is a verb in the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative. These are called finite moods to distinguish them from the Infinitive.

174. I. The Subject of a sentence is usually a Noun or some word or phrase used as a Noun: as, —

hūmānum est errāre, to err is human.

quaeritur num mors malum sit, the question is whether death is an evil.

vēnit, incertum est unde, he came, where from is uncertain.

2. But in Latin the subject may be implied in the termination of the verb (see § 206. a, b): as, —

sedē-mus, we sit.

curri-tis, you run.

inqui-t, says he.

175. Verbs are either Intransitive or Transitive.

a. An Intransitive (or Neuter) verb contains in itself an entire statement : as, —

cadō, I fall (am falling).

sōl lūcet, the sun is shining.

sunt virī fortēs, there are brave men.

b. A Transitive (or Active) verb has or requires a Direct Object to complete its sense (see § 177): as, —

frātre cecīdit, he slew his brother.

NOTE 1. — Among transitive verbs FACTITATIVE VERBS are sometimes distinguished as a separate class. These state an act which *produces* the thing expressed by the word which completes their sense. Thus, *mēnsam fēcit, he made a table* (which was not in existence before), is distinguished from *mēnsam percussit, he struck a table* (which already existed).

NOTE 2. — A transitive verb may often be used *absolutely* without any object expressed: as, *arat, he is ploughing*, where the verb does not cease to be transitive because the object is left indefinite, as we see by adding, — *quid, what? agrum suum, his land.*

3. Predicate Noun.

176. An intransitive verb is often followed by a noun or adjective to describe or define the subject. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective : as, —

mortuus cecidit, he fell dead.

Quīntus sedet iūdex, Quintus sits as judge.

Caesar victor incēdit, Cæsar advances victorious (a victor).

a. The copula sum, especially, is used with a predicate noun or adjective (see § 172. note). So, also, verbs signifying to become, to be made, to be named, to appear, whence these are called COPULATIVE (*i.e. coupling*) verbs.

NOTE. — A noun in agreement with some part of the predicate is sometimes called a Predicate Noun (see § 185. *c*).

b. A Predicate noun or adjective after the copula sum or a copulative verb is in the same case as the subject (see § 185. *a*).

Rōma est patria nostra, Rome is our country.

stellae lūcidae erant, the stars were bright (cf. stellae lūcēbant).

cōnsul creātus est, he was elected consul.

mors finis esse vidētur, death seems to be the end.

dīcit nōn omnēs bonōs esse beātōs, he says that not all good men are happy.

4. Object.

177. The person or thing immediately affected by the action of a verb is called the DIRECT OBJECT.

A person or thing indirectly affected is called the INDIRECT OBJECT.

Only transitive verbs can have a Direct Object ; but an Indirect Object may be used with both transitive and intransitive verbs (§§ 225, 226). Thus, —

pater vocat filium (direct object), *the father calls his son.*

mihi (ind. obj.) *agrum* (dir. obj.) *ostendit*, *he showed me a field.*

mihi (ind. obj.) *placet*, *it is pleasing to me.*

NOTE. — The distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs is not fixed, but most transitive verbs may be used intransitively, and many verbs usually intransitive may take a direct object and so become transitive (§ 237. *b*).

a. When a transitive verb is changed from the Active to the Passive voice, the Direct Object becomes the Subject and is put in the nominative case : as, —

Active : *pater filium vocat*, *the father calls* [his] *son.*

Passive : *filius ā patre vocātur*, *the son is called by his father.*

Active : *lūnam et stellās vidēmus*, *we see the moon and the stars.*

Passive : *lūna et stellae videntur*, *the moon and stars are seen* (appear).

b. With certain verbs, the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative is used where the English, from a difference in meaning, requires the Objective. Thus, —

hominem videō, *I see the man* (ACCUSATIVE).

hominī serviō, *I serve the man* (DATIVE, see § 227).

hominis misereor, *I pity the man* (GENITIVE, see § 221. *a*).

homine amīcō ūtor, *I treat the man as a friend* (ABLATIVE, see § 249).

c. Many verbs transitive in Latin are translated in English by an intransitive verb with a preposition : as, —

petit aprum, *he aims at the boar.*

laudem affectat, *he strives after praise.*

cūrat valētūdinem, *he takes care of his health.*

NOTE. — One or more words, essential to the grammatical completeness of a sentence, but clear enough to the mind of a hearer, are often omitted. This omission is called ELLIPSIS, and the sentence is called an ELLIPTICAL SENTENCE: as, *adest, he is here*; *quis?* (sc. *adest*), *who?* *miles* (sc. *adest*), *the soldier*.

5. Modification.

178. A Subject or a Predicate may be modified by a single word, or by a group of words (a Phrase or a Clause, see §§ 179, 180).

The modifying word or group of words may itself be modified in the same way.

a. A single modifying word may be an adjective, an adverb, an appositive (§ 184), or the oblique case of a noun. Thus, in the sentence *vir fortis patienter fert*, *a brave man bears patiently*, the adjective *fortis*, *brave*, modifies the subject *vir*, *man*, and the adverb *patienter*, *patiently*, modifies the predicate *fert*, *bears*.

b. The modifying word is in some cases said to LIMIT the word to which it belongs. Thus, in the sentence *puerī patrem vidēō*, *I see the boy's father*, the genitive *puerī* limits *patrem* (by excluding any other father).

179. A PHRASE is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, which may be used as an Adjective or an Adverb.

Thus, in the sentence *vir fuit summā nōbilitāte*, *he was a man of the highest nobility*, the words *summā nōbilitāte*, *of the highest nobility*, are used for the adjective *nōbilis*, *noble* (or *nōbilissimus*, *very noble*), and are called an ADJECTIVE PHRASE. In the sentence *māgnā celeritāte vēnit*, *he came with great speed*, the words *māgnā celeritāte*, *with great speed*, are used for the adverb *celeriter*, *quickly* (or *celerrimē*, *very quickly*), and are called an ADVERBIAL PHRASE.

180. Sentences are either Simple or Compound.

A SIMPLE SENTENCE is a sentence containing a single statement.

A COMPOUND SENTENCE is a sentence containing more than one statement, and each single statement in it is called a CLAUSE.

a. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be CO-ORDINATE. They are usually connected by a Co-ordinate Conjunction (§ 154. *a*) ; but this is sometimes omitted (§ 208. *b*). Thus, —

*divide et imperā, divide and conquer. But, —
venī, vīdī, vīcī, I came, I saw, I conquered.*

b. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be SUBORDINATE, and the clause modified is called the MAIN CLAUSE.

This subordination is indicated by some connecting word, either a Subordinate Conjunction or a Relative (§ 154. *b*) : as, —

*oderint dum metuant, let them hate so long as they fear.
servum misit quem secum habebat, he sent the slave whom he had
with him.*

A sentence containing one or more subordinate clauses is sometimes called COMPLEX.

NOTE. — A subordinate clause may itself be modified by another subordinate clause.

c. A clause introduced by a Relative pronoun or adverb is called a RELATIVE CLAUSE.

A clause introduced by an adverb of time is called a TEMPORAL CLAUSE. Thus, —

*dum tacent clamant, while they are silent they cry aloud.
hominēs aegrī morbō gravī cum iactantur aestū febrīque, sī aquam gelidam biberint primō relevārī videntur, men suffering with a severe
sickness, when they are tossing with the heat of fever, if they drink
cold water, seem at first to be relieved.*

d. A clause containing a Condition, introduced by *sī, if*, or some equivalent, is called a CONDITIONAL CLAUSE. A sentence containing a conditional clause is called a CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.

Thus, *sī aquam gelidam biberint, primō relevārī videntur* is a Conditional Sentence, and *sī . . . biberint* is a Conditional Clause.

e. A clause expressing the Purpose of an action is called a FINAL or PURPOSE CLAUSE.

edō ut vivam, I eat to live (that I may live).

mīsit lēgātōs quī dicerent, he sent ambassadors to say (who should say).

A clause expressing the Result of an action is called a CONSECUTIVE or RESULT CLAUSE.¹

tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem, I was too far away to see (so far away that I did n't see).

AGREEMENT.

181. A word is said to *agree* with another when it is required by usage to be in the same Gender, Number, Case, or Person.

182. The following are the general forms of Agreement, sometimes called the Four Concords :—

1. The agreement of the NOUN in Apposition or as Predicate (§§ 184, 185).

2. The agreement of the ADJECTIVE with its Noun (§ 186).

3. The agreement of the RELATIVE with its Antecedents (§ 198).

4. The agreement of the VERB with its Subject (§ 204).

a. SYNESIS, or *cōstrūctiō ad sēnsū* (construction according to sense) is a construction in which a word takes the gender or number, not of the word with which it should regularly agree, but of some other word *implied* in that word.

I. NOUNS.

183. (RULE I.) A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in Case : as, —

Servius rēx, Servius the king.

ad urbem Athēnās, to the city [of] Athens.

Cicerō cōsul creātur, Cicero is chosen consul.

The descriptive noun may be either an Appositive (§ 184) or a Predicate noun (§ 185).

¹ Observe that the classes defined in *a-e* are not mutually exclusive, but that a single clause may belong to several of them at once. Thus, a relative clause is usually subordinate, and may be at the same time conditional ; and subordinate clauses may be co-ordinate with each other.

1. Apposition.

184. The descriptive noun, when in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an **APPOSITIVE**, and is said to be in **APPOSITION** : as, —

externus timor, m̄ximum concordiae **vinculum**, iungēbat animōs (Liv.

ii. 39), *fear of the foreigner, the chief bond of harmony, united their hearts.* [Here the descriptive noun belongs to the *subject*.]

quattuor hīc p̄imum ōmen equōs vidī (Æn. iii. 537), *I saw here four horses, the first omen.* [Here both nouns are in the *predicate*.]

litterās Graecās **senex** didicī (Cat. M. 26), *I learned Greek when an old man.* [Here **senex** is in apposition with the omitted subject of *didicī*, and expresses the *time, condition*, etc., of the act.]

a. Words expressing *parts* may be in apposition with a word including the parts, or *vice versa* : as, —

Gnaeus et Pūblius Scīpiōnēs, *Cneius and Publius, the Scipios.*

b. An appositive generally agrees in **GENDER** and **NUMBER** when it can : as, —

secuntur nātūram, optimam ducem (Læl. 19), *they follow nature, the best guide.*

omnium doctrīnārum inventricēs Athēnās (De Or. i. 13), *Athens, discoverer of all learning.*

c. A common noun in apposition with a Locative (§ 258. *c*) is put in the Ablative, with or without the preposition **in** : as, —

Antiochiæ, celebri quondam **urbe** (Arch. 4), *at Antioch, once a famous city.*

Albæ cōstitērunt **in urbe** mūnitā (Phil. iv. 6), *they halted at Alba, a fortified town.*

d. A possessive pronoun or an adjective implying possession may take an appositive in the genitive case agreeing in gender, number, and case with an implied noun or pronoun (§ 197. *e*): as, —

in nostrō omnium flētū (Mil. 92), *amid the tears of us all.*

ex Anniānā Milōnis domō (Att. iv. 3) [= ex Annī Milōnis domō], *out of Annius Milo's house.*

2. Predicate Agreement.

The Predicate noun may agree (1) with the subject, being connected with it by the copula or a copulative verb (§ 176. *a*), or (2) with the direct object of a verb.

185. A descriptive noun used to form a predicate is called a PREDICATE NOMINATIVE (or other case, according to the construction).

a. The case of the predicate after the copula and copulative verbs is the same as that of the subject (§ 176. *b*): as, —

pācis semper auctor fui (Lig. 28), *I have always been an adviser of peace.*

quae pertinācia quibusdam, eadem aliis cōstantia vidēri potest (Marc. 31), *what may seem obstinacy to some, may seem to others consistency.*

ēius mortis sedētis ultōrēs (Mil. 79), *you sit as avengers of his death.*

ego patrōnus exstiti (Rosc. Am. 5), *I have come forward as an advocate.*

b. A predicate noun referring to two or more singular nouns is in the plural : as, —

cōsulēs creantur Caesar et Servilius (B. C. iii. 1), *Cæsar and Servilius are elected consuls.*

c. For Predicate Accusative, see under that case, § 239. *a.*

II. ADJECTIVES.

1. Rules of Agreement.

186. (RULE 2.) Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in *Gender, Number, and Case*.

vir fortis, *a brave man.*

illa mulier, *that woman.*

urbium māgnārum, *of great cities.*

cum ducentīs militibus, *with 200 soldiers.*

imperātor victus est, *the general was beaten.*

NOTE. — All rules for the agreement of adjectives apply also to adjective pronouns and to participles.

Adjectives are either *Attributive* or *Predicate*.

a. An *Attributive* adjective simply qualifies its noun without the intervention of a verb or participle, expressed or implied.

bonus imperātor, *a good commander.*

stellae lūcidae, *bright stars.*

b. All other adjectives are called Predicate adjectives.

1. A predicate adjective, like a predicate noun, may be connected with the subject by **esse** or a copulative verb expressed or implied (see § 176. *a*): **as**, —

stellae lūcidae erant, the stars were bright.

2. After verbs of *naming, calling, making*, etc., an adjective may be used as a predicate accusative like a noun (see § 239. *a*).

3. A predicate adjective may be used in apposition like a noun (see *c*, below).

c. Predicate adjectives in apposition follow the rules of agreement of other adjectives (see § 186, above): **as**, —

Scipiōnem vivum vidī, I saw Scipio in his lifetime (lit. living).

d. With two or more nouns the adjective is regularly plural, but sometimes agrees with the nearest (especially when attributive). Thus, —

Nisus et Euryalus primī (Æn. v. 294), Nisus and Euryalus first.

Caesaris omnī et grātiā et opibus fruor (Fam. i. 9, 21), I enjoy all Caesar's favor and resources.

187. One adjective may belong in sense to two or more nouns of different genders.

a. In such cases —

1. An attributive adjective agrees with the nearest noun : **as**, —

multae operae ac labōris, of much trouble and toil.

vīta mōrēsque meī, my life and character.

sī rēs, sī vir, sī tempus ūllum, dignum fuit (Mil. 19), if any thing, if any man, if any time was fit.

2. A predicate adjective may agree with the nearest, if the nouns form one connected idea : **as**, —

factus est strepitus et admurmurātiō (Verr. i. 45), a noise of assent was made (noise and murmur).

NOTE. — This is only when the Copula agrees with the nearest subject (§ 205. *d*).

b. But generally a predicate adjective will be masculine, if nouns of different genders mean living beings; neuter, if *things without life* : **as**, —

uxor deinde ac liberī **amplexī** (Liv. ii. 40), *then his wife and children embraced him.*

labor (M.) **voluptāsque** (F.), *societate quādam inter se nātūrālī sunt iūcta* (N.) (id. v. 4), *labor and delight are bound together by a certain natural alliance.*

NOTE. — If nouns of different genders include both male beings and things without life, a predicate adjective is sometimes masculine, sometimes neuter, and sometimes agrees in gender with the nearest if that is plural : as, —

rēx **rēgiaque clāssis ūnā profectī** (Liv. xxi. 50), *the king and the royal fleet set out together.*

nātūrā inimīca sunt **libera cīvitas** et **rēx** (id. xlv. 24), *by nature a free state and a king are hostile.*

lēgātōs sortēsque ōrāculī exspectandās (id. v. 15), *that the ambassadors and the replies of the oracle should be waited for.*

c. Two or more abstract nouns of the same gender may have a predicate adjective in the neuter plural (cf. § 189. c) : as, —

stultitia et **timiditās** et **iniūstitia** . . . sunt **fugienda** (Fin. iii. 39), *folly, rashness, and injustice are [things] to be shunned.*

d. A collective noun may take an adjective of a different gender and number agreeing with the gender and number of the individuals implied (*Synesis*, § 182. a) : as, —

pars certāre parātī (Æn. v. 108), *a part ready to contend.*

duo milia relictī (Liv. xxxvii. 39), *two thousand were left.*

2. Adjectives used Substantively.

188. Adjectives are often used as Nouns (*substantively*), the masculine usually to denote *men* or *people in general* of that kind, the feminine *women*, and the neuter *things* : as, —

omnēs, *all men* (everybody).

māiōrēs, *ancestors.*

Rōmānī, *Romans.*

omnia, *all things* (everything).

minōrēs, *descendants.*

barbarī, *barbarians.*

REMARK. — The plural of adjectives, pronouns, and participles is very common in this use. The singular is rare except in a few words which have become practically nouns. See below and § 189. a.

a. Certain adjectives have become practically nouns, and are often modified by other adjectives. Thus, —

tuus vicīnus proximus, *your next-door neighbor.*

propīnquī cēterī, *his other relatives.*

b. When any ambiguity would arise from the substantive use of an adjective, a noun must be added. Thus, —

bonī, *the good*; omnia, *everything* (all things); but —

potentia omnium rērum, *power over everything.* [omnia alone would mean *all men.*]

c. Many adjectives are used substantively either in the singular or the plural, with the added meaning of some noun which is understood from constant association: as, —

Āfricus [ventus], *the south-west wind.*

vitulina [carō], *veal* (calf's flesh).

fera [bestia], *a wild beast.*

patria [terra], *the fatherland.*

d. A noun is sometimes used as an adjective, and may then be modified by an adverb: as, —

victor exercitus, *the victorious army.*

servum pecus, *a servile troop.*

admodum puer, *quite a boy* (young).

magis vir, *more of a man* (more manly).

e. A few adverbs appear to be used like adjectives. Such are —

1. **obviam**: as, —

fit obviam, *he goes to meet* (becomes in the way of).

2. **contrā**, contradicting some previous adjective, and so in a manner repeating it: as, —

alia probābilia, **contrā** alia dīcimus (Off. ii. 7), *we call some things probable, others the opposite* (not probable).

3. **palam**: as, —

palam rēs est, *the thing is all out.*

189. Neuter adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses:—

a. The neuter *singular* may denote either a single object or an abstract quality: as, —

raptō vivere, *to live by plunder.*

in āridō, *on dry ground.*

b. The neuter *plural* is used to signify *objects in general* having the quality denoted, and hence may stand for the abstract idea: as,—

honesta, honorable deeds (in general).

omnēs fortia laudant, all men praise bravery (brave things).

c. A neuter adjective may be used as an appositive or predicate noun with a noun of different gender (cf. § 187. *c*): as,—

triste lupus stabulis, the wolf is a grievous thing for the sheepfold.

varium et mutabile semper femina, woman is ever a changing and fickle thing.

d. A neuter adjective is used in agreement with an Infinitive or a Substantive Clause: as,—

istūc ipsum nōn esse (Tusc. i. 12), *that very "not to be."*

hūmānum est errāre, to err is human.

aliud est errāre Caesarem nōlle, aliud nōlle miserērī (Lig. 16), *it is one thing to be unwilling that Cæsar should err, another to be unwilling that he should pity.*

3. Possessives.

190. Possessive and other derivative adjectives are often used in Latin where the English has the possessive case, or a noun with a preposition (cf. §§ 184. *d*, 197. *a*): as,—

pūgna Cannēnsis, the fight at Cannæ.

C. Blossius Cūmānus, Caius Blossius of Cumæ.

aliēna domus, another man's house.

a. Possessive and other derivative adjectives are often used substantively to denote some special class or relation (see § 197. *d*): as,—

nostrī, our countrymen or men of our party.

Sullānī, the veterans of Sulla's army.

4. Adjectives with Adverbial Force.

191. An adjective agreeing with the subject or object is often used to qualify the action of the verb, having the force of an adverb: as,—

prīmus vēnit, he came first (was the first to come).

laetī audiēre, they were glad to hear.

erat Rōmæ frequēns (Rosc. Am. 16), *he was often at Rome.*

5. Comparatives and Superlatives.

192. When two qualities of an object are compared, both adjectives are in the comparative : as, —

longior quam lātiior aciēs erat (Liv. xxvii. 48), *the line was longer than it was broad* (or, *rather long than broad*).

a. Where **magis** is used, both adjectives are in the positive : as, —
clārī magis quam honestī (Jug. 8), *more renowned than honorable*.

193. (RULE 5.) Superlatives (and more rarely comparatives) denoting order and succession — also **medius**, **cēterus**, **relicus** — usually designate not *what object*, but *what part of it*, is meant : as, —

summus mōns, *the top of the hill*.

reliquī captivī, *the rest of the prisoners*.

in colle mediō (B. G. i. 24), *half way up the hill* (on the middle of the hill).

NOTE. — A similar use is found in such expressions as *sērā (multā) nocte*, *late at night*. But *medium viae*, *the middle of the way* ; *multum diēi*, *much of the day*, also occur.

III. PRONOUNS.

1. Personal Pronouns.

194. The Personal Pronouns have, in general, the same constructions as nouns.

a. The personal pronouns are not expressed as subjects, except for distinction or emphasis (compare § 346. d) : as, —

tē vocō, *I call you* ; but

quis mē vocat ? ego tē vocō, *who is calling me ? I (emphatic) am calling you*.

b. (RULE 6.) The personal pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in **-ūm** being used *partitively* (§ 216), and that in **-ī** oftenest *objectively* (cf. § 213. 2) : as, —

maior vestrūm, *the elder of you*.

habētis ducem memorem vestrī, *oblītum suī* (Cat. iv. 19), *you have a leader who thinks (is mindful) of you and forgets (is forgetful of) himself*.

pars nostrūm, *a part (i.e. some) of us*.

NOTE.— The genitives **nostrū**, **vestrū** are occasionally used objectively (§ 217): as, **cupidus vestrū** (Verr. iii. 224), *fond of you*; **custōs vestrū** (Cat. iii. 29), *the guardian of you* (your guardian).

2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

195. Demonstrative pronouns are used either adjectively or substantively.

As adjectives, they follow the rules for the agreement of adjectives (§§ 186, 187).

As substantives, they are equivalent to personal pronouns. This use is regular in the oblique cases, especially of **is**. Thus, —

1. Personal : —

Caesar et exercitus **ēius**, *Cæsar and his army* (not **suus**). [But, Caesar exercitum **suum** dīmīsit, *Cæsar disbanded his [own] army.*]
hīs Caesar ita respondit, *to them Cæsar thus replied.*

2. Adjective : —

hōc proeliō factō, *after this battle was fought* (this battle having been, etc.).
eōdem proeliō, *in the same battle.*

[For special significations of the demonstratives, see § 102.]

a. The demonstratives are sometimes used as pronouns of reference, to indicate with emphasis a noun or phrase just mentioned : as, —

nūllam virtūs aliam mercēdem dēsīderat præter **hanc** laudis (Arch. 28),
virtue wants no other reward except that [just spoken of] of praise.

b. But the demonstrative as a pronoun of reference is commonly omitted, or some other construction is preferred : as, —

memoriae artem quam oblīviōnis mālō, *I prefer (like more) the art of memory to (than) [that] of forgetfulness.*

c. When a quality or act is ascribed with emphasis to a person or thing already named, **is** or **īdem** (often with the concessive **quīdem**) is used to indicate that person or thing : as, —

vincula, et ea sempiterna (Cat. iv. 7), *imprisonment, and that perpetual.*
legiōnem neque eam plēnissimam dēspiciēbant (B. G. iii. 2), *they despised the single legion, and that not a very full one.*

tuus dolor hūmānus **is quīdem** sed, etc., *your grief is human, to be sure, but, etc.*

d. An adjective pronoun usually agrees with an appositive or predicate noun, if there be one, rather than with the word to which it refers (cf. § 199) : as, —

hic labor hōc opus est, this is the toil, this the task [namely, *revocāre gradum*, which would regularly take a neuter pronoun].

e. *Idem*, *the same*, is often equivalent to an adverb or adverbial phrase (*also, too, yet, at the same time*) : as, —

ōrātiō splendida et grandis et eadem in primīs facēta (Brut. 273), *an oration, brilliant, able, and very witty, too*.

f. The intensive *ipse*, *self*, is used with any of the other pronouns or a noun for the sake of emphasis : as, —

turpe mihi ipsī vidēbātur (Cic.), *even to me (to me myself) it seemed disgraceful*.

id ipsum, that very thing.

REMARK. — The emphasis of *ipse* is often expressed in English by *just, very, mere*, etc. (see above examples).

g. *Ipse* is often used alone, substantively, as an emphatic pronoun of the third person : as, —

mihi satis, ipsīs nōn satis (Cic.), *enough for me, not for themselves*.

beātōs illōs quī cum adesse ipsīs nōn licēbat aderant tamen (id.), *happy they who, when it was not allowed them to attend in person, still were there*.

dī capitī ipsīus generīque reservent (Æn. vii. 484), *may the gods hold in reserve [such a fate] to fall on his own and his son-in-law's head*.

h. *Ipse* is often used alone, substantively, to emphasize an omitted subject of the first or second person : as, —

vōbīscum ipsī recordāmini (Cic.), *remember in your own minds (yourselves with yourselves)*.

i. *Ipse*, used substantively, sometimes refers to a principal personage, to distinguish him from subordinate persons : as, —

ipse dixit (cf. *αὐτὸς ἔφα*), *HE (the Master) said it*.

k. *Ipse* is often (*is rarely*) used instead of a reflexive. (Cf. § 196. i.)

l. *Ipse* usually agrees with the subject, even when the real emphasis is in English on a reflexive in the predicate : as, —

mē ipse cōnsōlor, I console myself. [Not *mē ipsum*.]

3. Reflexive Pronouns.

196. (RULE 7.) The Reflexive pronoun (**sē**),¹ and usually its corresponding possessive (**suus**), are used in some part of the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause : as, —

virtūs sē nōvit, virtue knows itself.

prōmisit sē ventūrum [esse], he promised that he would come.

Brūtus amicum suum occidit, Brutus killed his friend.

a. In a subordinate clause of a compound sentence there is a double use of reflexives.

1. The Reflexive may always be used to refer to the subject of its own clause (*Direct Reflexive*): as, —

ex quō iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē bonī cōstantia (B. G. i. 40), from which it can be determined how much good firmness possesses (has in itself).

[Caesar] nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī ē suis finibus trānsirent (B. G. i. 28), Cæsar did not wish this place to lie vacant, for fear the Germans would cross over from their territories.

2. If the subordinate clause expresses the words or thought of the subject of the main clause, the reflexive is regularly used to refer to that subject (*Indirect Reflexive*): as, —

petiērunt ut sibi liceret (B. G. i. 30), they begged that it might be allowed them (the petitioners).

Iccius nūntium ad eum mīttit, nisi subsidium sibi submīttātur, etc. (B. G. ii. 6), sends him a message that unless relief be furnished him (Iccius), etc.

sī obsidēs ab eīs (the Helvetians) sibi (Cæsar, who is the speaker) dentur, sē (Cæsar) cum eīs pācem esse factūrum (B. G. i. 14), [Cæsar said] that if hostages were given him by them, he would make peace with them.

NOTE. — Sometimes **is** or **ipse** is used as an Indirect Reflexive either from careless writing or to avoid ambiguity (cf. *i*): as, —

quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī vellent, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter

¹ This seems to have been originally the personal pronoun of the third person, but it came by use to be purely reflexive.

ipsōs (the persons referred to by **sē** above) *atque Ariovistum . . . timēre dicēbant* (B. G. i. 39), *those of them who wished to be thought less timid said they did not fear the enemy, but were afraid of the narrows and the vast extent of the forests which were between themselves and Ariovistus.*

audistis nūper dicere lēgātōs Tyndaritānōs Mercurium quī sacrīs anniver-sāriīs apud eōs colerētur Verris imperiō esse sublātum (Verr. iv. 84), *you have just heard the ambassadors from Tyndaris say that the statue of Mercury which was worshipped with annual rites among them was taken away, etc.* [Here Cicero wavers between **apud eōs colēbātur**, a remark of his own, and **apud sē colerētur**, the words of the *lēgātī*. **eōs** does not strictly refer to the ambassadors, but to the people—the **Tyndaritānī**.]

3. If the subordinate clause does not express the words or thought of the main subject, the reflexive is not regularly used, though it is occasionally found. Thus, —

sunt ita multī ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit (Cat. ii. 22), *they are so many that the prison cannot hold them.* [Here **sē** could not be used.] **ibi in proximīs villis ita bipartītō fuērunt, ut Tiberis inter eōs et pōns interesset** (Cat. iii. 5), *there they stationed themselves in the nearest farmhouses, in two divisions, in such a manner that the Tiber and the bridge were between them* (the divisions). [Here **inter sē** might be used, but it would refer to a purpose of the soldiers.]

b. The reflexive in a subordinate clause sometimes refers to the subject of a suppressed main clause : as, —

Paetus, omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1, 12), *Pætus gave me all the books which* (as he said in the act of donation) *his brother had left (him).*

c. The reflexive may refer to any noun in its own clause which is so emphasized as to become in a manner the *subject of discourse* (cf. the note) : as, —

Sōcratem civēs suī interfēcērunt, *Socrates was put to death by his own fellow-citizens.*

quī poterat salūs sua cuiquam nōn probārī (Mil. 81), *how can any one fail to approve his own safety?* [In this and the preceding example the emphasis is preserved in English by the change to the passive.]

hunc sī secūtī erunt suī comitēs (Cat. ii. 10), *this man, if his companions follow him.*

NOTE. — Occasionally the clause to which the reflexive really belongs is absorbed : as, —

studeō sãnāre sibi ipsōs (Cat. ii. 17), *I am anxious to cure these men for their own benefit (i.e. ut sãnī sibi sint).*

suō sibi gladiō (Plautus), *with his own sword.* [Here the clause is too indefinite to be supplied.]

d. The reflexive may follow a verbal noun or adjective : as, —
suī laus, *self-praise.*

impotēns suī (Q. C.), *without self-control.*

e. The reflexive may refer to the subject implied in an infinitive or verbal abstract used indefinitely : as, —

bellum est sua vitia nōsse (Cic.), *it is a fine thing to know one's own faults.*

cui prōposita sit cōservātiō suī (Fin. v. 37), *one whose aim is self-preservation.*

f. **Inter sē**, *among themselves*, is regularly used to express reciprocal action : as, —

cohaerentia inter sē, *things consistent with each other.*

g. **Suus** is used for *one's own* as emphatically opposed to *that of others*, in any part of the sentence and with reference to any word in it : as, —

suīs flammīs delēte Fīdēnās (Liv. iv. 33), *destroy Fidenæ with its own fires* (the fires kindled by that city, figuratively). [Cf. Cat. i. 32.]

h. For reflexives of the first and second persons the oblique cases of the personal pronouns (**meī**, **tuī**, etc.) are used (see § 98. 2, a) : as, —
mortī mē obtulī (Mil. 94), *I have exposed myself to death.*

hinc tē rēgīnae ad limina perfer (Æn. i. 389), *do you go* (bear yourself) *hence to the queen's threshold.*

i. **Ipse** is often (is rarely) used instead of an *indirect reflexive*, to avoid ambiguity ; and in later writers is sometimes found instead of the *direct reflexive* (cf. a. 2 and 3) : as, —

cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius dīligentiā dēspērārent (B. G. i. 40), *why* (he asked) *should they despair of their own courage or his diligence ?*

4. Possessive Pronouns.

197. The Possessive pronouns are derivative adjectives, which take the gender, number, and case of the noun *to which they belong*, not those of the *possessor* : as, —

Caesar uxōrem suam repudiāvit, *Cæsar put away his wife.*

haec sunt mea ōrnāmenta, *these are my jewels.* [mea is neut. pl., though the speaker is a woman.]

a. (RULE 8.) The possessive pronouns are used instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun.

1. Always instead of the Possessive Genitive : as, —

domus mea, my house. [Never *domus mei.*]

pater noster, our father. [Never *pater nostri.*]

NOTE 1. — In different languages the ideas associated with possessives are not always the same, and hence idiomatic uses differ. Thus *my eulogist* may, in Latin, be *laudātor nostrī* (Att. i. 14, 6), or, like the English, *laudātor noster* (see Att. i. 16, 5), with a different conception of the relation.

NOTE 2. — The possessive *cūius*, -a, -um, is rare : as, *cūium pecus?* *whose flock?* The genitive *cūius* is generally used instead.

2. Rarely instead of the Objective Genitive. Thus, regularly, —

suī dēspiciēs, disdainful of himself.

nōn solum suī dēprecātorem, sed etiam accūsātorem mei, not only a mediator for himself, but an accuser of me (Att. xi. 8).

But occasionally, —

ea quae faciēbat, tuā sē fiduciā facere dicēbat (Verr. v. 176), *what he was doing, he said he did relying on you* (with your reliance).

b. The possessives have often the acquired meaning of *peculiar to*, or *favorable* or *propitious towards* the person or thing spoken of : as, —

[*petere*] *ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine ūtātur, they asked* (they said) *that he would show his* [wonted] *clemency and humanity.*

ignōrantī quem portum petat nūllus suus ventus est (Sen. Ep. 71. 3), *to him who knows not what port he is bound to, no wind is fair* (his own).

c. The possessives are regularly omitted (like other pronouns) when they are plainly implied in the context : as, —

amicum grātulātur, he greets his friend. [*amicum suum* would be distinctive, *his friend* (and not another's); *suum amicum*, emphatic, *his own friend.*]

d. Possessives are often used substantively (§ 190. a) : as, —

nostrī, our countrymen, or men of our party.

suos continēbāt (B. G. i. 15), *he held his men in check.*

flamma extrēma meōrum (Æn. ii. 431), *last flames of my countrymen.*

e. (RULE 9.) A possessive representing a genitive may have a genitive in apposition (§ 184. d) : as, —

meā sōlius causā, for my sake only.

nostra omnium patria, the country of us all.

5. Relative Pronouns.

NOTE. — A Relative pronoun is properly an Adjective, in agreement with some word expressed or implied either in its own clause, or (often) in the antecedent (demonstrative) clause. The full construction would require the antecedent to be expressed in both clauses, with more commonly a corresponding *demonstrative* to which the relative would refer: as, —

iter in *ea loca* facere coepit, *quibus in locis* esse Germānōs audiēbat (B. G. iv. 7), *he began to march into those PLACES in which PLACES he heard the Germans were.*

Relatives serve two uses: —

1. as Nouns (or adjectives) in their own clause: as, —

eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, *those who were besieged at Alesia.*

2. as Connectives: as, —

T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō primum pīlū dūxerat, *Titus Balventio, who the year before had been a centurion of the first rank.*

In this latter use they are often equivalent merely to a demonstrative: as, —
quae cum ita sint (= *cum ea ita sint*), *since these things are so.*

197a. A Relative pronoun indicates a relation between its own clause and some substantive. This substantive is called the Antecedent of the relative.

Thus, in the sentence —

eum nihil dēlectābat, quod fās esset, *nothing pleased him which was right*, the relative *quod* connects its antecedent *nihil* with the predicate *fās esset*, indicating a relation between the two.

198. (RULE 3.) A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER and NUMBER; but its CASE depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands: as, —

puer quī vēnit abiit, *the boy who came has gone away.*

liber quem legis meus est, *the book you are reading is mine.*

via quā ambulat dūcit ad urbem, *the path he walks in leads to the city.*

This rule applies to all relative words so far as they are variable in form: as, *quālis*, *quantus*, *quicumque*.

NOTE. — The relative may be the subject or object in its own clause, or a modifier of either: as, —

eōs enim civēs pūgna illa sustulerat quibus nōn modo vīvīs sed etiam victōribus incolumis et florēns civitās esse posset (Phil. xiv. 23).

a. If a relative has two or more antecedents, it follows the rules for the agreement of predicate adjectives (§§ 186, 187): *as*, —

filium et filiam, quōs valdē dīlēxit, ūnō tempore āmisit, he lost a son and a daughter at the same time, whom he dearly loved.

ōtium atque dīvitiae quae p̄ma mortālēs putant (Sall. Cat. 36), idleness and wealth which men count the first (objects of desire).

199. A relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number (cf. § 195. *d*): *as*, —

mare etiam quem Neptūnum esse dicēbās (N. D. iii. 52), the sea, too, which you said was Neptune. [Not quod.]

Thēbae ipsae, quod Boeōtiae caput est (Liv. xlii. 44), even Thebes, which is the chief city of Bæotia. [Not quae.]

NOTE. — This rule is occasionally violated: *as*, —

flūmen quod appellātur Tamesis (B. G. v. 11), a river which is called the Thames.

a. A relative occasionally agrees with its antecedent in case (by attraction): *as*, —

sī aliquid agās eōrum quōrum cōsuētī (Fam. v. 14), if you should do something of what you are used to do. [For eōrum quae.]

b. A relative may agree in gender and number with an implied antecedent: *as*, —

quārtum genus . . . quī aere vetere aliēnō vacillant (Cat. ii. 21), a fourth class, that are staggering under old debts.

NOTE. — So regularly when the antecedent is implied in a possessive pronoun: *as*, —

nostra quī adsumus salūs, the safety of us who are present. [Here quī agrees with the nostrū implied in nostra.]

200. The antecedent noun sometimes appears in both clauses; but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted. Thus, —

a. The antecedent may be repeated in the relative clause: *as*, —

locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī dēlēgerant (B. G. ii. 18), the nature of the ground which our men had chosen was this.

b. The antecedent may appear only in the relative clause : *as*, —
quās rēs in cōsulātū nostrō gessimus attigit hīc versibus (Arch. 28), *he has touched in verse the things which I did in my consulship.*
urbem quam statuō vestra est (Æn. i. 573), *the city which I am founding is yours.*

NOTE. — In this case a demonstrative (*is*, *ille*, or *hīc*) usually stands in the antecedent clause : *as*, —

quae pars civitātis calamitatem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit (B. G. i. 12), *that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.*

c. The antecedent may be entirely omitted, especially if it is indefinite : *as*, —

quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat (B. G. iv. 25), [the man] *who bore the eagle of the tenth legion.*

quī cōgnōscerent mīsit (id. i. 21), *he sent [men] to reconnoitre (who should, etc.).*

d. A predicate adjective (especially a superlative) agreeing with its antecedent in gender and number may stand in the relative clause : *as*, —

vāsa ea quae pulcherrima apud eum viderat (Verr. iv. 63), *those most beautiful vessels which he had seen at his house.* [Nearly equivalent to *the vessels of which he had seen some very beautiful ones.*]

e. The phrase *id quod* or *quae rēs* is used (instead of *quod* alone) to refer to a group of words or an idea : —

[*obtrēctātum est*] *Gabīniō dicam an ne Pompēiō? an utrīque — id quod est vērius?* (Manil. 57), *an affront is offered — shall I say to Gabinius or to Pompey? or — which is truer — to both?*

multum sunt in vēnātiōnibus . . . quae rēs virēs alit (B. G. iv. 1), *they spend much time in hunting, which [practice] increases their strength.* [Cf. B. G. ii. 5.]

NOTE. — But *quod* alone often occurs : *as*, —

Cassius noster, quod mihi māgnae voluptātī fuit, hostem reiēcera (Fam. ii. 10), *our friend Cassius — which was a great satisfaction to me — had driven back the enemy.*

201. In the use of relatives, the following points are to be observed : —

a. The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English. Thus, —

liber quem mihi dedisti, *the book you gave me.*

is sum qui semper fui, *I am the same man I always was.*

b. A relative clause in Latin often takes the place of some other construction in English; particularly of a participle, an appositive, or a noun of agency: as, —

lēgēs quae nunc sunt, *the existing laws* (the laws which now exist).

Caesar qui Galliam vicit, *Cæsar the conqueror of Gaul* (who conquered Gaul).

c. In formal or emphatic discourse, the relative clause usually comes first, often containing the antecedent noun (cf. § 200. *b*): as, —

quae mala cum multis patimur, ea nobis leviora videntur, *the evils we suffer [in common] with many, seem to us lighter.*

d. The antecedent, when in apposition with the main clause, or with some word of it, is put in the relative clause: as, —

firmi amici, cuius generis est magna penuria, *steadfast friends, a class of which there is a great lack* (of which class).

e. A relative may stand (even with another relative or an interrogative) at the beginning of a sentence or clause, where in English a demonstrative must be used: as, —

quae qui audiebant, *and those who heard this* (which things).

quae cum ita sint, *and since these things are so.*

quorum quod simile factum (Cat. iv. 13), *what deed of theirs like this?*

f. 1. A relative adverb is regularly used in referring to an antecedent in the Locative case: as, —

mortuus Cūmīs quō sē contulerat (Liv. ii. 21), *having died at Cumæ, whither he had retired.* [Here in quam urbem might be used, but not in quās.]

2. So, often, to express any relation of place instead of the formal relative pronoun (cf. *whence, whereto, wherewith*): as, —

locus quō aditus nōn erat, *a place to which* (whither) *there was no access.*
rēgna, unde genus dūcis, *the kingdom from which you derive your race.*

g. The relatives **qui**, **quālis**, **quantus**, **quot**, etc., are often rendered simply by **as**¹ in English (§ 106. *b*): as, —

idem quod semper, *the same as always.*

tālis dux quālem Hannibalem nōvimus, *such a chief as we know Hannibal* (to have been).

¹ The English *as* in this use is strictly a relative, though invariable in form.

h. The general construction of relatives is found in clauses introduced by relative or temporal adverbs: as, **ubi**, **quō**, **unde**, **cum**, **quārē**.

6. Indefinite Pronouns.

202. The Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is meant, without designating *what one*.

NOTE. — For the meanings of the compounds of **quī** and **quis**, see § 105.

a. Of the particular indefinites meaning *some* or *any* (**quis**, **quispīam**, **nesciō quis**, **aliquis**, **quīdam**), the simple **quis** is least definite, **quīdam** most definite: as, —

dixerit quis (quispīam), some one may say.

aliquī philosophī ita putant, some philosophers think so. [quīdam would mean certain particular persons defined to the speaker's mind.]

habitant hīc quaedam mulierēs pauperulae, some poor women live here [i.e. some women he knows of; some women or other would be aliquae or nesciō quae].

b. In a *particular* negative **aliquis** (**aliquī**) is regularly used, where in a *universal* negative **quisquam** (subst.) or **ūllus** (adj.) would be required: as, —

iūstitia numquam nocet cuiquam quī eam habet (Cic.), justice never does harm to anybody who possesses it. [alicui would mean to somebody who possesses it.]

sine aliquō metū, [you cannot do this] without some fear.

sine ūllō metū, [you may do this] without any fear.

NOTE. — These pronouns are used in like manner in conditional and other sentences (§ 105. *h*): as, —

sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit (Læ. 9), if any man was (ever) a sage, he was.

dum praesidia ūlla fuērunt (Rosc. Am. 126), while there were any armed forces (till they ceased to be).

c. Of the general indefinites, **quīvis** and **quīlibet** (*any you will*), **utervis** (*either you will*, of two), are used chiefly in affirmative, **quisquam** and **ūllus** (*any at all*) in negative, interrogative, or conditional clauses: as, —

cuivis potest accidere quod cuiquam potest, what can happen to any [one] man can happen to any man [whatever].

nōn cuivis hominī contingit adire Corinthum, *it is not every man's luck to go to Corinth.* [nōn cuiquam would mean *not any man's.*]

minus habeo virium quam vestrū utervis, *I have less strength than either of you.*

quidlibet modo aliquid (Cic.), *anything you will, provided it be something.*
cūr cuiquam mīsī prius, *why did I send to anybody before [you]?*

d. The distributives **quisque** (*every*), **uterque** (*each*), and **ūnus quisque** (*every single one*) are used in general assertions. They are equivalent to a plural, and sometimes have a plural verb (cf. § 205. c. 2): as, —

bonus liber melior est quisque quō māior, *the larger a good book is, the better* (each good book is better [in the same measure] as it is larger).
ambō exercitūs suās quisque abeunt domōs, *both armies go away, every man to his home.*

uterque utrīque erat exercitus in cōspectū, *each army was in sight of the other* (each to each).

pōnite ante oculōs ūnumquemque rēgum, *set before your eyes each of the kings.*

e. **Quisque** is regularly placed in a dependent clause, if there is one :
quō quisque est sollertior, hōc docet irācundius (Rosc. Com. 31), *the keener-witted a man is, the more impatiently he teaches* (as each is so, etc.).

NOTE. — **Quisque** is generally post-positive. Thus, **suum cuique**, *to every man his own.*

f. **Nēmō**, *no one*, is used : either

As a substantive : as, —

nēmō fit repentē turpissimus, *no one suddenly becomes absolutely base.*

As an adjective pronoun : as, —

vir nēmō bonus (Leg. ii. 41), *no good man.*

NOTE. — Even when used as a substantive, **nēmō** may take a noun in apposition : as, —

nēmō scriptor, *nobody [who is] a writer.*

7. Allus and Alter.

203. The expressions **alter**, . . . **alter**, *the one . . . the other*, **alius** . . . **alius**, *one . . . another*, may be used in pairs to denote either *division* of a group or *reciprocity* of action : as, —

arma ab aliis posita ab aliis erepta sunt (Marc. 31), *arms were laid down by some and were snatched from others.*

alteri dimicant, alteri victorem timent (Fam. vi. 3), *one party fights, the other fears the victor.*

hi fratres alter alterum amant, *these brothers love one another.*

alius alium percontamur, *we ask each other.*

a. Alius means simply *other, another* (of an indefinite number); *alter*, *the other* (of two), often the *second* in a series; *ceteri* and *reliqui*, *all the rest, the others*; *alteruter*, *one of the two*. Thus, —

quid aliud agis, *what else are you doing* (what other thing)?

uni epistulae respondi, venio ad alteram (Fam. ii. 17. 6), *one letter I have answered, I come to the other.*

alterum genus (Cat. ii. 19), *the second class.*

iecissem ipse me potius in profundum ut ceteros conservarem (Sest. 45), *I should have rather thrown myself into the deep to save the rest.*

Servilius consul, reliquique magistratus (B. C. iii. 21), *Servilius the consul and the rest of the magistrates.*

cum sit necesse alterutrum vincere (Fam. vi. 3), *when it must be that one of the two should prevail.*

b. Alius and *alter* are often used to express *one* as well as *another* (*the other*) of the objects referred to: as, —

alter consulum, *one of the [two] consuls.*

aliud est maledicere, aliud accusare (Cic.), *it is one thing to slander, another to accuse.*

c. Alius repeated in another case, or with an adverb from the same stem, expresses shortly a double statement: as, —

alius aliud petit, *one man seeks one thing, one another* (another seeks another thing).

alii alia via civitatem auxerunt (Liv. i. 21), *they enlarged the State, each in his own way.*

IV. VERBS.

1. Verb and Subject.

204. (RULE 4.) A Finite verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person: as, —

ego statuō, *I resolve.*

silent leges inter arma, *the laws are dumb in time of war.*

NOTE. — In verb-forms containing a participle, the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number (§ 186): as, —

orātiō est habita, the plea was delivered.

bellum exortum est, a war arose.

a. A verb having a relative as its subject takes the person of the expressed or implied antecedent: as, —

adsum quī fēcī (Æn. ix. 427), here am I who did it.

b. The verb sometimes agrees in number, a participle in the verb-form in number and gender, with an appositive or predicate noun: as, —

nōn omnis error stultitia est dicenda (Div. ii. 90), not every error should be called folly.

Corinthus lūmen Graeciae extinctum est, Corinth, the light of Greece, is put out.

2. Double Subject.

205. Two or more singular subjects take a verb in the plural: as, —

pater et avus mortuī sunt, his father and grandfather are dead.

a. When subjects are of different persons, the verb is in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third: as, —

sī tū et Tullia valētis ego et Cicerō valēmus (Fam. xiv. 5), if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. [Notice that the first person is also first in order, not last, as by courtesy in English.]

NOTE. — In case of different genders a participle in a verb-form follows the rule for predicate adjectives; see § 187. *b, c.*

b. If the subjects are connected by disjunctives, or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular: as, —

quem neque fidēs neque iūsiurandum neque illum misericordia repressit (Ter. Ad. 306), not faith, nor oath, nay, nor mercy, checked him.

Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit (Fam. v. 8), the Roman Senate and people understand. But, — neque Caesar neque ego habitī essēmus (Fam. xi. 20), neither C. nor I should have been considered.

c. A collective noun commonly takes a verb in the singular: as, —

Senātus haec intellegit (Cat. i. 2), the Senate is aware of this.

ad hiberna exercitus redit (Liv. xxi. 22), the army returns to winter quarters.

1. But the plural is often found with collective nouns when *individuals* are thought of: as, —

pars praedās agēbant (Jug. 32), *a part brought in booty.*

cum tanta multitudō lapidēs cōnicerent (B. G. ii. 6), *when such a crowd was throwing stones.*

NOTE. — The point of view may change in the course of a sentence: as, —
equitātum omnem . . . quem habēbat praemittit, quī videant (B. G. i. 15),
he sent ahead all the cavalry he had, to see (who should see).

2. **Quisque** has very often a plural verb, but may be considered as in apposition with a plural subject implied (cf. § 202. *d*): as, —

sibi quisque habeant quod suum est (Plaut. Curc.), *let every one keep his own* (let them keep every man his own).

d. When a verb belongs to two or more subjects *separately*, it may agree with one and be understood with the others: as, —

intercēdit M. Antōnius et Cassius tribūnī plēbis (B. C. i. 2), *Antony and Cassius, tribunes of the people, interpose.*

3. Incomplete Sentences.

206. The subject of the verb is sometimes omitted. Thus, —

a. A personal pronoun, as subject, is usually omitted unless emphatic. Thus, —

loquor, I speak. But, *ego loquor, it is I that speak.*

b. An *indefinite* subject is often omitted.

This is usually a plural, as in **dīcunt**, **ferunt**, **perhibent** (*they say*); but sometimes singular, as in **inquit** (Tusc. i. 93), *one says* (referring to a class of reasoners just spoken of).

c. The verb is often omitted. Thus, —

1. **Dicō**, **faciō**, **agō**, and other verbs in familiar phrases: as, —

quōrsum haec [spectant], *what does this aim at?*

ex ungue leōnem [cōgnōscēs], *you will know a lion by his claw.*

quid multa, *what need of many words* (why should I say much)?

quid? quod, *what of this, that, etc.* (what shall I say of this, that, etc.)?

[A form of transition.]

2. The copula **sum**, very commonly in the indicative and infinitive, rarely (except by late authors) in the subjunctive: as, —

tū coniūnx (*Æn.* iv. 113), *you [are] his wife.*

omnia praeclāra rāra (*Lael.* 79), *all the best things are rare.*

accipe quae peragenda prius (*Æn.* vi. 136), *hear what is first to be accomplished.* [Direct : quae peragenda prius ?]

V. PARTICLES.

1. Adverbs.

207. (RULE 10.) Adverbs are used to modify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs.

a. A Demonstrative or Relative adverb is often equivalent to the corresponding Pronoun with a preposition (see § 201. *f*) : as, —

eō militēs impōnere (*B. G.* i. 42), *on them* (thereon, on the horses) *he puts the soldiers.*

quī eum necāsset unde ipse nātus esset (*Rosc. Am.* 71), *one who should have killed his own father* (him whence he had his birth).

b. The adverbs **propius**, *near*; **proximē**, *next* (like the adjectives **propior**, **proximus**); **prīdiē**, *the day before*; **postrīdiē**, *the day after*, are sometimes followed by the accusative (see § 261. *a*).

The adverbs **palam**, *openly*; **procul**, *afar*; **simul**, *at the same time*, are sometimes followed by the ablative (see § 261. *b*).

NOTE. — **Prīdiē** and **postrīdiē** are often used with the genitive. **Clam**, *without the knowledge of*, may take the accusative, the ablative, or the genitive (§ 261. *c*).

c. Many perfect participles used as nouns regularly retain the adverb which modified them as participles : as, —

praeclārē factum, *a glorious deed* (a thing gloriously done).

d. Very rarely adverbs are used with nouns which contain a verbal idea (cf. § 188. *d*) : as, —

populus lātē rēx (*Æn.* i. 21), *a people ruling far and wide.*

hinc abitiō (*Plaut.*), *a going away from here.*

2. Conjunctions.

NOTE. — For the classification of conjunctions, see §§ 154, 155.

208. Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood that precedes them : as, —

scriptum senātui et populō (Cat. iii. 10), *written to the senate and people.*
 ut eās [partīs] sārārēs et cōfirmārēs (Mil. 68), *that you might cure*
and strengthen those parts.

neque meā prūdentiā neque hūmānīs cōsiliīs frētus (Cat. ii. 29), *rely-*
ing neither on my own foresight nor on human wisdom.

a. Conjunctions of Comparison (as **ut, quam, tanquam, quasi**) also commonly connect similar constructions: as, —

hīs igitur **quam** physicīs potius crēdendum exīstimās (Div. ii. 37), *do you*
think these are more to be trusted than the natural philosophers?

ut nōn omne vinum sīc nōn omnis nātūra vetustāte coacēscit (Cat. Maj.
 65), *as every wine does not sour with age, so [does] not every nature.*

Cf. pērgē ut īstituistī (Rep. ii. 22), *go on as you have begun.*

b. Two or more co-ordinate words, phrases, or sentences are often put together without the use of conjunctions (*Asyndeton*): as, —

omnēs dī, hominēs, *all gods and men.*

liberī, servī, *freemen and slaves.*

i. With more than two co-ordinate words, etc., a conjunction, if used at all, must be used with all (or all except the first): as, —

aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum
 (B. G. vi. 13), *by debt, excessive taxation, or oppression on the part of*
the powerful.

summā fidē et cōstantiā et iūstitiā, *with perfect good faith, [and] con-*
sistency, and justice. [Not *fidē cōstantiā et iūstitiā*, as in English.]

2. But words are often so divided into groups that the members of the groups omit the conjunction (or express it), while the groups themselves express the conjunction (or omit it): as, —

propudium illud et portentum, L. Antōnius īsigne odium omnium
 hominum (Phil. xiv. 8), *that wretch and monster, Lucius Antonius,*
the abomination of all men.

3. The enclitic **-que** is sometimes used with the last member of a series, even when there is no grouping apparent: as, —

vōce vultū mōtūque (Brut. 110), *by voice, expression, and gesture.*

multō sūdōre labōre vigiliisque (Caecil. 72), *with much fatigue, toil,*
and waking.

c. Two adjectives belonging to the same noun are regularly connected by a conjunction: as, —

multae et gravēs causae, *many weighty reasons.*

d. Many words properly adverbs may be used correlatively, and so become conjunctions, partly or wholly losing their adverbial force (see § 107). Such are —

cum . . . tum, while . . . so also (both . . . and).

tum . . . tum, now . . . now.

modo . . . modo, now . . . now.

simul . . . simul, at the same time . . . at the same time (at once . . . as well as).

quā . . . quā, now . . . now.

nunc . . . nunc, now . . . now.

Thus, —

cum difficile est, *tum* *nē* aecum quidem (Lael. 26), *not only is it difficult, but even unjust.*

modo ait *modo* negat (Ter. Eun. 712), *now he says yes, now no.*

simul grātiās agit, *simul* grātulātur (Q. C. vi. 7, 15), *he thanks him and at the same time congratulates him.*

e. Two conjunctions of similar meaning are often used together, for the sake of emphasis or to bind a sentence more closely to what precedes: as, at *vērō*, *but in truth, still, however*; *itaque ergō*, *accordingly then*; *namque*, *for*; *et-enim*, *for, you see* (§ 156. d).

f. For conjunctions introducing subjunctive clauses, see §§ 316 ff.

3. Negative Particles.

NOTE. — For the list of negative particles, see § 149. e.

209. In the use of the Negative Particles, the following points are to be observed: —

a. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative, as in English (§ 150): as, *nēmō nōn videt*, *everybody sees.*

But a *general* negation is not destroyed —

1. By a following *nē* . . . *quidem*, *not even*, or *nōn modo*, *not only*: as, —

numquam tū nōn modo ōtium, sed nē bellum quidem nisi nefārium concupistī (Cat. i. 25), *not only have you never desired repose, but you have never desired any war except one which was infamous.*

2. By succeeding negatives, each introducing a separate subordinate member: as, —

eaque nesciēbant nec ubi nec quālia essent (Tusc. iii. 4), *they knew not where or of what kind these things were.*

3. By **neque** introducing a co-ordinate member : as, —

nequeō satis **mīrārī neque cōnicere** (Ter. Eun. 547), *I cannot wonder enough nor conjecture.*

b. The negative is frequently joined to some other word. Hence the forms of negation in Latin differ from those in English in many expressions. Thus, —

neque (nec), *and not, but not* (neither . . . nor) (not et **nōn**).

nec quisquam, *and no one* (nor any one) (not et **nēmō**).

nūllī or neutrī crēdō, *I do not believe either* (I believe neither) (not **nōn crēdō ūllī**).

negō haec esse **vēra**, *I say this is not true* (I deny that these things are true) (not **dīcō nōn esse**).

sine ūllō periculō (less commonly **cum nūllō**), *with no danger* (without any danger).

nihil unquam **audīvī iūcundius**, *I never heard anything more amusing* (nothing more amusing have I ever heard).

c. A statement is often made emphatic by denying its contrary (*Litotes*): as, —

nōn haec **sine nūmine dīvōm ēveniunt** (Æn. ii. 777), *these things do not occur without the will of the gods.*

haec **nōn nimis** **exquīrō** (Att. vii. 18, 3), *not very much, i.e. very little.*

NOTE. — Compare **nōnnūllus**, **nōnnēmō**, etc. (§ 150. a).

d. The particle **immō**, *nay*, is used to contradict some part of a preceding statement or question, or its form ; in the latter case, the same statement is often repeated in a stronger form, so that **immō** becomes nearly equivalent to *yes* (*nay but, nay rather*): as, —

causa igitur **nōn** bona est? **immō** optima (Att. ix. 7), *is the cause then not a good one? on the contrary, the best.*

e. **Minus**, *less* (especially with **sī**, *if*, **quō**, *in order that*), and **minimē**, *least*, often have a negative force. Thus, —

sī minus possunt, *if they cannot*. [For **quō minus**, see §§ 319. c, 331. e.]
audācissimus ego ex omnibus? **minimē** (Rosc. Am. 2), *am I the boldest of them all? by no means* (not at all).

[For *do not* in Prohibitions, see § 269. a.]

VI. QUESTIONS.

210. Questions are either Direct or Indirect.

1. A Direct Question gives the exact words of the speaker : as, —
quid est? what is it?

2. An Indirect Question gives the substance of the question, adapted to the form of the sentence in which it is quoted. It depends on a verb or other expression of *asking, doubting, knowing, or the like* : as, —

rogāvit quid esset, he asked what it was. [Direct : *quid est, what is it?*]

nesciō ubi sim, I know not where I am. [Direct : *ubi sum, where am I?*]

Questions in Latin are introduced by special interrogative words, and are not distinguished by the order of words, as in English.

NOTE. — For the list of Interrogative Particles, see § 149. *d.*

a. (RULE 11.) A question of *simple fact*, requiring the answer YES or NO, is formed by adding the enclitic **-ne** to the emphatic word : as, —

tūne id veritus es (Cic.), did you fear that?

hīcine vir usquam nisi in patriā moriētur (Mil. 104), shall this man die anywhere but in his native land?

b. The interrogative particle **-ne** is sometimes omitted : as, —

patēre tua cōsilia nōn sentīs (Cat. i. 1), do you not see that your schemes are manifest (you do not see, eh)?

NOTE — In such cases no sign of interrogation appears except in the punctuation, and it is often doubtful whether the sentence is a question or an ironical statement.

c. (RULE 12.) When the enclitic **-ne** is added to a negative word, as in **nōnne**, — an affirmative answer is expected. The particle **num** suggests a negative answer. Thus, —

nōnne animadvertis (N. D. iii. 89), do you not observe?

num dubium est (Rosc. Am. 107), there is no doubt, is there?

d. The particle **-ne** often when added to the verb, less commonly when added to some other word, has the force of **nōnne** : as, —

meministine mē in senātū dicere (Cat. i. 7), don't you remember my saying in the Senate?

rēctēne interpretor sententiam tuam (Tusc. iii. 37), do I not rightly interpret your meaning?

NOTE.—This was evidently the original meaning of *-ne*; but in most cases the negative force was lost, and *-ne* was used merely to express a question. So the English interrogative *no?* shades off into *eh?*

e. A question concerning *some special circumstance* is formed by prefixing to the sentence an interrogative pronoun or adverb (§ 106), as in English : as, —

quid est quod iam amplius expectēs (Cat. i. 6), *what is there for you to look for any more?*

quō igitur haec spectant (Fam. vi. 6), *whither, then, is all this tending?*

Īcare, ubi es (Ov. M. viii. 232), *Icarus, where are you?*

REMARK. — A question of this form becomes an exclamation by changing the inflection of the voice : as, *quālis vir erat!* *what a man he was!* *quot calamitatēs passi sumus!* *how many misfortunes have we suffered!*

f. The particles **nam** (enclitic) and **tandem** may be added to interrogative pronouns and adverbs for the sake of emphasis : as, —

quisnam est, *pray who is it?* [*quis tandem est?* would be stronger.]

ubinam gentium sumus (Cat. i. 9), *where in the world are we?*

in quā tandem urbe hōc disputant (Mil. 7), *in what city, pray, do they maintain this?*

In indirect questions **num** loses its peculiar force (§ 210. c).

Double Questions.

211. A Double or Alternative Question is an inquiry as to which of two or more supposed cases is true.

In Double or Alternative Questions, **utrum** or **-ne**, *whether*, stands in the first member; **an**, **anne**, *or*, **annōn**, **necne**, *or not*, in the second; and usually **an** in the third, if there be one : as, —

utrum nescīs, an prō nihilō id putās (Fam. x. 26), *is it that you don't know, or do you think nothing of it?*

quaerō servōsne an liberōs (Rosc. Am. 74), *I ask whether slaves or free.*

REMARK. — **Annōn** is more common in direct questions, **necne** in indirect.

a. The interrogative particle is often omitted in the first member; in which case **an** or **-ne** (**anne**, **necne**) may stand in the second : as, —

Gabiniō dicam anne Pompēiō an utrīque (Man. 57), *shall I say to Gabinius, or to Pompey, or to both?*

sunt haec tua verba necne (Tusc. iii. 41), *are these your words or not?*

b. Sometimes the first member is omitted or implied, and **an** (*anne*) alone asks the question, — usually with indignation or surprise : as, —
an tū miserōs putās illōs (Tusc. i. 13), *what! do you think those men wretched?*

c. Sometimes the second member is omitted or implied, and **utrum** may ask a question to which there is no alternative : as, —
utrum in clārissimīs est cīvibus is, quem . . . (Flacc. 45), *is he among the noblest citizens, whom, etc.?*

d. The following table exhibits the various forms of alternative questions : —

<u>utrum . . . an . . . an</u>	<u>-ne . . . an</u>
<u>utrum . . . annōn</u>	<u>— . . . -ne, necne</u>
<u>— . . . an (anne)</u>	<u>-ne . . . necne</u>

Question and Answer.

212. There is no one Latin word in common use meaning simply *yes* or *no*. In answering a question *affirmatively*, the verb or some other emphatic word is generally repeated; in answering *negatively*, the verb, etc., with **nōn** or a similar negative : as, —

valetne, is he well? valet, yes (he is well).

eratne tēcum, was he with you? nōn erat, no (he was not).

numquidnam novī, there is nothing new, is there? nihil sãnē, oh! nothing.

a. An intensive or negative particle, a phrase, or a clause is sometimes used to answer a direct question : thus, —

1. For YES : —

etiam, even so, yes, etc.

ita vērō, certainly (so in truth), etc.

vērō, in truth, true, no doubt, yes.

sãnē quidem, yes, no doubt, etc.

ita, so, true, etc.

ita est, it is so, true, etc.

sãnē, surely (soundly), *no doubt, doubtless, etc.*

certē, certainly, most assuredly, unquestionably, etc.

2. For NO : —

nōn, not [so].

nūllō modō, by no means.

minimē, not at all (in the smallest degree, cf. § 209. e).

minimē vērō, no, not by any means; oh! no, etc.

nōn quidem, why, no; certainly not, etc.

nōn hercle vērō, why, gracious, no (certainly not, by Hercules)!

Examples are :—

quidnam? an laudatiōnēs? *ita*, *why, what? is it eulogies? just so.*

aut etiam aut nōn respondēre (Acad. ii. 104), *to answer* (categorically) *yes or no.*

estne ut fertur forma? s̄anē (Ter. Eun. 360), *is [she] as handsome as they say she is (is her beauty as it is said)? oh! yes.*

fugisne hinc? ego vērō ac lubēs (Ter. And. 337), *will you clear out from here? indeed I will, and be glad to.*

miser ergō Archelāus? certē s̄i iniūstus (Tusc. v. 35), *was Archelaus wretched then? certainly, if he was unjust.*

haec contemnitis? minimē (De Or. ii. 295), *do you despise these things? not at all.*

volucribusne et ferīs? minimē vērō (Tusc. i. 104), *to the birds and beasts? why, of course not.*

ex tuī animī sententiā tu uxōrem habēs? nōn hercle, ex meī animī sententiā (De Or. ii. 260), *Lord! no, etc.*

b. In answering a double question, one member of the alternative, or some part of it, must be repeated : as, —

tūne an frāter erat, *was it you or your brother?* ego [eram], *it was I.*

REMARK. — From double questions must be distinguished those which are in themselves single, but of which *some detail only* is alternative. These have the common disjunctive particles *aut* or *vel* (-ve) : as, —

quaerō num iniūstē aut improbē fēcerit (Off. iii. 54), *I ask whether he acted unjustly or even dishonestly.*

Here there is no double question. The only inquiry is whether the man did *either* of the two things supposed, not *which* of the two he did.

CONSTRUCTION OF CASES.

1. GENITIVE.

NOTE. — The Genitive is regularly used to express the relation of one noun to another. Hence it is sometimes called the *adjective* case, to distinguish it from the Dative and the Ablative, which may be called *adverbial* cases. Its uses may be classified as follows :—

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS :

1. Of Possession (§ 214).
2. Of Source developed into Material (§ 214. c).
3. Of Quality (§ 215).
4. Of the **Whole**, after words designating a Part (Partitive, § 216).
5. With Nouns of Action and Feeling (§ 217).

- II. GENITIVE WITH { 1. Relative adjective (or Verbal) (§ 218. *a*, *b*).
ADJECTIVES: { 2. Of Specification (later use) (§ 218. *c*).
III. GENITIVE WITH { 1. Of Memory, Feeling, etc. (§§ 219, 221–23).
VERBS: { 2. Of Accusing, etc. (Charge or Penalty) (§ 220).

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

213. (RULE 14.) A noun used to limit or define another, and *not* meaning the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive.

This relation is most frequently expressed in English by the preposition **OF** : **as**,—

librī Cicerōnis, *the books of Cicero, Cicero's books.*

talentum aurī, *a talent of gold.*

vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the greatest courage.*

pars militum, *a part of the soldiers.*

cultus deōrum, *worship of the gods.*

vacātiō labōris, *a respite from toil.*

victor omnium gentium, *conqueror of all nations.*

In most constructions the genitive is either Subjective or Objective.

(1. The Subjective genitive denotes that to which the noun limited belongs, or from which it is derived (§ 214).

(2. The Objective genitive denotes that towards which an action or feeling is directed (§ 217 ff.).

This distinction is illustrated by the following example. The phrase **amor patris**, *love of a father*, may mean *love felt by a father, a father's love* (subjective genitive), or *love towards a father* (objective genitive).

214. (RULE 15.) The Subjective Genitive is used with a noun to denote (1) the Author or Owner, (2) the Source or the Material, (3) the Quality.

1. Possessive Genitive.

a. 1. The Possessive Genitive denotes the author or owner : **as**,—

librī Cicerōnis, *the books of (written by) Cicero.*

Alexandrī ecus, *Alexander's horse.*

2. For the genitive of possession a possessive or derivative adjective is often used,—regularly for the possessive genitive of the personal pronouns (§§ 190, 197. *a*): as,—

liber meus, my book. [Not *liber mei*.]

aliēna perīcula, other men's dangers. [But also *aliōrum*.]

Sullāna tempora, the times of Sulla. [Often *Sullae*.]

b. The noun limited is understood in a few expressions: as,—

ad Castoris [aedēs], to the [temple] of Castor (cf. English, St. Peter's).

Hectoris Andromachē (Æn. iii. 319), Hector's [wife] Andromache.

Flaccus Claudī, Flaccus [slave] of Claudius.

c. The possessive genitive is often in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb: as,—

haec domus est patris mei, this house is my father's.

tūtēlae nostrae [eōs] dūximus (Liv.), we held them [to be] in our protection.

compendi facere, to save (make of saving).

lucri facere, to get the benefit of (make of profit).

iam mē Pompēi tōtum esse scīs (Fam. ii. 13), you know I am now all for Pompey (all Pompey's).

REMARK.—These genitives bear the same relation to the examples in § 213 that a predicate noun bears to an appositive (§§ 184, 185).

d. An infinitive or a clause, when used as a noun, is often limited by a genitive in the predicate: as,—

neque sui iūdicī [erat] dēcernere (B. C. i. 35), nor was it for his judgment to decide (nor did it belong to his judgment).

cūiusvis hominis est errāre (Cic.), it is any man's [liability] to err.

timidī est optāre necem (Ov. M. iv. 115), it is for the coward to wish for death.

sapientis (not sapiēns) est pauca loquī, it is wise (the part of a wise man) to say little.

REMARK.—This construction is regular with adjectives of the third declension instead of the neuter nominative (see the last example).

NOTE.—A derivative or possessive adjective may be used for the genitive in this construction, and *must* be used for the genitive of a personal pronoun: as,—

mentīrī nōn est meum (not mei), it is not for me to lie.

hūmānum (for hominis) est errāre, it is man's nature to err (to err is human).

2. Genitive of Material.

e. The genitive may denote the Substance or Material of which a thing consists (compare §§ 216, 244): as, —

talentum aurī, a talent of gold.

flūmina lactis, rivers of milk.

f. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition (§ 183): as, —

nōmen insāniae (for nōmen insānia), the word madness.

oppidum Antiochiaē (for oppidum Antiochia, the regular form), the city of Antioch. [A very loose use of this genitive, cf. *e.*]

3. Genitive of Quality.

215. The genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective: as, —

vir summae virtūtis, a man of the highest courage. [But not *vir virtūtis.*]

māgnae est dēliberātiōnis, it is an affair of great deliberation.

ille autem suī iūdicī (Nep. Att. 9), but he [a man] of independent (his own) judgment.

a. The genitive of quality is found in the adjective phrases *ēius modī, cūius modī* (equivalent to *tālis, such; quālis, of what sort*).

b. The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of *length, depth*, etc. (*Genitive of measure*): as, —

fōssa trium pedum, a trench of three feet [in depth].

mūrus sēdecim pedum, a wall of sixteen feet [high].

c. For Genitives of Quality used to express *indefinite value*, see § 252. *a.*

4. Partitive Genitive.

216. (RULE 16.) Words denoting a Part are followed by the genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs.

a. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are—

1. Nouns or pronouns: as, —

pars militum, part of the soldiers.

quis nostrū, which of us (cf. *c.*, below)?

nihil erat reliquī, there was nothing left.

2. Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like *alius*, etc.: as, —

alter cōsulum, *one of the [two] consuls*.

ūnus tribūnōrum, *one of the tribunes* (cf. *c.*, below).

plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet (B. G. v, 3), *is strongest in cavalry of all Gaul*.

māior frātrum, *the elder of the brothers*.

3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, used as nouns: as, —

tantum spatī, *so much [of] space*.

aliquid nummōrum, *a few pence* (something of coins).

id locī (or *locōrum*), *that spot of ground*. Also *at that time*.

id temporis, *at that time* (§ 240. *b*).

plāna urbis, *the level parts of the town*.

quid novī, *what news* (what of new)?

REMARK. — The genitive of adjectives of the *third declension* is rarely used partitively. Thus, —

nihil novī (gen.), *nothing new*; but

nihil memorābile (nom.), *nothing worth mention*. [Not *nihil memorābilis*.]

4. Adverbs, especially of Quantity and Place: as, —

satis pecūniae, *money enough* (enough of money).

parum ōtī, *not much ease* (too little of ease).

tum temporis, *at that point of time* (then of time).

ubinam gentium sumus, *where in the world are we* (where of nations)?

b. The poets and later writers often use the partitive genitive after adjectives, instead of a noun in its proper case: as, —

sequimur tē sancte deōrum (Æn. iv. 576), *we follow thee, O holy deity*.

[For *sancte deus*.]

c. Cardinal numerals regularly take the Ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the Partitive Genitive. So also *quidam* commonly, and other words occasionally: as, —

ūnus ex tribūnīs, *one of the tribunes*. [But also, *ūnus tribūnōrum*.]

minimus ex illīs (Jug. 11), *the youngest of them*.

quidam ex militibus, *certain of the soldiers*.

d. *Uterque*, *both* (properly *each*), and *quisque*, *each*, with Nouns are used as adjectives in agreement, but with Pronouns always take a partitive genitive: as, —

uterque cōsul, *both the consuls*; but, *uterque nostrū*, *both of us*.

ūnus quisque vostrū, *each one of you*.

e. Numbers and words of quantity including the *whole* of any thing, take a case in agreement, and not the partitive genitive. So also words denoting a part if *only that part* is thought of : as, —
nōs omnēs, all of us (we all). [Not *omnēs nostrū*] but *nostrū omnium*.
quot sunt hostēs, how many of the enemy are there?
multi militēs, many of the soldiers.

5. Objective Genitive.

The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

217. (RULE 17.) Nouns of *action, agency, and feeling* govern the genitive of the object : as, —

dēsiderium ōti, longing for rest.
grātia beneficī, gratitude for kindness.
fuga malōrum, refuge from disaster.
precātiō deōrum, prayer to the gods.

NOTE. — This usage is an extension of the idea of *belonging to* (Possessive Genitive).

a. The objective genitive is sometimes replaced by a possessive or other derivative adjective (see § 197. *a.* 2) : as, —

mea invidia, my unpopularity (the dislike of which I am the object).
metus hostilis (Jug. 41), *fear of the enemy* (hostile fear).

b. Rarely the objective genitive is used with a noun already limited by another genitive : as, —

animī multārum rērum percursiō (Tusc. iv. 31), *the mind's traversing of many things.*

c. A noun with a preposition is often used instead of the objective genitive : as, —

odium in Caesarem, hate of Caesar. [Cf. *odium Caesaris*, note above.]
merita ergā mē (Cic.), *services to me.*
excēssus ē vitā (id.), *departure from life.* [Also, *excēssus vitae*, Cic.]

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

218. Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the objective genitive.

These are called Relative Adjectives (*adiectiva relātiva*) or Transitive Adjectives, and include the following : —

a. (RULE 18.) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, powers, hearing, guilt*, and their opposites : as, —

avidus laudis, *greedy of praise.*

fastidiōsus litterārum, *disdaining letters.*

iūris perītus, *skilled in law.* [So, also, the ablative, iūre, cf. § 253.]

reī militāris imperītus, *unskilled in military science.*

rationis et orationis expertēs, *devoid of sense and speech.*

vostrī memor, *mindful of you.*

plēnus fideī, *full of good faith.*

impotēns irae, *ungovernable in anger.*

particeps coniūratiōnis, *sharing in the conspiracy.*

insōns culpae, *innocent of guilt.*

b. (RULE 18.) Verbals in **-āx** (§ 164. l); also participles in **-ns** when used as adjectives, (*i.e.* to denote a *disposition* and not a *particular act*): as, —

tenācem prōpositī virum (Hor. Od. iii. 3), *a man steadfast to his purpose.*

circus capāx populī (Ov.), *a circus big enough to hold the people.*

sī quem tuī amantiōrem cōgnōvistī (Q. Fr. i. i. 15), *if you have become acquainted with any one more fond of you.*

multitūdō insolēns bellī (B. C. ii. 36), *a crowd unused to war.*

NOTE. 1. — Participles in **-ns**, when used as *participles*, take the case regularly governed by the verb to which they belong : as, —

Tiberius sitiēns sanguinem (Tac.), *Tiberius [then] thirsting for blood.*

NOTE 2. — Occasionally participial forms in **-ns** are treated as participles (see note 1), even when they express a *disposition* or *character* : as, —

virtūs quam aliī ipsam temperantiam dicunt esse, aliī obtemperantem temperantiae praeceptis et eam subsequentem (Tusc. iv. 30), *ob-servant of the teachings of temperance and obedient to her.*

c. The poets and later writers use the genitive with almost any adjective, to denote that *with reference to which* the quality exists (*Genitive of Specification*) : as, —

callidus reī militāris (Tac. H. ii. 31), *skilled in soldiership.*

pauper aquae (Hor. Od. iii. 30. 11), *scant of water.*

fessī rērum (Æn. i. 178), *wearry of toil.*

REMARK. — Adjectives of *feeling* are followed by the apparent genitive animī (really locative, cf. § 223. c) : as, —

aeger animī, *sick at heart.*

cōfūsus animī, *disturbed in spirit.*

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

The Objective Genitive is used with some verbs.

1. Remembering and Forgetting.

219. (RULE 19.) Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting take the Genitive of the object when they are used of a *continued state of mind*, but the Accusative when used of a *single act*: as, —

1. Genitive : —

recordāns superiōris **trāsmissiōnis** (Att. iv. 19), *remembering your former crossing.*

animus meminit **praeteritōrum** (Div. i. 63), *the soul remembers the past.*
venit mihi in mentem illius **diēi**, *I bethink me of that day* (it comes into my mind of that day).

obliscere caedis atque **incendiōrum** (Cat. i. 6), *turn your mind from slaughter and conflagrations.*

2. Accusative : —

tōtam **causam** oblitus est (Brut, 217), *he forgot the whole case.*

pueritiae **memoriam** recordārī (Arch. 1), *to recall the memory of childhood.*

a. The Accusative is almost always used of a person or thing remembered by an eye-witness : as, —

memineram Paullum (Lael. 9), *I remembered Paulus.*

b. **Recordor**, *recollect, recall*, denotes a *single act* and is therefore almost always followed by the Accusative : as, —

recordāminī omnīs civīlis **dissēsiōnēs** (Cat. iii. 24), *recall all the civil wars.*

c. Verbs of *reminding* take with the accusative of the person a genitive of the thing ; except in the case of a neuter pronoun, which is put in the accusative (cf. § 238. *b*).

Catilīna admonēbat alium **egestātis**, alium **cupiditātis** suae (Sall. Cat. 21),
Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his cupidity.

ūnum illud monēre tē possum, *I can remind you of this one thing.*

So **admoneō**, **commoneō**, **commonefaciō**, **commonefiō**. But **moneō** with the genitive is found only in late writers (cf. § 238. *b*. note).

NOTE. — All these verbs often take *dē* with the ablative, and the accusative of nouns as well as of pronouns is sometimes used with them : as, —

saepius tē admoneō dē sygraphā Sittiānā (Fam. viii. 4, 5), *I remind you again and again of the bond of Sittius.*

officium vestrum ut vōs malō cōgātis commonērier (Plaut. Ps. 150), *to be reminded of your duty.*

2. Charge and Penalty.

220. (RULE 20.) Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and acquitting take the genitive of the *charge* or *penalty* : as, —

arguit mē furti, *he accuses me of theft.*

videō nōn tē absolūtum esse improbitātis, *sed illōs damnātōs esse caedis* (Verr. II. i. 72), *I see, not that you were acquitted of outrage, but that they were condemned for homicide.*

a. Peculiar genitives, under this construction, are —

capitis, as in *damnāre capitis*, *to sentence to death.*

māiestātis [*laesae*], *treason* (crime against the dignity of the State).

repetundārum [*rērum*], *extortion* (lit. of an action for *claiming back* money wrongfully taken).

vōtī, in *damnātus* or *reus vōtī*, *bound* [to the payment] of one's vow ; i.e. *successful* in one's effort.

pecūniae (*damnāre*, *iūdicāre*, see note under 3, below).

dūplī, etc., as in *dūplī condemnāre*, *condemn to pay twofold.*

b. Other constructions for the charge or penalty are —

1. The ablative of price : regularly of a *definite amount* of fine, and often of indefinite penalties (cf. § 252. note) : as, —

Frusinātēs tertiā parte agrī damnātī (Liv. x. 1), *the people of Frusino condemned* [to forfeit] *a third part of their land.*

vitia autem hominum atque fraudēs damnīs ignōminiīs vinculis verberibus exsiliīs morte damnantur (De Or. i. 194), *but the vices and crimes of men are punished with fines, dishonor, chains, scourging, exile, death.*

2. The ablative with *dē*, or the accusative with *inter*, in idiomatic expressions : as, —

dē aleā, *for gambling.*

dē ambitū, *for bribery.*

inter sicāriōs, *as an assassin* (among the assassins).

dē vī et māiestātis damnātī (Phil. i. 21), *convicted of assault and treason.*

3. Verbs of Feeling.

221. Many verbs of Feeling take the genitive of the object which excites the feeling. Thus, —

a. Verbs of pity, as **misereor** and **miserescō**, are followed by the genitive : as, —

miserescite rēgis (Æn. viii. 573), *pity the king.*

miserere animī nōn digna ferentis (id. ii. 144), *pity a soul*, etc.

But **miseror**, **commiseror**, *bewail*, take the accusative : as, —

commūnem condiōnem miserārī (Mur. 55), *bewail the common lot.*

b. The impersonals **miseret**, **paenitet**, **piget**, **puget**, **taedet** (or **pertaesum est**) take the Genitive of the *cause of the feeling* and the Accusative of the *person affected* : as, —

hōs hominēs infāmiaē suae neque **puget** neque **taedet** (Verr. i. 35), *these men are neither ashamed nor weary of their dishonor.* [Cf. *it repenteth him of the evil.*]

mē quidem **miseret parietum ipsōrum** (Phil. ii. 69), *for my part I pity the very walls.*

c. An infinitive, a clause, or the accusative (possibly nominative) of a neuter pronoun may be used with these impersonal verbs (except **miseret**) instead of the genitive of a noun : as, —

mē **paenitet** haec **fēcisse**, *I repent of having done this.*

nihil quod **paenitēre** possit (Cic.), *nothing that may cause repentance.*

4. Interest and Refert.

222. The impersonals **interest** and **rēfert** take the genitive of the person (rarely of the thing) affected : as, —

Clōdī intererat **Milōnem** perire (Mil. 56), *it was the interest of Clodius that Milo should die.*

videō enim quid **meā** intersit, quid utrīusque nostrūm (Fam. vii. 23), *for I see what is for my good and for the good of us both.*

The subject of the verb is a neuter pronoun or a substantive clause.

a. Instead of the Genitive of a Personal Pronoun the corresponding Possessive is used in the ablative singular feminine with **interest** or **rēfert** : as, —

quid **tuā** id **rēfert**? **māgnī** (Ter. Ph. 723), *how does that concern you?*
much. [See also the last example above.]

b. The accusative with **ad** is used with **interest** and **rēfert** to express the thing *with reference to which* one is interested: as, —

māgnī ad honōrem nostrum interest (Fam. xvi. 1), *it is of great consequence to our honor.*

rēfert ad fructūs (Varr. R. R. i. 16), *it makes a difference as to the crop.*

5. Verbs of Plenty and Want.

223. Some verbs of Plenty and Want govern the genitive: as, —

quid est quod dēfēnsiōnis indigeat? (Rosc. Am. 34), *what is there that needs defence?*

satagit rērum suārum, *he has his hands full with his own affairs.*

NOTE. — But verbs of plenty and want more commonly take the ablative (see §§ 243. *a*, 248. *c*), except **egeō**, **indigeō**, **satagō**.

6. Other Verbs.

a. The genitive sometimes follows **potior**, *get possession of*; as always in the phrase **potirī rērum**, *to be master of affairs*. Thus, —

illius rēgnī potirī (Fam. i. 7, 5), *to become master of that kingdom.*

Cleanthēs sōlem dominārī et rērum potirī putat (Ac. ii. 126), *Cleanthes thinks the sun holds sway and is lord of the universe.*

But **potior** usually takes the ablative (see § 249).

b. Some other verbs rarely take the Genitive —

1. By analogy with those mentioned in § 221: as, —

neque hūius sīs veritus fēminae primāriae (Ter. Ph. 971), *and you had no respect for this high-born lady.*

2. As akin to adjectives which take the genitive: as, —

fastidit meī (Plaut. Aul. 243), *he disdains me.* [Cf. **fastidiōsus**.]

studet tuī (quoted N. D. iii. 72), *he is zealous for you.* [Cf. **studiōsus**.]

c. The apparent genitive **animī** (really Locative) is used with a few verbs of feeling and the like (cf. § 218. *c.* Rem.): as, —

Antiphō mē excruciat animī (Ter. Ph. 187), *Antipho tortures my mind (me in my mind).*

IV. PECULIAR GENITIVES.

d. A genitive occurs rarely in Exclamations, in imitation of the Greek (*Genitive of Exclamation*): as, —

dī immortālēs, mercimōnī lepidī (Plaut. Most. 912), *good heavens! what a charming bargain!*

e. The genitive is often used with the ablatives **causā, grātiā**, for the sake of; **ergō**, because of; and the indeclinable **īnstar**, like; also with **prīdiē**, the day before; **postrīdiē**, the day after; **tenu**, as far as: as, —

honōris causā, with due respect (for the sake of honor).

verbī grātiā, for example.

ēius lēgis ergō, on account of this law.

ecus īnstar montis (Æn. ii. 15), a horse like (the image of) a mountain.

laterum tenu (Æn. x. 210), as far as the sides.

II. DATIVE.

NOTE. — The Dative seems to be closely akin to the Locative (cf. *οἶκος*, at home, with *οἰκῷ*, to a house), and must have had the primary meaning of to or towards. But this local meaning appears in Latin only in the poets (§ 225. b. 3) and in some adverbial forms (as *eo*, *illō*, thither).

The uses of the Dative, arranged practically, are the following: —

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. AS INDIRECT OBJECT
(general use): | { | 1. With Transitives (§ 225). |
| | | 2. With Intransitives (§§ 226–28, 230). |
| 2. Special or Idiomatic
Uses: | { | 1. Of Possession (with <i>esse</i>) (§ 231). |
| | | 2. Of Agency (with Gerundive) (§ 232). |
| | | 3. Of Purpose or End (predicate use) (§ 233). |
| | | 4. Of Fitness, etc. (with Adjectives) (§ 234). |
| | | 5. Of Reference (<i>dativus commodi</i>) (§§ 235, 236). |

224. (RULE 21.) The Dative is used of the object *indirectly affected* by an action.

This is called the Indirect Object (§ 177). It is usually denoted in English by the Objective with *to* or *for*. Thus, —

dat librum puerō, he gives a book to the boy.

cēdite temporī, yield to the occasion.

prōvincia Cicerōnī obtigit, the province fell by lot to Cicero.

1. Indirect Object with Transitives.

225. The Dative of the Indirect Object with the Accusative of the Direct may be used with any transitive verb whose meaning allows (see § 177): as, —

dō tibi librum, I give you a book.

illud tibi affirmō (Fam. i. 7, 5), this I assure you.

a. Many verbs have both a transitive and an intransitive use (§ 177. note). These take either the Accusative with the Dative, or the Dative alone : as,—

hanc pecūniam tibi crēdō, I trust this money to you. [Transitive.]

in hāc rē tibi crēdō, I trust you in this. [Intransitive.]

b. Certain verbs implying motion vary in their construction between the Dative of the Indirect Object and the Accusative of the End of Motion (§ 258. *b*). Thus, —

1. Some verbs take the Accusative (with or without a preposition), instead of the Indirect Object, when the idea of motion prevails (§ 258) : as, —

litterās quās ad Pompēium scripsī (Att. iii. 9), the letter which I have written [and sent] to Pompey. [Cf. *nōn quō habērem quod tibi scriberem (Att. iv. 4), not that I had anything to write to you.*]

litterae extemplō Rōmām scriptae (Liv. xli. 16), a letter was immediately written [and sent] to Rome.

hostēs in fugam dat (B. G. v. 51), he puts the enemy to flight. [Cf. *ut mē dem fugae (Att. viii. 23), to take to flight.*]

2. On the other hand, many verbs usually followed by the Accusative with *ad* or *in*, take the Dative when the idea of motion is merged in some other idea : as, —

nec quicquam quod nōn mihi Caesar dētulerit (Fam. iv. 13), and nothing which Caesar did not communicate to me.

eum librum tibi mīsī (id. vii. 19), I sent you that book.

cūrēs ut mihi vehantur (id. viii. 4), take care that they be conveyed to me.

cum alius aliū subsidium ferrent (B. G. ii. 26), while one lent aid to another.

3. In poetry the End of Motion is often expressed by the dative (see § 258. note 1).

c. For the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing after verbs of *threatening* and the like, see § 227. *f*.

d. Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing : as, —

dōnat corōnās suīs, he presents wreaths to his men ; or,

dōnat suōs corōnīs, he presents his men with wreaths.

āram sanguine adspargere (N. D. iii. 88), to sprinkle the altar with blood.

ārae sanguinem adspargere, to sprinkle blood upon the altar.

Such are *dōnō*, *impertiō*, *induō*, *exuō*, *adspergō*, *inspergō*, *circumdō*, *circumfundō*, *prohibeō*, *interclūdō*, and in poetry *accingō*, *implicō*, and similar verbs.

NOTE 1. — *Interdicō*, *forbid*, takes either (1) the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or (2) the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing : as, —

interdixit histriōnibus scaenam (Suet. Dom. 7), *he forbade the actors* [to appear on] *the stage* (he prohibited the stage to the actors). [Cf. *interdictum est mare Antiāti populō* (Liv. viii. 14), *the sea was forbidden to the people of Antium*.]

aquā et igni alicui interdīcere, *to forbid the use of fire and water*.

NOTE 2. — The Dative with the Accusative is used in poetry with many verbs of *preventing*, *protecting*, and the like, which usually take the Accusative and Ablative. *Interclūdō* and *arceō* sometimes take the Dative and Accusative, even in prose : as, —

hīscē omnīs aditūs ad Sullam interclūdere (Rosc. Am. 110), *to shut these men off from all access to Sulla* (close to them every approach). [Cf. *uti frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem interclūderet* (B. G. i. 48), *to shut Cæsar off from grain and supplies*.]

hunc (oestrum) arcēbis pecorī (Georg. iii. 154), *you shall keep this away from the flock*. [Cf. *illum arcuit Galliā* (Phil. v. 37), *he excluded him from Gaul*.]

sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite (Ecl. vii. 47), *keep the summer heat from the flock*.

e. Verbs which in the active voice take the accusative and dative retain the dative when used in the passive : as, —

haec nobīs nūntiantur, *these things are told us*. [Active : *haec [quidam] nobīs nūntiat*.]

Crassō dīvitiae nōn invidentur, *Crassus is not envied for his wealth*. [Active : *Crassō dīvitiās nōn invidet*.]

decem talenta oppidānīs imperantur, *ten talents are exacted of the townspeople*. [Active : *imperat oppidānīs decem talenta*.]

2. Indirect Object with Intransitives.

226. The Dative of the Indirect Object may be used with any Intransitive verb whose meaning allows : as, —

cēdant arma togae (Phil. ii. 20), *let arms give place to the gown*.

Caesari respondet, *he replies to Cæsar*.

Caesari respondetur, *Cæsar is replied to* (see § 230).

crēdimus nūntiō, we believe the messenger.

nūntiō crēditur, the messenger is believed.

respondi m̄ximis cr̄minibus (Phil. ii. 36), I have answered the heaviest charges.

NOTE 1.—Intransitive verbs have no Direct Object. The Indirect Object, therefore, in these cases stands alone (but cf. § 225. *a*).

NOTE 2.—*Cēdō, yield*, sometimes takes the Ablative of the thing along with the Dative of the person : as, —

cēdere alicui possēssiōne hortōrum (Mil. 75), to give up to one the possession of a garden.

a. Many phrases consisting of a noun with the copula **sum** or a copulative verb are equivalent to an intransitive verb and take a kind of indirect object (cf. § 235) : as, —

auctor esse alicui, to advise or instigate one (cf. persuādeō).

quis huic rei testis est (Quinc. 37), who testifies (is witness) to this fact?

is finis populātiōnibus fuit (Liv. ii. 30), this put an end to the raids.

b. The dative is sometimes used without a copulative verb in a sense approaching that of the genitive (cf. §§ 227. *d*, 235. *a*): as, —

lēgātus Caesarī, a lieutenant to Cæsar (i.e. a man assigned to Cæsar).

hērēs frātrī suō, his brother's heir (heir to his brother).

ministri sceleribus, agents of crime.

NOTE.—The cases in *a* and *b* differ from the constructions of § 227, note 2, and § 235 in that the dative is more closely connected in idea with some single word to which it serves as an indirect object.

3. Dative with Special Verbs.

Many verbs of apparently transitive meaning in English correspond to verbs intransitive in Latin. Thus, —

227. (RULE 22.) Most verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust*, and their contraries ; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon*, and *spare*, take the dative : as, —

cūr mihi invidēs, why do you envy me?

mihi parcit atque ignōscit, he spares and pardons me.

ignōsce patriō dolōri (Liv. iii. 48), excuse a father's grief.

nōn parcam operae (Fam. xiii. 27), I will spare no pains.

sic mihi persuāsi (Cat. M. 78), so I have persuaded myself.

NOTE. 1. — In these verbs the Latin retains an original intransitive meaning. Thus : *invidēre*, to *envy*, was originally to *look askance at one*.

NOTE 2. — Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are —

praestō esse, *be on hand* (cf. *adesse*).

mōrem gerere, *humor* (cf. *mōrigerārī*).

grātum facere, *do a favor* (cf. *grātificārī*).

dictō audiēns esse, *be obedient* (cf. *oboedīre*).

cui fidem habēbat (B. G. i. 19), *in whom he had confidence* (cf. *cōfidēbat*).

So, also, many phrases where no corresponding verb exists. Such are —

bene (male, *pulchrē*, *aegrē*, etc.) *esse*, to *be well* (ill, etc.) *off*.

iniūriam facere, *do injustice to*.

diem dīcere, *bring to trial* (name a day for, etc.).

agere grātiās, to *express one's thanks*.

habēre grātiām, to *feel thankful*.

referre grātiām, to *repay a favor*.

opus esse, *be necessary*.

damnum dare, *inflict an injury*.

acceptum (*expēsum*) *ferre* (*esse*), to *credit* (charge).

honōrem habēre, to *pay honor to*.

a. Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative.

Such are *iuvō*, *adiuvō*, *help*; *laedō*, *injure*; *iubeō*, *order*; *dēficiō*, *fail*; *dēlectō*, *please*. Thus, —

hic pulvis oculum meum laedit, *this dust hurts my eye*. [Cf. *multa oculis nocent*, *many things are injurious to the eyes*.]

b. Some verbs are used *transitively* with the Accusative or *intransitively* with the Dative without perceptible difference of meaning.

Such are *adūlor* (generally accusative), *aemulor* (rarely dative), *comitor*, *dēspērō*, *praestōlor*, *medeor*, *medicor*. Thus, —

adūlātus est Antōniō (Nep. Att. 8), *he flattered Antony*.

adūlārī Nerōnem (Tac. Ann. xvi. 19), *to flatter Nero*.

c. Some verbs are used *transitively* with the Accusative or *intransitively* with the Dative with a difference of meaning.

partī cīvium cōsulant (Off. i. 85), *they consult for a part of the citizens*.

cum tē cōsuluissē (Fam. xi. 29), *when I had consulted you*.

metuēns puerīs (Plaut. Am. 1113), *anxious for the children*.

nec metuunt deōs (Ter. Hec. 772), *they fear not even the gods*.

prospicite patriae (Cat. iv. 3), *have regard for the State*.

prospicere sēdem senectūtī (Liv. iv. 49), *to provide a habitation for old age*.

NOTE. — **Fidō** and **cōfidō**, *trust*, take the Dative or the Ablative : as, —
legiōnis decimae cui quam m̄ximē cōfidēbat (B. G. i. 42), *of the tenth legion, in which he had the utmost confidence.*

multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant (B. G. iii. 9), *they had great confidence in the strength of their position* (the nature of the place).

d. Some verbal nouns — as **insidiae**, *ambush*; **invidia**, *envy* — take the dative like the verbs from which they are derived : as, —

invidia cōsulī (Sall.), *ill-will against the consul* (cf. **invidēō**).

obtemperātiō lēgibus (Leg. 42), *obedience to the laws* (cf. **obtemperō**).

sibi ipsī respōnsiō (De Or. iii. 207), *an answer to himself* (cf. **respondeō**).

NOTE. — In these cases the dative depends immediately upon the verbal force of the noun and not on any complex idea (cf. § 226. a and b).

e. The Dative is also used —

1. With the impersonals **libet** (**lubet**), *it pleases*; **licet**, *it is allowed*: as, —

quod mihi m̄ximē lubet (Fam. i. 8), *what most pleases me.*

quasi tibi nōn liceret (Fam. vi. 8), *as if you were not permitted.*

2. With verbs compounded with **satis**, **bene**, and **male**: as, —

mihi ipse numquam satisfaciō (Fam. i. 1), *I never satisfy myself.*

optimō virō maledicere (Deiot. 28), *to speak ill of a most excellent man.*

pulchrum est benefacere reipublicae (Sall. Cat. 3), *it is a glorious thing to benefit the State.*

NOTE. — These are not real compounds, but phrases, and were apparently felt as such by the Romans. Thus, —

satis officiō meō, satis illōrum voluntātī quī ā mē hōc petivērunt factum esse arbitrābor (Verr. v. 130), *that enough has been done for, etc.*

3. With the following : **grātificor**, **grātulor**, **haereō** (rarely), **nūbō**, **permittō**, **plaudō**, **probō**, **studeō**, **supplicō**, **excellō**: as, —

haerentem capitī corōnam (Hor. S. i. 10, 49), *a wreath clinging to the head.*

Pompēiō sē grātificārī putant (Fam. i. 1), *they suppose they are doing Pompey a service.*

NOTE. — **Misceō** and **iungō** sometimes take the dative (see § 248. a. Rem.). **Haereō** usually takes the ablative, with or without *in*.

f. Many verbs ordinarily intransitive often have an Accusative of the direct object with the Dative of the indirect (cf. § 225. a): as, —

cui cum rēx crucem minitārētur (Tusc. i. 102), *when the king threatened him with the cross.*

imperat oppidānis decem talenta, *he exacts of the townspeople ten talents.*

4. Dative with Compounds.

228. (RULE 23.) Most verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and some with **circum**, take the dative of the indirect object : as, —

neque enim adsentior eīs (Lael. 13), for I do not agree with them.

tempestātī obsequī artis est (Fam. i. 9, 21), it is a point of skill to yield to the weather.

omnibus negōtiis nōn interfuit solum sed praefuit (id. i. 6), he not only had a hand in all matters, but took the lead in them.

quantum nātūra hominis pecudibus antecēdit (Off. i. 105), so far as man's nature is superior to brutes.

NOTE 1. — In these cases the dative depends not on the preposition, but on the compound verb in its acquired meaning. Hence, if the acquired meaning is not suited to an indirect object, the original construction of the simple verb remains or some different construction arises. Thus, in **convocat suōs**, *he calls his men together*, the idea of *calling* is not so modified as to make an indirect object appropriate. So, **hominem interficere**, *to make way with a man* (kill him). But in **praeficere imperātōrem bellō**, *to put a man as commander-in-chief in charge of a war*, the meaning is suited to an indirect object (see *a* and *c*, and § 237. *d*).

NOTE 2. — Some of these verbs being originally transitive take also a direct object : as, **nē offerāmus nōs periculīs** (Off. i. 83), *that we may not expose ourselves to perils.*

a. Some compounds of **ad**, **ante**, **ob**, with a few others, have acquired a transitive meaning, and take the accusative : as, —

nōs oppūgnat (Fam. i. 1), he opposes us.

mūnus obīre (Lael. 7), to attend to a duty.

b. The adjective **obvius** and the adverb **obviam** with a verb take the dative : as, —

sī ille obvius eī futūrus nōn erat (Mil. 47), if he was not intending to get in his way.

mihi obviam vēnistī (Fam. ii. 16, 3), you came to meet me.

c. When *place* or *motion* is distinctly thought of, the verbs of § 228 regularly take a noun with a preposition, not the dative : as, —

in vīsceribus inhaerēre (Tusc. iv. 24), it remains fixed in the vitals.

hominī coniūctō mēcum (Tull. 4), to a man united to me.

cum hōc concurrit ipse Eumenēs (Nep. Eum. 4, 1), with him Eumenes himself engages in combat (runs together).

quae ā cēterārum gentium mōre dissentiunt (Font. 30), *which differ from the custom of all other nations.*

obicitur contrā istōrum impetūs Macedonia (Font. 44), *Macedonia is set to withstand their attacks.* [Cf. sī quis vōbīs error obiectus (Cæc. 5), *if any mistake has been caused you.*]

in segetem flamma incidit (Æn. ii. 304), *the fire falls upon the standing corn.*

NOTE. — As usage varies, the dictionary must be consulted for each verb.

229. (RULE 24.) Many verbs of *taking away* and the like take the Dative (especially of a *person*) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 243): as, —

mulieri ānulum detrāxit, *he took a ring from the woman.*

bona mihi abstulisti, *you have robbed me of my gains.*

a. The distinct idea of *motion*, — and, in general, names of *things*, — require the ablative with a preposition (§ 258. a): as, —

illum ex periculō ēripuit (B. G. iv. 12), *he dragged him out of danger.*

b. Sometimes the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing with a preposition are both used with the same verb: as, —

victōriam ēripī sibi ē manibus, *that victory should be wrested from his hands* (cf. § 243. b).

c. The dative is often used by the poets in constructions which would in prose require a noun with a preposition. So, especially, with verbs of *contending* (§ 248. b): as, —

placitōne etiam pūgnābis amōrī (Æn. iv. 38), *will you struggle even against a love that pleases you?*

tibi certat (Ecl. v. 8), *vies with you.* [tēcum.]

sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite (Ecl. vii. 47), *keep the summer heat from the flock.* [ā pecore.]

laterī abdidit ēnsem (Æn. ii. 553), *buried the sword in his side.* [in latere, § 260. a.]

[For the Dative instead of ad with the Accusative, see § 225. b. 3.]

230. (RULE 25.) The *passive* of intransitive verbs that govern the dative can be *used only impersonally* (§ 146. d). The dative is retained (cf. § 225. e).

cui parci potuit (Liv. xxi. 14), *who could be spared?*

nōn modo nōn invidētur illī aetātī vērum etiam favētur (Off. ii. 45), *that age (youth) is not only not envied, but is even favored.*

5. Dative of Possession.

231. (RULE 26.) The Dative is used with **esse** and similar words to denote Possession : as, —

homīni cum deō similitūdō est, *man has a likeness to God* (there is, etc.).
est **mihi** domī pater (Ecl. iii. 33), *I have a father at home.*

REMARK. — The Genitive or a Possessive with **esse** emphasizes the *possessor*; the Dative, the fact of *possession*: as, **liber est meus**, *the book is mine* (and no one's else); **est mihi liber**, *I have a book* (among other things). The latter is the usual form to denote simple *possession*, since **habēō**, *have*, generally signifies *hold*, often with some secondary meaning: as, —

legiōnem quam sēcum habēbat (B. G. i. 8), *the legion which he kept with him.*
domitās habēre libīdinēs, *to keep the passions under control.*

a. Compounds of **esse** take the dative (except **abesse** and **posse**): as, —

deest **mihi** pecūnia, *I lack money.*
quid **mihi** prōderit? *in what will it help me* (what will it profit me)?

b. After **nōmen est**, and similar expressions, the name is usually in the dative by a kind of apposition with the *person*: as, —

cui **Āfricānō** fuit cōgnōmen (Liv. xxv. 2), *whose (to whom) surname was Africanus.*

c. The name may also be in apposition with **nōmen**; or in later Latin in the genitive (cf. § 214. f): as, —

cui nōmen **Arethūsa** (Verr. iv. 118), [a fount] *called Arethusa* (to which is the name Arethusa).
puerō nōmen est **Mārcus** (**Mārci**), *the boy's name is Marcus* (to the boy, etc.).

6. Dative of the Agent.

232. (RULE 27.) The Dative of the Agent is used with the gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests : as, —

haec vōbīs prōvincia est dēfendenda (Man. 14), *this province is for you to defend* (to be defended by you).

mihi est pūgnandum, *I have to fight* (i.e. the need of fighting is to me; compare **mihi est liber**, *I have a book*, § 231. Rem.).

NOTE. — This is the regular way of expressing the *agent* with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§ 113. d. 1). But when a dative is expressed governed by the verb itself, and rarely at other times, the agent is denoted by the Ablative with *ab* (§ 246) to avoid ambiguity: as, —

quibus est ā vōbīs cōsulendum (Manil. 6), *for whom you must consult* (for whom it must be consulted by you).

(Cf. *istī prīncipēs et sibi et cēterīs populī Rōmānī ūniversī auctōritātī pārendum esse fateantur* (id. 64), *let these leading men admit that both by them and by everybody else the authority of the Roman people as a whole must be obeyed.* [Here there could be no ambiguity.])

a. The dative of the agent is common after *perfect participles* (especially when used in an adjective sense), but rare after other parts of the verb: as, —

mihi dēliberātum et cōstitutum est (Rull. i. 25), *I have deliberated and resolved* (it has been deliberated by me).

mihi rēs tōta prōvisa est (Verr. iv. 91), *the matter has been fully provided for by me.*

b. The dative of the agent is used by the poets and later writers with almost any passive verb: as, —

neque cernitur ūllī (Æn. i. 440), *nor is seen by any.*

fēlix est dicta sorōrī (Ov. Fast. iii. 597), *she was called happy by her sister.*

c. The dative of the person who *sees* or *thinks* is regularly used with *videor*, *seem*: as, —

vidētur mihi, *it seems* (or *seems good*) *to me.*

dīs aliter vīsum [est] (Æn. ii. 428), *it seemed otherwise to the gods.*

NOTE. — The verb *probāre*, *approve* (originally a mercantile word), takes a Dative of Reference (§ 235), which has become so firmly attached that it is retained with the passive, seemingly as Dative of Agent: as, —

haec sententia et illī et nōbīs probābātur (Fam. i. 7, 5), *this view met both his approval and mine* (was made acceptable to, etc.).

mihi ēgregiē probāta est ōrātiō tua (Tusc. iv. 8), *your discourse was very satisfactory to me.*

7. Dative of the Purpose or End.

233. (RULE 28.) The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End.

This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions. Thus, —

a. The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that *for which a thing serves* or *which it accomplishes* (Dative of Service), often with another dative of the person or thing affected : as, —

māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit (B. G. iv. 25), *it was of great service to our men* (for great use).

tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō mīsit (id. i. 52), *he sent the third line as a relief to our men.*

omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī (id. iv. 29), *all things were wanting which were of use for repairing the ships.*

NOTE. — The word *frūgī* used as an adjective is a dative of this kind: as, —
cōgis mē dicere inimicum *frūgī*, *you compel me to call my enemy honest.*
(Cf. *erō frūgī bonae* (Plaut. Pseud. 468), *I will be good for something.*)

b. The Dative of concrete nouns is used to express purpose in prose in a few military expressions, and freely in poetry : as, —
receptuī canere, *to sound a retreat.*

locum castrīs capere, *to select a site for a camp.*

optāvit locum rēgnō (Æn. iii. 109), *he chose a place for a kingdom.*

NOTE. — The construction of purpose or end is also found in the dative of the Gerundive (§ 299. b) and after Adjectives (§ 234).

3. Dative with Adjectives.

234. (RULE 29.) The dative is used with adjectives, to denote that *to which the given quality is directed*, *for which it exists*, or *towards which it tends*.

a. The dative is used with adjectives (and a few adverbs) of *fitness*, *nearness*, *likeness*, *service*, *inclination*, and their opposites: as, —

nihil est tam *nātūrae aptum* (Lael. 17), *nothing is so fitted to nature.*

nihil *difficile amanti* putō (Or. 33), *I think nothing hard to a lover.*

rēbus ipsis pār et aequālis ōrātiō (id. 123), *a speech equal and level with the subject.*

castrīs idōneum locum dēligit (B. G. i. 49), *a suitable place for a camp.*

congruenter nātūrae (Fin. iii. 26), *in harmony with nature.*

b. Adjectives of *fitness* or *use* take oftener the Accusative with *ad* to denote the purpose or end ; but regularly the Dative of *persons*: as, —

aptus ad rem militārem, *fit for a soldier's duty.*

locus ad insidiās aptior (Mil. 53), *a place fitter for lying in wait.*

nōbīs ūtile est ad hanc rem, *it is of use to us for this thing.*

c. Adjectives and nouns of *inclination* and the like may take the Accusative with **in** or **ergā** : as, —

cōmis in uxōrem (Hor. Ep. ii. 2, 133), *kind to his wife*.

divīna bonitās ergā hominēs (N. D. ii. 60), *the divine goodness towards men*.

d. Some adjectives of *likeness*, *nearness*, *belonging*, and a few others, ordinarily requiring the Dative, often take the Possessive Genitive. Thus, —

fuit hōc quondam propriū populī Rōmānī (Manil. 32), *this was once the peculiar characteristic of the Roman people*.

1. The Genitive is especially used with these adjectives when they are used wholly or approximately as nouns. Thus, —

amīcus Cicerōnī, *friendly to Cicero*. But, Cicerōnis amīcus, *a friend of Cicero*; and even Cicerōnis amīcissimus, *a very great friend of Cicero*.
hī erant affīnēs istīus (Verr. iv. 14), *these were this man's fellows*.

2. After **similis**, *like*, the genitive is more common in early writers. Cicero uses the genitive of *living objects*, and either the genitive or dative of *things* : as, —

dominī similis es (Ter.) *you're like your master* (your master's like).

sīmia quam similis turpissima bestia nobīs (N. D. i. 97, quoted from Enn.), *how like us is that wretched beast the ape!*

sī enim hōc illī simile sit, est illud huic (N. D. i. 90), *for if this is like that, that is like this*.

e. The adjectives **propior**, **proximus** sometimes, and the adverbs **propius**, **proximē** more commonly, take the accusative, as if prepositions, like **prope** (see § 261. a).

propius perīculum (Liv. xxi. 1), *nearer to danger*.

proximē deōs accēssit Clōdīus (Mil. 59), *Clodius has come very near the gods*.

proximus mare oceanum (B. G. iii. 7), *nearest the ocean*.

g. Dative of Reference.

235. (RULE 30.) The Dative is often required not by any particular word, but by the general meaning of the sentence (dative of reference) : as, —

laudāvit mihi frātre, *he praised my brother* (out of regard for me; laudāvit frātre meum would imply no such motive).

meritōs mactāvit honōrēs, taurum Neptūnō, taurum tibi, pulcher Apollō (Æn. iii. 118), *he offered the sacrifices due, a bull to Neptune, a bull to thee, beautiful Apollo*.

NOTE.—The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage (*dativus commodi aut incommodi*), as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed.

a. The dative of reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word : as, —

iter Poenīs vel corporibus suis obstruere (Cat. Maj. 75), *to block the march of the Carthaginians even with their own bodies* (to block, etc., for the disadvantage of, etc.).

b. The dative is used of the person from whose point of view a situation or direction is defined.

This construction answers to the English *as you go in*, and the like. The person is commonly denoted indefinitely by a participle in the plural : as, —

oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpirō (B. C. iii. 80), *the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus* (to those coming, etc.).

est urbe ēgressis tumulus (Æn. ii. 713), *there is, as you come out of the city, a mound* (to those having come out).

c. The dative is (by a Greek idiom) rarely modified by *nōlēns*, *volēns*, participles of *nōlō*, *volō*, or by some similar word : as, —

ut quibusque bellum invitīs aut cupientibus erat (Tac. Ann. i. 59), *as each might receive the war reluctantly or gladly*.

d. The dative is used idiomatically without any verb in colloquial questions and exclamations : as, —

quō mihi fortunam (Hor. Ep. i. 5. 12), *of what use to me is fortune?*

unde mihi lapidem (Hor. Sat. ii. 7. 116), *where can I get a stone?*

e. The dative is sometimes used after Interjections : as, —

vae victis, *woe to the conquered*.

em tibi, *there, take that* (there, for you)! [Cf. § 236.]

hei mihi, *ah, me!*

10. Ethical Dative.

236. The Dative of the Personal Pronouns is used to show a certain interest felt by the person indicated :¹ as, —

¹ Compare "I'll rhyme you so eight years together." — *As You Like It*.

quid **mihi** Celsus agit (Hor.), *what is my friend Celsus doing?*
 suō **sibi** servit patri (Plaut. Capt. Prol.), *he serves his own father.*

This construction is called the Ethical Dative (*dativus ethicus*). It is really only a special case of the dative of reference.

REMARK.—To express FOR, meaning *instead of, in defence of, in behalf of*, the ablative with **prō** must be used : as, —

prō patriā mori (Hor. Od. iii. 2), *to die for one's country.*

III. ACCUSATIVE.

The uses of the accusative may be classified as follows :

- I. PRIMARY OBJECT : {
 1. Directly affected by the Action (§ 237).
 2. Effect of the Action {
 - Thing produced (§ 237).
 - Cognate Accusative (§ 238).
2. TWO ACCUSATIVES : {
 1. Predicate Accusative (of Naming, etc.) (§ 239. a).
 2. Of Asking or Teaching (§ 239. c).
 3. Of Concealing (§ 239. d).
3. IDIOMATIC USES : {
 1. Adverbial (§ 240. a, b).
 2. Of Specification (Greek Accusative) (§ 240. c).
 3. Of Extent and Duration (§ 240. e).
 4. Of Exclamation (§ 240. d).
 5. Subject of Infinitive (§ 240. f).

I. Direct Object.

237. (RULE 31.) The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative (§ 177).

The accusative of the Direct Object denotes (*a*) that which is *directly affected*, or (*b*) that which is *caused* or *produced* by the action of the verb : as, —

(*a*) **Brūtus Caesarem** interfēcit, *Brutus killed Cæsar.*

(*b*) **aedem** facere, *to make a temple.* [Compare **proelium pūgnāre**, *to fight a battle*, § 238.]

NOTE.—There is no definite line by which transitive verbs can be distinguished from intransitive. Verbs which usually take a direct object (expressed or implied) are called transitive, but many of these are often used *intransitively* or *absolutely*. Thus **timeō**, *I fear*, is transitive in the sentence **inimicum timeō**, *I fear my enemy*, but intransitive (*absolute*) in **nōli timēre**, *don't be afraid*.

a. The object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes its subject in the passive, and is put in the nominative (§ 177. *a*): as, —

Brūtus **Caesarem** interfēcit, *Brutus killed Cæsar.*

Caesar ā Brūtō interfectus est, *Cæsar was killed by Brutus.*

domum aedificat, *he builds a house.*

domus aedificātur, *the house is building (being built).*

b. Many verbs apparently intransitive, expressing *feeling*, take an accusative, and may be used in the passive: as, —

meum cāsum lūctumque doliērunt (Sest. 145), *they grieved [at] my calamity and sorrow.*

sī nōn Acrisium rīsissent Iūppiter et Venus (Hor. O. iii. 16. 5), *if Jupiter and Venus had not laughed [at] Acrisius.*

c. Verbs of *taste*, *smell*, and the like take an accusative of the quality: as, —

vīnum redolēns (Cic.), *smelling [of] wine.*

herbam mella sapiunt (Plin.), *the honey tastes [of] grass.* *

NOTE. — These are properly Cognate Accusatives (§ 238).

d. Verbs of motion, compounds of **circum** and **trāns**, and a few others, often become transitive, and take the accusative (cf. § 228. *a*): as, —

cōsulātum ineunt (Liv. ii. 28), *they enter upon the consulship.*

sī insulam adisset (B. G. iv. 20), *if he should go to the island.*

trānsire flūmen (id. ii. 23), *to cross the river* (cf. § 239. *b*).

civēs quī circumstant senātum (Cat. i. 21), *the citizens who stand about the senate.*

e. The accusative is used with the impersonals **decet**, **dēlectat**, **iuvat**, **oportet**, **fallit**, **fugit**, **praeterit**: as, —

tē nōn praeterit (Fam. i. 8), *it does not escape your notice.*

mē pedibus dēlectat claudere verba (Hor. Sat. ii. 1. 28), *my delight is (it pleases me) to arrange words in measure.*

nisi mē fallit, *unless I am mistaken* (unless it deceives me).

So after **latet** in poetry and post-classical prose: as, —

latet plērōsque (Plin. ii. 82), *it is unknown to most persons.*

NOTE 3. — Many verbs usually intransitive are sometimes used transitively from a similarity of meaning with other verbs that regularly take the accusative: as, —

multa gemēns ignōminiam (Georg. iii. 226), *groaning much at the disgrace.* [Cf. **doleō**, § 237. *b*.]

festināre fugam (Æn. iv. 575), *to hasten their flight.* [Cf. **accelerō**.]

f. In early and popular usage some nouns and adjectives derived from transitive verbs retain verbal force sufficient to govern the accusative: as, —

quid tibi **hanc** tāctiō est (Plaut. Poen. 1308), *what business have you to touch her?* [Cf. **tangō**.]

mīrābundī **bestiam** (App. Met. iv. 16), *full of wonder at the creature*. [Cf. **mīror**.]

g. In early usage the impersonal gerundive with **esse** governs the accusative (§ 294. *c*): as, —

quam nōbīs ingrediendum sit (Cat. Maj. 6), *which (road) we must enter upon*. [Here Cicero purposely uses an archaic construction.]

h. Many verbs ordinarily transitive may be used *absolutely* (§ 237. note), having their natural object in the ablative with **dē**: as, —

priusquam Pompōnius dē ēius **adventū** cōgnōsceret (B. C. iii. 101), *before Pompey could learn of his coming*. [Cf. **ēius adventū cōgnitō**, *his arrival being discovered*.]

i. For Accusative and Genitive after Impersonals, see § 221. *b*.

2. Cognate Accusative.

238. (RULE 32.) A neuter verb often takes the accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner.

This construction is called the *Cognate Accusative* or *Accusative of Kindred Signification*. Thus, —

tertiam iam aetātem hominum vivēbat (Cat. Maj. 31), *he was now living the third generation of men*.

coīre societātem, *to [go together and] form an alliance*.

a. The Cognate Accusative is often loosely used by the poets: as, —
saltāre Cyclōpa (Hor. Sat. i. 5. 63), *to dance the Cyclops* (represent in dancing).

Amaryllida resonāre (Ecl. i. 5), *to reëcho* [the name of] *Amaryllis*.
intonuit laevum (Æn. ii. 693), *it thundered on the left*.

b. A neuter pronoun or colorless noun or adjective is very common as cognate accusative (cf. §§ 148. *d* and 240. *a*). Thus, —

Empedoclēs multa alia peccat (N. D. i. 29), *Empedocles commits many other slips*.

quid mē ista laedunt (Agr. ii. 32), *what harm do those things do me?*

hōc tē moneō, *I give you this warning* (cf. note, below).

id laetor, *I rejoice at this* (cf. note, below).

So in many common phrases: *as*, —

sī quid ille sē velit (B. G. i. 34), *if he should want anything of him* (if he should want him in anything).

numquid mē vīs, *can I do anything more for you?* (there is nothing you want of me, is there?) [A common form of leave-taking.]

id valet, *it amounts to this*.

NOTE. — In these cases substantives *with a definite meaning* would be in some other construction: *as*, —

bonīs rēbus laetārī, *to rejoice at prosperity*. [Also: *in*, *dē*, or *ex*.]

dē testāmētō monēre, *to remind one of the will*. [Later: genitive, § 219. c.]

c. A few verbs in isolated expressions take the accusative from a forcing of their meaning. Such expressions are —

ferīre foedus, *to strike a treaty* (i.e. to sanction by striking down a victim).

vincere iūdicium (*spōnsiōnem*, *rem*, *hōc*), *to prevail on a trial*, etc. [As if the case were a difficulty to overcome; cf. *vincere iter*, *Æn. vi. 688*.]

terram nāvigāre (*Fin. ii. 112*), *to sail over the land*. [Perhaps quoted from a poet.]

aequor nāvigāre, *to sail the sea*. [As if it were *trānsīre*, § 237. d.]

maria aspera iūrō (*Æn. vi. 351*), *I swear by the rough seas*. [The accusative with verbs of *swearing* is chiefly poetic.]

3. Two Accusatives.

239. Some transitive verbs take a second accusative in addition to their Direct Object.

This second accusative is either (1) a Predicate Accusative or (2) a Secondary Object.

a. Predicate Accusative.

1. An accusative in the Predicate referring to the same person or thing as the Direct Object, but not in apposition with it, is called a Predicate Accusative (cf. § 185. head-note).

a. (RULE 33.) Verbs of *naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing,* and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative: as, —

Cicerōnem cōnsulem creāre, *to elect Cicero consul.*

mē augurem nōmināvērunt (Phil. ii. 4), *they nominated me for augur.*

hominem prae sē nēminem putāvit (Cic.), *he thought nobody a man in comparison with himself.*

NOTE 1. — The predicate accusative may be an adjective: as, —

hominēs ex feris et immānibus mītēs reddidit et mānsuētōs (Inv. i. 2), *has made men from wild and barbarous [creatures] gentle and mild.*

NOTE 2. — In changing from the active voice to the passive, the predicate accusative becomes predicate nominative (§ 185): as, —

rēx ab suis appellātur (B. G. vii. 4), *he is called king by his [subjects].*

b. Secondary Object.

2. (RULE 34.) The Accusative of the Secondary Object is used (along with the direct object) to denote something more remotely affected by the action of the verb.

b. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition: as, —

Caesar Germānōs flūmen trāicit (B. C. i. 83), *Cæsar throws the Germans across the river.*

NOTE 1. — But with these verbs the preposition is more commonly repeated, or sometimes the ablative is used: as, —

dōnec rēs suās trāns Halyn flūmen trāicerent (Liv. xxxviii. 25), *till they should get their possessions across the river Halys.*

(exercitus) Padō trāiectus Cremōnam (Liv. xxi. 56), *the army was conveyed across the Po to Cremona (by way of the Po, § 258. g).*

NOTE 2. — The secondary object may be retained with a passive verb: as, —

Belgae Rhēnum trāductī sunt (B. G. ii. 4), *the Belgians were led over the Rhine.*

NOTE 3. — Sometimes the Secondary Object appears to become the subject of a passive verb; but this comes from a change of meaning, and the object is really Direct. See the Remark.

REMARK. — The double construction indicated in *b* is possible only when the force of the preposition and the force of the verb are each distinctly felt in the compound, the verb governing the Direct, and the preposition the Secondary object.

But often the two parts of the compound become closely united to form a transitive verb of simple meaning. So *trāiciō* comes to mean either (1) *to pierce* (anybody) [*by hurling*] or (2) *to cross* (a river, etc.): as, —

- (1) *gladiō hominem trāiēcīt, he pierced the man with a sword.* [Here *iaciō* has lost all transitive force, and serves simply to give the force of a verb to the meaning of *trāns*, and to tell the *manner* of the act.]
 (2) *Rhodanum trāiēcīt, he crossed the Rhone.* [Here *iaciō* has become simply a verb of motion, and *trāiciō* is hardly distinguishable from *trānseō*.]

In these examples *hominem* and *Rhodanum*, which would be secondary objects if *trāiēcīt* were used in its primary signification, have become the direct objects. Hence in the passive construction they become the subjects and are put in the nominative. Thus, —

homō trāiectus est gladiō, the man was pierced with a sword.
Rhodanus trāiectus est, the Rhone was crossed.

The poetical *trāiectus lōra* (*Æn.* ii. 273), *pierced with thongs*, comes from a mixture of two constructions: —

- (1) *eum trāiēcīt lōra, he rove thongs through him,*¹ and
 (2) *eum trāiēcīt lōrīs, he pierced him with thongs.*

In putting the sentence into a passive form, the direct object of the former (*lōra*) is irregularly kept, and the direct object of the latter (*eum*) is made the subject.

c. (RULE 35.) Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* may take two accusatives, one of the Person (*direct object*), and the other of the Thing (*secondary object*): as, —

mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.
docēre puerōs elementa, to teach children their A B C's.

NOTE 1. — Some verbs of *asking* take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, *petō* (*ab*), *quaerō* (*ex*, *ab*, *dē*) often *postulō* (*ab*), and occasionally others: as, —

pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt (*B. G.* ii. 13), *they sought peace from the Romans.*

NOTE 2. — With the passive of verbs of asking or teaching, the *person* or the *thing* may be used as subject: as, —

Cæsar sententiam rogātus est, Cæsar was asked his opinion.

REMARK. — The accusative of the *thing* may be retained with the passive of *rogō*, and of verbs of teaching, and occasionally with a few other verbs: as, —

¹ Perhaps not found in the active, but cf. *trāiectō fūne* (*Æn.* v. 488).

fuerant hoc rogātī (Cæ. 64), *they had been asked this.*

Cicerō per lēgātōs cūncta ēdoctus (Sall. Cat. 45), *Cicero being informed of everything through the ambassadors.*

But with most verbs of asking in prose the accusative of the thing becomes the subject-nominative, and the person is expressed by the ablative with a preposition: as, —

nē postulantur quidem vīrēs ā senectūte (Cat. M. 34), *strength is not even expected of an old man* (asked from old age).

d. The verb cēlō, *conceal*, may take two accusatives, and the usually intransitive lateō, *lie hid*, an accusative of the person (cf. § 237. e): as, —

nōn tē cēlāvi sermōnem T. Ampī (Fam. ii. 16), *I did not conceal from you the talk of T. Ampius.*

nec latuēre dolī frātrem Iūnōnis (Æn. i. 130), *nor did the wiles of Juno escape the notice of her brother.*

4. Idiomatic Uses.

240. The Accusative has the following special uses:—

a. A neuter pronoun or adjective is used as cognate accusative with an adverbial force (*Adverbial Accusative*, cf. § 238. b): as, —

quid moror, *why do I delay?*

dulce loquentem (Hor. Od. i. 22. 24), *sweetly speaking.*

acerba tuēns (Æn. ix. 794), *looking cruelly.*

torvum clāmat (id. vii. 399), *he cries harshly.*

NOTE. — This use does not differ from the cognate accusative except that in some cases the connection of the accusative with the verb has faded out so that the words are real adverbs. But no fixed line can be drawn between these two constructions.

b. The accusative is found in a few adverbial phrases: as, —

id temporis, *at that time.*

id (istūc) aetātis, *at that age.*

id (quod) genus, *of that (what) sort* (perhaps originally nominative).

meam vicem, *on my part.*

māximam partem, *for the most part.*

virile secus, *of the male sex* (probably originally in apposition).

cētera, *in other respects.*

quod sī, *but (as to which) if.*

quid est quod, *why is it that?*

c. The so-called *synecdochical* or Greek accusative is used by the poets to denote the part affected : as, —

caput nectentur (Æn. v. 309), *their head shall be bound* (they shall be bound about the head).

ardentis oculōs suffecti sanguine et igni (id. ii. 210), *their glaring eyes bloodshot and blazing with fire* (suffused as to their eyes, etc.).

nūda genū (id. i. 320), *bare to the knee*.

NOTE. — In many apparently similar expressions the accusative may be regarded as the direct object of a verb in the middle voice (§ 111. a) : as, —

inūtile ferrum cingitur (Æn. ii. 510), *he girds on the useless steel*.

nodō sinūs collēcta fluentis (id. i. 320), *having her flowing folds gathered in a knot*.

umerōs īnternor pelle leōnis (id. ii. 722), *I cover my shoulders with a lion's skin*.

d. The accusative is used in exclamations : as, —

Ō fortunātam repūblicam, *oh, fortunate republic!* [Cf. *Ō fortunāta mors* (Phil. xiv. 31), *oh, happy death!* (§ 241. c).]

mē miserum, *ah, wretched me!*

ēn quātuor ārās (Ecl. v. 65), *lo, four altars!*

prō deūm fidem, *good heavens* (oh, protection of the gods)!

huncine hominem (Verr. v. 62), *this man, good heavens!*

Ō mē infēlicem (Mil. 102), *oh, unhappy me!*

NOTE. — The omission of the verb has given rise to some other idiomatic accusatives. Such are —

salūtem (sc. dicit) (in letters), *greeting*.

quō mihi fortunam, *of what use is fortune?* [Here no verb is thought of.]

e. (RULE 37.) Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative (see §§ 256, 257).

f. (RULE 36.) The subject of the infinitive mood is in the accusative. This is especially frequent after words of knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving (*verba sentiendī et dēclārandī*, see § 272).

g. The accusative in later writers is sometimes used in apposition with a clause.

h. For the accusative of the End of Motion, see § 258 ; for that after *postrīdiē*, *propior*, etc., see § 261. a.

[For the Accusative with Prepositions, see § 152. a, c.]

IV. VOCATIVE.

241. The Vocative is the case of direct address : as, —

Tiberīne pater, tē sancte precor (Liv. ii. 10), *O, father Tiber, thee, holy one, I pray.*

a. A noun in the nominative in apposition with the subject of the imperative mood is sometimes used instead of the vocative : as, —

audi tū, populus Albānus (Liv. i. 24), *hear, thou people of Alba.*

b. The vocative of an adjective is sometimes used instead of the nominative, where the verb is in the second person : as, —

cēnsōrem trabeāte salūtās (Pers. iii. 29), *robed you salute the censor.*

c. The nominative may be used in exclamations (cf. § 240. *d.*) : as, —
ēn dextra fidēsque (Æn. iv. 597), *lo, the faith and plighted word!*

d. The word **mācte** is used as a predicate in the phrase **mācte estō (virtūte)**, *success attend your (valor).* Thus, —

iubērem tē mācte virtūte esse (Liv. ii. 12), *I should bid you go on and prosper in your valor.*

NOTE. — As the quantity of the final *e* in **mācte** is not determinable, it may be that the word was an adverb, as in **bene est**, and the like. (See American Journal of Philology, Vol. I.)

V. ABLATIVE.

242. The Ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions FROM, IN, AT, WITH, BY : as, —

liberāre metū, *to deliver from fear.*

caecus avāritiā, *blind with avarice.*

occīsus gladiō, *slain by the sword.*

The following are the uses of the Latin Ablative, classed according to the original cases which have been combined in it : —

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| I. ABLATIVE (<i>from</i>) : | { | 1. Of Separation, Privation, and Want (§ 243).
2. Of Source (participles of origin, etc.) (§ 244).
3. Of Cause (gaudeō, dignus , etc.) (§ 24).
4. Of Agent (with ab after Passives) (§ 246).
5. Of Comparison (than) (§ 247). |
|-------------------------------|---|---|

2. INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE (*with*) :
- 1. Of Manner, Means, and Instrument (§ 248).
 - 2. Of Accompaniment (with *cum*) (§ 248. a).
 - 3. Of Object with the Deponents *utor*, etc. (§ 249).
 - 4. Of Degree of Difference (§ 250).
 - 5. Of Quality (with Adjectives) (§ 251).
 - 6. Of Price and Exchange (§ 252).
 - 7. Of Specification (§ 253).
3. LOCATIVE ABLATIVE (*in, on, at*) :
- 1. Of Place *where* (commonly with *in*) (§ 254).
 - 2. Of Idiomatic Expressions (§ 254. a).
 - 3. Of Time and Circumstance (§ 256).
 - 4. Ablative Absolute (§ 255).

1. Ablative of Separation.

243. (RULE 38.) Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.

a. Verbs meaning to *remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want*, require the ablative : as, —

oculīs se privāvit (Fin. v. 87), *he deprived himself of eyes.*

lēgibus solūtus, *relieved from the obligation of laws.*

omnī Galliā interdicit Rōmānōs (B. G. i. 46), *he (Ariovistus) bars the Romans from the whole of Gaul.*

voluptātibus carēre (Cat. Maj. 7), *to lack enjoyments.*

nōn egeō medicīnā (Lael. 10), *I want no physic.*

māgnō mē metū liberābis (Cat. i. 10), *you will relieve me of great fear.*

b. Verbs compounded with *ā, ab, dē, ex*, take the simple ablative when used *figuratively*; but when used literally to denote *separation or motion*, they usually require a preposition (see § 258). Thus, —

cōnātū dēsistere (B. G. i. 8), *to desist from the attempt.*

abīre magistrātū, *to leave one's office.*

abstinēre iniuriā, *to refrain from wrong.*

But, — *aberrāre ā prōpositō* (Cic.), *to wander from the point.*

dē prōvinciā dēcēdere (Verr. ii. 49), *to withdraw from one's province.*

ex civitātē excēssēre (B. G. vi. 8), *they departed from the state.* [But cf.

finibus suis excēsserant (id. iv. 18), *they had left their own territory.]*

ā māgnō dēmīssum nōmen Iulō (Æn. i. 288), *a name descended (sent down) from great Iulus.*

NOTE. — For the Dative used instead of the Ablative of Separation, see § 229.

c. For the ablative of the actual *place whence* in idiomatic expressions, see § 258. a, and note 2.

d. Adjectives denoting *freedom* and *want* take the ablative : as, —
 urbs nūda praesidiō (Att. vii. 13), *the city naked of defence*.
 immūnis militiā (Liv. i. 43), *free of military service*.
 plēbs orba tribūnis (Leg. iii. 9), *the people deprived of tribunes*.

NOTE. — Some adjectives of want take the genitive (see § 218. a).

e. (RULE 39.) **Opus** and **ūsus**, signifying *need*, are followed by the ablative : as, —

magistrātibus opus est (Leg. iii. 5), *there is need of magistrates*.
 nunc viribus ūsus (Æn. viii. 441), *now there is need of strength*.

NOTE. — With these words the ablative of the *perfect participle*, with or without a noun, is often found (§ 292. b) : as, —

opus est tuā exprōptā memoriā atque astūtiā (Ter. And. 723), *I must have your good memory and cleverness set to work*.
 properātō opus erat (Mil. 49), *there was need of haste*.
 factō ūsus est, *it is desirable to do* (there is need of it's being done).

REMARK. — Frequently **opus** is in the predicate, with the *thing needed* in the nominative as subject : as, —

dūx nōbīs et auctor opus est (Fam. ii. 6, 4), *we need a chief and responsible adviser* (a chief, etc., is necessary for us).
 sī quid ipsī opus esset (B. G. i. 34), *if he himself wanted anything* (if anything should be necessary for him).

f. **Egeō** and **indigeō** often take the genitive (§ 223) : as, —

nē quis auxiliī egeat (B. G. vi. 11), *lest any require aid*.
 quae ad cōsōlandum māiōris ingenī et ad ferendum sīgulāris virtūtis indigent (Fam. vi. 4, 2), [sorrows] *which for their comforting need more ability, and for endurance unusual courage*.

2. Ablative of Source and Material.

244. (RULE 40.) The ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to denote the *Source* from which anything is derived, or the *Material* of which it consists.

These ablatives commonly take a preposition : as, —

1. *Source* : —

Rhēnus oritur ex Lēpontiis (B. G. iv. 10), *the Rhine rises in (from) the country of the Lepontii*.

2. Material :—

valvās māgnificentiōrēs, **ex** aurō atque ebore perfectiōrēs (Verr. iv. 124),
more splendid doors, more finely wrought of gold and ivory.

templum dē marmore pōnam (Georg. iii. 13), *I 'll build a temple of marble.*

NOTE 1. — In poetry the preposition is often omitted.

NOTE 2. — The Ablative of Material is a development of the Ablative of Source (cf. § 214).

a. Participles denoting *birth* or *origin* are followed by the Ablative of Source, generally without a preposition :¹ as, —

Iove nātus et Māiā (N. D. iii. 56), *son of Jupiter and Maia.*

quō sanguine crētus (Æn. ii. 74), *born of what blood.*

REMARK. — A preposition (**ab**, **dē**, **ex**) is usually expressed with the name of the *mother*, and often with that of other ancestors : as, —

Trōs est generātus **ab** illō (Ov. Fast. iv. 33), *Tros was sprung from him.*

Bēlus et omnēs ā Bēlō (Æn. i. 730), *Belus and all his descendants.*

b. Rarely the place of birth is expressed by the ablative ; as, —

dēsīderāvit C. Felgīnātem Placentiā, A. Grānium Puteolīs (B. C. iii. 71),
he lost C. Felginas of Placentia, A. Granius of Puteoli.

NOTE. — The Roman tribe is regularly expressed by the ablative : as, —

Q. Verrem Rōmiliā (Verr. i. 23), *Quintus Verres of the Romilian tribe.*

c. Some verbs may take the Ablative of Material without a preposition. Such are **cōnstāre**, **cōnsistere**, and **continēri**. But with **cōnstāre**, **ex** is more common. Thus, —

domūs amoenitās nōn aedificiō sed silvā cōnstābat (Nep. Att. 13), *the charm of the house consisted not in the buildings but in the woods.*

ex animō cōnstāmus et corpore (Fin. iv. 19), *we consist of soul and body.*

vīta corpore et spīritū continētur (Marc. 28), *life consists of body and spirit.*

d. The Ablative of Material without a preposition is used with **facere**, **fieri**, and like words, in the sense of *do with*, *become of* : as, —

quid hōc homine faciātis (Verr. II. i. 42), *what are you going to do with this man ?*

quid Tulliolā meā fiet (Fam. xiv. 4), *what will become of my dear Tullia ?*

quid tē futūrum est (Verr. ii. 155), *what will become of you ?*

e. The Ablative of Material with **ex**, and in poetry without a preposition, sometimes depends directly on a noun : as, —

nōn pauca pōcula **ex** aurō (Verr. iv. 62), *not a few cups of gold.*

scopulis pendentibus antrum (Æn. i. 166), *a cave of hanging rocks.*

¹ Such are **nātus**, **satus**, **ēditus**, **genitus**, **ortus**, **prōgnātus**, **generātus**, **crētus**, **creātus**, **oriundus**.

3. Ablative of Cause.

245. (RULE 41.) The ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express *Cause*.

nimiō gaudiō paene dēspiēbam (Fam. ii. 9), *I was almost wild from too great joy.*

neglegentiā plectimur (Lael. 85), *we are chastised for negligence.*

certis dē causis, *for certain reasons.*

mare ā sōle lūcet (Acad. ii. 105), *the sea gleams in the sun (from the sun).*

a. (RULE 42.) Certain verbs and adjectives regularly take the ablative of cause without a preposition. These are —

1. The adjectives **dignus, indignus**: as, —

vir patre avō māiōribus suis dignissimus (Phil. iii. 25), *a man most worthy of his father, grandfather, and ancestors.*

tē omni honōre indignissimum iūdicat (Vatin. 39), *he judges you entirely unworthy of every honor.*

2. The verbs **dignor, labōrō** (also with **ex**), **exsiliō, exsultō, triumphō, lacrimō, ardeō**: as, —

haud equidem tāli mē dignor honōre (Æn. i. 335), *I do not deem myself worthy of such an honor.*

doleō tē aliis malis labōrāre (Fam. iv. 3), *I am sorry that you suffer with other ills.*

ex aere aliēnō labōrāre (B. C. iii. 22), *to labor under debt (lit., from another's money).*

exsilui gaudiō (Fam. xvi. 16), *I jumped for joy.*

dēlictō dolēre (Lael. 90), *to grieve for the fault.*

NOTE 1. — For **gaudeō** and **glōrior**, see § 254. b.

NOTE 2. — **Dignus** and **indignus** sometimes take the genitive in colloquial usage and in poetry: as, —

dignus salūtis (Plaut. Trin. 1153), *worthy of safety.*

māgnōrum haud umquam indignus avōrum (Æn. xii. 649), *never unworthy my great ancestors.*

NOTE 3. — For the construction of **dignus** and **indignus** with verbs, see § 320. f.

b. The *motive* which influences the mind of the person acting is expressed by the ablative of cause; the *object* exciting the emotion often by **ob** or **propter** with the accusative: as, —

nōn ob **praedam** aut **spoliandī cupidine** (Tac. H. i. 63), *not for booty or through lust of plunder.*

amīcitia ex sē et propter sē expetenda (Fin. ii. 83), *friendship must be sought of and for itself.*

NOTE. — But these constructions are often confused : as, —

pārēre lēgibus propter metum (Parad. 34), *to obey the laws on account of fear.* [Here **metum** is almost equal to “the terrors of the law,” and **propter** is used where the ablative would be more natural.]

c. The ablatives **causā** and **grātiā**, *for the sake of*, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement : as, —

eā causā, *on account of this* ; **quā grātiā** (Ter. Eun. 99), *for what purpose ?*
meā causā, *for my sake* ; **meā grātiā** (Plaut.), *for my sake.*

praedictionis causā (N. D. iii, 5), *by way of prophecy.*

exemplī grātiā (verbī grātiā), *for example.*

NOTE. — But **grātiā** with possessives in this use is rare.

4. Ablative of Agent.

246. (RULE 43.) The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** : as, —

laudātur ab hīs, **culpātur ab illīs** (Hor. Sat. i. 2. 11), *he is praised by these, blamed by those.*

nē virtūs ab audaciā vinceretur (Sest. 92), *that valor might not be overborne by audacity.*

REMARK. — The ablative of the *agent* (which requires **ā** or **ab**) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of *instrument*, which has no preposition (§ 248. c. 1). Thus, —

occīsus gladiō, *slain by a sword* ; but, **occīsus ab hoste**, *slain by an enemy.*

a. The ablative of the agent with **ab** is sometimes used after neuter verbs that have a passive sense : as, —

perire ab hoste, *to be slain by an enemy.*

b. The agent, if conceived as instrument or means, is expressed by **per** with the accusative, or by **operā** with a genitive or possessive : as, —

Caesar certior factus est ā lēgātīs, *Cæsar was informed by the ambassadors* (in person). But —

Caesar certior factus est per lēgātōs, *Cæsar was informed by ambassadors* (i.e. by means of ambassadors).

nōn meā operā evēnit (Ter. Hec. 228), *it has n't happened through me* (by my exertions).

NOTE 1. — An animal is usually regarded not as the *agent*, but as the *means* or *instrument*. Hence the simple ablative is used. But *ab* sometimes occurs. Thus, —

equō vehī, to ride on horseback (be conveyed by means of a horse). [Not *ab equō*.] But —

Lūcānō cum sic lacerēris ab ursō (Mart. Ep. 8), *since you are thus mangled by a Lucanian bear*.

NOTE 2. — For the Dative of the Agent with the Gerundive, see § 232.

5. Ablative of Comparison.

247. (RULE 44.) The Comparative degree is followed by the ablative (signifying *THAN*) : *as*, —

Catō est Cicerōne ēloquentior, Cato is more eloquent than Cicero.

quid nobīs duōbus labōriōsius est (Mil. 5), *what more burdened with toil than we two?*

vilius argentum est aurō, virtūtibus aurum (Hor. Ep. i. 1. 52), *silver is less precious than gold, gold than virtue.*

a. (RULE 45.) The comparative may be followed by *quam*, *than*. When *quam* is used, the two things compared are put in the same case (cf. § 208. *a*).

The construction with *quam* is required when the first of the things compared is in any other case than the nominative or accusative. With those cases its use is optional. Thus, —

contionibus accommodatior est quam iudiciis (Clu. 2), *fitter for popular assemblies than for courts.*

misericiordiā dignior quam contumeliā (Piso 32), *more worthy of pity than of disgrace.*

REMARK. — Relative pronouns having a definite antecedent never take *quam* in this construction, but always the ablative : *as*, —

rēx erat Aenēās nobīs, quō iustior alter, etc. (Æn. i. 544), *Æneas was our king, than whom no other was more righteous, etc.*

NOTE. — The poets sometimes use the ablative of comparison where the prose construction requires *quam* : *as*, —

pāne egeō iam mellītis potiōre placentis (Hor. Ep. i. 10. 11), *I want bread better than honey-cakes.*

b. The idiomatic ablatives *opiniōne*, *spē*, *solitō*, *dictō*, *aequō*, *crēdibillī*, and *iustō* are used after comparatives instead of a clause : *as*, —

gravius aequō (Sall.), *more seriously than was right.*

celerius opīniōne (Fam. xiv. 23), *faster than one would think.*

amnis solitō citātor (Liv. xxiii. 19), *a stream swifter than its wont.*

sērius spē omnium (id. ii. 3), *later than all hoped* (than the hope of all).

c. After the comparatives **plūs, minus, amplius, longius** without **quam**, a word of *measure* or *number* is often used with no change in its case : as, —

plūs septingentī captī (Liv. xli. 12), *more than 700 were taken.*

plūs tertiā parte interfectā (Cæs.), *more than a third part being slain.*

spatium nōn amplius sexcentōrum pedum (id.), *a space of not more than 600 feet.*

d. **Alius** is sometimes used with the ablative in poetic and colloquial use ; in formal prose it takes **āc** (*atque*), **nisi**, **quam**. Thus, —

alius Lysippō (Hor.), *another than Lysippus.*

aliō ingenio āc tū (Plaut.), *of a different disposition from you.*

erat histōria nihil aliud nisi annālium cōfectiō (De Or. ii. 52), *history was nothing else but a compiling of records.*

e. The comparative of an adverb is usually followed by **quam**, rarely by the ablative except in poetry. Thus, —

tempus tē citius quam ōrātiō dēficeret (Rosc. Am. 89), *time would fail you sooner than words.* But —

cūr Sybaris olivum sanguine viperinō cautius vitat (Hor. Od. i. 8. 9), *why does Sybaris shun oil more carefully than viper's blood?*

6. Ablative of Manner.

248. (RULE 46.) The *manner* of an action is denoted by the ablative ; usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun. Thus, —

cum celeritāte vēnit, *he came with speed.* But —

summā celeritāte vēnit, *he came with the greatest speed.*

quid rēfert quā mē ratiōne cōgātis (Lael. 26), *what difference does it make in what way you compel me?*

NOTE. — But **cum** is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective : as, —

quantō cum periculō id fēcerit (B. G. i. 17), *at what risk he did this.*

REMARK. — In poetry the ablative of manner often omits **cum** : as, —

mōns aquae sequitur cumulō (Æn. i. 105), *a mountain of water follows in a mass.* [Cf. *murmure* (id. 124) ; *rīmīs* (id. 123).]

7. Ablative of Accompaniment.

a. (RULE 47.) Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative, regularly with cum: as, —

cum coniugibus ac liberis vestris, *with your wives and children.*

cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi (B. G. ii. 19), *having crossed the river with the archers and slingers.*

NOTE. — The ablative is used without cum in military phrases, and here and there by early writers: as, —

subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis (B. G. ii. 19), *he followed close with all his forces.*

hōc praesidiō profectus est (Verr. II. i, 86), *with this force he set out.*

REMARK. — Misceō and iungō, with their compounds, and cōfundō may take either (1) the Ablative of Accompaniment with or without cum, or (2) sometimes the Dative: as, —

mīxta dolōre voluptās (B. Al. 56), *pleasure mingled with pain.*

flētumque cruōri miscuit (Ov. Met. iv. 140), *and mingled tears with blood.*

Caesar eās cohortēs cum suō exercitū coniūnxit (B. C. i. 18), *Cæsar united those cohorts with his own army.*

b. Words of Contention and the like require cum: as, —

armis cum hoste certāre, *to fight with the enemy in arms.*

libenter haec cum Q. Catulō disputārem (Manil. 66), *I should gladly discuss these matters with Quintus Catulus.*

NOTE. — But words of contention may take the Dative in poetry (see § 229. c).

8. Ablative of Means.

c. 1. (RULE 48.) The ablative is used to denote the *means or instrument* of an action: as, —

certantis pūgnis, calcibus, unguibus, morsū dēnique (Tusc. v. 77), *fighting with fists, heels, nails, and even teeth.*

cum pūgnis et calcibus concisus esset (Verr. iii. 56), *when he had been pummelled with their fists and heels.*

2. The Ablative of Means is used with verbs and adjectives of *filling, abounding*, and the like: as, —

aggere et crātibus fossās explent (B. G. vii. 86), *they fill up the ditches with earth and fascines.*

tōtum montem hominibus complēvit (id. i. 24), *he filled the whole mountain with men.*

opimus praedā (Verr. II. i, 132), *rich with spoils.*

REMARK. — In poetry the Genitive is often used with these words by a Greek idiom. But *compleō*, *impleō*, *plēnus*, and *refertus* often take the genitive in prose (cf. § 223). Thus, —

omnia plēna lūctūs et maerōris fuērunt (Sest. 128), *everything was full of grief and mourning.*

249. (RULE 49.) The deponents *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, with several of their compounds, govern the ablative : *as*, —

ūtar *vestrā benīgnitāte* (Arch. 18), *I will avail myself of your kindness.*
ita mihi salvā rēpublicā vōbiscum perfrui liceat (Cat. iv. 11), *so may I enjoy with you the state secure and prosperous.*

aurō hērōs potitur (Ov. Met. vii. 155), *the hero takes the gold.*
fungi ināni mūnere (Æn. vi. 885), *to perform an idle service.*

a. Potior sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase *potiri rērum*, *to get control or be master of affairs* (§ 223. *a*) : *as*, —

tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant (B. G. i. 3), *they hope they can get possession of the whole of Gaul.*

g. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

250. (RULE 50.) With comparatives and words-implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference : *as*, —

quīnque milibus passuum distat, *it is five miles distant* (by five miles).

aliquot ante annis (Tusc. i. 4), *several years before.*

multō mē vigilāre ācrius (Cat. i. 8), *that I watch much more sharply* (more sharply by much).

REMARK. — This use is especially frequent with the ablatives *quō* . . . *eō* (*hōc*); *quantō* . . . *tantō* (cf. § 106. *c*) : *as*, —

quō minus cupiditātis, eō plūs auctōritātis (Liv. xxiv. 28), *the less greed, the more weight* (by what the less, by that the more).

quantō erat gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae mīttēbantur (B. G. v. 45), *the severer the siege was, the oftener letters were sent.*

NOTE. — To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of *quō* and *eō* with a comparative, even when they have ceased to be felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause : *as*, —

eōque mē minus paenitet (N. D. i. 8), *and for that reason I regret less, etc.* (by so much the less I regret).

a. The Ablative of Comparison (§ 247) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference may be used together with the same adjective: as, —
multō divitior Crassō, *much richer than Crassus.*

10. Ablative of Quality.

251. (RULE 51.) *Quality* is denoted by the Ablative with a Modifier (either an adjective or limiting genitive).

This is called the *Descriptive Ablative* or *Ablative of Quality*.

animō meliōre sunt gladiātōrēs (Cat. ii. 26), *the gladiators are of a better mind.*

quae cum esset cīvītās aequissimō iūre ac foedere (Arch. 6), *as this was a city with perfectly equal constitutional rights.*

mulierem eximiā pulchritūdine (Verr. II. i, 64), *a woman of extraordinary beauty.*

NOTE. — The Ablative of Quality (like the Genitive of Quality) modifies a substantive by *describing* it. It is therefore equivalent to an adjective, and may be either attributive or predicate. In this it differs from other ablatives, which are equivalent to adverbs. Compare —

mulier pulchra, *a beautiful woman.*

mulier māgnā pulchritūdine, *a woman of great beauty*, with —

mulier pulchritūdine Trōiam dēlēvit, *by her beauty a woman destroyed Troy.*

mulier excellēns pulchritūdine (§ 253), *a woman preëminent in beauty.*

a. In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but *physical* qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative: as, —

capillō sunt prōmissō (B. G. v. 14), *they have long hair.*

11. Ablative of Price.

252. (RULE 52.) *Price* is expressed by the ablative:
as, —

agrum vēdidit sēstertiūm sex milibus, *he sold the land for 6000 sesterces.*
Antōnius rēgna addixit pecūniā (Phil. vii. 15), *Antony sold thrones for money.*

a. Certain adjectives of Quantity are used in the genitive to denote *indefinite value*. Such are māgnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris: as, —

est mihi **tantī** (Cat. ii. 15), *it is worth the price* (it is of much).

meā **māgnī** interest, *it is of great consequence to me.*

illud **parvī** rēfert (Manil. 18), *this is of small account.*

NOTE. — These are really genitives of quality (§ 215. c).

b. The genitive of certain colorless nouns is used in the same way. Such are **nihilī**, *nothing*; **āssis**, *a farthing*; **floccī** (a lock of wool), *a straw*. Thus, —

nōn **floccī** faciō (Att. xiii. 50), *I care not a straw.*

utinam ego istūc abs tē factum **nihilī** penderem (Ter. Eun. 94), *oh! that I cared nothing for this being done by you!*

c. With verbs of *exchanging*, either the *thing taken* or the *thing given* in exchange may be in the Ablative of Price. Such are: **mūtāre**, **commūtāre**, **permūtāre**, **vertere**. Thus, —

fidem suam et religiōnem **pecūniā** commūtāre (Cluent. 129), *to barter his faith and conscience for money.*

vertere **fūneribus** triumphōs (Hor. Od. i. 35. 4), *to change the triumph to the funeral train* (exchange triumphs for funerals).

exsilium **patriā** sēde mūtāvit (Q. C. iii. 7), *he exchanged his native land for exile* (he took exile in exchange for his native land).

NOTE. — With verbs of exchanging **cum** is often used, perhaps with a different conception of the action: as, —

ariēs . . . **cum** croceō mūtābit vellera lūtō (Ecl. iv. 44), *the ram shall change his fleece for [one dyed with] the yellow saffron.*

d. With verbs of *buying* and *selling* the simple ablative of price must be used, except in the case of **tantī**, **quantī**, **plūria**, **minōris**: as, —

quantī eam ēmit? vilī . . . quot minīs? quadrāgintā minīs (Pl. Epid. 51), *what did he buy her for? Cheap. For how many minae? Forty.*

12. Ablative of Specification.

253. (RULE 53.) The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done: as, —

virtūte praecēdunt (B. G. i. 1), *they excel in courage.*

claudus alterō pede (Nep. Ages 8), *lame of one foot.*

sunt enim hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine (Off. i. 105), *for they are men not in fact, but in name.*

māior nātū, *older*; minor nātū, *younger* (cf. § 91. c).

infirmus mollisque nātūrā (Lael. 75), *weak and yielding by nature.*

homō meā sententiā prūdentissimus (Cæcin. 22), *a man, in my opinion, very wise.*

equitātū pulsī erant (B. G. vii. 68), *they had been beaten in the cavalry fight.*

NOTE. — To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative denotes that *in accordance with* which anything is or is done. But as the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. Hence the ablative of *specification* is closely akin to that of *manner*, and to many ablatives developed from other fundamental ideas. Thus, —

meō iūre, *with perfect right* ; but, *meō modō*, *in my fashion.*

meā sententiā, *in my opinion* ; but also more formally, *ex meā sententiā.*

[Here the sense is the same, but the first ablative is *specification* ; the second, *source.*]

quī vincit vīribus (Lael. 55), *who surpasses in strength.* [Here it is impossible to tell whether *vīribus* is the *means* of the superiority or that *in respect to which* one is superior.]

a. The Supine in *-ū*, used chiefly with adjectives, is equivalent to an ablative of specification (cf. §§ 114. *b*, 303) : as, —

mirābile dictū, *marvellous to tell.*

13. Ablative of Place.

254. (RULE 57.) The ablative is used to denote the *place where* (usually with the preposition *in*, § 258. *c*).

a. The ablative of the *place where* is retained in many idiomatic expressions (cf. § 259. *a*) which have lost the idea of place : as, —

pendēmus animīs (Tusc. i. 96), *we are in suspense of mind* (in our minds).

socius periculīs vōbiscum aderō (Jug. 85, 47), *I will be present with you, a companion in dangers.*

premit altum corde dolōrem (Æn. i. 209), *he keeps down the pain deep in his heart.*

b. 1. Several verbs are regularly followed by the ablative, originally of place. These are : *acquiēscō*, *dēlector*, *laetor*, *gaudeō*, *glōrior*, *nītor*, *stō*, *maneō*, *fidō* (*cōnfidō*), *cōnsistō*, *contineor*.

nōminibus veterum glōriantur (Orat. 169), *they glory in the names of the ancients.* [Also, *dē divitiīs*, *in virtūte*, *circā rem*, *aliquid*, *glōriārī.*]

spē nīti (Att. iii. 9), *to rely on hope.*

prūdentiā fidēs (Off. i. 8), *trusting in prudence.*

2. (RULE 42.) The verbals **frētus**, **contentus**, and **laetus** take the ablative either of *place* or *means*: as, —

frētus grātiā Brūtī (Att. v. 21, 12), *relying on the favor of Brutus.*

laetus praedā, *rejoicing in the booty.*

contentus sorte, *content with his lot.* [Possibly abl. of cause.]

REMARK. — The ablative with the above verbs sometimes takes the preposition **in** (and the ablative with them is probably locative): as, —

in quibus causa nītur (Cael. 25), *on whom the case depends.*

With several of these verbs the neuter accusative of pronouns is often found.

14. Ablative Absolute.

255. (RULE 54.) A noun or pronoun, with a participle, may be put in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action: as, —

nōndum hieme cōfectā (B. G. vi. 3), *the winter not yet over.*

nē vōbīs quidem omnibus rē etiam tum probātā (Cat. ii. 4), *since at that time the facts were not yet proved even to all of you.*

a. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction: as, —

exiguā parte aestātis reliquā (B. G. iv. 20), *when but a small part of the summer was left* (a small part of the summer remaining).

M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus (id. i. 2), *in the consulship of Messala and Piso* (Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso being consuls).
[The regular way of expressing dates, see § 259. c.]

b. In later Latin a phrase or clause, used substantively, sometimes occurs as ablative absolute with a participle or an adjective: as, —

incertō quid peterent (Liv. xxviii. 36), *as it was uncertain what they should aim at* (it being uncertain, etc.).

compertō vānam esse formīdinem (Tac. Ann. i. 66), *when it was found that the alarm was groundless.*

c. A participle or an adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the ablative absolute without a substantive: as, —

cōsultō et cōgitātō (Off. i. 27), *on purpose and with reflection* (the matter having been deliberated and thought on).

serēnō (Liv. xxxi. 12), *under a clear sky* (it [being] clear).

d. The Ablative Absolute in its developed form often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause, the noun being equivalent to a subject, and the other word to the predicate. So may be replaced —

1. Temporal clauses (§§ 322 ff.) : as, —

patre interfectō, [his] *father having been killed*. [This corresponds to *cum pater interfectus esset*, *when his father had been killed*.]
recentibus sceleris eius vestigiis (Q. C. vii. 1, 1), *while the traces of the crime were fresh*. [Cf. *dum recentia sunt vestigia*.]

2. Causal clauses (§ 321) : as, —

at ei quī Alesiae obsidēbantur praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum expectāverant, cōnsūptō omnī frūmentō, *conciliō coāctō cōsultābant* (B. G. vii. 77), *but those who were under siege at Alesia since the time, etc., had expired, and their grain had been exhausted, calling a council* (see § below), *consulted together*. [Cf. *cum diēs praeteriisset*, etc.]

Dārēus, dēspērātā pāce, *ad reparandās virēs intendit animum* (Q. C. iv. 6, 1), *Darius, since he despaired of peace, devoted his energies to recruiting his forces*. [Cf. *cum pācem dēspērāret*.]

3. Concessive clauses (§ 313) : as, —

at eō repūgnante fiēbat (cōsul), *immō vērō eō fiēbat magis* (Milo 34), *but though he (Clodius) opposed, he (Milo) was likely to be elected consul; nay, rather, etc.*

4. Conditional clauses (§ 304) : as, —

occurrēbat ei, mancam et debilem praetūram futūram suam, cōnsule Milōne (Milo 25), *it occurred to him that his praetorship would be maimed and feeble if Milo were consul*. [si *Milō cōsul esset*.]

quā (regiōne) subāctā licēbit decurrere in illud mare (Q. C. ix. 3, 13), *if this region is subdued, we shall be free to run down into that sea*.

quā quidem detrāctā (Arch. 28), *if this be taken away*.

5. Clauses of accompanying circumstance : as, —

ego haec ā Chrēsogonō meā sponte, remōtō Sex. Rosciō, quaerō (Ros. Am. 130), *of my own accord, without reference to Sextus Roscius* (S. R. being put aside), *I ask these questions of Chrysogonus*.

nec imperante nec sciente nec praesente dominō (Milo 29), *without their master's giving orders, or knowing it or being present*.

NOTE.—As the English case absolute (the nominative) is far less common than the ablative absolute in Latin, a change of form is generally required in translation. Thus the present participle is oftenest to be ren-

dered by a relative clause with *when* or *while*; and the perfect passive participle by the perfect active participle in English. These changes may be seen in the following example:—

"At illi, *intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostris, atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis ēiēcērunt; impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statione prō castris collocātī, ācritēr pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, cum hae (perexiguō intermissō loci spatiō inter sē) cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt, sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt.*"—CÆSAR, B. G. v. 15.

"But they, *having paused a space, while our men were unaware and busied in fortifying the camp, suddenly threw themselves out of the woods, then making an attack upon those who were on guard in front of the camp, they fought fiercely, and though two cohorts had been sent by Cæsar as reinforcements, after these had taken their position (leaving very little space of ground between them) as our men were alarmed by the strange kind of fighting, they dashed most daringly through the midst of them, and got off safe.*"

VI. TIME AND PLACE.

1. Time.

256. (RULE 55.) Time *when*, or *within which*, is expressed by the Ablative; time *how long* by the Accusative: as,—

1. Ablative:—

cōstitutā diē, *on the appointed day*; primā lūce, *at daybreak*.
quotā hōrā, *at what o'clock?* tertiā vigiliā, *in the third watch*.
tribus proximis annis (Jug. 11), *within the last three years*.

2. Accusative:—

diēs continuōs trīgintā, *for thirty days together*.
cum trīdūm iter fēcisset (B. G. ii. 16), *when he had marched three days*.

a. The Ablative of time *within which* sometimes takes **in**, and the Accusative of time *how long*, **per** for greater precision: as,—

in diēbus proximis decem (Sall.), *within the next ten days*.
in brevī spatiō (Ov. Met. i. 411), *within a brief space* (of time).
lūdī per decem diēs (Cat. iii. 20), *games for ten days*.

b. Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative: as,—
militēs quinque hōris proelium sustinuerant (B. C. i. 47), *the men had sustained the fight five hours*.

2. Space.

257. (RULE 37.) Extent of space is expressed by the Accusative : as, —

fōssās quīndecim pedēs lātās (B. G. vii. 72), *trenches fifteen feet broad.*
in omnī vitā suā quemque ā rēctā cōnscentiā trānsversum unguem nōn
oportet discēdere (quoted in Att. xiii. 20), *in all one's life, one should*
not depart a nail's breadth from straightforward conscience.

a. Measure is often expressed by the Genitive of Quality (§ 215. b) :
as, —

vallō pedum duodecim (B. G. ii. 30), *in a rampart of twelve feet (in*
height).

b. Distance when considered as *extent of space* is expressed by the Accusative ; when considered as *degree of difference*, by the Ablative (§ 250) : as, —

quīnque diērum iter abest (Liv. xxx. 29), *it is distant five days' march.*
trīgintā mīlibus passuum inf̄rā eum locum (B. G. vi. 35), *thirty miles below*
that place (below by thirty miles).

3. Place from Which and End of Motion.

258. (RULE 56.) The *place from which* is denoted by the Ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** ; the *place to which* (the End of Motion) by the Accusative with **ad** or **in** : as, —

1. Place from which : —

ā septentriōne, *from the north.*
dē prōvinciā dēcēdere, *to come away from one's province.*
dē monte, *down from the mountain.*
negōtiātor ex Āfricā (Verr. II. i, 14), *a merchant from Africa.*
ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt (B. G. iv. 38), *they sent hostages from*
Britain.
Mōsa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō (id. iv. 10), *the Meuse (flows from) rises*
in the Vosges mountains.

2. Place to which : —

ad finēs Hyrcāniae penetrat (Q. C. vi. 4, 2), *he penetrates to the borders of*
Hyrcania.
in Āfricam nāvigāvit, *he sailed to Africa.*
in Ītaliā profectus, *gone to Italy.*
lēgātum in Treverōs mittit (B. G. iii. 11), *he sends his lieutenant into the*
[country of the] Treveri.

NOTE 1. — In poetry the end of motion is often expressed by the Dative (§ 225. b. 3): as, —

it clāmor caelō (Æn. v. 451), *a shout goes up to the sky.*

a. (RULE 56.) The names of towns or small islands *from which*, as also ~~domus~~ and ~~rūs~~, are put in the Ablative without a preposition: as, —

Rōmā profectus, *having set out from Rome.*

rūre reversus, *having returned from the country.*

Rōmā abesse, *to be absent from Rome.*

domō abire, *to leave home.*

NOTE 1. — With names of towns, etc., ab is often used, commonly to denote *from the vicinity of*: as, —

erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra (B. G. vii. 45), *there was from about G. a view into the camp.*

profecti ā domō (Liv. xl. 33), *setting out from home.*

NOTE 2. — The ablative without a preposition is used to denote the *place from which* in certain idiomatic expressions: as, —

cēssisset patriā (Mil. 68), *he would have left his country.*

patriā pellere, *to drive out of the country.*

manū mittere, *to emancipate (let go from the hand).*

NOTE 3. — The poets often omit the preposition where it would be required in prose: as, —

mānīs Acheronte remissōs (Æn. v. 99), *the spirits returned from Acheron.*

b. (RULE 56.) The names of towns or small islands *to which*, as also ~~domus~~ and ~~rūs~~, are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as, —

Rōmam rediit, *he returned to Rome.*

Dēlō Rhodum nāvigāre, *to sail from Deles to Rhodes.*

rūs ibō, *I shall go into the country.*

domum iit, *he went home.* [So, suās domōs abire, *to go to their homes.*]

NOTE 1. — In this use **domum** may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive. When otherwise modified, **domum** requires the preposition **in**. Thus, —

domum rēgis (Deiot. 17), *to the king's house.* [But also in **M. Laecae**

domum (Cat. i. 8), *to M. Laeca's house.*] But —

in domum māgnam venīre, *to come into a large house.*

NOTE 2. — With the names of towns, etc., **ad** may be used in the sense of *towards, to the neighborhood of*: as, —

ad Alesiam proficiscuntur (B. G. vii. 76), *they set out for Alesia.*

ad Alesiam perveniunt (id. vii. 79), *they arrive at Alesia (come through to).*

ad Athēnās nāvigāre, *to set sail for Athens (landing in the harbor).*

NOTE 3. — The general words, urbs, oppidum, insula, require a preposition in either construction (*to which* or *from which*): as, ad urbem, ab urbe, ad urbem Rōmam, Rōmam ad urbem, ex urbe Rōmā.

NOTE 4. — Two or more nouns are sometimes expressed after one verb as limits of motion (see § 259. *h*).

NOTE 5. — The poets often omit the preposition with any noun: as, —
Italiam Lāvīniaque vēnit lītora (Æn. i. 2), *he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.*

finīs Italōs mīttēre (id. iii. 440), *you shall be allowed to reach the Italian boundaries.*

REMARK. — The preposition is omitted with the supine in -um (§ 302) and in the following old phrases: —

exsequiās īre, *to go to the funeral.*

infītiās īre, *to resort to denial.*

pešsum īre, *to go to ruin.*

pešsum dare, *to ruin (cf. perdō).*

vēnum dare, *to sell (give to sale).* [Hence vēndere.]

vēnum īre, *to be sold (go to sale).* [Hence vēnīre.]

forās (used as adverb), *out*: as, forās ēgredī, *to go out of doors.*

4. The Place Where.

c. (RULE 57.) 1. The *place where* is denoted by the Ablative with the preposition in (*Locative Ablative*): as, —

in hāc urbe vītām dēgit, *he passed his life in this city.*

sī in Galliā remanērent (B. G. iv. 8), *if they should stay in Gaul.*

oppidum in insulā positum (id. vii. 58), *a town situated on an island.*

2. (RULE 57.) But names of towns and small islands are put in the Locative Case. (See 36. *c*, 40. *a*, and 62.)

Rōmae, *at Rome* (Rōma).

Athēnīs, *at Athens* (Athēnae).

REMARK. — Large islands, and all places when thought of as a *territory* and not as a *locality*, are treated like names of countries: as, —

in Siciliā, *in Sicily.*

in Ithacā leporēs illātī moriuntur (Plin. H. N.), *in Ithaca hares when carried there die.* [*Ulysses lived at Ithaca*, would require Ithacae.]

NOTE 1. — With all names of places AT, meaning *near* (not *in*), is expressed by ad or apud with the Accusative. *In the neighborhood of* may be expressed by circā with the Accusative; *among*, by apud with the Accusative. Thus, —

pūgna ad Cannās, *the fight at Cannæ.*

conchās ad Cāiētam legunt (De Or. ii. 22), *at Caieta (along the shore).*

ad (apud) inferōs, *in the world below (near or among those below).*

apud Graecōs, *among the Greeks.* apud mē, *at my house.*

NOTE 2. — In citing an *author*, **apud** is regularly used ; in citing a particular *work*, **in**. Thus, —

apud Xenophōntem, *in Xenophon.* But —

in Xenophōntis Oeconomicō, *in Xenophon's Economicus.*

d. (RULE 57.) The Locative Case is also preserved in the following common nouns : —

domī (rarely **domuī**), *at home.*

bellī, **militiæ** (in contrast to **domī**), *abroad, in military service.*

humī, *on the ground.*

rūrī, *in the country.*

foris, *out-of-doors.*

terrā marīque, *by land and sea.*

These are used like names of towns, without a preposition. So, also, —

herī(-e), *yesterday.*

vesperī (e), *in the evening.*

infēlicī arborī (Liv. i. 26), *on the ill-omened tree.*

e. The locative **domī** may be modified by a possessive adjective or a limiting genitive ; but when it would be otherwise modified some other construction is used instead of the Locative. Thus, —

domī Caesaris, *at Cæsar's house.*

domī suae vel aliēnae, *at his own or another's house.* But —

in Mārcī Crassī castissimā domō (Cæ. 9), *in the chaste home of Marcus Crassus.* [Cf. **ex** Anniānā Milōnis domō, § 184. d.]

f. The *place where* is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in several constructions : —

1. Regularly in many indefinite words, such as **locō**, **parte** : as, —

quibus **locō** positīs (De Or. iii. 153), *when these are set in position.*

quā **parte** victī erant (Cic.), *on the side where they were beaten.* But —

exercitum **castrīs** continuit (B. G. i. 48), *he kept his army in camp.*

[Here the construction is influenced by *means*.]

2. Frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives (regularly when **tōtus** is used) : as, —

mediā urbe (Liv. i. 33), *in the middle of the city.*

tōtā Siciliā (Verr. iv. 51), *throughout Sicily (in the whole of Sicily).* So —

tōtā Tarracinā (De Or. ii. 240), *in all Tarracina (cf. c. 2. Rem.).*

3. Freely in poetry : as, —

litore curvō (Æn. iii. 16), *on the winding shore.*

antrō sēclūsa relinquit (id. iii. 446), *she leaves them shut up in the cave.*

Ēpirō, Hesperia (id. iii. 503), *in Epirus, in Hesperia.*

g. The way by which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition : as, —

viā breviorē equitēs praemisi (Fam. x. 9), *I sent forward the cavalry by a shorter road.*

Aegaeō mari trāiēcit (Liv. xxxvii. 14), *he crossed by way of the Ægean Sea.*

prōvehimur pelagō (Æn. iii. 506), *we sail forth over the sea.*

5. Special Uses of Time and Place.

259. The following special uses must be observed : —

a. Many expressions have in Latin the construction of *time when*, where in English the main idea is rather of *place* : as, —

pūgnā Cannēnsī (or apud Cannās), *in the fight at Cannæ.*

lūdīs Rōmānīs, *at the Roman games.*

omnibus Gallicis bellis, *in all the Gallic wars.*

b. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the accusative with **ad**, **in**, or **sub** is used. Such are the following : —

supplicatio dēcrēta est in Kalendās Iānuāriās, *a thanksgiving was voted for the 1st of January.*

convēnerunt ad diem, *they assembled at the [appointed] day.*

ad vesperum, *till evening* ; sub vesperum, *towards evening.*

sub idem tempus, *about the same time.*

sub noctem, *at night-fall.*

c. Time *during which* or *within which* may be expressed by the ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral : as, —

quintō diē, *within [just] four days* (lit., on the fifth day). [The Romans counted both ends, see § 376. d.]

rēgnat iam sextum annum, *he has reigned going on six years* (he is reigning now the sixth year).

But also, — rēgnāvit iam sex annōs, *he has already reigned for six years.*

d. Difference of time *before* or *after* anything is variously expressed : as, —

post (ante) trēs annōs, post tertium annum, trēs post annōs, tertium post annum, tribus post annis, tertiō post annō (§ 250), *three years after.*

tribus annis (tertiō annō) post exilium (postquam ēiectus est,) *three years after his exile.*

hīs tribus proximīs annīs, within the last three years.

paucīs annīs, a few years hence.

abhinc annōs trēs (tribus annīs), ante hōs trēs annōs, three years ago.

triennium est cum (trēs annī sunt cum), it is three years since.

octāvō mēse quam (see § 262. note 2), the eighth month after.

e. In Dates the phrase **ante diem** (**a. d.**) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition.

The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, often without a conjunction (§ 255. *a*): as, —

is diēs erat a. d. quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus (B. G. i. 6), that day was the 5th before the calends of April (March 28), in the consulship of Piso and Gabinius.

in a. d. v. Kal. Nov. (Cat. i. 7), to the 5th day before the calends of November (Oct. 28).

xv. Kal. Sextilis, the 15th day before the calends of August (July 18).

[Full form: **quīntō decimō diē ante Kalendās.**]

f. For **AT**, meaning *near* (not *in*), see § 258. *c.* note 1.

g. When *motion to* a place is implied in English, though not expressed, the accusative with or without a preposition must be used in Latin: as, —

coniūrātī in cūriam convēnērunt, the conspirators met in the Senate-house (came together into the Senate-house).

concilium domum suam convocāvit, he called a council at his own house.

h. When two or more names of place follow a verb of motion, each must be under its own construction. Thus, —

quadriduō quō haec gesta sunt rēs ad Chrēsogonum in castra L. Sullae Volāterrās dēfertur (Ros. Am. 20), within four days after this was done, the matter was reported TO Chrysogonus IN Sulla's camp AT Volaterra.

VII. USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

260. Some Prepositions are used with the Accusative, some with the Ablative, and a few with both.

a. Verbs of *placing*, though implying motion, take the construction of the place *in which*.

Such are: **pōnō** and its compounds (except **impōnō**), **locō**, **collocō**, **statuō**, **cōstituō**, etc.

statuitur eques Rōmānus in Aprōnī conviviō (Verr. iii. 62), *a Roman knight is brought into a banquet of Apronius.*

sī in ūnō Pompēiō omnia pōnerētis (Man. 59), *if you made everything depend on Pompey alone.*

b. Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with **ab** (rarely **ex**), properly meaning *from* : as, —

ā tergō, *in the rear.*

ā sinistrā, *on the left hand.* [Cf. *hinc*, *on this side.*]

māgnā ex parte, *in a great degree (from, i.e. in, a great part).*

c. **Super** in the sense of *concerning* takes the Ablative ; in all other senses it takes the Accusative : as, —

hāc super rē (Cic.), *concerning this thing.*

sed hāc rē super nimis (Att. x. 8, 10), *but more than enough on that point.*

super culmina tēctī (Æn. ii. 695), *above the house-top.*

super laterēs coria inducuntur (R. C. ii. 10), *hides are drawn over the bricks.*

super Numidiam (Jug. 19), *beyond Numidia.*

super terrae tumulum (Legg. ii. 66), *on the mound of earth.*

NOTE. — The ablative is used in poetry with **super** in other senses : as, —

ligna super focō largē repōnēs (Hor. Od. i. 9. 5), *piling logs generously on the fire.*

nocte super mediā (Æn. ix. 61), *after midnight.*

d. **Subter** takes the Accusative, except sometimes in poetry. Thus, —

subter togam (Liv.), *under his mantle.* But —

subter litore (Catull.), *below the shore.*

e. **Tenus** (which follows its noun) regularly takes the Ablative, but sometimes the Genitive (§ 223. *e*). Thus, —

Taurō tenus (Deiot. 36), *as far as Taurus.*

capulō tenus (Æn. ii. 553), *up to the hilt.*

Corcyræ tenus (Liv. xxvi. 24), *as far as Corcyra.*

261. Many words may be construed either as Prepositions or as Adverbs : thus, —

a. The adverbs **prīdiē**, **postrīdiē**, **propius**, **proximē**,¹ **usque** — also (less frequently) the adjectives **propior** and **proximus** — may be followed by the Accusative (cf. §§ 207. *b*, 234. *e*) : as, —

¹ Cf. **prope**, § 152. *a*.

pridiē Nōnās Iūniās (Cic.), *the day before the Nones of June* (June 4).
ipse propior montem suōs collocat (Jug. 49), *he stations his men nearer the hill.*

proximē Pompēium sedēbam (Att. i. 14), *I sat next to Pompey.* [Cf. *proximus Pompēium sedēbam.*]

pars insulae quae est propius sōlis occāsum (B. G. iv. 28), *the part of the island which is nearer the west* (sunset).

terminōs usque Libyae (Just.), *to the bounds of Libya.*

NOTE.—*Pridiē* and *postridiē* take also the Genitive (§ 223. c. note 2).
Propior, propius, proximus, and *proximē* take also the Dative, or the Ablative with *ab*. *Usque* is commonly followed by *ad*. Thus,—

propius Tiberī (Nep.), *nearer the Tiber.*

propius ab urbe (Plin.), *nearer the city.*

usque ad mare, *to the sea.*

b. The adverbs **palam**, **procul**, **simul**, may be used as prepositions and take the Ablative (so, perhaps, **intus**): as,—

rem crēditōrī palam populō solvit (Liv. vi. 14), *he paid the debt in the presence of the people.*

haud procul castrīs in modum mūnicipiī exstrūcta (Tac. H. iv. 22), *not far from the camp, built up like a town.*

simul nōbīs habitat barbarus (Ov. Tr. v. 10. 29), *close among us dwells the barbarian.*

NOTE.—But **simul** regularly takes *cum*; **procul** is usually followed by *ab* in classic use; and **palam** as a preposition is comparatively late. Thus,—

procul ā marī, *far from the sea.*

nōbīscum simul, *at the same time with ourselves.*

c. The adverb **clam** is found with the Accusative or Ablative, rarely with the Genitive or Dative: as,—

clam mātrem suam (Plaut.), *unknown to his mother.*

clam mihi (id.), *in secret from me.*

clam patris (id.), *without his father's knowledge.*

clam vōbīs (B. C. ii. 32), *without your knowledge.*

d. Prepositions often retain their original meaning as adverbs. So, especially,—

1. **Ante** and **post** in relations of time: as,—

quae paulō ante praecepta dedimus (Cic.), *a little while ago*, etc.

post tribus diēbus, *three days after* (cf. § 259. d).

2. **Adversus, contrā, circiter, prope** : as, —

adversus resistere, to hold out in opposition.

Aeolus haec contrā, thus Æolus in reply.

3. In general those ending in **-ā** : as, —

forte fuit iūxtā tumulus, there happened to be a mound close by.

262. Some prepositions or adverbs which imply Comparison are followed, like comparatives, by **quam**, either attached to them or separated by several words, or even clauses.

neque ante dīmīsīt eum quam fidem dedit (Liv. xxxix. 10), nor did he let him go until he gave a pledge.

post diem tertium quam dixerat (Mil. 44), the third day after he said it.

NOTE 1. — Such words are **ante**, **prius**, **post**, **prīdiē**, **postrīdiē**; also **magis** and **prae** in compounds : as, —

Catō ipse iam servīre quam pūgnāre māvult (Att. vii. 15), Cato himself by this time would rather be a slave than fight.

NOTE 2. — The ablative of time (§ 256) is sometimes followed by **quam** in the same way : as, —

octāvō mēse quam (Liv. xxi. 15), within eight months after, etc.

263. For **ā** or **ab** with the Ablative of Agent, see § 246.

NOTE. — The following prepositions sometimes follow their nouns : **ad**, **citrā**, **circā**, **contrā**, **dē**, **ē** (**ex**), **inter**, **iūxtā**, **penes**, **propter**, **ultrā**, **tenus** (regularly), and occasionally others : as, —

[**ūsus**] **quem penes arbitrium est et iūs et nōrma loquendī** (Hor. A. P. 72), *custom, under whose control is the choice, right, and rule of speech.*

cūius ā mē corpus est cremātum, quod contrā decuit ab illō meum (C. M. 84), *whose body I burned [on the funeral pile], while on the contrary (lit. contrary to which) mine should have been burned by him.*

3. SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

I. MOODS AND TENSES.

The proper verbal constructions may be thus classified: —

1. INDICATIVE: Direct Assertion or Question (§ 264).

- | | | | | |
|------------------|---|------------------|---|--|
| 2. SUBJUNCTIVE : | { | a. Independent : | { | Wish, Exhortation, Command,
Question (§ 265. a). |
| | | | { | 1. Purpose (with <i>ut</i> , <i>nē</i>) (§ 317).
2. Result (with <i>ut</i> , <i>ut nōn</i>) (§ 319).
3. Characteristic (Relative Clause) (§ 320).
4. Time (with <i>cum</i>) (§ 325). |
| | | b. Dependent : | { | 5. Condi-
tions: { Future (less vivid) (§
307. <i>b</i> , <i>c</i>).
Contrary to Fact (§
308).
6. Intermediate (Indirect Dis-
course) (§ 341).
7. Indirect Questions or Com-
mands (§§ 334, 339). |

3. IMPERATIVE :
- | | |
|---|---|
| { | 1. Direct Commands (often subjunctive) (§ 269).
2. Statutes, Laws, and Wills (§ 269. <i>d</i>).
3. Prohibitions (early or poetic use) (§ 269. note). |
|---|---|

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---|---|---|
| 4. INFINITIVE : | { | a. Subject of <i>esse</i> and Impersonal verbs (§ 270). | |
| | | b. Objective
Constructions : | { 1. Complementary Infinitive (§ 271).
2. Indirect Discourse (with subject-accusative) (§ 272). |
| | | c. Idiomatic
Uses : | { 1. Purpose (poetic or Greek use) (§ 273).
2. Exclamation (with subject-accusative) (§ 274).
3. Historical Infinitive (§ 275). |

MOODS. ✕

I. THE INDICATIVE.

264. The Indicative is the mood of direct assertions or questions when there is no modification of the verbal idea except that of time.

a. The Tenses of the Indicative generally denote time, as *present*, *past*, or *future*, with reference to the speaker (§§ 276 ff.).

b. The Indicative is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the Subjunctive: as, —

longum est, *it would be tedious* [if, etc.].

sati^{us} erat, *it would have been better* [if, etc.].

persequi possum, *I might follow up* [in detail].

c. The Future is sometimes used for the Imperative (§ 269. f).

d. The Indicative is used in some kinds of conditions (§§ 306, 308).

II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

265. The Subjunctive in general expresses the verbal idea with some modification¹ such as is expressed in English by auxiliaries, by the infinitive, or by the rare subjunctive (§ 112. b).

The uses of the subjunctive are *independent* or *dependent*.

a. The Subjunctive is used *independently* to express —

(1) An Exhortation, Concession, or Command (*Hortatory*, § 266).

(2) A Wish (*Optative*, § 267).

(3) A Question of Doubt or Deliberation (*Deliberative*, § 268).

b. The Subjunctive is used in *dependent* clauses to express —

(1) Purpose (*Final*, § 317).

(2) Result (*Consecutive*, § 319).

(3) Characteristic (§ 320).

(4) Time (*Temporal*, § 325).

(5) Indirect Question (§ 334).

(6) Condition: future or contrary to fact (§§ 307. b, c, 308).

c. The subjunctive is also used with Particles of Comparison (§ 312), and in subordinate clauses in the Indirect Discourse (§ 336).

¹ These modifications are of various kinds, each of which had its own special development. The subjunctive in Latin has also many idiomatic uses (see clauses of Result and Time), where the English does not modify the verbal idea at all, but expresses it directly; but in these cases the Latin merely takes a different view of the action, and has developed its construction differently from the English.

1. Hortatory Subjunctive.

266. (RULE 68.) The Hortatory Subjunctive is used to express an exhortation, a command, a concession, or a condition.

hōs lātrōnēs interficiāmus (B. G. vii. 38), *let us kill these robbers.*

caveant intemperantiam, meminerint verēcundiae (Off. i. 122), *let them shun excess and cherish modesty.*

NOTE 1. — The simple subjunctive of exhortation and command takes the present tense, less commonly the perfect. The Perfect represents an action as completed in future time, but in most cases is equivalent to the Present. Other tenses are used in some varieties of this construction (see *c*, note, and *e*).

REMARK. — The negative particle with the hortatory subjunctive is nē.

a. The Second Person is used only of an *indefinite subject*, except in prohibition, in early Latin, and in poetry (cf. § 269. *b*). Thus, —

iniūriās fortūnae, quās ferre nequeās, dēfugiendō relinquās (Tusc. v. 118), *the wrongs of fortune, which you cannot bear, leave behind by flight.*

exoriāre aliquis ultor (Æn. iv. 625), *rise, some avenger.*

nē cōferās culpam in mē (Ter. Eun. 388), *don't lay the blame on me.*

b. In Prohibitions addressed to a definite person, the perfect is more common than the present (cf. § 269. *a*) : as, —

hōc facitō : hōc nē fēceris (Div. ii. 127), *thou shalt do this ; thou shalt not do that.*

tū nē quaesieris (Hor.), *do not inquire.*

nec mihi illud dīxeris (Fin. i. 25), *and do not say that to me.*

c. The hortatory subjunctive may express a CONCESSION, sometimes with ut, nē, quamvis, quamlibet, or similar words (cf. § 313. *a*) : as, —

fuerit aliīs : tibi quandō esse coepit (Verr. II. i. 37), *suppose he was [so] to others, when did he begin to be to you?*

ut ratiōnem Platō nullam afferret (Tusc. i. 49), *though Plato adduced no reasons.*

nēmō is unquam fuit : nē fuerit (Or. 101), *there never was such a one [you will say] : granted (let there not have been).*

quamvis scelerātī illī fuissent (De Or. i. 230), *however guilty they might have been.*

NOTE. — In this use the Present refers to *future* or *indefinite* time, the Imperfect to *present* or *past* time (the concession being impliedly untrue), the Perfect to *past* or *completed future* time, the Pluperfect to *completed action in past time* (the concession being usually untrue).

d. The hortatory subjunctive may denote a PROVISO or CONDITION (see §§ 310. *b*, 314).

e. The Imperfect and Pluperfect of the hortatory subjunctive denote an UNFULFILLED OBLIGATION in past time: as, —

moreretur, *inquiēs* (Rab. Post. 28), *he should have died, you will say.*

potius diceret (Off. iii. 88), *he should rather have said.*

nē poposcissēs (Att. ii. 1, 3), *you should not have asked.*

2. Optative Subjunctive.

267. (RULE 69.) The Subjunctive is used to express a Wish. The present tense denotes the wish as possible, the imperfect as unaccomplished in present time, the pluperfect as unaccomplished in past time. Thus, —

ita vivam (Att. v. 15), *so may I live* (as true as I live).

nē vivam sī sciō (id. iv. 16, 8), *I wish I may not live if I know.*

dī tē perduint (Deiot. 21), *the gods confound thee!*

valeant, valeant, civēs mei; valeant, sint incolumēs (Mil. 93), *farewell*
[he says], *my fellow-citizens; may they be secure from harm.*

dī facerent sine patre forem (Ov. Met. viii. 72), *would that the gods*
allowed me to be without a father (but they do not)!

REMARK. — The negative particle with the optative subjunctive is *nē*.

a. The Perfect in this use is antiquated: as, —

male dī tibi faxint (Plaut. Curc. 131), *may the gods do thee a mischief.*

quod ōmen dī āverterint (Phil. xii. 14, in a religious formula), *and may*
the gods avert this omen.

b. The Optative Subjunctive is often preceded by the particles ut
(ut), utinam, ō sī: as, —

ut pereat positum rōbīgine tēlum (Hor. Sat. ii. 1, 43), *may the weapon*
unused perish with rust.

falsus utinam vātēs sim (Liv. xxi. 10), *I wish I may be a false prophet.*

utinam P. Clōdīus viveret (Mil. 103), *would that Clodius were now alive.*

ō sī angulus ille accēdat (Hor. Sat. ii. 6. 8), *oh! if that corner might only*
be added.

NOTE 1. — The subjunctive with *ut*, etc., was originally *deliberative*, meaning *how may I*, etc. (§ 268). The subjunctive with *ō sī* (*poetical*) is a protasis (§ 312. note) ; *sī* alone is sometimes used to express a wish in the same way : as, —

sī nunc *sē* nōbīs ille aureus rāmus ostendat (*Æn.* vi. 187), *if now that golden branch would only show itself to us !*

c. **Velim** and **vellem**, and their compounds, with a subjunctive or infinitive, are often equivalent to an optative subjunctive : as, —

dē Menedēmō **vellem** vērūm fuisset, dē rēgīnā **velim** vērūm sit (*Att.* xv. 4, 4), *about Menedemus I wish it had been true ; about the queen I hope it may be.*

nōllem accidisset tempus (*Fam.* iii. 10, 2), *I wish the time never had come.*

3. Deliberative Subjunctive.

268. (RULE 70.) The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) doubt, indignation, or (2) an impossibility of the thing being done : as, —

quid hōc homine faciās ? quod supplicium dīgnūm libīdinī ēius inveniās (*Verr.* ii. 40), *what are you to do with this man ? what fit penalty can you devise for his wantonness ?*

an ego nōn venīrem (*Phil.* ii. 3), *what, should I not have come ?*

mihi umquam bonōrum praesidium defuturū putārem (*Mil.* 94), *could I think that the defence of good men would ever fail me ?*

quis enim cēlāverit īgnem (*Ov. Her.* xv. 7), *who could conceal the flame ?*

REMARK. — This use is apparently derived from the Hortatory Subjunctive : quid faciāmus ? = faciāmus [aliquid], quid ? *let us do — what ?* Once established, it was readily transferred to the past : quid faciam ? *what AM I to do ?* quid facerem ? *what WAS I to do ?* Questions implying impossibility, however, cannot be distinguished from Apodosis.

NOTE. — The Deliberative Subjunctive is sometimes called *Dubitative*.

III. THE IMPERATIVE.

269. The Imperative is used in Commands and Entreaties : as, —

cōsultite vōbīs, prospicite patriae, cōservāte vōs (*Cat.* iv. 3), *have a care for yourselves, guard the country, preserve yourselves.*

dic Mārce Tullī sententiam, Marcus Tullius, *state your opinion.*

NOTE. — In Negative Commands (*prohibitions*) the Present Imperative with *nē* is used by early writers and the poets : as, —

nē timē (Plaut. Curc. 520), *don't be afraid*.

nimum nē crēde colōrī (Ecl. ii. 17), *trust not too much to complexion*.

equō nē crēdite (Æn. ii. 48), *trust not the horse*.

a. (RULE 71.) Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose : —

1. By *nē* with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive ; as, —
nē territū fueris (Tac. H. i. 16), *don't be alarmed*.

2. By *nōlī* with the infinitive : as, —

nōlī putāre (Fam. xiv. 2), *do not suppose* (be unwilling to suppose).

NOTE. — The poets frequently use instead of *nōlī* other words of similar meaning (cf. § 273. c) : as, —

parce piās scelerāre manūs (Æn. iii. 42), *forbear to defile your pious hands*.

3. By *cave* with or without *nē* (colloquially *fac nē*) with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive¹ (§ 266. b) : as, —

cave putēs (Att. vii. 20), *don't think*.

cave dixeris, *don't say so*.

fac nē quid aliud cūrēs (Fam. xvi. 11), *see that you attend to nothing else*.

NOTE. — Other negatives sometimes take the place of *nē* : as, —

nōn dubitāveris (Sen. Q. N. i. 3, 3), *you must not doubt*.

nihil ignōveris (Mur. 65), *grant no pardon* (pardon nothing).

b. General Prohibitions addressed to no definite person are regularly expressed by the Present Subjunctive with *nē* (cf. c, below) : as, —

dēnique istō bonō ūtāre dum adsit : cum absit nē requirās (C. M. 33),
in short, use this good while present ; when wanting, do not regret it.

NOTE. — The poets and early writers sometimes use the Present Subjunctive with *nē* in prohibitions not general : as, —

molestus nē sis (Plaut. Most. 771), *don't be troublesome*.

nē sis patruus mihi (Hor. Sat. ii. 3. 88), *don't be a [harsh] uncle to me*.

c. The *third person* of the Imperative is antiquated or poetic : —

iūsta imperia suntō, eisque civēs modestē pārentō (Leg. iii. 6), *let there be lawful authorities, and let the citizens strictly obey them*.

¹ In prohibitions the Subjunctive with *nē* is hortatory ; that with *cave* is an object clause (originally hortatory, cf. § 331. f. Rem.).

NOTE. — In prose the Hortatory Subjunctive is commonly used instead (§ 266) : as, —

haec igitur lēx in amicitia **sanciātur** (Lael. 40), *let this law be laid down in case of friendship.*

d. The Future Imperative is used in commands, etc., where there is a distinct reference to future time : viz., —

1. In connection with a condition precedent (as a *future*, a *future perfect*, or an *imperative*). Thus, —

Phyllida mitte mihi, meus est natalis, Iollā ; cum faciam vitulā prō frugibus ipse **venitō** (Ecl. iii. 76), *send Phyllis to me, it is my birthday, Iollas ; when I sacrifice a heifer for the harvest, come yourself.*
dic quibus in terris, etc., et Phyllida sōlus habētō (id. iii. 107), *tell in what lands, etc., and have Phyllis for yourself.*

2. With adverbs or other expressions of Time : as, —

crās **petitō**, dabitur (Pl. Merc. 770), *ask to-morrow [and] it shall be given.*

3. In *general directions*, as Precepts, Statutes, and Wills : as, —
cum valētūdini cōsulueris, tum **cōsulitō** nāvigātiōnī (Fam xvi. 4), *when you have attended to your health, then look to your sailing.*

Boreā flante, nē arātō, sēmen nē iacitō (Plin. H. N. xviii. 77), *when the north wind blows, plough not, nor sow your seed.*

e. The verbs **sciō**, **meminī**, and **habeō** (in the sense of *consider*), regularly use the Future Imperative instead of the Present : as, —

filiolō mē auctum **scitō** (Att. i. 2), *learn that I am blessed with a little boy.*
sic habētō, mi Tirō (Fam. xvi. 4), *so understand it, my good Tiro.*
dē pallā **memētō**, amābō (Pl. Asin. 939), *remember, dear, about the gown.*

f. The Future Indicative is sometimes used for the Imperative ; and **quīn** (*why not?*) with the Present Indicative may have the force of a command : as, —

sī quid acciderit novī, faciēs ut sciam (Fam. xiv. 8), *you will let me know if anything new happens.*

quīn accipis (Ter. Heaut. 832) ? *here, take it (why not take it?).*

g. Instead of the simple Imperative, **cūrā**, **fac**, or **velim**, followed by the Subjunctive with or without **ut** is often used, especially in colloquial language : as, —

cūrā ut Rōmae sis (Att. i. 2), *take care to be at Rome.*

fac ut valētūdinem cūrēs (Fam. xiv. 17), *see that you take care of your health.* [Cf. rūs eō. **fac**, amābō (Ter. Eun. 533), *I'm going into the country. Do, please.*]

domī adsītis **facite** (id. 506), *be at home, do.*

IV. THE INFINITIVE.

1. Infinitive as Subject, etc.

270. (RULE 58.) The Infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be used with est and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative. Thus, —

1. Subject : as, —

dolēre malum est (Fin. v. 84), *to suffer pain is an evil.*

pulchrum est benefacere rei pūblīcae (Sall. Cat. 3), *it is a noble thing to benefit the state.*

mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs (Æn. i. 135), *it is better to calm the troubled waves.*

2. In Apposition with the Subject : as, —

* *proinde quasi iniūriam facere id dēmum esset imperiō ūtī* (Sall. Cat. 12), *just as if this, — to commit injustice, — were to use power.* [Here *facere* is in apposition with *id*.]

3. Predicate Nominative : as, —

id est convenienter nātūrae vivere (Fin. iv. 41), *that is to live in conformity with nature.* [Cf. *ūtī* in the last example.]

NOTE 1. — An infinitive may also be used as Direct Object in connection with a Predicate Accusative, or as Appositive with such Direct Object : as, —

istūc ipsum nōn esse cum fueris miserrimum putō (Tusc. i. 12), *for I think this very thing most wretched, not to be when one has been.*

NOTE 2. — An Appositive or Predicate noun used with an infinitive in any of these constructions is put in the Accusative, whether the infinitive has a subject expressed or not. Thus, —

nōn esse cupidum pecūnia (Parad. 51), *to be free from desires (not to be desirous) is money in hand.*

a. The infinitive as subject is not common except with *est* and similar verbs, but is occasionally used with verbs apparently more active in meaning : as, —

quōs omnis eadem cupere, eadem ōdisse, eadem metuere in ūnum cōēgit (Jug. 31, 10), *all of whom the fact of desiring, hating, and fearing the same things has united into one.*

ingenuās didicisse fidēliter artēs ēmollit mōrēs (Ov. ex P. ii. 9. 48), *faithfully to have learned liberal arts softens the manners.*

posse loquī ēripitur (Ov. M. ii. 483), *the power of speech is taken away.*

b. The infinitive is used with many impersonal verbs and expressions, partly as subject and partly as complementary infinitive (§ 271).

Such are *libet*, *licet*, *oportet*, *decet*, *placet*, *visum est*, *pudet*, *piget*, *necesse est*, *opus est*, etc.

id primum in poetis cerni licet (De Or. iii. 27), *this may be seen first in poets.*

reperiēbat quid dici opus esset (Brut. 215), *he found what needed to be said.*

neque me vixisse paenitet (C. M. 84), *I do not feel sorry to have lived.*

NOTE 1. — These are generally not real cases of the infinitive used as subject, but they approach that construction.

c. Rarely the infinitive is used exactly like the accusative of a noun : as, —

beatē vivere alii in aliō, vōs in voluptāte pōnitis (Fin. ii. 86), *a happy life different [philosophers] base on different things, you on pleasure.*

2. Complementary Infinitive.

271. (RULE 59.) Verbs which imply *another action of the same subject* to complete their meaning take the infinitive without a subject-accusative : as, —

hōc quēō dicere (Cat. Maj. 32), *this I can say.*

mītto quaerere (Rosc. Am. 53), *I omit to ask.*

vereor laudāre praesentem (N. D. i. 58), *I fear to praise a man to his face (one who is present).*

Such are verbs denoting *to be able*, *dare*, *undertake*, *remember*, *forget*, *be accustomed*, *begin*, *continue*, *cease*, *hesitate*, *learn*, *know how*, *fear*, and the like.

NOTE. — The mark of this construction is that no Subject of these infinitives is in general admissible or conceivable.

a. Many verbs take either a subjunctive clause or a complementary infinitive, without difference of meaning. Such are verbs signifying *willingness*, *necessity*, *propriety*, *resolve*, *command*, *prohibition*, *effort*, and the like (cf. § 331) : as, —

student excellere (Off. i. 116), *they aim to excel.*

cum statuissem scribere ad tē aliquid (Off. i. 4), *when I had resolved to address something to you.*

istum exheredare in animō habēbat (Rosc. Am. 52), *he had it in mind to deprive him of the inheritance.*

NOTE 1. — With some of these verbs an infinitive with subject-accusative may be used as *object*, taking the place of a *complementary* infinitive. In this use the subject of the infinitive and that of the main verb are of course the same. Thus, —

cupiō mē esse clēmētem (Cat. i. 4) = cupiō esse clēmēns, *I desire to be merciful* (cf. § 331. b. note).

NOTE 2. — Some verbs of these classes never take the subjunctive, but are identical in meaning with others which do : as, —

quōs tuērī dēbent dēserunt (Off. i. 28), *they forsake those whom they should protect.*

nōn lubet fugere aveō pūgnāre (Att. ii. 18, 3), *I have no desire to run away, I'm anxious to fight.*

b. Some verbs of these classes — iubeō and vetō regularly — may take (as object) the infinitive with a subject different from that of the main verb (see § 331. a) : as, —

signa inferri iubet (Liv. xlii. 59), *he orders the standards to be advanced.*

Pompēius . . . rem ad arma dēdūcī studēbat (B. C. i. 4), *Pompey was anxious to have matters come to open war.*

c. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after a complementary infinitive takes the case of the subject of the main verb : as, —

fieri que studēbam eius prūdentiā doctior (Lael. 1), *I was eager to become more wise through his wisdom.*

sciō quam soleās esse occupātus (Fam. xvi. 21, 7), *I know how busy you usually are (are wont to be).*

NOTE. — If the construction of the main verb is impersonal, a predicate noun or adjective is in the accusative (but for licet, etc., see § 272. a. 2). Thus, —

peregrinī officium est minimē in aliēnā esse rē publicā cūriōsum (Off. i. 125), *it is a stranger's duty to be by no means curious in a foreign state.*

3. Infinitive with Subject-Accusative.

272. (RULE 60.) The Infinitive, with Subject-Accusative, is used with verbs and other expressions of *knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse*, § 336) : as, —

dicīt montem ab hostibus tenēri (B. G. i. 22), *he says that the hill is held by the enemy.* [Direct: mōns ab hostibus tenētur.]

REMARK. — The Infinitive Clause may be — 1. the Direct Object of the verb: as, *Caesarem adesse nūtiāvit*, *he reported that Cæsar was present*; 2. the Subject of the same verb in the passive: as, *Caesarem adesse nūtiātum est*, *it was reported that Cæsar was present*; 3. the Predicate Nominative after some such phrase as *rumor est*: as, *rumor erat Caesarem adesse*, *there was a report that Cæsar was present*.

a. 1. With certain impersonal verbs and expressions that take the infinitive as an apparent subject (§ 270. *b*), the personal subject of the action may be expressed —

(1) By a dative, depending on the verb or verbal phrase: or

(2) By an accusative expressed as the subject of the infinitive.

Thus, —

rogant ut id sibi facere liceat (B. G. i. 7), *they ask that it be allowed them to do this*.

extinguī hominī suō tempore optābile est (Cat. Maj. 85), *it is desirable for a man to die at the appointed time*.

2. With *licet* regularly, and other verbs occasionally, a predicate noun or adjective following the infinitive may be in the dative: as, —

licuit esse ōtiōsō Themistoclī (Tusc. i. 33), *Themistocles might have been inactive* (it was allowed to T. to be inactive).

cūr hīs esse liberōs nōn licet (Flacc. 71), *why is it not allowed these men to be free?*

nōn est stantibus omnibus necesse dicere (Marc. 33), *it is not necessary for all to speak standing*.

NOTE. — When the subject is not expressed, as being indefinite (*one, anybody*), a predicate noun or adjective must be in the accusative (cf. § 271. *c. note*): as, —

vel pāce vel bellō clārum fierī licet (Sall. Cat. 3), *one can become illustrious either in peace or in war*.

b. In poetry, by a Greek idiom, a Predicate Noun or Adjective in the indirect discourse sometimes agrees with the subject of the main verb: as, —

sēnsit mediōs dēlāpsus in hostēs (Æn. ii. 377), *he found himself fallen among the foe*. [In prose: *sē esse dēlāpsum*.]

4. Infinitive of Purpose.

273. In a few cases the Infinitive retains its original meaning of Purpose.

a. The infinitive is used after *habēō*, *dō*, *ministrō*, in isolated passages instead of a subjunctive clause: as, —

tantum habeo polliceri (Fam. i. 5), *so much I have to promise*. [Here the more formal construction would be *quod pollicear*.]

meridiē bibere datō (Cato R. R. 89), *give (to) drink at noonday*.

7 *b. Parātus, suētus* and their compounds (used as adjectives) take the infinitive, like the verbs from which they come : as, —

currū succedere suētī (Æn. iii. 541), *accustomed to being harnessed to the chariot*.

adsuēfactī superārī (B. G. vi. 24), *used to being conquered*.

NOTE. — These words more commonly in prose take the gerund or gerundive construction (§§ 296 ff.) either in the Dative, the Genitive, or the Accusative with *ad*. Thus, —

7 *alendis liberis suētī* (Tac. Ann. xiv. 27), *accustomed to supporting children*.

insuētus nāvigandī (B. G. v. 6), *unused to making voyages*.

corpora insuēta ad onera portanda (B. C. i. 78), *bodies unaccustomed to carry burdens*.

c. In poetry and later writers almost any verb may have the infinitive, after the analogy of verbs of more literal meaning that take it in prose : as, —

parce scelerare (Æn. iii. 42), *forbear to pollute*.

d. Many adjectives take the infinitive in poetry following a Greek idiom : as, —

cantārī dignus (Ecl. v. 54), *worthy to be sung*. [In prose : *quī cantētur*.]

7 *cantāre perītī* (Ecl. x. 32), *skilled in song*.

nescia vinci pectora (Æn. xii. 527), *hearts not knowing how to yield*.

e. The poets and early writers often use the infinitive to express purpose when there is no analogy with any prose construction : as, —

lōricam dōnat habere virō (Æn. v. 262), *he gives the hero a breastplate to wear*. [In prose : *habendam*.]

nōn ferrō Libycōs populāre Penātēs vēnimus (Æn. i. 527), *we have not come to lay waste with the sword the Libyan homes*.

NOTE. — So rarely in prose writers of the classic period.

f. For the infinitive used instead of a substantive clause of purpose, see § 331. *a-g*.

7 NOTE. — For *tempus est abire*, see § 298. note.

g. Rarely in poetry the infinitive is used to express *result* : as, — *
tingit eum tenerā docilem cervicē magister ire viam, etc. (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 64), *makes the horse gentle so as to go*, etc.

hīc levāre . . . pauperem labōribus vocātus audit (Hor. Od. ii. 18. 38), *he when called, hears, so as to relieve*, etc.

5. Exclamatory Infinitive.

274. The Infinitive, with subject-accusative, may be used in Exclamations (cf. § 240. *d*) : as, —

tē in tantās aerumnās propter mē incidisse (Fam. xiv. 1), *alas! that you should have fallen into such grief for me.*

7 mēne inceptō dēsistere victam (Æn. i. 37), *what! I beaten desist from my purpose?*

NOTE. — The Present and the Perfect Infinitive are used in this construction with their ordinary distinction of time.

6. Historical Infinitive.

275. (RULE 61.) The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the nominative : as, —

tum Catilīna pollicērī novās tabulās (Sall. Cat. 21), *then Catiline promised abolition of debts* (clean ledgers).

ego instāre ut mihi respondēret (Verr. ii. 188), *I kept urging him to answer me.*

pars cedere, aliī insequī; neque signa neque ordinēs servāre; ubi quemque periculum cēperat, ibi resistere ac prōpulsāre, arma, tēla, equī, virī, hostēs atque cīvēs permixtī, nihil cōnsiliō neque imperiō agī; fors omnia regere (Jug. 51), *a part give way, others press on; they hold neither to standards nor ranks; where danger overtook, there each would stand and fight; arms, weapons, horses, men, foe and friend, mingled in confusion; nothing went by counsel or command; chance ruled all.*

NOTE. — This construction is not strictly *historical*, but rather *descriptive*, and is never used to state a mere historical fact.

TENSES.

I. TENSES OF INCOMPLETE ACTION.

1. Present (General Use).

276. The Present Tense denotes an action or state (1) as *now taking place* or *existing*; and so (2) as *incomplete* in present time, or (3) as *indefinite*, referring to no particular time, but denoting a *general truth*. Thus, —

senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt, hīc tamen vivit (Cat. i. 2), *the Senate knows this, the consul sees it, yet this man lives.*

tibi concēdō meās sēdēs (Div. i. 104), *I give you my seat* (an offer which may or may not be accepted).

obsequium amīcōs, vērītās odium parit (Ter. And. 68), *flattery gains friends, truth hatred.* [General truth.]

a. The Present, with expressions of *duration of time*, especially **iam diū**, **iam dūdum**, denotes an action continuing in the present, but begun in the past (cf. § 277. b) : as, —

tē iam dūdum hortor (Cat. i. 12), *I have long urged you.*

patimur iam multōs annōs (Verr. v. 126), *we suffer now these many years.*

[The perfect would imply, *we no longer suffer.*]

NOTE 1. — In this use the present is commonly to be rendered by the perfect in English.

NOTE 2. — Similarly the Present Imperative with **iam dūdum** indicates that the action commanded *ought to have been done* or *was wished for* long ago (cf. the Perfect Imperative in Greek) : as, —

iam dūdum sūmite poenās (Æn. ii. 103), *exact the penalty long delayed.*

b. The Present sometimes denotes an action *attempted* or *begun* in present time, but never completed (*Conative Present*, cf. § 277. c) : as, —

iam iamque manū tenet (Æn. ii. 530), *and now, even now, he attempts to grasp him.*

dēnsōs fertur in hostis (id. 511), *he starts to rush into the thickest of the foe.*

dēcernō quīnquāgintā diērum supplicatiōnēs (Phil. xiv. 29), *I move for fifty days' thanksgiving.* [Cf. *senātus dēcrēvit*, *the senate ordained.*]

c. The Present, especially in colloquial language and poetry, is often used for the Future : as, —

īmusne sēssum (De Or. iii. 17), *shall we take a seat* (are we going to sit) ?
haud mūtō factum (Ter. And. 40), *I do not wish to change it* (I am not trying to change).

hodiē uxōrem dūcis (id. 321), *are you to be married to-day ?*

sī pereō hominum manibus periisse iuvābit (Æn. iii. 606), *if I perish, it will be pleasant to perish at the hands of men* (cf. § 307. a. note).

2. Historical Present.

d. The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect (*Historical Present*) : as, —

affertur nūntius Syracūsās ; **curritur** ad praetōrium ; Cleomenēs, quamquam nox erat, tamen in pūblicō esse nōn **audet** ; **inclūdit** sē domī (Verr. v. 92), *the news is brought to Syracuse ; they run to headquarters ; Cleomenes, though it was night, does not venture to be abroad ; he shuts himself up at home.*

NOTE. — This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (*repraesentātiō*).

3. Present with *dum*.

e. Dum, *while*, regularly takes the Present Indicative in reference to past events.

In translating, the English Imperfect must generally be used. Thus, —

hōc dum nārrat, forte audīvī (Ter. Heaut. 272), *I happened to hear this while she was telling it.*

NOTE. — A past tense with *dum* (usually *so long as*) makes the time emphatic by contrast. But a few irregular cases of *dum* with a past tense occur where no contrast is intended. Thus, —

nec enim dum eram vōbiscum animum meum vidēbātis (Cat. Maj. 79), *while I was with you, you could n't see my soul.* [Here the time when he was alive is contrasted with that after his death.]

coorta est pūgna, pār dum cōnstābant ordinēs (Liv. xxii. 47), *a conflict began, well matched as long as the ranks stood firm.*

But — **dum ūnum** adscendere gradum **cōnātus est**, **vēnit** in periculum (Mur. 55), *while he attempted to climb one step [in rank] he fell into danger.*

f. The present is regularly used in quoting writers whose works are extant : as, —

Epicūrus vērō ea dīcit (Tusc. ii. 17), *but Epicurus says such things.*

4. Imperfect.

277. The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as *continued* or *repeated* in past time : as, —

Sōcratēs ita cēnsēbat itaque disseruit (Tusc. i. 72), *Socrates thought so (habitually), and so he spoke (then).*

iamque rubescēbat Aurōra (Æn. iii. 521), *and now the dawn was blushing.*

NOTE. — The Imperfect is a *descriptive* tense and denotes an action conceived as *in progress* or a state of things as *actually observed*. Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus **rēx erat**

and *rēx fuit* may often be used indifferently; but the former *describes* the condition while the latter only *states* it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English Preterite. Thus, —

Aedui graviter ferēbant, neque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant (B. G. v. 6), *the Aedui were displeased and did not dare*, etc. [Here the Imperfects describe the state of things.] But —
id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus (id. v. 4), *Indutiomarus was displeased*, etc. [Here the Perfect merely states the fact.]
aedificia vicōsque habēbant (id. iv. 4), *they had buildings and villages*.

REMARK. — The Imperfect represents a present tense transferred to past time. Hence all the meanings which the present has derived from the continuance of the action belong also to the imperfect in reference to past time (see details below).

a. The Imperfect is used in *descriptions*: as, —

erant omnīnō itinera duo . . . mōns altissimus impendēbat (B. G. i. 6),
there were in all two ways . . . a very high mountain overhung.

b. With *iam diū*, *iam dūdum*, and other expressions of duration of time, the Imperfect denotes an action continuing in the past but begun at some previous time (cf. § 115. a. 2): as, —

iam dūdum flēbam (Ov. M. iii. 656), *I had been weeping for a long time*.
cōpiās quās diū comparābant (Fam. xi. 13. 5), *the forces which they had long been getting ready*.

NOTE. — In this construction the Imperfect is rendered by the English Pluperfect. Compare the Present in similar phrases (§ 276. a).

c. The Imperfect sometimes denotes an action as begun (*Inceptive Imperfect*), or as attempted or only intended (*Conative Imperfect*) (cf. § 276. b): as, —

in exilium ēiciēbam quem iam ingressum esse in bellum vidēbam (Cat. ii. 14), *was I sending (i.e. trying to send) into exile one who I saw had already gone into war?*

hunc igitur diem sibi prōpōnēns Milō, cruentis manibus ad illa augusta centuriarum auspicia *veniēbat* (Mil. 43), *was Milo coming (i.e. was it likely that he would come)*, etc.?

iamque arva tenēbant ūltima (Æn. vi. 477), *and now they were just getting to the farthest fields*.

d. The Imperfect is sometimes used to express a surprise at the *present* discovery of a fact already existing: as, —

Ō tū quoque aderās (Ter. Ph. 858), *oh! you are here too*.

è. The Imperfect is often used in dialogue where we should expect the Perfect : as, —

ad amicum Calliclem quoi rem aibat mandasse hīc suam (Plaut. Trin. 956), *to his friend Callicles, to whom, he said, he had intrusted his property.*

NOTE. — So also, in conversation, the imperfect of verbs of saying (cf. *as I was a-saying*): as, —

at medicī quoque, ita enim dicēbās, saepe falluntur (N. D. iii. 15), *for that was what you were saying just now.*

f. For the Imperfect in apodosis *contrary to fact*, see § 308. *b.*

g. The Imperfect with negative words often has the force of the English auxiliary *could* or *would*: as, —

itaque (Dāmoclēs) nec pulchrōs illōs ministrātōrēs adspiciēbat (Tusc. v. 62), *therefore he could not look upon those beautiful slaves.* [In this case *did not* would not express the idea of *continued prevention* of enjoyment by the overhanging sword.]

nec enim dum eram vōbiscum animum meum vidēbātis (Cat. Maj. 79) *for, you know, while I was with you, you could not see my soul.* [Here the Perfect would refer only to *one moment*.]

5. Future.

278. The Future denotes an action or state that will occur hereafter.

a. The Future sometimes has the force of an Imperative (see § 269. *f*).

b. The Future is often required in a subordinate clause in Latin where in English futurity is sufficiently shown by the main clause : as, —

cum aderit vidēbit, *when he is there he will see* (cf. § 325. *c*).

sānābimur sī volēmus (Tusc. iii. 13), *we shall be healed if we wish.*

II. THE TENSES OF COMPLETED ACTION.

1. Perfect.

279. The Perfect denotes an action either as *now completed* (*Perfect Definite*), or as *having taken place* at some undefined point of past time (*Historical* or *Aoristic Perfect*). Thus, —

- (1) ut ego fēcī, quī Graecās litterās senex didicī (Cat. Maj. 26), *as I have done, who have learned Greek in my old age.*
- (2) tantum bellum extrēmā hieme apparāvit, ineunte vĕre suscēpit, mediā aestāte cōnfēcit (Man. 35), *so great a war he made ready for at the end of winter, undertook in early spring, and finished by midsummer.*

NOTE. — The distinction between these two uses of the perfect, though almost if not wholly lost to the minds of the Romans, must be noticed, on account of the marked distinction in English (see also § 115. c).

a. The perfect is sometimes used emphatically to denote that a thing or condition of things that once existed no longer exists: as, —

fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs (Cat. i. 3), *there was once such virtue in this commonwealth.*

habuit, nōn habet (Tusc. i. 87), *he had, he has no longer.*

fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium (Æn. ii. 325), *we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is no more.*

b. The Indefinite Present, denoting a customary action or a general truth (§ 276), often has the Perfect in a subordinate clause referring to time antecedent to that of the main clause: as, —

quī in compedibus corporis semper fuērunt, etiam cum solūtī sunt tardius ingrediuntur (Tusc. i. 75), *they who have always been in the fetters of the body, even when released move more slowly.*

c. The perfect is sometimes used of a general truth, especially with negatives (*Gnomic Perfect*): as, —

nōn aeris acervus et aurī dēdūxit corpore febrēs (Hor. Ep. i. 2. 47), *the pile of brass and gold removes not fever from the frame.*

NOTE. — The gnomic perfect strictly refers to past time; but its use implies that something which never *did* happen in any known case, never *does* happen, and never will (cf. the English "*Faint heart never won fair lady*"); or without a negative that what *has once* happened will *always* happen under similar circumstances.

d. The Perfect is often used in expressions containing or implying a negation, where in affirmation the Imperfect would be preferred: as, —

dicēbat melius quam scrīpsit Hortēnsius (Or. 132), *Hortensius spoke better than he wrote.* [Here the negative is implied in the comparison.]

e. The completed tenses of some verbs are equivalent to the incomplete tenses of verbs of kindred meaning.

Such are the preteritive verbs **ōdī**, *I hate*; **meminī**, *I remember*; **nōvī** *I know*; **cōnsuēvī**, *I am accustomed*,¹ with others sometimes used preteritively, as **vēnerat** (= **aderat**, *he was at hand*, etc.) (see § 143. note). Thus, —

quī diēs aestūs māximōs efficere **cōnsuēvit** (B. G. iv. 29), *which day generally makes the highest tides* (is accustomed to make).

cūius splendor **obsolevit** (Quinc. 68), *whose splendor is now all faded* (has become old).

REMARK. — Many other verbs are occasionally so used: as, —

dum oculōs certāmen **āverterat** (Liv. xxxii. 24), *while the contest had turned their eyes* (kept them turned). [Here **āverterat** = **tenēbat**.]

2. Pluperfect.

280. The Pluperfect is used (1) to denote an action or state *completed* in past time; or (2) sometimes to denote an action in indefinite time, but prior to some past time referred to: as, —

(1) locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs **dēlēgerant** (B. G. ii. 18), *this was the nature of the ground our men had chosen for a camp.*

Viridovix summam imperī **tenēbat** eārum omnium cīvītātum quae **dēfēcera**nt (id. iii. 17), *Viridovix held the chief command of all those tribes which had revolted.*

(2) neque vērō cum aliquid **mandāverat** cōfectum putābat (Cat. iii. 16), *but when he had given a thing in charge he did not look on it as done.*

quae sī quandō adepta est id quod eī **fuerat concupītum**, tum fert alacritātem (Tusc. iv. 35), *if it (desire) ever has gained what it had [previously] desired, then it produces joy.*

3. Future Perfect.

281. The Future Perfect denotes an action as completed in the future: as, —

ut sēmentem **fēceris**, ita metēs (De Or. ii. 261), *as you sow (shall have sown), so shall you reap.*

carmina tum melius cum **vēnerit** ipse canēmus (Ecl. ix. 67), *then shall we sing our songs better, when he himself has come.*

ego certē meum officium **praestiterō** (B. G. iv. 25), *I at least shall have done my duty (i.e. when the time comes to reckon up the matter, I shall be found to have done it, whatever the event).*

¹ Cf. **dētestor**, **reminiscor**, **sciō**, **soleō**.

REMARK. — The Future Perfect is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, and may even be used instead of the Future, from the fondness of the Latins for representing an action as completed : as, —

quid inventum sit paulō post viderō (Acad. ii. 76), *what has been found out I will see presently.*

III. EPISTOLARY TENSES.

282. In Letters, the Perfect Historical or the Imperfect may be used for the present, and the Pluperfect for any past tense, as if the letter were *dated* at the time it is supposed to be *received*: as, —

neque tamen, cum haec scribēbam, eram nescius quantis oneribus premerēre (Fam. v. 12, 2), *nor while I write this am I ignorant under what burdens you are weighed down.*

IV. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

283. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Independent Clauses denote time in relation to the time of the speaker. The Present always refers to *future* (or *indefinite*) *time*, the Imperfect to either *past* or *present*, the Perfect to either *future* or *past*, the Pluperfect always to *past*.

284. In Dependent Clauses the tenses of the Subjunctive were habitually used in certain fixed connections determined by the time of the main verb and the time of the dependent verb together.

Sequence of Tenses.

285. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent clauses follow special rules for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

With reference to these rules all tenses when used in *Independent* clauses are divided into two classes, — *primary* and *secondary*.

1. PRIMARY. The *primary tenses* include all forms that express *present* or *future* time. These are the Present, Future, and Future Perfect Indicative, the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Present and Future Imperative.

NOTE. — The Perfect Definite is sometimes treated as primary, but see § 287. *a*.

2. SECONDARY. The *secondary tenses* include all forms that refer to *past* time. These are the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Historical Infinitive.

NOTE. — To these may be added certain forms less commonly used in Independent Clauses. Such are (1) Primary: Present Infinitive in Exclamations; (2) Secondary: Perfect Infinitive in Exclamations (see § 287. *a*. note).

286. (RULE 62.) In complex sentences a Primary tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect in the dependent clause, and a Secondary tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect: as, —

scribit ut nōs moneat, *he writes to warn us.*

scribet ut nōs moneat, *he will write to warn us.*

scribe (scribitō) ut nōs moneās, *write that you may warn us.*

scripsit ut nōs moneret, *he wrote to warn us.*

scribit quasi oblītus sit, *he writes as if he had forgotten.*

scripsit quasi oblītus esset, *he wrote as if he had forgotten.*

rogō quid factūrus sīs *I ask what you are going to do.*

NOTE. — This rule affects only the tenses of the Subjunctive in dependent clauses. The tenses of the other moods and those of the Subjunctive in independent constructions (as in apodosis contrary to fact, § 308) are not affected by the sequence of tenses. (But cf. §§ 338. note 2, 339. note 2.)

REMARK. — In applying the rule for the sequence of tenses, observe (1) whether the main verb is (*a*) primary or (*b*) secondary, (2) whether the dependent verb is to denote completed action (*i.e.* past with reference to the main verb), or incomplete (*i.e.* present or future with reference to the main verb). Then —

(*a*) If the leading verb is *primary*, the dependent verb must be in the *Present* if it denotes *incomplete action*, in the *Perfect* if it denotes *completed action*.

(b) If the leading verb is *secondary*, the dependent verb must be in the *Imperfect* if it denotes *incomplete action*, in the *Pluperfect* if it denotes *completed action*. Thus, —

he writes (primary) *to warn* (incomplete) *us*, scribit ut nōs moneat.

I ask (primary) *what you were doing* (now past), rogō quid fēceris.

Notice that the *Future Perfect* denotes action completed (at the time referred to), and hence is represented in the Subjunctive by the Perfect or Pluperfect. Thus, —

I ask what you will have accomplished, rogō quid perfēceris.

he asked what he would have accomplished, rogāvit quid perfēcisset.

287. In the Sequence of Tenses some special points are to be noted : —

a. The Perfect Indicative is ordinarily a secondary tense, but allows the primary sequence when the present time is clearly in the writer's mind. Thus, —

ut satis esset praesidī prōvisum est (Cat. ii. 26), *provision has been made that there should be ample guard*. [Secondary sequence.]

addūxī hominem in quō satisfacere exteris nātiōnibus possētis (Verr. i. 2), *I have brought a man in whose person you can make satisfaction to foreign nations*. [Secondary sequence.]

ea adhibita doctrina est quae vel vitiōsissimam nātūrā excolere possit (Q. Fr. i. 1, 7), *such instruction has been given as can train even the faultiest nature*. [Primary sequence.]

NOTE. — The Perfect Infinitive in Exclamations follows the same rule : as, —

adeōn rem redisse patrem ut extimēscam (Ter. Ph. 153), *to think that things have come to such a pass that I should dread my father*.

b. After a primary tense the Perfect Subjunctive is regularly used to denote *any past action*, and may represent —

1. A Perfect Definite : as, —

nōn dubitō quān omnēs tuī scripserint (Fam. v. 8), *I do not doubt that all your friends have written*. [Direct statement : scripsērunt.]

quārē nōn ignōrō quid accidat in ūltimis terris, cum audierim in Italiā querēlās cīvium (Q. Fr. i. 1, 33), *therefore I know well what happens at the ends of the earth, when I have heard in Italy the complaints of citizens*. [In a direct statement, audīvī.]

2. A Perfect Historical : as, —

mē autem hīc laudat quod retulerim, nōn quod patefēcim (Att. xii. 21), *me he praises because I brought the matter [before the senate], not because I brought it to light*. [Direct statement : retulit.]

3. An Imperfect : as, —

sī forte ceciderint tum intellegitur quam fuerint inopēs amicōrum (Lael. 53), *if by chance they fall (have fallen), then one can see how poor they were in friends.* [Direct question : *quam inopēs erant?*]

quī status rērum fuerit cum hās litterās dedī scīre poteris ex C. Tidiō Strabōne (Fam. xii. 6), *what the state of affairs was when I wrote this letter, you can learn from Strabo.* [Direct question : *quī erat?*]

NOTE. — Thus the Perfect Subjunctive may represent, not only a Perfect Definite or a Perfect Historical of a direct statement or question, but an Imperfect as well. This comes from the want of any special tense of the subjunctive to express continued action after a primary tense. Thus, *mīror quid fēcerit* may mean (1) *I wonder what he has done*, (2) *I wonder what he did* (hist. perf.), or (3) *I wonder what he was doing*.

c. In clauses of Result, the Perfect Subjunctive is very often (the Present rarely) used after secondary tenses : as, —

Hortēnsius ardēbat dicendī cupiditāte sic ut nullō unquam flagrantius studium viderim (Brut. 302), *Hortensius was so hot with desire of speaking that I have never seen a more burning ardor in any man.*

Siciliam Verrēs per triennium ita vēxāvit ac perdidit, ut ea restitui in anticum statum nullō modō possit (Verr. i. 12), *for three years Verres so racked and ruined Sicily, that she can in no way be restored to her former state.* [Here the Present describes a state of things actually existing.]

REMARK. — This construction emphasizes the result; the regular construction subordinates it.

NOTE. — There is a special fondness for the Perfect Subjunctive to represent a Perfect Indicative. Thus, —

Thorius erat ita nōn superstitiōsus ut illa plūrima in suā patriā et sacrificia et fāna contemneret; ita nōn timidus ad mortem ut in aciē sit ob rem pūblicam interfectus (Fin. ii. 63), *Thorius was so little superstitious that he despised [contemnēbat] the many sacrifices and shrines in his country; so little timorous about death that he was killed [interfectus est] in battle, in defence of the State.*

Zēnō nullō modō is erat quī nervōs virtūtis incideret (cf. § 279. d); sed contrā quī omnia in ūnā virtūte pōneret (Acad. i. 35), *Zeno was by no means one to cut the sinews of virtue; but one, on the contrary, who made everything depend on virtue alone.* [incidit . . . pōnēbat.]

d. A general truth after a past tense follows the sequence of tenses : as, —

ex his quae tribuisset sibi quam mutabilis esset reputabat (Q. C. iii. 8, 20), *from what she (Fortune) had bestowed on him, he reflected how inconstant she is.* [Direct : mutabilis est.]

ibi quantam vim ad stimulandos animos ira haberet apparuit (Liv. xxxiii. 37), *here it appeared what power anger has to goad the mind.* [Direct : habet.]

NOTE. — In English the original tense is more commonly kept.

e. The Historical Present (§ 276. d) is sometimes felt as a *primary*, sometimes as a *secondary* tense. Accordingly it is followed by either the primary or the secondary sequence, more commonly by the secondary. Thus, —

rogat ut curet quod dixisset (Quinct. 18), *he asks him to attend to the thing he had spoken of.*

castella communit quo facilius prohibere posset (B. G. i. 8), *he strengthens the forts that he might more easily keep them off.*

NOTE. — After the historical present, *cum* temporal with the subjunctive must follow the secondary sequence.

f. The Imperfect and Pluperfect in conditions contrary to fact (§ 308) are not affected by the sequence of tenses : as, —

quia tale sit, ut vel si ignorarent homines, etc. (Fin. ii. 49), *because it is such that even if men WERE ignorant, etc.*

g. The Imperfect Subjunctive in present conditions contrary to fact (§ 308) is regularly followed by the secondary sequence : as, —

si alii consules essent, ad te potissimum, Paulle, mitterem, ut eos mihi quam amicissimos redderes (Fam. xv. 13), *if there were other consuls, I should send to you, Paulus, in preference to all, that you might make them as friendly to me as possible.*

si eos dicerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem exciperēs (Tusc. i. 9), *if you called those wretched who must die, you would except no one.*

h. The Present is sometimes followed by a secondary sequence, seemingly because the writer is thinking of past time (*Synesis*) : as, —

sed tamen ut scires haec tibi scribo (Fam. xiii. 47), *but yet that you may know, I write thus.* [As if he had used the common epistolary imperfect scriberem (§ 282).]

cuius praecepti tanta vis est ut ea non homini cuiquam sed Delphico deo tribueretur (Leg. i. 58), *such is the force of this precept, that it was ascribed not to any man, but to the Delphic god.* [The precept was an old one.]

NOTE. — The rules for the sequence of tenses must not be regarded as inflexible. They were often disregarded by the Romans themselves, either from carelessness or purposely for one reason or another.

i. When a clause depends upon one already dependent, the sequence becomes secondary as soon as the time is thrown back into the past by any form that represents past time: as, —

*tantum prōfēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecīs nē verbōrum quidem cōpiā vince-
rēmur* (N. D. i. 8), *we seem to have advanced so far that even in
fulness of words we ARE not surpassed by the Greeks.*

But — *beātē vīxisse videor quia cum Scīpiōne vīxerim* (Lael. 15), *I
seem to have lived happily in that I have lived with Scipio* (who had
just died).

NOTE. — For the application of this rule to Indirect Discourse, see § 336. B. note.

V. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

288. (RULE 63.) The Tenses of the Infinitive denote *present, past, or future* time, relatively to the time of the verb on which they depend: as, —

nostrōs nōn esse infēriōrēs intellēxit (B. G. ii. 8), *he ascertained that our
men were not inferior.* [Direct: *sunt.*]

quam Iūnō fertur terrīs magis omnibus coluisse (Æn. i. 15), *which Juno
is said to have cherished above all lands.* [Direct: *colēbat.*]

spērant sē māximum frūctum esse captūrōs (Lael. 79), *they hope they shall
receive the greatest advantage.* [Direct: *capiēmus.*]

a. With past tenses of verbs of *necessity, propriety, and possibility* (as *potui, dēbui, and oportuit*) the Present infinitive must be rendered by the Perfect infinitive in English: as, —

scīre potuit (Milo, 46), *he might have known.*

quī vidēbātur omnīnō morī nōn dēbuisse (Arch. 17), *who seemed* [one
that] *ought not to have died at all.*

b. For the tenses of the infinitive in Indirect Discourse, see § 336. A.

c. Except in indirect discourse, the Present is the only tense of the infinitive in common use. It has no distinct reference to time. Thus, —

est adulescentis māiōrēs nātū verērī (Off. i. 122), *it is* [the duty] *of a
youth to reverence his elders.*

d. With verbs of *wishing*, *necessity*, and the like,¹ the Perfect Passive infinitive is often used instead of the Present : as, —

quod iam pridem factum esse oportuit (Cat. i. 5), *which ought to have been done long ago* (cf. *a.*, above).

REMARK. — In early and late Latin, and in poetry, rarely in good prose, the Perfect Active infinitive is also used instead of the Present, and even with other verbs than those of *wishing* and the like : as, —

commisisse cavet (Hor. A. P. 168), *he is cautious of doing*.

e. With verbs of *feeling* the Perfect infinitive is used, especially by the poets, to denote a completed action.

So also with **satis est**, **satis habeo**, **melius est**, **contentus sum**, and in a few other cases where the distinction of time is important. Thus, —

puget me non praestitisse (Fam. xiv. 3), *I am ashamed not to have shown*.

sunt quos curculō pulverem Olympicum collēgisse iuvat (Hor. Od. i.

i. 3), *there are those who delight*, etc.

quiesse erit melius (Liv. iii. 48), *it will be better to have kept quiet*.

f. The Future infinitive is often expressed by **fore** (or **futūrum esse**) **ut** with the subjunctive ; so necessarily in verbs which have no supine stem (cf. §§ 302. Rem., 332. *e*). Thus, —

spērō fore ut contingat id nobis (Tusc. i. 82), *I hope that will be our happy lot*.

II. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

The several Noun and Adjective forms associated with the verb are employed as follows : —

1. PARTICIPLES :	a. Present and Perfect :	1. Attributive (§ 291 and <i>a</i>).
		2. Simple Predicate (§ 291. <i>b</i>).
		3. Periphrastic Perfect (pass.) (§ 291. R).
		4. Predicate of Circumstance (§ 292).
		5. Descriptive (Ind. Discourse) (§ 292. <i>e</i>).
	b. Future :	1. Periphrastic with esse (§ 293. <i>a</i>).
		2. Periphrastic with fui (= Pluperfect Subjunctive) (§ 293. <i>c</i>).
	c. Gerundive :	1. As Descriptive Adjective (§ 294. <i>a</i>).
		2. Periphrastic with esse (§ 294. <i>b</i>).
		3. Of Purpose with verbs (§ 294. <i>d</i>).

¹ Chiefly **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**, **oportet**, **decet**.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| 2. GERUND OR
GERUNDIVE : | { | 1. Genitive as Objective Genitive (§ 298).
2. Dative, with Adjectives, Nouns, Verbs (§ 299).
3. Accusative, with certain Prepositions (§ 300).
4. Ablative, of Means, Comparison, or with Prepositions (§ 301.) |
| 3. SUPINE : | { | 1. Former Supine (in -um), with Verbs of Motion (§ 302).
2. Latter Supine (in -ū), chiefly with Adjectives (§ 303). |

PARTICIPLES.

289. The Participle expresses the action of the verb in the form of an Adjective ; but has a partial distinction of tense, and may govern a case.

NOTE. — Thus the participle combines all the functions of an adjective with some of the functions of a verb. As an adjective, it limits substantives, and agrees with them in gender, number, and case (§ 186). As a verb, it has distinctions of time (§ 290), and often takes an object.

1. Distinctions of Tense.

290. (RULE 64.) Participles denote time as *present*, *past*, or *future* with respect to the time of the verb in their clause.

Thus the Present Participle represents the action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb, the Perfect as *completed*, and the Future as *still to take place*.

a. The Present Participle has several of the special uses of the Present Indicative. Thus it may denote —

1. An action continued in the present but begun in the past (§ 276. a) : as, —

quaerentī mihi iamdiū certa rēs nulla veniēbat in mentem (Fam. iv. 13).
though I had long sought, no certain thing came to my mind.

2. Attempted action (§ 276. b) : as, —

Flāminiō restitit agrum Picentem dīvidentī (Cat. Maj. 11), *he resisted Flaminius when attempting to divide the Picene territory.*

3. Futurity (§ 276. c) : as, —

iēns in Pompēianum bene māne haec scrīpsī (Att. iv. 9), *I write this when about going very early to my place at Pompeii.*

b. The Perfect Participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a Present.

So, regularly, **ratus**, **solitus**, **veritus**; commonly, **fius**, **ausus**, **secutus**, and occasionally others, especially in later writers. Thus, —
cohortatus milites docuit (B. C. iii. 80), *encouraging the men, he showed*.
iratus dixisti (Mur. 62), *you spoke in a passion*.
oblitus auspiciorum (Phil. i. 31), *forgetting the auspices*.
insidiās veritus (B. G. ii. 11), *fearing ambuscade*.

c. The Latin has no Present Participle in the passive. The place of such a form is supplied usually by a clause with **dum** or **cum**, rarely by the participle in **-dus**: as, —

nūllis ēvidentibus causis obiēre **dum** calceantur matutino duo Caesarēs (Plin. N. H. vii. 181), *from no obvious cause two Cæsars died while having their shoes put on in the morning*.

mēque ista dēlectant **cum** Latinē dicuntur (Acad. i. 13), *those things please me when they are spoken in Latin*.

crucibus adfixi aut **flammandi** (Tac. Ann. xv. 44), *crucified or set on fire* (in flames).

NOTE. — The constructions with **dum** and **cum** are often used when a participle might be employed: as, —

dīc, hospes, Spartae, nōs tē hīc vīdisse iacentēs, **dum** sanctis patriae lēgibus obsequimur, *tell it, stranger, at Sparta, that you saw us lying here obedient to our country's sacred laws*. [Here **dum** obsequimur is a translation of the Greek present participle περιθβουοι.]

d. The Latin has no Perfect Participle in the active voice. The deficiency is supplied —

1. In deponents by the perfect passive form with its regular active meaning: as, —

nam singulās [nāvēs] nostrī cōnsectāti expūgnāvērunt (B. G. iii. 15), *for our men having overtaken them one by one, captured them by boarding*.

2. In other verbs, by the ablative absolute with a change of voice (§ 255. *d.* note) or by a clause (especially with **cum** or **dum**): as, —

itaque convocātis centuriōnibus milites certiōrēs facit (B. G. iii. 5), *and so, having called the centurions together, he informs the soldiers* (the centurions having been called together).

cum vēnisset animadvertit collem (id. vii. 44), *having come* (when he had come), *he noticed a hill*.

NOTE. — The perfect participle of several deponent verbs may be either active or passive in meaning (§ 135. *b.*).

2. Adjective Use.

291. The Present and Perfect participles are used sometimes as attributive, nearly like adjectives : as, —

cum antiquissimam sententiam tum comprobātam (Div. i. 11), *a view at once most ancient and well approved.*

signa nunquam ferē ēmentientia (id. 15), *signs hardly ever deceitful.*

auspiciis utuntur coāctīs (id. 27), *they use forced auspices.*

a. Participles often become complete adjectives, and may be compared or used as nouns. Thus, —

quō mulierī esset rēs cautior (Cæcin. 11), *that the matter might be more secure for the woman.*

in illis artibus praestantissimus (De Or. i. 217), *preëminent in those arts.*

sibi indulgentēs et corpori dēservientēs (Leg. i. 39), *the self-indulgent, and slaves to the body* (indulging themselves and serving the body).

male parta male dilābuntur (Phil. ii. 65), *ill-got, ill-spent* (things ill-acquired, etc.).

cōsuetūdō valentis (De Or. ii. 186), *the habit of a man in health.*

b. Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by **esse** or a copulative verb (see §§ 186. b; 176. a) : as, —

Gallia est divīsa (B. G. i. 1), *Gaul is divided.*

locus quī nunc saeptus est (Liv. i. 8), *the place which is now enclosed.*

REMARK. — From this predicate use arise the compound tenses of the passive, — the participle of *completed action* with the incomplete tenses of **esse** developing the idea of past time: as **interfectus est**, *he was* (or has been) *killed*, lit. *he is having-been-killed* (i.e. already slain).

In the best writers (as Cicero), the perfect participle, when used with **fuī**, etc., retains its proper force; but in later writers the two sets of tenses (as **amātus sum** or **fuī**), are often used indiscriminately to form the tenses of the perfect system in the passive: as, —

arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, humī inventa sunt (Div. i. 74), *the arms which had been fastened on the walls were found upon the ground.* [Cf. **occupāti sunt et fuērunt** (Off. i. 57), *are and have been engaged.* The difference between this and *arma quae*, etc., is, that **occupātus** in this sense is used only as an adjective.]

3. Predicate Use.

292. The Present and Perfect participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or clause would be usual.

In this use the participles express *time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic (or description), manner, means, attendant circumstances*. Thus, —

volventēs hostilia cadāvera amicum reperiēbant (Sall. Cat. 61), *while rolling over the corpses of the enemy they found a friend.* [Time.]

paululum commorātus, signa canere iubet (Sall. Cat. 59, 1), *after delaying a little while, he orders to give the signal.* [Time.]

longius prōsequi veritus, ad Cicerōnem pervēnit (B. G. v. 52), *because he feared to follow further, he came to Cicero.* [Cause.]

quī scīret laxās dare iūssus habēnās (Æn. i. 63), *who might know how to give them loose rein when bidden.* [Occasion.]

damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat (B. G. i. 4), *if condemned, punishment must overtake him.* [Condition.]

salūtem inspērantibus reddidisti (Marc. 21), *you have restored a safety which we did not hope.* [Concession.]

Dardanius caput ecce puer dētēctus (Æn. x. 133), *the Trojan boy with his head uncovered.* [Description.]

nec trepidēs in ūsum poscentis aevi pauca (Hor. Od. ii. 11. 5), *be not anxious for the needs of age that demands little.* [Characteristic.]

incitāti fugā montēs altissimōs petēbant (B. C. iii. 93), *in headlong flight they made for the highest mountains.* [Manner.]

mīlitēs sublevāti aliū ab aliis māgnam partem itineris cōficerent (B. C. i. 68), *the soldiers helped up by each other, etc.* [Means.]

hōc laudāns, Pompēius idem iūrāvit (B. C. iii. 87), *approving this, Pompey took the same oath.* [Attendant circumstance.]

aut sedēns aut ambulāns disputābam (Tusc. i. 7), *I conducted the discussion either sitting or walking.* [Circumstance.]

REMARK. — These uses are especially frequent in the ablative absolute (§ 255. d). A co-ordinate clause is sometimes compressed into a perfect participle : as, —

instrūctōs ordinēs in locum aecum dēdūcit (Sall. Cat. 59), *he draws up the lines, and leads them to level ground.*

ut hōs trānsdūctōs necāret (B. G. v. 6), *that he might carry them over and put them to death.*

NOTE. 1. — A participle with a negative often expresses the same idea which in English is given by *without* and a verbal noun : as, —

miserum est nihil prōficiētem angī (N. D. iii. 14), *it is wretched to vex oneself without effecting anything.*

NOTE 2. — *Acceptum* and *expēnsū* as predicates with *ferre* and *referre* are book-keeping terms : as, —

quās pecūniās ferēbat eis expēnsās (Verr. ii. 170), *what sums he charged to them.*

a. A noun and a passive participle are often so united that the participle and not the noun contains the main idea : ¹ as, —

ante conditam condendamve urbem (Liv. Pref.), *before the city was built or building.*

illī libertātem cīvium Rōmānōrum imminūtā nōn tulērunt ; vōs vītā mēreptā neglegētis (Manil. 11), *they did not endure the infringement of the citizens' liberty ; will you disregard the destruction of their life ?*

post hominēs nātōs (Brut. 224), *since the creation of man.*

iam ā conditā urbe (Phil. iii. 9), *even from the founding of the city.*

b. The perfect participle with a noun in agreement, or in the neuter as an abstract noun, is used in the ablative with *opus*, *need* (cf. § 243. e) : as, —

opus factō est viāticō (Pl. Trin. 887), *there is need of laying in provision.*

mātūrātō opus est (Liv. viii. 13), *there is need of haste.*

c. The perfect participle with *habeō* (rarely with other verbs) has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the *continued effect* of the action of the verb : ² as, —

fīdem quam habent spectātā iam et diū cōgnitā (Div. C. 11), *my fidelity, which they have proved and long known.*

cohortēs in aciē lxxx. cōstitutās habēbat (B. C. iii. 89), *he had eighty cohorts stationed in line of battle.*

nefāriōs ducēs captōs iam et comprehēnsōs tenētis (Cat. iii. 16), *you have captured and hold in custody the infamous leaders, etc.*

d. A verb of *effecting* or the like may be used in combination with the perfect participle of a transitive verb to express the action of that verb more forcibly : as, —

¹ Compare the participle in indirect discourse in Greek (Goodwin's Greek Grammar, § 1588) ; and the English, " 'T was at the Royal feast for Persia won " (Dryden), *i.e.* *for the conquest of Persia.*

² The perfect with *have*, in modern languages of Latin stock, has grown out of this use of *habeō*.

praefectōs suōs multī missōs fēcērunt (Verr. iii. 134), *many discharged their officers (made dismissed).*

hīc trānsāctum reddet omne (Plaut. Capt. 345), *he will get it all done (restore it finished).*

NOTE. — Similarly volō (with its compounds) and cupiō, with a perfect participle without esse (cf. § 288. d. note): as, —

mē excūsātum volō (Verr. II. i. 103), *I wish to be excused (I want myself excused, cf. I pray thee have me excused).*

e. With verbs denoting an *action of the senses* the present participle in agreement with the object is nearly equivalent to the infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 336), but expresses the action more vividly: as, —

ut eum nēmō unquam in equō sedentem viderit (Verr. v. 27), *so that no one ever saw him sitting on a horse.*

4. Future Participle.

293. The Future Participle (except futūrus and ventūrus) is rarely used in simple agreement with a noun, except by later writers.

a. The future participle is chiefly used with the verb **esse** (which is often omitted) in the active periphrastic conjugation (§ 129): as, —

morere, Diagorā, nōn enim in caelum adscēnsūrus es (Tusc. i. 111), *die, for you are not likely to rise to heaven.*

spērat adolēscēns diū sē victūrum (Cat. Maj. 68), *the young man hopes to live long (that he shall live long).*

b. By later writers and the poets the future participle is also used in simple agreement with a substantive to express: —

1. Likelihood or certainty: as, —

ausus est rem plūs fāmae habitūram (Liv. ii. 10), *he dared a thing which would have more repute.*

2. Purpose, intention, or readiness: as, —

cum leō rēgem invāsūrus incurreret (Q. C. viii. 1, 14), *when a lion rushed on to attack the king.*

sī peritūrus abis (Æn. ii. 675), *if you are going away to perish.*

3. Apodosis: as, —

dedit mihi quantum māximum potuit, datūrus amplius sī potuisset (Plin. Ep. iii. 21), *he gave me as much as he could, ready to give me more if he had been able.*

c. With past tenses of **esse**, the future participle is often equivalent to the pluperfect subjunctive (see § 308. d).

5. Gerundive (Future Passive Participle).

NOTE.— The participle in **-dus**, commonly called the Gerundive, has two distinct uses : —

(1) Its predicate and attribute use as participle or adjective (§ 294).

(2) Its use with the meaning of the gerund (§ 296). This may be called its gerundive use.

294. The Gerundive when used as a Participle or an Adjective is always passive, denoting necessity or propriety.

In this use the following points are to be observed (a–d).

a. The gerundive is sometimes used, like the present and perfect participles, in simple agreement with a noun : as, —

fortem et cōservandum virum (Mil. 104), *a brave man, and worthy to be preserved*.

b. The most frequent use of this form is with **esse** in the second (passive) periphrastic conjugation (see § 129) : as, —

nōn agitanda rēs erit (Verr. v. 179), *will not the thing have to be agitated?*

c. The neuter of the gerundive is occasionally used impersonally with an object. The object is in the case regularly governed by the verb. Thus, —

via quam nobīs ingrediendum sit (Cat. Maj. 6), *the way we have to enter*.

NOTE.— This use is regular with verbs which take their object in the dative or ablative : as, —

lēgibus pārendum est, *the laws must be obeyed*.

d. With verbs signifying *to give, deliver, agree for, have, receive, undertake, demand*, a gerundive in agreement with the object is used to express purpose : as, —

redemptor quī columnam illam condūxerat faciendam (Div. ii. 47), *the contractor who had undertaken to make that column*. [The regular construction with this class of verbs.]

aedem Castoris habuit tuendam (Verr. II. i, 132), *he had the temple of Castor to take care of*.

nāvēs atque onera diligenter adservanda cūrābat (id. v. 146), *he took care that the ships and cargoes should be kept*.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

295. The Gerund expresses an action of the verb in the form of a verbal noun. As a *noun* the gerund is itself governed by other words ; as a *verb* it may take an object in the proper case. Thus, —

ars bene **disserendī** et vĕra āc falsa **dīiūdicandī** (De Or. ii. 157), *the art of discoursing well, and distinguishing the true and false.*

REMARK. — A nominative of the gerund is supplied by the infinitive. Thus in the example above, the verbal nouns *discoursing* and *distinguishing* if used in the nominative, would be expressed by the infinitives **disserere** and **dīiūdicāre**.

296. When the Gerund would have an object in the accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, and takes the case which the gerund would have had : as, —

parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula **subeunda** (B. G. i. 5), *readier to undergo all dangers.* [Here **subeunda** agrees with **perīcula**, which is itself governed by **ad**. The construction with the gerund would be, **ad subeundum perīcula** ; **ad** governing the gerund, and the gerund governing the accusative **perīcula**.]

exercendae memoriae grātiā (Cat. Maj. 38), *for the sake of training the memory.* [Here the gerund construction would be **memoriam exercendī grātiā**.]

plērisque in rēbus gerendis tarditās odiōsa est (Phil. vi. 7), *in the conducting of most business, sloth is odious.*

The following examples illustrate the parallel constructions of gerund and gerundive : —

GEN. cōnsilium { urbem capiendī
urbis capiendae } *a design of taking the city.*

DAT. dat operam { agrōs colendō
agrīs colendis } *he attends to tilling the fields.*

ACC. veniunt ad { mihi pārendum
pācem petendam } *they come { to obey me.
to seek peace.*

ABL. terit tempus { scribendō epistulās
scribendis epistulis } *he spends time in writing letters.*

REMARK. — In the gerundive construction the verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., are treated like transitive verbs governing the accusative, as they do in early Latin : as, —

expetuntur divitiae ad perfruendās voluptātēs (Off. i. 25), *riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures* (for enjoying pleasures).

297. (RULE 65.) The Gerund and the Gerundive are used, in the oblique cases, in many of the constructions of nouns.

1. Genitive.

298. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used with nouns or adjectives either as subjective or objective genitive : as, —

neque cōsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō (B. G. iv. 14), *time being given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms.* [Objective.]

nē cōservandae quidem patriae causā (Off. i. 159), *not even for the sake of saving the country.* [Originally subjective genitive.]

vivendī finis est optimus (Cat. Maj. 72), *it is the best end of living.* [Subjective.]

NOTE. — In a few phrases the Infinitive is used with nouns which ordinarily have the genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive. Thus *tempus est abire*, *it is time to depart.*

REMARK. — The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used (especially in early and late Latin) as a predicate genitive. When so used it often expresses purpose : as, —

quae rēs ēvertendae reipublicae solent esse (Verr. iii. 132), *things which generally tend to the overthrow of the commonwealth.*

sī arborum truncī dēciendī operis essent missae (B. G. iv. 17), *in case trunks of trees should be sent down [with the object] of overthrowing the work.* [Pred. gen. like *quās suī commodī fēcerat* (v. 8).]

a. The genitive of the Gerund is occasionally limited by a noun or pronoun (especially *suī*) in the objective genitive instead of taking a direct object : as, —

ēius videndī cupidus (Ter. Hec. 372), *eager to see her* (for a seeing of her). *reīciendī trium iūdicum potestās* (Verr. ii. 77), *the power of challenging three jurors* (of the rejecting of three jurors).

suī colligendī facultās (B. G. iii. 6), *the opportunity to recover themselves.*

b. In genitive constructions the Gerund and Gerundive are about equally common.

c. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with *causā* or *grātiā* to denote purpose (see § 318).

NOTE. — This is merely a special use under the main head of § 298.

2. Dative.

299. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after adjectives¹ which take the dative and rarely after nouns (§ 234. a): as, —

genus armōrum aptum tegendis corporibus (Liv. xxxii. 10), *a sort of armor suited to the defence of the body.*

tē sociam studeō scribendis versibus esse (Lucr. i. 25), *I desire that thou be my partner in writing verses.*

a. The dative is used in a few expressions after verbs:² as, —

diem praestitit operi faciendō (Verr. II. i. 148), *he set a day for doing the work.*

praeesse agrō colendō (Ros. Am. 50), *to take charge of cultivating the land.*

esse solvendō, *to be able to pay (to be for paying).*

NOTE. — This construction is a remnant of a more general use of the dative of the gerund and gerundive.

b. The dative is also used in certain legal phrases after nouns meaning *officers, offices, elections*, etc., to indicate the function or scope of the office, etc.: as, —

comitia cōsulibus rogandis (Div. i. 33), *elections for nominating consuls.*

triumvir colōniis dēdūcundis (Jug. 42), *a triumvir for planting colonies.*

triumvirī reipublicae cōstituendae (title of the Triumvirate), *triumvirs (a commission of three) for settling the government.*

3. Accusative.

300. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the prepositions *ad, inter, circā, ob* (and rarely in and *ante*); most frequently after *ad*, denoting Purpose (cf. § 318. b): as, —

¹ The dative of the gerund and gerundive occurs most commonly after the adjectives *accommodātus, aptus, ineptus, bonus, habilis, idōneus, pār, ūtilis, inūtilis*. But the accusative with *ad* is common with most of these (cf. § 234. b).

² Such are *praeesse, operam dare, diem dicere, locum capere*.

mē vocās ad scribendum (Or. 34), *you summon me to write.*

vīvis nōn ad dēpōnendam sed ad cōfirmandam audāciam (Cat. i. 4), *you live, not to put off, but to confirm your daring.*

nactus aditūs ad ea cōnanda (B. C. i. 31), *having found means to undertake these things.*

inter agendum (Ecl. ix. 24), *while driving.*

NOTE. — The Accusative of the gerund with a preposition rarely takes a direct object, the Ablative of the gerund very rarely. The Gerundive is used instead (§ 296).

4. Ablative.

301. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used (1) to express Manner, Means, Cause, etc.; (2) after Comparatives; (3) after the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ēx*, *in*, and (rarely) *prō* and *cum*: as, —

(1) multa pollicendō persuādet (Jug. 46), *he persuades by large promises.*
 Latīnē loquendō cuivis pār (Brut. 128), *equal to any man in speaking Latin.*
 nullīs virtūtis praeceptīs trādendīs (Off. i. 5), *without delivering any precepts of virtue* (by delivering no precepts).

hīs ipsīs legendīs (Cat. Maj. 21), *by reading these very things.*

obscuram atque humilem concierendō ad sē multitudinem (Liv. i. 8), *calling to them a mean and obscure multitude.*

(2) nullum officium referendā grātiā magis necessārium est (Off. i. 47), *no duty is more important than repaying favors.*

(3) in rē gerendā versārī (Cat. Maj. 17), *to be employed in conducting affairs.*

NOTE. — The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is also very rarely used depending on verbs and adjectives: as, —

Appius nōn abstinit continuandō magistrātum (Liv. ix. 34), *Appius did not desist from continuing his magistracy.*

REMARK. — The Gerund is often found co-ordinated with nominal constructions, and sometimes even in apposition with a noun: as, —

(1) in forō, in cūriā, in amīcōrum periculis pulsandīs (Phil. vii. 7), *in the forum, in the Senate-house, in defending my friends in jeopardy.*

(2) ad rēs diversissimās, pārendum atque imperandum (Liv. xxi. 3), *for the most widely different things, obeying and commanding.*

III. SUPINE.

NOTE. — The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§ 71. a), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses.

302. (RULE 66.) The Former Supine (in **-um**) is used after verbs of *motion* to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case. Thus, —

quid est, imusne sēssum? etsi **monitum** vēnimus tē, nōn **flāgitātum** (De Or. iii. 17), *how now, shall we be seated? though we have come to remind, not to entreat you.*

vēnērunt **questum** iniūriās (Liv. iii. 25), *they came to complain of wrongs.*

REMARK. — The supine in **-um** is especially common with **eō**; and with the passive infinitive **īri** forms the future infinitive passive. Thus, —

fuēre cīvēs quī rempūblicam **perditum** irent (Sall. Cat. 36), *there were citizens who went about to ruin the republic* (cf. § 258. b. Rem.).

nōn Grāis **servitum** mātribus ibō (Æn. ii. 786), *I shall not go to be a slave to the Grecian dames.*

sī scīssset sē **trucidātum** īri (Div. ii. 22), *if he (Pompey) had known that he was going to be murdered.* [cf. § 288. f.]

303. (RULE 67.) The Latter Supine (in **-ū**)¹ is used only with a few adjectives, with the nouns **fās**, **nefās**, and **opus**, and rarely with verbs, to denote an action in reference to which the quality is asserted: as, —

Ō rem nōn modo **vīsū** foedam, sed etiam **audītū** (Phil. ii. 63), *a thing not only shocking to see, but even to hear of.*

quaerunt quid optimum **factū** sit (Verr. II. i. 68), *they ask what is best to do.*

pudet **dictū** (Agric. 32), *it is shame to tell.*

NOTE. — The latter supine is thus in appearance an ablative of specification (§ 253), but see § 71. a.

REMARK. — The supine in **-ū** is found especially with such adjectives as indicate an effect on the senses or the feelings, and those which denote *ease*, *difficulty*, and the like. But with **facilis**, **difficilis**, **iūcundus**, **ad** with the gerund is more common. Thus, —

nec **vīsū** facilis nec **dictū** adfābilis ūllī (Æn. iii. 621), *he is not pleasant for any man to look at or address.*

difficilis **ad distinguendum** similitūdō (De Or. ii. 212), *a likeness difficult to distinguish.*

With all these adjectives the poets often use the Infinitive in the same sense: as, —

facilēs aurem praeberē (Prop.), *indulgent to lend an ear.*

¹ The only latter supines in common use are **audītū**, **dictū**, **factū**, **inventū**, **memorātū**, **nātū**, **vīsū**. In classic use this supine is found, in all, in twenty-four verbs. It is never followed by an object-case.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

NOTE. — The Conditional Sentence differs from other compound sentences in this, that the form of the main clause (APODOSIS) is determined in some degree by the nature of the subordinate clause (PROTASIS), upon the truth of which the whole statement depends.

Conditional Sentences may be classified as follows : —

1. SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS, nothing implied as to fulfilment (§ 306).

2. FUTURE CONDITIONS :

{ a. More vivid (§ 307). *Fut. Ind. in*
 { b. Less vivid (§ 307). *Pres. Subj. in*

3. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT :

{ a. Present (§ 308). *Pres. Imper. in*
 { b. Past (§ 308). *Pres. Imper. in*

4. GENERAL CONDITIONS :

{ a. Indefinite Subject (§ 309. a).
 { b. Repeated Action (§ 309. b, c).

5. IMPLIED CONDITIONS :

{ a. Protasis Disguised : { 1. in clause of Fact, Wish, Command (§ 310. b, c).
 { 2. in Participial Expression (§ 310. a).
 { b. Protasis Omitted : { 1. Potential Subjunctive (§ 311. a).
 { 2. Subjunctive of Modesty (§ 311. b).

1. Protasis and Apodosis.

304. A complete conditional sentence consists of two clauses, the Protasis and the Apodosis.

The clause containing the *condition* is called the PROTASIS ; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the APODOSIS : as, —

sī quī exīre volunt [PROTASIS], cōnīvēre possum [APODOSIS] (Cat. ii. 27),
if any wish to depart, I can keep my eyes shut.

sī est in exsiliō [PROTASIS], quid amplius postulātis [APODOSIS] (Lig. 13),
if he is in exile, what more do you ask?

NOTE. — It should be carefully noted that the Protasis is the *dependent clause*.

a. The Protasis is regularly introduced by the conditional particle sī (1F) or one of its compounds : sīn, nisi, etiāmsī, etsī, tametsī,

tamenetsi. Any relative or concessive word, may also serve to introduce a protasis.

b. The Apodosis is often introduced by some correlative word or phrase : as, **sic, ita, tum, eā condiōne**, etc. Thus, —

ita enim senectūs honesta est, sī sē ipsa dēfendit (Cat. Maj. 38), *on this condition is old age honorable, if it defends itself.*

sī quidem mē amāret tum istūc prōdesset (Ter. Eun. 446), *if he loved me, then this would be profitable.*

c. The Apodosis is the principal clause of the conditional sentence, but may at the same time be subordinate to some other clause, and so be in the form of a Participle, an Infinitive, or a Phrase : as, —

sepultūrā quoque prohibītūrī nī rēx humārī iūssisset (Q. C. viii. 2, 12), *intending also to deprive him of burial, unless the king had ordered him to be interred.*

quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum [esse] (B. G. i. 40), *but if no one else would follow, he would go with the tenth legion alone.*

sī quōs adversum proelium commovēret, hōs reperire posse (id.), *if the loss of a battle alarmed any, they might find, etc.*

NOTE. — When the Apodosis itself is in Indirect Discourse, or in any dependent construction, the verb of the Protasis is regularly in the Subjunctive (as in the first two of the above examples, see § 337).

d. Conditions are either (1) Particular or (2) General.

1. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time.

2. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

2. Classification.

305. The principal or typical Forms of conditional sentences may be exhibited as follows : —

a. SIMPLE CONDITIONS, with *nothing implied* as to fulfilment.

1. Present, *nothing implied.* Present Indicative in both clauses.
sī adest,¹ bene est, *if he is [now] here, it is well.*

¹ Cf. the Greek forms : *a.* 1. εἰ πρᾶσσει τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει.

2. εἰ ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς εἶχεν. εἰ ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔσχεν.

b. 1. εἰ ἂν πρᾶσση τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔξει. 2. εἰ πρᾶσσοι τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔχοι.

c. 1. εἰ ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν εἶχεν. 2. εἰ ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔσχεν.

d. 1. εἰ ἂν τις κλέπῃ, κολάζεται. 2. εἰ τις κλέπτει, ἐκολάζεται.

2. Past, nothing implied. Some past tense of the Indicative in both clauses.

sī aderat, bene erat, if he was [then] here, it was well.

sī adfuit, bene fuit, if he has been here, it has been well.

b. FUTURE CONDITIONS (necessarily as yet unfulfilled).

1. More vivid.

(a) Future Indicative in both clauses.

sī aderit, bene erit, if he is (shall be) here, it will be well.

(β) Future Perfect Indicative in protasis, Future Indicative in apodosis (condition thought of as completed before conclusion begins).

sī adfuerit, bene erit, if he is (shall have been) here, it will [then] be well.

2. Less vivid.

(a) Present Subjunctive in both clauses.

sī adsit, bene sit, if he should be here it would be well.

(β) Perfect Subjunctive in protasis, Present Subjunctive in apodosis (condition thought of as completed before conclusion begins).

sī adfuerit, bene sit, if he should be (should have been) here, it would [then] be well.

c. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.

1. Present contrary to fact. Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses.

sī adesset, bene esset, if he were [now] here, it would be well (but he is NOT here).

2. Past, contrary to fact. Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses.

sī adfuisset, bene fuisset, if he had [then] been here, it would have been well (but he was NOT here).

d. GENERAL CONDITIONS. Usually not differing in form from Particular Conditions (a, b, c); but sometimes distinguished in the cases following:—

1. Present General Condition (Indefinite Time).

(a) Present Subjunctive second person singular in protasis, Present Indicative in apodosis.

sī hōc dicās, crēditur, if any one [ever] says this, it is [always] believed.

(β) Perfect Indicative in protasis, Present in apodosis.

sī quid dixit, crēditur, if he [ever] says anything, it is [always] believed.

2. Past General Condition (Repeated Action in Past Time).

(a) Imperfect Subjunctive in protasis, Imperfect Indicative in apodosis.

sī quid diceret, crēdebātur, if he [ever] said anything it was [always] believed (= whatever he said was always believed).

(β) Pluperfect Indicative in protasis, Imperfect in apodosis.

sī quid dixerat, crēdebātur, if he [ever] said anything, it was believed.

REMARK. — The use of tenses in Protasis is very loose in English. Thus, *if he is alive now* is a PRESENT condition, to be expressed in Latin by the Present Indicative; *if he is alive next year* is a FUTURE condition, expressed in Latin by the Future Indicative. Again, *if he were here now* is a PRESENT condition contrary to fact, and would be expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive; *if he were to see me thus* is a FUTURE condition less vivid, to be expressed by the Present Subjunctive; and so, too, *if you advised him, he would attend* may be future less vivid.

3. Present and Past Conditions. — Nothing Implied.

306. (RULE 73.) In the statement of present and past conditions whose falsity is NOT implied, the present and past tenses of the Indicative are used in both Protasis and Apodosis. Thus, —

sī tū exercitusque valētis, bene est (Fam. v. 2), *if you and the army are well, it is well.* [Present Condition.]

sī quī magnīs ingeniīs in eō genere exstiterunt, nōn satis Graecōrum glōriæ responderunt (Tusc. i. 3), *if any men have appeared of great genius in that branch, they have failed to compete with the glory of the Greeks.* [Past Condition.]

accēpi Rōmā sine epistulā tuā fasciculum litterārum in quō sī modo valuisti et Rōmæ fuisti Philotimī dūcō esse culpam nōn tuam (Att. v. 17), *I have received from Rome a bundle of letters without any from you, which, if you have been well and at Rome, I take to be the fault of Philotimus, not yours.* [Mixed: Past condition and Present conclusion.]

quās litterās, sī Rōmæ es, vidēbis putēsne reddendās (Att. v. 18), *as to this letter, if you are at Rome, you will see whether in your opinion it ought to be delivered.* [Mixed: Present and Future.]

sī nēmō impetrāvit adroganter rogō (Ligar. 30), *if no one has succeeded in obtaining it, my request is presumptuous.* [Past and Present.]

a. In these conditions, the apodosis need not always be in the Indicative, but may assume any form, according to the sense. Thus, —

fuert hōc cēnsōris, sī iūdicābat (Div. i. 29), *suppose it was the censor's duty, if he judged it false.* [Hortatory Subjunctive.]

sī nōndum satis cernitis, recordāminī (Milo, 61), *if you do not yet see clearly, recollect.* [Imperative.]

sī quid habēs certius, velim scīre (Att. iv. 10), *if you have any trustworthy information, I should like to know it.* [Subj. of Modesty, § 311. b.]

NOTE. — Although the *form* of these conditions does not imply anything as to their truth, the sense or context may have some such implication : as, —
nōlīte, sī in nostrō omnium flētū nullam lacrimam aspexistis Milōnis, hōc minus eī parcere (Milo, 92), *do not, if amid the weeping of us all you have seen no tear [in the eyes] of Milo, spare him the less for that.*

In this passage a cause is put by the speaker in the form of a non-committal condition. His hearers are to draw the inference for themselves.

4. Future Conditions.

307. Future Conditions may be *more or less vivid*.

1. In a more vivid future condition the protasis makes a distinct supposition of a future case, the apodosis expressing what will be the result.

2. In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed.

a. In the *more vivid* future condition the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis : as, —

sānābimur sī volēmus (Tusc. iii. 13), *we shall be healed if we wish.*

NOTE. — In English the protasis is usually expressed by the Present Indicative, rarely by the future with SHALL. Sometimes in Latin a condition of this kind has the Present Indicative in the protasis: as, —

sī pereō hominum manibus periisse iuvābit (Æn. iii. 606), *if I perish, it will be pleasant to have perished at the hands of men.*

b. In the *less vivid* future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis : as, —

haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat (Cat. i. 19), *if your country should thus speak with thee, ought she not to prevail?*

REMARK. — The present subjunctive sometimes stands in protasis with the future in apodosis from a change in the point of view of the speaker.

c. If the conditional act is regarded as *completed* before that of the apodosis begins, the Future Perfect is substituted for the Future Indicative in protasis, and the Perfect Subjunctive for the Present Subjunctive : as, —

sī nōn fēceris, ignōscam (Fam. v. 19), *if you do not do it, I will excuse you.*

REMARK. — The Future Perfect is very often used in the apodosis of a future condition : as, —

vehementer mihi grātum fēceris, sī hunc adolēscētem hūmānitāte tuā comprehenderis (Fam. xiii. 15), *you will do (will have done) me a great favor, if you receive this young man with your usual courtesy.*

d. Any form implying future time may stand in the apodosis of a future condition. So the Imperative, the participles in -dus and -rus, and verbs of *necessity*, *possibility*, and the like : as, —

sī mē praecēperit fātum, vōs mandāsse mementō, *if fate cuts me off too soon, do you remember that I ordered this* (Q. C. ix. 6, 26).

nisi oculis videritis insidiās Milōnī ā Clōdiō factās, nec dēprecātūrī sumus nec postulātūrī (Milo, 6), *unless you see with your own eyes the plots laid against Milo by Clodius, I shall neither beg nor demand, etc.*
nōn possum istum accūsāre sī cupiam (Verr. iv. 87), *I cannot accuse him if I should desire to.*

e. Rarely the Perfect Indicative is used in apodosis with a Present or even a Future in protasis, to represent the conclusion rhetorically as *already accomplished* : as, —

sī hōc bene fixum in animō est, vīcistis (Liv. xxi. 44), *if this is well fixed in your minds, you have conquered.* [For you will have conquered.]
sī eundem [animum] habueritis, vīcimur (id. 43), *if you shall have kept the same spirit, we have conquered.*

f. A future condition is frequently thrown back into past time, without implying that it is contrary to fact (§ 308). In such cases the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used : as, —

nōn poterat nisi vellet (B. C. iii. 44), *was not able unless he wished.*
tumulus apparuit . . . sī lūce palam irētur hostis praeventūrus erat (Liv. xxii. 24), *a hill appeared . . . if they should go openly by light, the enemy would prevent.* [The first two appear like ind. disc., but are not. An observer describing the situations as present ones would say potest sī velit (etc., see d), and no ind. disc. would be thought of.]

5. Conditions Contrary to Fact.

308. (RULE 73.3.) In the statement of a supposition *known to be false*, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both Protasis and Apodosis. The imperfect refers to Present Time, the pluperfect to Past: as, —

quās sī exsequī nequīrem, tamen mē lectulus oblectāret meus (Cat. Maj. 38), *if I could not [now] follow this (an active life), yet my couch would afford me pleasure.* [Present.]

nisi tū amississēs, nunquam recēpissēm (id. 11), *unless you had lost it, I should not have recovered it.* [Past.]

(a. In conditions contrary to fact the Imperfect often refers to *past time*, both in protasis and apodosis, especially when a *repeated or continued action* is denoted, or when the condition *if true would still exist*: as, —

hīc sī mentis esset suae, ausus esset ēdūcere exercitum (Pis. 50), *if he were of sane mind, would he have dared to lead out the army?* [Here *esset* denotes a continued state, past as well as present.]

(b. In the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact the Past tenses of the Indicative may be used to express what was *intended*, or *likely*, or already begun: as, —

sī licitum esset matrēs veniēbant (Verr. v. 129), *the mothers were coming if it had been allowed* (see § 305. c. 2).

iam tūta tenēbam, nī gēns crūdēlis ferrō invāsisset (Æn. vi. 358), *I was just reaching a place of safety, had not the fierce people attacked me.*

REMARK. — In this use, the imperfect indicative corresponds in time to the imperfect subjunctive, and the perfect or pluperfect indicative to the pluperfect subjunctive.

(c. Verbs and expressions denoting *necessity, propriety, possibility, duty*, when used in the Apodosis of a condition contrary to fact are regularly put in the Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect Indicative instead of the Subjunctive: as, —

sī ita putāset certē optābilis Milōnī fuit (Mil. 31), *if he had thought so, surely it would have been preferable for Milo.*

sī Rōmāe privātus esset hōc tempore, tamen is erat dēligendus (Manil. 50), *if he (Pompey) were at this time a private citizen at Rome, yet he ought to be appointed.*

NOTE 1. — In this construction it is only the *thing necessary* (etc.) that is conditioned, and not the necessity itself. If the *necessity itself* is conditioned, the Subjunctive is used as with other verbs. The difference is often imperceptible, but may be seen in the following example : —

quid facere **potuissem** nisi tum cōsul fuisset? cōsul autem esse quī **potuī** nisi eum vitæ cursum tenuissem ā pueritiā (Rep. i. 10), *what could I have done if I had not then been consul; and how could I have been consul if I had not followed that course of life from boyhood?*

NOTE 2. — This construction is sometimes carried further in poetry: as, —
sī nōn alium iactāret odōrem, laurus erat (Georg. ii. 133), *it were a laurel, but for giving out a different odor.*

d. The participle in **-ūrus** with **eram** or **fuī** may take the place of an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis of a condition contrary to fact: as, —

quid enim **futūrum fuit** [= fuisset], sī . . . (Liv. ii. 1), *what would have happened if, etc.*

neque ambigitur quīn . . . id **factūrus fuerit**, sī . . . (id.), *nor is there any question he would have done it if, etc.* [Direct: **fēcisset.**]

NOTE. — This construction is regularly used when the apodosis is itself a dependent clause requiring the subjunctive, and also in Indirect Discourse. In Indirect Discourse **fuisse** replaces **eram** or **fuī** (see § 337).

e. The Present and Perfect subjunctive are sometimes used in poetry in the protasis and apodosis of conditions contrary to fact: as, —

nī comes **admoneat**, **inruat** (Æn. vi. 293), *had not his companion warned him, he would have rushed on.*

nī **faciat** maria āc terrās **ferant** (id. i. 58), *unless he did this, they would bear away sea and land.*

NOTE. — This is a remnant of an old construction. Its use puts the condition in a vivid form, — as if possible at any moment in the future though not *now* true.

6. General Conditions.

309. General Conditions (§ 304. d) have usually the same forms as Particular Conditions. But they are sometimes distinguished in the following three cases: —

a. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in the *second person singular*, to denote the act of an Indefinite Subject (*you = any one*). Here the Indicative of a *general truth* may stand in the apodosis: as, —

mēns prope uti ferrum est : sī **exerceās conteritur** ; nisi **exerceās**, rūbiginem **contrahit** (Cato de Mor.), *the mind is very like iron : if you use it, it wears away ; if you don't use it, it gathers rust.*

(*b.* In later writers (not in Cicero), the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in protasis, with the Imperfect Indicative in apodosis, to state a *repeated* or *customary* action in past time : as, —

accūsātōrēs, sī facultās **incideret**, poenīs **adficiēbantur** (Tac. A. vi. 30), *the accusers, whenever opportunity offered, were visited with punishment.*

(*c.* In a general condition in present time, the protasis often takes the Perfect, and the apodosis the Present Indicative. For past time, the Pluperfect is used in the protasis, and the Imperfect in the apodosis. Thus, —

sī quōs aliquā membrōrum parte inūtilēs **notāvērunt**, necārī **iubent** (Q. C. ix. 1, 25), *if they [ever] mark any infirm in any part of their limbs, they [always] order them to be put to death.* [Present.]

sī ā persequendō hostēs dēterrere **nequiverant** ab tergō **circumveniēbant** (Jug. 50), *if [ever] they were unable to prevent the enemy from pursuing, they [always] surrounded them in the rear.* [Past.]

d. In all other cases, general suppositions — including those introduced by Indefinite Relatives — are not distinguished in form from Particular Conditions.

7. Condition Disguised.

310. In many sentences properly conditional, the Protasis is not expressed by a conditional clause, but is stated in some other form of words or implied in the nature of the thought. Thus, —

(*a.* The condition may be implied in a Clause or in a Participle, Noun, Adverb, or some other word or phrase. Thus, —

facile mē paterer — illō **ipsō iūdice quaerente** — prō Sex. Rosciō **dicere** (Rosc. Am. 85), *I should readily allow myself to speak for Roscius if that very judge were conducting the trial.* [Present contrary to fact : **sī quaereret**, etc.]

nūlla alia gēns tantā mōle clādis nōn obruta esset (Liv. xxii. 54), *there is no other people that would not have been crushed by such a weight of disaster.* [Past contrary to fact : **sī alia fuisset**.]

nēmō unquam sine māgnā spē immortalitātis, sē prō patriā offerret ad mortem (Tusc. i. 32), *no one, without great hope of immortality, would ever expose himself to death for his country.* [Present contrary to fact : **nisi māgnam spem habēret**.]

(*b.* The condition may be contained in a Wish (*optative subjunctive*), or expressed as an Exhortation or Command (*hortatory subjunctive, or imperative*) : as, —

utinam quidem *fuissem* ! *molestus* nōbīs nōn *esset* (Fam. xii. 3), *I wish I had been* [chief] : *he would not now be troubling us* (i.e. if I had been). [Optative Subjunctive.]

NOTE. — The so-called *concessive subjunctive* with *ut* and *nē* often has the force of a protasis (§ 313. *a.*) : as, —

ut enim *rationem* *Platō* *nūllam* *afferret*, *ipsā* *auctoritātē* *mē* *frangeret* (Tusc. i. 49), *even if Plato gave no reason, [still] he would*, etc.

c. Rarely the condition is in an *independent clause*, as, —

ridēs : *māiōre* *cachinnō* *concutitur* (Juv. iii. 100), *you laugh ; he shakes with louder laughter* (= if you laugh, he shakes).

d. The condition is often contained in a Relative Clause (§ 316).

REMARK. — For the use of a participle as *APODOSIS*, see § 304. *c.*

8. Condition Omitted.

311. The Protasis is often wholly omitted, but may be inferred from the course of the argument. Thus, —

poterat *Sextilius* *impūne* *negāre* : *quis enim* *redargueret* (Fin. ii. 55), *Sextilius might have denied with impunity ; for who would prove him wrong* (if he had).

REMARK. — Under this head apparently belongs the *POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE*.

I. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

(*a.* (RULE 72.) The Potential Subjunctive is used to denote an action not as actually performed, but as possible.

In this use the Present and the Perfect refer without distinction to the immediate future ; the Imperfect to past time. The second person is common, indicating an Indefinite Subject (cf. § 309. *a.*). Thus, —

hīc quærat quispiam (N. D. ii. 133), *here some one may ask*.

ut aliquis fortasse dixerit (Off. iii. 97), *as one may perhaps say*.

tum in lectō quōque vidērēs susurrōs (Hor. Sat. ii. 8. 77), *then on each couch you might hear whisperings*.

NOTE 1. — The Present is sometimes used for the Imperfect : as, — *migrantis cernās* (Æn. iv. 401), *you might have seen them moving*.

NOTE 2.—The Pluperfect is rare. Its place is supplied by the Imperfect : as, —

putāssēs *ēius lūctūs aliquem finem esse dēbere* (Sen. Dial. 6, 13), *you would have thought there ought to be some end to his grief.*

NOTE 3.—The subjunctive with *forsitan* does not differ in meaning from the Potential Subjunctive, but is an Indirect Question (§ 334. g) : as, —
forsitan haec illi mīrentur (Verr. iv. 124), *they may perchance marvel at these things.*

REMARK.—The potential subjunctive is strictly an apodosis with omitted protasis, sometimes easily supplied, but often not present to the mind of the speaker. So also the Subjunctive of Modesty (*b*, below).

II. SUBJUNCTIVE OF MODESTY.

b. The Subjunctive is used in cautious, modest, or hypothetical statements (*coniūctivus modestiae*). This use is especially common in a polite wish, with *velim* or *vellem*. Thus, —

pāce tuā dixerim (Mil. 103), *I would say by your leave.*

tū velim sic exīstīmēs (Fam. xii. 6), *I should like you to think so.*

vix ausim credere (Ov. M. vi. 561), *I should hardly dare believe.*

vellem adesset M. Antōnius (Phil. i. 16), *I could wish Antony were here.*

[Here *vellem* implies an unfulfilled wish in present time ; *volō* or *nōlō* would express a peremptory wish.]

III. VERBS OF NECESSITY.

c. The Indicative of verbs signifying necessity, propriety, and the like, may be used in the apodosis of implied conditions, either future or contrary to fact : as, —

longum est ea dīcere, sed . . . (Sest. 12), *it would be tedious to tell*, etc.
[Future.]

illud erat aptius, aecum cuique concēdere (Fin. iv. 2), *it would be more fitting to yield each one his rights.*

quantō melius fuerat (Off. iii. 94), *how much better it would have been.*

REMARK.—Notice that, in this construction, the Imperfect indicative refers to *present time* ; the Pluperfect to simply *past time*, like the Perfect. Thus *oportēbat* means *it ought to be* [now], *but is not* ; *oportuerat* means *it ought to have been*, *but was not*.

NOTE.—In many cases it is impossible to say whether a protasis was present to the mind of the speaker or not.

9. Complex Conditions.

d. Either the protasis or the apodosis may be a complex idea in which the main statement is made with expressed or implied qualifications. In such cases the true logical relation of the parts is sometimes disguised : as, —

sī quis hōrum dīxisset . . . sī verbum dē rēpublicā fēcisset . . . multa plūra dīxisse quam dīxisset putārētur (Ros. Am. 2), *if any of these had spoken, in case he had said a word about politics, he would be thought to have said much more than he did say.* [Here the apodosis of dīxisset is the whole of the following statement (sī . . . putārētur), which is itself conditioned by a protasis of its own : sī verbum, etc.].
quod sī in hōc mundō fierī sine deō nōn potuit nē in sphaerā quidem eōsdem mōtūs sine dīvinō ingenīō potuisset imitārī (Tusc. i. 63) *now if that cannot be done in this universe without divine agency, no more could [Archimedes] in his orrery have imitated the same revolutions without divine genius.* [Here sī potuit (a protasis with nothing implied) has for its apodosis the whole clause which follows, but potuisset has a contrary-to-fact protasis of its own implied in sine . . . ingenīō.]

10. Particles of Comparison (Conclusion Omitted).

312. The particles of Comparison — tamquam, tamquam sī, quasi, ācsī, utsī, velutsī, velutī, and poetic ceu (all meaning *as if*), and quam sī (*than if*) — take the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, unless these are changed by the sequence of tenses. Thus, —

tamquam clausa sit Asia (Fam. xii. 9), *as if Asia were closed.*

ita hōs [honōrēs] petunt, quasi honestē vīxerint (Jug. 85), *they seek them (offices) just as if they had lived honorably.*

velut sī cōram adesset (B. G. i. 32), *as if he were present in person.*

ceu cētera nusquam bella forent (Æn. ii. 438), *as if there were no fighting elsewhere.*

magis quam sī domī essēs (Att. vii. 4), *more than if you were at home.*

REMARK. — The English idiom would lead us to expect the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive with these particles ; but the point of view is different in the two languages.

II. Concessive Clauses.

313. The particles of Concession (meaning *although, granting that*) are : quamquam, quamlibet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, nē, cum, licet, etsi, tametsi, etiamsi

a. Quamvis, quantumvis, quamlibet, ut, and nē take the Subjunctive (§ 266. c) : as, —

quamvis ipsi infantēs sint, tamen . . . (Or. 76), *however incapable of speaking they themselves may be, yet, etc.*

ut nēminem alium rogasset (Mil. 46), *even if he had asked no other.*

b. Licet (properly a verb) takes a Substantive clause in the Subjunctive (§ 331. c) : as, —

licet omnēs in mē terrōrēs periculaque impendeant (Rosc. Am. 31), *though all terrors and perils should menace me.*

NOTE. — The subjunctive with licet is by the sequence of tenses necessarily limited to the Present and Perfect tenses.

c. Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, *even if*, take the same constructions as si (§ 305) : as, —

etsi abest mātūrītās (Fam. vi. 184), *though ripeness of age is wanting.*

etsi nihil aliud abstulissētis (Sull. 90), *even if you had taken away nothing else.*

etiamsi quod scribās nōn habēbis, scribitō tamen (Fam. xvi. 26), *even if you [shall] have nothing to write, still write.*

d. Cum concessive takes the Subjunctive (see § 326) : as, —

cum mihi nōn omnīnō excidisset (Fam. v. 13, 2), *though it had not entirely vanished [from my mind].*

e. Quamquam introduces an admitted fact and takes the Indicative : as, —

omnibus — quamquam ruit ipse suis clādibus — pestem dēnūntiat (Phil. xiv. 8), *though he is breaking down under his disasters, still he threatens all with destruction.*

f. Quamquam more commonly means *and yet*, introducing a correction in the indicative : as, —

quamquam haec quidem tolerābilia vidēbantur, etsi, etc. (Mil. 76), *and yet these, in truth, seemed now bearable, though, etc.*

g. The poets and later writers frequently use **quamvis** and **quamquam** like **etsi**, connecting them with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to the nature of the condition. Thus, —

quamquam movērētur (Liv. xxxvi. 34), *although he was moved.*

Polliō amat nostram, quamvis est rŭstica, mŭsam (Ecl. iii. 84), *Pollio loves my muse, though she is rustic.*

NOTE. — Even Cicero occasionally uses **quamquam** with the Subjunctive : as, —

quamquam nē id quidem suspiciōnem coitiōnis habuerit (Planc. 53), *though not even that raised any suspicion of a coalition.*

h. The Relative pronoun **quī** is often used with the Subjunctive to express concession (see § 320. e).

i. Concession is often expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive without a particle (§ 266) : as, —

sit clārus Scīpiō, ōrnētur eximiā laude Āfricānus, habeātur vir ēgregius Paullus . . . erit profectō inter hōrum laudēs aliquid locī nostrae glōriæ (Cat. iv. 21), *let Scipio be renowned, let Africanus be honored with especial praise, let Paulus be regarded as a remarkable man, [still] there will surely be some room for my glory amid the praises of these men.*

12. Proviso.

314. (RULE 74.) **Dum, modo, dummodo, and tantum**, introducing a **PROVISO**, take the **Subjunctive** : as, —

ōderint dum metuunt (Off. i. 97), *let them hate, if only they fear.*

valētūdō modo bona sit (Brut. 64), *provided the health is good.*

dummodo inter mē atque tē mŭrus intersit (Cat. i. 10), *provided only the wall (of the city) is between us.*

a. In a *negative* proviso **nē** is used, with or without **modo**, etc. : as, —

modo nē sit ex pecudum genere (Off. i. 105), *provided [in pleasure] he be not of the herd of cattle.*

id faciat saepe, dum nē lassus fiat (Cato R. R. v. 4), *let him do this often, provided he does not get tired.*

dummodo ea (sevēritās) nē variētur (Q. Fr. i. 1, 20), *provided only it (strictness) be not allowed to swerve.*

tantum nē noceat (Ov. M. ix. 21), *only let it do no harm.*

b. The Hortatory Subjunctive without a particle sometimes expresses a proviso (see § 266. *d*) : as, —

sint Maecēnātēs, nōn deerunt, Flacce, Marōnēs (Mart. viii. 56, 5), *so there be Mæcenases, Virgils will not be lacking.*

13. Use of *Si* and its Compounds.

315. The uses of some of the more common Conditional Particles may be stated as follows :—

a. 1. **Sī** is used for *affirmative*, **nisi** (**nī**) and **sī nōn** for *negative conditions*. With **nisi** (generally *unless*) the apodosis is stated as *universally true except* in the single case supposed, in which case it is (impliedly) *not true*. Thus, —

nisi Conōn adest maereō, *unless Conon is here, I mourn* (i.e. I am always in a state of grief except in the single case of Conon's presence, in which case I am not).

With **sī nōn** (*if not*) the apodosis is only stated as true *in the* (negative) case *supposed*, but as to other cases no statement is made. Thus, —

sī Conōn nōn adest maereō, *if Conon is not here I mourn* (i.e. I mourn in the single case of Conon's absence, nothing being said as to other cases in which I may or may not mourn).

2. **Nī** is an old form surviving in a few conventional phrases, and reappearing in poets and later writers.

Sometimes **nisi sī**, *except if, unless*, occurs : as, —

nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longiōrēs epistulās scribere, *nisi sī* quis ad mē plūra scripsit (Fam. xiv. 2), *except in case one writes more to me.*

b. **Nisi vērō** and **nisi forte** regularly introduce an objection or exception *ironically*, and take the Indicative : as, —

nisi vērō L. Caesar crūdēlior visus est (Cat. iv. 13), *unless, indeed, L. Cæsar seemed too cruel.*

NOTE. — This is the regular way of introducing a *reductio ad absurdum* in Latin. **Nisi** alone is sometimes used in this sense : as, —

nisi ūnum hōc faciā ut in puteō cēnam coquant (Plaut. Aul. 365), *unless I do this one thing, [make them] cook dinner in the well.*

c. **Sive** (**seu**) . . . **sive** (**seu**), *whether . . . or*, introduce a condition in the form of an *alternative*. They may be used with any form of condition, or with different forms in the two members. Often also they are used without a verb. Thus, —

nam illō locō libentissimē soleō ūtī, sive quid mēcum ipse cōgitō, sive quid aut scribō aut legō (De Leg. ii. 1), *for I enjoy myself most in that place, whether I am thinking by myself or am either writing or reading.*

NOTE. — Sive . . . seu and seu . . . sive are late or poetic.

DEPENDENT CONSTRUCTIONS.

I. RELATIVE CLAUSES.

Dependent Relative Clauses may be thus classified : —

1. Conditional Relative Clauses (§ 316).
2. Clauses of PURPOSE (*Final Clauses*) (§ 317).
3. Clauses of CHARACTERISTIC, including —
 - a. Simple Result (*Consecutive Clauses*) (§ 319).
 - b. Clauses of Characteristic (including *cause* and *hindrance*) (§§ 320, 321).
 - c. Clauses of Time (§§ 322 ff.).

1. Conditional Relative Clauses.

316. A clause introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb may be treated as a conditional clause and take the constructions of Protasis (§ 305) : as, —

quī enim vitiis modum appōnit, is partem suscipit vitiōrum (Tusc. iv. 42), *he who [only] sets a limit to faults, takes up the side of the faults.* [= sī quis appōnit.]

quod quī faciet, non aegritūdine solum vacābit, sed, etc. (Tusc. iv. 38), *and he who does [shall do] this, will be free not only, etc.* [= sī quis faciet.]

philosophia, cui quī pāreat, omne tempus aetātis sine molestiā possit dēgere (Cat. Maj. 2), *philosophy, which IF any one should obey, he could spend his whole life without vexation.* [= sī quis pāreat.]

quaecumque causa vōs hūc attulisset, laetārer (De Or. ii. 15), *I should be glad, whatever cause had brought you here (i.e. if any other, as well as the one which did).* [= sī . . . attulisset.]

NOTE. — The relative in this construction is always Indefinite in meaning, and more commonly in form.

a. The special constructions of General Conditions are sometimes found in Conditional Relative Clauses : viz., —

1. The Second Person Singular Subjunctive in the protasis with the Indicative of a *general truth* in the apodosis (§ 309. a) : as, —

bonus sēgnior fit, ubi negligās (Jug. 31, 28), *a good man becomes less diligent when you don't watch him.*

2. In later writers the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the protasis and the Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis : as, —

quōcumque sē intulisset, victōriam sēcum trahēbat (Liv. vi. 8), *wherever he advanced, he carried victory with him.*

3. The Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative in the protasis and the Present or Imperfect Indicative in the apodosis (§ 309. c) : as, —

cum ad villam vēnī, hōc ipsum nihil agere mē dēlectat (De Or. ii. 24), *whenever I come to the villa, this very doing nothing delights me* (whenever I have come, etc.). [Present General Condition.]

cum rosam viderat, tum incipere vēr arbitrābātur (Verr. v. 27), *whenever he saw (had seen) a rose, then he thought spring was beginning.* [Past General Condition.]

2. Clauses of Purpose.

317. (RULE 75.) A clause expressing purpose is called a FINAL Clause.

Final clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by ut (uti), negative nē (ut nē), or by a Relative pronoun or adverb.

They may be divided into Pure, Relative, and Substantive.

1. Pure Clauses of Purpose are introduced by ut (uti) or nē. They express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

2. Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the Relative pronoun quī, or by the Relative adverbs ubī, unde, quō, etc. The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

3. Substantive Clauses of Purpose are introduced by ut (uti), negative nē. They differ from Pure Final Clauses in having the construction of a substantive. (For Substantive Clauses of Purpose, see § 331.)

Examples of Pure and Relative clauses of purpose are —

ab arātrō abdūxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset (Fin. ii. 12), *they brought Cincinnatus from the plough that he might be dictator.*

nē qua ēius adventūs procul significātiō fiat (B. G. vi. 29), *that no sign of his arrival may be made at a distance.*

ut nē sit impūne (Mil. 31), *that it be not with impunity.*

✓ scribēbat orātiōnēs quās aliī dicerent (Brut. 206), *he wrote speeches for other men to deliver.*

eō extinctō fore unde discerem nēminem (Cat. Maj. 12), *that when he was dead there would be nobody from whom (whence) I could learn.*

NOTE. — The Relative in this construction is equivalent to **ut** with the corresponding demonstrative. Thus **quī** = **ut is** (etc.), **ubi** = **ut ibi**, and so on (cf. § 319. note).

a. Sometimes the relative or conjunction has a correlative in the main clause : **ās**, —

lēgibus idcirco omnēs servīmus, ut liberī esse possīmus (Clu. 146), *for this reason we are all subject to the laws, that we may be free.*

eō cōsiliō . . . ut (regularly), *with this design, that, etc.*

eā causā . . . nē, *for this reason, lest, etc.*

✓ b. The ablative **quō** (= **ut eō**) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative : **as**, —

libertāte ūsus est, quō impūnius dicāx esset (Quinct. 11), *he took advantage of liberty, to bluster with more impunity (by which the more).*

NOTE 1. — So **quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**) introduces a subjunctive clause after verbs of *hindering* (see § 331. e).

NOTE 2. — Occasionally **quō** introduces final clauses which do not contain a comparative : **as**, —

quō sibi (exercitum) fidum faceret (Sall. Cat. 11), *in order to make the army devoted to himself.*

c. The Principal clause, on which a final clause depends, is often to be supplied from the context. Thus, —

āc nē longum sit . . . iūssimus (Cat. iii. 10), *and, not to be tedious, we ordered, etc.* [Strictly, *in order not to be tedious, I say, we ordered.*]

sed ut eōdem revertar, causa haec fuit timōris (Fam. vi. 7, 3), *but, to return to the same point, this was the cause of fear.*

REMARK. — By a similar ellipsis the subjunctive is used with **nēdum** (sometimes **nē**), *still less, not to mention that* : **as**, —

nēdum . . . salvī esse possīmus (Clu. 95), *much less could we be safe.*

nēdum istī . . . nōn statim conquīsītūrī sint aliquid sceleris et flāgitī (Leg. Ag. ii. 97), *far more will they hunt up at once some sort of crime and scandal.*

quippe secundae rēs sapientium animōs fatigant ; nē illi corruptis mōribus victōriae **temperārent** (Sall. Cat. 11), *for prosperity overmasters the souls, even of the wise ; much less did they with their corrupt morals put any check on victory.*

NOTE. — With **nēdum** the verb itself is often omitted : as, —

aptius hūmānitātī tuae quam tōta Peloponnēsus **nēdum** Patrae (Fam. vii. 28, 1), *fitter for your refinement than all Peloponnesus, to say nothing of Patra.*

REMARK. — Clauses of Purpose are sometimes rendered in English by *that* or *in order that*, with *may* or *might* ; but more frequently by the Infinitive with **TO** : as, —

vēnī ut vidērem, *I came to see* (that I might see).

318. The Purpose of an action is expressed in Latin in various ways ; but never (except rarely in poetry) by the simple Infinitive as in English (§ 273).

The sentence, *they came to seek peace*, may be rendered —

- (1) **vēnērunt ut pācem peterent.** [Final clause with **ut** (§ 317).]
- (2) **vēnērunt quī pācem peterent.** (Final clause with Relative (§ 317).]
- (3) [**vēnērunt ad petendum pācem.**] (Not found with transitive verbs (§ 300. note), but cf. **ad pārendum senātui.**) [Gerund with **ad** (§ 300).]
- (4) **vēnērunt ad petendam pācem.** [Gerundive with **ad** (§ 300).]
- (5) **vēnērunt pācem petendī causā** (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerund with **causā** or **grātiā** (§ 298. c).]
- (6) **vēnērunt pācis petendae causā** (grātiā). [Gen. of Gerundive with **causā** (§ 298. c).]
- (7) **vēnērunt pācem petitūrī.** [Future participle (§ 293. b) : not in Cicero.]
- (8) **vēnērunt pācem petitum.** [Former supine (§ 302).]

These forms are not used indifferently, but —

a. The usual way of expressing purpose is by **ut** (negatively **nē**), unless the purpose is *closely connected with some one word*, in which case a relative is more common. Thus, —

Arria gladium dedit maritō **ut** sē interficeret, *Arria gave her husband a sword to kill himself* (that he might kill himself).

Arria gladium dedit maritō **quō** sē interficeret, *Arria gave her husband a sword to kill himself WITH* (with which he might, etc.).

b. The Gerund and Gerundive constructions of purpose are usually limited to short expressions, where the literal translation of the

phrase, though not the English idiom, is nevertheless not harsh or strange.

c. The Supine is used to express purpose only with verbs of *motion*, and in a few idiomatic expressions (§ 302).

d. The Future Participle used to express purpose is a late construction (§ 293. b).

3. Clauses of Result.

NOTE.—The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic.

319. (RULE 76.) A clause that expresses Result is called a Consecutive Clause.

Consecutive Clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by ut, so that (negative, ut nōn), or by a Relative (pronoun or adverb).

They may be divided into Pure, Relative, and Substantive (cf. § 317).

1. Pure Clauses of Result are introduced by ut or ut nōn. They express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

2. Relative Clauses of Result are introduced by the Relative pronoun quī, or by the Relative adverbs ubi, unde, quō, etc. The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

3. Substantive Clauses of Result are introduced by ut or ut nōn. They differ from Pure consecutive clauses in having the construction of a substantive. (For Substantive Clauses of Result, see § 332.)

Examples of Pure and Relative Clauses of Result are —

tanta vīs probitātis est ut eam in hoste diligāmus (Lael. 29), *so great is the power of goodness that we love it even in an enemy.*

nam est innocentia affectiō tālis animī, quae noceat nēminī (Tusc. iii. 16), *for innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.*

nūlla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere (Tusc. i. 43), *there is no swiftness which can compare, etc.*

NOTE.—The Relative in this construction is equivalent to ut with the corresponding demonstrative. Thus, quī = ut is (etc.), ubi = ut ibi, and so on (cf. § 317. note).

REMARK.—Clauses of Result are often introduced by such correlative words as tam, tālis, tantus, ita, sic, adeō, usque eō, which belong to the main clause.

idea of result.

a. A negative result is regularly expressed by **ut** or **quī** with **nōn**, **nēmō**, and similar negatives (not **nē**). Thus, —

multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectus ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset (B. G. ii. 25), *used up with many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand.*

nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere (Cat. Maj. 24), *nobody is so old as not to think that he can live a year.*

NOTE. — When the result implies an effect intended (not a simple purpose), **ut nē** or **nē** is sometimes used as being less positive than **ut nōn** : as, —

librum data corrigās nē mihi noceat (Fam. vi. 7, 6), *correct the book so that it may not hurt me.*

b. Frequently a clause of result is used in a *restrictive* sense, and so amounts to a Proviso (cf. § 314) : as, —

hōc est ita ūtile ut nē plānē illūdāmur ab accūsātōribus (Rosc. Am. 55), *this is so far useful that we are not utterly mocked by the accusers (i.e. useful only on this condition, that, etc.).*

c. The subjunctive with the Relative **quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**) may be used to express a result, after words of *hindering* or *refusing* (cf. § 317. b. note 4) : as —

nec aetās impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus (Cat. Maj. 60), *nor does age prevent us from retaining an interest in tilling the ground.*

d. A clause of result is introduced by **quān** after general negatives, where **quān** is equivalent to **quī** (*quae, quod*) **nōn**, so, also after negative clauses of *hindrance, resistance, doubt, hesitation*, and the like. Thus, —

nihil est illōrum quān [= quod nōn] ego illī dixerim (Plaut. Bac. 1012), *there is nothing of this that I have not told him.*

nōn dubitō quān, *I do not doubt that* (cf. the Eng., *I do not doubt but that*).

aegrē (vix) abstinui quān . . ., *I hardly refrained from, etc.*

nihil impedit quān . . ., *there is nothing to prevent, etc.*

REMARK. — The constructions of Purpose and Result in Latin are precisely alike in the affirmative (but see sequence, § 287. c), but in the negative, Purpose takes **nē**, Result **ut nōn**, etc. Thus, —

custōditus est nē effugeret, *he was guarded in order that he MIGHT not escape.*

custōditus est ut nōn effugeret, *he was guarded so that he DID not.*

*Margaret now there you & a child
in my look thus way.*

indicate a characteristic of the antecedent - which result.

So in Purpose clauses *nē quis, nē quid, nē ūllus, nē quō, nēquandō, nēcubi*, etc., are used; in Result clauses, *ut nēmō, ut nihil, ut nūllus*, etc. Thus, —

cernere nē quis eōs neu quis contingere posset (Æn. i. 413), *that no one might see them, no-one touch them.*

ita multī sunt imbēcillī senēs ut nūllum offici mūnus exsequī possint (Cat. Maj. 35), *many old men are so feeble that they cannot perform their duties to society.*

nē quandō liberis prōscriptōrum bona patria reddantur (Rosc. Am. 145), *lest ever the patrimony of the proscribed should be restored to their children.*

The clause of Result is sometimes expressed in English by the Infinitive with TO or SO-AS-TO or an equivalent: as, —

tam longē aberam ut nōn vidērem, *I was too far away to see* (so far that I did not see; cf. § 320. c).

none shocking, decent.

4. Clauses of Characteristic.

320. (RULE 77.) A relative clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, where there is no idea of Result.

This construction is especially common where the antecedent is otherwise undefined. Thus, —

neque enim tū is es, quī nesciās (Fam. v. 12, 6), *for you are not such a one, as not to know.*

multa dicunt quae vix intellegant (Fin. iv. 2), *they say many things which (such as) they hardly understand.*

a. A relative clause of characteristic is used after general expressions of existence or non-existence, including questions implying a negative, especially with sunt quī, *there are [some] who*; quis est quī, *who is there who?* Thus, —

sunt quī discēssum animī a corpore putent esse mortem (Tusc. i. 18), *there are some who think that the departure of soul from body constitutes death.*

erant quī Helvidium miserārentur (Ann. xvi. 29), *there were some who pitied Helvidius.* [Cf. *est cum* (§ 322. Rem.).]

NOTE.—These are called Relative Clauses with an Indefinite Antecedent, but are to be distinguished from the Indefinite Relative in *protasis* (see § 316).

Cb. A relative clause of characteristic may follow ūnus and sōlus:
as, —

sōlus es cūius in victōriā ceciderit nēmō nisi armātus (Deiot. 34), *you are the only man at whose victory no one has fallen unless armed.*

c. A clause of result or characteristic, with **quam ut**, **quam quī**, may be used after comparatives: as, —

māiōrēs arborēs caedēbant quam quās ferre mīles posset (Liv. xxxiii. 5), *they cut larger trees than what a soldier could carry* (too large for a soldier to carry).

Canachī signa rigidiōra sunt quam ut imitentur vērītatem (Brut. 70), *the statues of Canachus are too stiff to represent nature* (stiffer than that they should).

NOTE. — This construction corresponds to the English *too . . . to*.

d. A relative clause of characteristic is used in expressions of Restriction or Proviso (cf. § 319. *b*): as, —

quod sciam, *so far as I know.*

servus est nēmō, quī modo tolerābilī condiōne sit servitūtis (Cat. iv. 16), *there is not a slave, at least in any tolerable condition of slavery.*

Le. A relative clause expressing *cause* or *concession* takes the subjunctive (§§ 313. *h*, 321. *b*): as, —

virum simplicem quī nōs nihil cēlet (Or. 230), *oh! guileless man, who hides nothing from us!* [Causal.]

peccāsse mihi videor quī ā tē discēsserim (Fam. xvi. 1), *I seem to myself to have done wrong because I have left you.* [Causal.]

NOTE. — In this use the relative is equivalent to **cum is**, etc. It is often preceded by **ut**, **utpote**, or **quippe**: as, —

nec cōsul, ut quī id ipsum quaesisset, moram certāminī fēcit (Liv. xlii. 7), *nor did the consul delay the fight, inasmuch as he had sought that very thing* (as [being one] who had sought, etc.).

convivia cum patre nōn inibat, quippe quī nē in oppidum quidem nisi perrārō veniret (Rosc. Am. 52), *since he did not even come, etc.*

f. (RULE 78.) **Dignus**, **indignus**, **aptus**, **idōneus** take a clause probably of result with a relative (or rarely with **ut**): as, —

digna in quibus ēlabōrārent (Tusc. i. 1), (things) *worth spending their toil on* (worthy on which they should, etc.).

indignus erās quī facerēs iniūriam, *it was beneath you to do a wrong* (you were unworthy who should, etc.).

idōneus quī impetret (Manil. 57), *fit to obtain.*

NOTE. — With these words the poets often use the Infinitive : as, —
 fōns rīvō dare nōmen idōneus (Hor. Ep. i. 16, 12), *a source fit to give a name to a stream.*
 aetās mollis et apta regī (Ov.), *a time of life soft and easy to be guided.*

5. Causal Clauses.

321. (RULE 79.) The Causal Particles quod, quia, and quoniam take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another: as, —

1. Indicative : —

cum tibi agam grātiās quod mē vivere coēgistī (Att. iii. 3), *when I may thank you that you have forced me to live.*

quia postrēma aedificāta est (Verr. iv. 119), *because it was built last.*

quoniam dē ūtilitāte diximus, dē efficiendī ratiōne (Or. Part. 94), *since we have spoken of its advantage, let us speak of the method of effecting it.*

2. Subjunctive : —

mihi grātulābāre quod audissēs mē meam pristinam dignitātem obtinēre (Fam. iv. 14, 1), *you congratulated me because [as you said] you had heard, etc.*

mea māter irāta est quia nōn redierim (Plaut. Cist. 103), *my mother is angry because I did n't return.*

NOTE 1. — The Subjunctive in this use depends on the principle of Intermediate Clauses (§ 341. d).

REMARK. — Nōn quod, nōn quia, nōn quoniam, introducing a reason *expressly to deny it*, take the Subjunctive. Nōn quō and nōn quīn introduce a Result clause, but with nearly the same meaning (§ 341. d. Rem.). Thus, —

pugilēs ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia omne corpus intenditur (Tusc. ii. 56), *boxers groan not because they are in pain, but because, etc.*

nōn quia philosophia percipī nōn posset (id. i. 1), *not that philosophy cannot be acquired.*

nōn quoniam hōc sit necesse (Verr. II. i. 24), *not that this is necessary.*

nōn quīn ēnītendum sit (De Or. ii. 295), *not that pains must not be taken.*

a. Causal Clauses introduced by quod, etc., take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see § 336).

b. A Relative, when used to express *cause*, regularly takes the Subjunctive (see § 320. e).

c. Cum causal takes the Subjunctive (see § 326).

NOTE. — In early Latin cum causal takes the Indicative (§ 326. note 3).

6. Relations of Time.

322. The particles ubi, ut, cum, quandō, alone or with -cumque, may be used as Indefinite Relatives, and have the constructions of protasis (cf. § 316). Thus, —

cum id malum esse negās (Tusc. ii. 29), *when you* (the individual disputant) *deny it to be an evil*. [Present, nothing implied (cf. § 306).]

quod profectō cum mē nūlla vīs cōgeret, facere nōn audērem (Phil. v. 51), *which I would surely not venture to do, as long as no force compelled me*. [Present, contrary to fact: cf. § 308.]

cum videās eōs . . . dolōre nōn frangī (Tusc. ii. 66), *when you see that those are not broken by pain, etc.* [General condition: cf. § 309. a.]

id ubi dīxisset, hastam in fines eōrum ēmittēbat (Liv. i. 32, 13), *when he had said this, he used to cast the spear into their territories*. [Repeated action: see § 309. b.]

REMARK. — Rarely a time characterized by its circumstances, etc. . . . So the phrases *est cum, fuit cum*, etc., are used in general expressions like *est quī, sunt quī* (§ 320. a): as, —

ac fuit quidem cum mihi quoque initium requiēscendī fore iūstum arbitrār (De Or. i. 1), *and there was a time when I thought a beginning of rest would be justifiable on my part*.

323. Temporal clauses have two uses: —

1. They themselves *define* (with reference to the time of the speaker) the time of the clause on which they depend.
2. They *describe* by its circumstances the time of the main clause, which is defined not by them, but by the main clause itself.

Thus, in: *When did the Emperor Frederick die? — He died while the people were still mourning the death of his father*, the time of the main clause, *he died*, is definitely fixed by the temporal clause, *while the people*, etc., as is seen by the fact that the temporal clause answers the question, *WHEN did he die?* But in: *The Emperor Frederick died while the people were still mourning the death of his father*, the time of the main clause is not defined by the temporal clause, but is regarded as sufficiently definite in itself (or from the context). The temporal clause is added to describe that time by the circumstances of the people's grief.

These two sorts of temporal clauses the Romans distinguished by means of the *mood*, invariably using the Indicative in the first and the Subjunctive in the second. They commonly also used the particles and the tenses in accordance with this division.

I. *POSTQUAM, UBI, ETC.*

324. The particles postquam (posteaquam), ubi, ut (ut primum, ut semel), simul atque (simul ac, or simul) take the Indicative (usually in the perfect or the historical present): as, —

militēs postquam victōriam adepti sunt, nihil reliquū victis fecere (Sall. Cat. 11), *when the armies had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished.*

ubi omnēs idem sentire intellēxit (B. G. iii. 23), *when he understood that all agreed* (thought the same thing).

simul ac persēsit (Æn. iv. 90), *as soon as he perceived.*

a. These particles less commonly take the Imperfect or Pluperfect indicative. The Imperfect in this case denotes a state of things; the Pluperfect, an action completed in past time. Thus, —

P. Africānus posteaquam bis cōsul et cēnsor fuerat (Div. in Cæc. 69), *when Africanus had been (i.e. had the dignity of having been) twice consul and censor.*

haec iuventūtem, ubi familiārēs opēs dēfēcerant, ad facinora incendēbant (Sall. Cat. 13), *when their inherited resources had given out.*

b. Rarely some of these particles take the subjunctive: as, —

posteaquam mājimās aedificāset ōrnāsetque clāssēs (Manil. 9), *having built and equipped mighty fleets* (after he had, etc.). [But the more approved editions have postea cum.]

II. *CUM TEMPORAL.*

325. (RULE 80.) Cum (quom) TEMPORAL, meaning *when*, takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Subjunctive, other tenses in the Indicative. Thus, —

cum servilī bellō premeretur (Manil. 30), *when she (Italy) was under the load of the Servile War.*

cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat (B. G. i. 7), *when this had been reported he made (makes) haste.*

cum occiditur Sex. Roscius, ibidem fuerunt servi (Rosc. Am. 120), *when Roscius was slain, the slaves were on the spot.*

[For examples with the Future, see *c*, below.]

NOTE. — The Present takes the Indicative, because present time is generally, from its very nature, defined in the mind; and it is only when the circumstances are described as causal or adversative (see below, § 326),

that the Subjunctive is used. The Perfect takes the Indicative as the tense of narration, as with *postquam*, etc. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are, from their nature, better fitted to *describe* than to *define* the time.

a. **Cum** temporal sometimes takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative to indicate a *definite past time*: as, —

quem quidem *cum* ex urbe pellēbam, hōc prōvidēbam animō (Cat. iii. 16),
when I was trying to force him (conative imperfect) from the city, I looked forward to this.

tum *cum* in Asiā rēs magnās permultī amiserant (Manil. 19), *at that time, when many had lost great fortunes in Asia.*

b. When the clauses are inverted, so that the logical temporal clause becomes the main clause, and the main clause becomes the temporal clause, the Indicative must be used with **cum**: as, —

hōc facere noctū apparābant, *cum* matrēs familiae repentē in pūblicum prōcurrerunt (B. G. vii. 26), *they were preparing to do this by night, when the women suddenly ran out into the streets.*

c. To denote future time **cum** takes the Future or Future Perfect Indicative: as, —

longum illud tempus *cum* nōn erō (Att. xii. 18), *that long time when I shall be no more.*

cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs (Fam. v. 7), *when you come (shall have come) you will find out.*

REMARK. — Rarely a future time is characterized and takes the Subjunctive.

III. *CUM* CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE.

326. (RULE 81.) **Cum** CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE takes the Subjunctive: as, —

cum primī ordinēs . . . concidissent, tamen ācerimē reliquī resistēbant (B. G. vii. 61), *though the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted vigorously.* [Concessive.]

NOTE 1. — **Cum** in these uses is often emphasized by *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, *praesertim*: as, —

nec reprehendō: *quippe cum* ipse istam reprehēnsiōnem nōn fūgerim (Att. x. 3), *I find no fault: since I myself did not escape that blame.*

NOTE 2. — These causal and concessive relations are merely variations of the idea of *time*. The attendant circumstances are regarded as the *cause* of the action, or as tending to *hinder* it (cf. *quī* causal and concessive).

NOTE 3. — In early Latin **cum** (**quom**) causal and concessive usually takes the Indicative. So sometimes in classical Latin : as, —

quom tua rēs **distrahitur**, utinam videam (Plaut. Trin. 573), *since your property is torn in pieces, oh ! that I may see*, etc. [Cf. § 313. d. note.]

REMARK. — **Cum** causal may usually be translated by *since* ; **cum** concessive by *although* or *while*.

a. **Cum** in the sense of **quod**, *on the ground that*, frequently takes the Indicative : as, —

grātulor tibi **cum** tantum valēs apud Dolābellam (Fam. ix. 14, 3), *I congratulate you that you are so strong with Dolabella*.

b. **Cum** . . . **tum**, signifying *both . . . and*, usually takes the Indicative ; but when **cum** approaches the sense of *while* or *though*, it may have the Subjunctive (§ 326). Thus, —

cum multa non probō, **tum** illud in primīs (Fin. i. 18), *while there are many things I do not approve, there is this in chief*. But —

cum rēs tōta ficta sit pueriliter, **tum** nē efficit quidem quod vult (id. 19), *while the whole thing is childishly got up, he does not even make his point* (accomplish what he wishes).

IV. ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM.

327. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, have in narration the same construction as **cum** temporal (§ 325): as, —

antequam tuās lēgī litterās (Att. ii. 7), *before I read your letter*.

neque **ante** dīmisit eum **quam** fidem dedit adulēscēns (Liv. xxxix. 10), *she did not let the young man go till he pledged his faith*.

antequam hominēs nefārii dē meō adventū audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perrēxī (Planc. 98), *before those evil men could learn of my coming, I arrived in Macedonia*.

NOTE. — The idea of purpose (usually corresponding to *could* or *should* in English) regularly requires the subjunctive : as, —

nunquam prius discēssit **quam** ad finem sermō esset perdūctus, *i.e. he waited for the conversation to be finished*.

a. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, when referring to future time, take the Present or Future Perfect Indicative ; rarely the Present Subjunctive : as, —

priusquam dē cēteris rēbus respondeō, dē amicitīā pauca dīcam (Phil. ii. 3), *before I reply to the rest, I will say a little on friendship*.

antequam veniat litterās mīttet (Ag. ii. 53), *before he comes, he will send a letter*.

b. In a few cases the Subjunctive of the indefinite second person is found with **antequam** and **priusquam** (cf. § 309 *a*): as, —

in omnibus negotiis **priusquam** aggrediāre, adhibenda est praeparatiō diligēns (Off. I, 73), *in all undertakings, before you proceed to action, careful preparation must be used.*

V. DUM, DŌNEC, AND QUOAD.

328. **Dum, dōnec, and quoad** implying *purpose, doubt, or expectation*, take the Subjunctive, otherwise the Indicative.

1. Subjunctive : as, —

expectās fortasse **dum** dicat (Tusc. ii. 17), *you are waiting perhaps for him to say* (till he say).

Aenēan morandō sustinuit **dum** genitor prōtectus abiret (Æn. x. 800), *he kept Æneas in check till his father could get away in safety.*

Epaminōndās exercēbātur plūrimū luctandō ad eum finem **quoad** stāns complectī posset atque contendere (Nep. Epam. 2), *Epaminondus trained himself in wrestling so far as to be able to grapple standing and fight* (in that way).

2. Indicative (cf. *a*, below) : as, —

hōc fēcī **dum** licuit, intermīsī **quoad** nōn licuit (Phil. iii. 33), *I did this so long as it was allowed, I discontinued it so long as it was not.*

quoad potuit restitit (Cat. Maj. 11), *he resisted as long as he could.*

NOTE 1. — **Quamdiū** takes the Indicative only : as, —

sē oppidō tam diū tenuit **quamdiū** in prōvinciā Parthī fuērunt (Fam. xii. 19), *he kept himself within the town so long as the Parthians were in the province.*

NOTE 2. — For **dum** and **dummodo** introducing a proviso, see § 314.

a. **Dum** in the sense of *while* usually takes the Present Indicative to indicate a continued action in *past* time, if that time is not contrasted with any other (§ 276 *e.* and note) : as, —

dum haec geruntur (B. G. i. 46), *while this was going on.*

REMARK. — With all temporal particles the Subjunctive is often found depending on some other principle of construction. (See Intermediate Clauses below, §§ 340 ff.)

II. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

329. A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause.

A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive or as a Predicate Nominative (or Accusative).

NOTE. — Many ideas which in English take the form of an abstract noun may be rendered by a substantive clause in Latin. Thus, *he demanded an investigation*, may be *postulābat ut quaestiō habērētur*. The common English expression FOR with the infinitive also corresponds to a Latin substantive clause: as, *it remains for me to speak of the piratic war*, *relicum est ut dē bellō dicam pīraticō*.

REMARK. — When a Substantive Clause is used as Subject, the verb to which it is subject is called *impersonal*, and the sign of the construction in English is the so-called *expletive* IT.

Substantive Clauses are classified as follows: —

1. INFINITIVE CLAUSES: { *a.* Infinitive clause as Subject (§ 270).
 { *b.* Infinitive clause as Object (§ 330. B).
2. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES: { *a.* Of Purpose (command, wish, fear) (§ 331).
 (*ut, nē, quō, quīn, quōminus*). { *b.* Of Result (happen, effect, hinder) (§ 332).
3. INDICATIVE CLAUSE with *quod*: Fact, Specification, Feeling.
4. INDIRECT QUESTIONS: Subjunctive, introduced by Interrogative Word.

1. Infinitive Clauses.

330. A. The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative may be used as the *subject* of *sum* and of many impersonal verbs (see § 270).

B. The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative is used as the *object* —

1. Of all verbs and expressions of *knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse*) (§ 272).

mē spērō liberātum [esse] *metū* (Tusc. ii. 67), *I trust I have been freed from fear.*

2. Of **iubeō** and **vetō**, and rarely of other verbs of *commanding, requesting, admonishing*, and the like (§ 331. a). Thus, —

vetuēre [bona] reddī, vetuēre in pūblicum redigī (Liv. ii. 5), *they forbade the return of the goods* (that they be returned), etc.

Labīenum iugum montis adscendere iubet (B. G. i. 21), *he orders Labienus to ascend the ridge of the hill.*

3. Sometimes of verbs of *wishing* (§ 331. b) : as, —

iūdicem mē esse nōn doctōrem volō (Or. 117), *I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.*

REMARK. — The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative, though not strictly a Clause, is equivalent to one, and may be treated as such.

a. If the main verb is changed to the Passive, —

1. The subject of the infinitive becomes *nominative*, and the infinitive is retained (*Personal Construction*) : as, —

*mōns dicitur ab hostibus tenērī, *the hill is said to be held by the enemy.*

Labīenus iugum montis adscendere iubētur, *Labienus is ordered to ascend the ridge of the hill.*

2. The passive is used *impersonally*, and the clause retained as its subject (*Impersonal Construction*) : —

dicitur montem ab hostibus tenērī, *it is said that the hill is held by the enemy.*

b. 1. Verbs of *saying, thinking*, etc., take in the Passive either the Personal or the Impersonal construction. But the Personal is more common and is regular with the tenses of incomplete action. Thus, —

beātē vīxisse videor (Lael. 15), *I seem to have lived happily.*

Epamīnōndās fidibus praeclārē cecinisse dicitur (Tusc. i. 4), *Epaminondas is said to have played excellently on the lyre.*

2. **Iubeō** and **vetō** always take the personal construction : as, —

iūssus es renūtiārī cōsul (Phil. ii. 79), *you were under orders to be declared consul.*

Nōlānī mūrōs portāsque adīre vetitī sunt (Liv. xxiii. 16), *the men of Nola were forbidden to go to visit the walls and gates.*

c. In the compound tenses of verbs of *saying*, etc., the impersonal construction is more common, and with the gerundive is regular : as, —

trāditum est etiam Homērum caecum fuisse (Tusc. v. 114), *it is a tradition, too, that Homer was blind.*

ubi tyrannus est, ibi nōn vitiōsam, sed dicendum est plānē nūllam esse rempūblicam (Rep. iii. 43), *where there is a tyrant, it must be said, not that the Commonwealth is evil, but that it does not exist at all.*

d. The poets and later writers extend the personal use of the passive to verbs which are not properly *verba sentiendi*, etc. : as, —
colligor dominae placuisse (Ov. Am. ii. 6, 61), *it is gathered* [from this memorial] *that I pleased my mistress.*

e. The Infinitive with a subject may depend on any word implying speech or thought, though not strictly a verb of *saying*, etc.

f. Verbs of *promising, hoping, expecting, threatening, swearing*, and the like, regularly take the construction of Indirect Discourse, contrary to the English idiom : as, —

minātūr sēsē abīre (Plaut. Asin. 604), *he threatens to go away.* [Direct : *abeō, I am going away.*]

ex quibus spērant sē māximum frūctum esse captūros (Lael. 79), *from which they hope to gain the utmost advantage.* [Direct : *capiēmus.*]

NOTE. — These verbs, however, often take a simple Complementary Infinitive. Thus, — pollicentur obsidēs dare (B. G. iv. 21), *they promise to give hostages.*

2. Clauses of Purpose.

NOTE. — Clauses of Purpose may be used substantively (1) as the Object of verbs of *admonishing*, etc. (§ 331) ; (2) as the Subject of these same verbs in the passive (§ 331. h), and of impersonal verbs and verbal phrases (§ 331. i) ; (3) in apposition with a substantive, or as predicate nominative, etc.

331. Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used as the object of all verbs denoting an action *directed toward the future*.¹

Such are, verbs meaning to *admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish*. Thus, —

¹ Such verbs or verbal phrases are *id agō, ad id veniō, caveō (nē), censeō, cōgō, concēdō, cōstituō, cūrō, dēcernō, ēdicō, flāgitō, hortor, imperō, instō, mandō, moneō, negōtium dō, operam dō, ōrō, persuādeō, petō, postulō, prae-cipio, precor, prōnūntiō, quaerō, rogō, sciscō, timeō, videō, volō*.

hīs ut conquīrent imperāvit (B. G. i. 28), *he ordered them to search.*
persuādet Casticō **ut rēgnum occupāret** (B. G. i. 3), *he persuades Casticus to usurp royal power.*

(**a. Iubeō**, *order*, and **vetō**, *forbid*, take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative (§ 330. B. 2) : **as**, —

liberōs ad sē addūcī iūssit (B. G. ii. 5), *he ordered the children to be brought to him.*

ab opere lēgātōs discēdere vetuerat (id. 20), *he had forbidden the lieutenants to leave the work.*

NOTE I. — Other verbs of *commanding*, etc., may take the Infinitive : **as**, —

haec facere imperātum est, *orders were given to do this.*

rēs monet cavēre (Sall. Cat. 52), *the occasion warns us to be on our guard.*

b. Verbs of wishing take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive. The Infinitive is more common when the subject remains the same ; the Subjunctive, when it changes. Thus, —

1. Subject of dependent verb same as that of main verb : —

quōs nōn tam ulciscī studeō quam **sānāre** (Cat. ii. 17), *whom I do not care so much to punish as to cure.*

2. Subject of dependent verb different from that of main verb : —

cupiō ut impetret (Plaut. Capt. 102), *I wish he may get it.*

māllem Cerberum metuerēs (Tusc. i. 12), *I would rather you feared Cerberus.*

NOTE. — **Volō** and **cupiō**, however, tend to take the Accusative and Infinitive rather than the Subjunctive, even when the subject changes. When it remains the same, the subject accusative is rarely found. Thus, —

iūdicem mē esse, **nōn doctōrem volō** (Or. 117), *I wish to be a judge, not a teacher.*

cupiō mē esse clēmētem (Cat. i. 4), *I desire to be merciful.* [But regularly, **cupiō esse clēmēns** (see § 271. a).]

+ **c. Verbs of permitting** take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive. **Patior** takes regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative ; so often **sinō**. Thus, —

permisit ut partēs faceret (De Or. ii. 366), *permitted him to make divisions.*

vinum importārī nōn sinunt (B. G. iv. 2), *they do not allow wine to be imported.*

+ **d. Verbs of determining, decreeing, resolving, bargaining** take either the Subjunctive or the Infinitive : **as**, —

cōstituerant ut L. Bestia *quererētur* (Sall. Cat. 43), *they had determined that Lucius Bestia should complain.*

proeliō *supersedere* statuit (B. G. ii. 8), *he determined to refuse battle.*

NOTE 1. — Different verbs of these classes with the same meaning vary in their construction. For verbs of *bargaining* with the Gerundive, see § 294. *d.*

NOTE 2. — Verbs of *decreeing* and *voting* often take the Infinitive of the Second Periphrastic conjugation : as, —

Rēgulus captīvōs *reddendōs* [*esse*] nōn cēnsuit (Off. i. 39), *Regulus voted that the captives should not be returned.* [He said, in giving his formal opinion : *captivī nōn reddendī sunt.*]

X *e.* 1. Verbs of *caution* and *effort* take the Subjunctive with *ut*. But *cōnor*, *try*, usually takes the Complementary Infinitive as, —

cūrā *ut* quam primum *intellegam* (Fam. xiii. 10), *let me know as soon as possible* (take care that I may understand).

dant operam *ut* *habeant* (Sall. Cat. 41), *they take pains to have* (give their attention that, etc.).

sī *trānsire* cōnārentur (B. G. i. 8), *if they should try to cross.*

NOTE. — *Cōnor* sī also occurs (cf. *mīror* sī, etc., § 333. *b.* Rem.).

2. Verbs denoting an effort *to hinder* take either (1) a Subjunctive clause with *quōminus* or *nē*, or (2) the Infinitive : as, —

nōn dēterret sapientem mors *quōminus* . . . (Tusc. i. 91), *death does not prevent the wise man from, etc.*

nē *facerem* *impedivit* (Fat. 1), *prevented me from doing.*

prohibet *accēdere* (Caec. 46), *prevents him from approaching* (to approach).

NOTE. — For verbs of *hindering* negatived (*not to hinder*), see § 332. *g.*

✓ *f.* Verbs of *fearing* take the Subjunctive, with *nē* affirmative and *nē nōn* or *ut* negative. Thus, —

timeō *nē* Verrēs *fēcerit* (Verr. v. 3), *I fear that Verres has done, etc.*

vereor *ut* tibi *possim* *concēdere* (De Or. i. 35), *I fear [that] I cannot grant you.*

NOTE. — In this use *nē* is commonly to be translated by *that* or *lest*, *ut* and *nē nōn* by *that not*.

REMARK. — With some verbs of the above classes *ut* is often omitted. So generally after verbs of *wishing*, *necessity*, *permission*, after *dīc*, *fac*, and often in Indirect Discourse after verbs of *commanding*, etc.: as, —

volō amēs (Att. ii. 10), *I wish you to love*, etc.

mē ipsum amēs oportet (Fin. ii. 85), *you ought to love me*.

Mnēsthea vocat, clāsem aptent sociī (Æn. iv. 289), *he calls Mnestheus*
[and orders that] *his comrades should make ready the fleet* (cf. § 339).

NOTE. — Similarly *nē* is omitted after *cave* in Prohibitions (cf. § 269. a).

g. With any verbs of the above classes the poets may use the Infinitive instead of an object clause : as, —

hortāmur fārī (Æn. ii. 74), *we urge* [him] *to speak*.

nē quaere docērī (id. vi. 614), *seek not to be told*.

h. A substantive clause of Purpose used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when that verb is put in the passive. Thus, —

imperātum est ut iter facerent, *it was ordered that they should march*.

permissum est ut irent, *permission was given that they should go*.

i. The impersonals *licet* and *oportet* take as subject either a Substantive clause of Purpose or an Infinitive with or without subject-accusative. Thus, —

licet mē ire, *it is allowed me to go*.

querāmur licet (Cæc. 41), *we are allowed to complain*.

NOTE 1. — The Subjunctive with *oportet* omits *ut*, except in later writers (see § 331. f. Rem.).

NOTE 2. — *Licet* may take the Subjunctive, usually without *ut*, to denote concession (see § 313. b).

NOTE 3. — *Licet* may take (1) the Subjunctive ; (2) the Simple Infinitive ; (3) the Infinitive with Subject Accusative ; or (4) the Dative and the Infinitive. Thus, *I may go* is *licet eam*, *licet ire*, *licet mē ire*, or *licet mihi ire*.

3. Clauses of Result.

NOTE. — Clauses of Result may be used substantively, (1) as the object of *faciō*, etc. (§ 332) ; (2) as the subject of these same verbs in the passive, as well as of other verbs and verbal phrases (§ 332. a, d) ; (3) in apposition with another substantive, or as predicate nominative, etc. (see § 332. f).

332. Substantive Clauses of Result with *ut* (negative *ut nōn*) are used as the object of verbs denoting the *accomplishment of an effort*.

Such are especially *faciō* and its compounds (*efficiō*, *cōficiō*, etc.). Thus, —

efficiam ut intellegātis (Cluent. 7), *I will make you understand* (lit. effect that you, etc.). [So faciam ut intellegātis (id. 4).]

commeātūs ut portārī posset efficiēbat (B. G. ii. 5), *made it possible that supplies could be brought*.

a. Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the Subject —

1. Of passive verbs denoting the *accomplishment of an effort* : as, —

impetrātum est ut in senātū recitārentur (litterae) (B. C. i. 1), *they succeeded in having the letter read in the senate* (it was brought about that, etc.).

2. Of Impersonals meaning *it happens, it remains, it follows, it is necessary, it is added*, and the like : as, —

accidit ut esset lūna plēna (B. G. iv. 29), *it happened to be full moon* (it happened that it was, etc.). [Here ut esset is subject of accidit.]

reliqua est quārta virtūs ut sit ipsa frūgālītās (Tusc. iii. 17), *it remains that the fourth virtue is thrift*. [So also restat.]

b. A result clause, with or without ut, frequently follows quam, after a comparative (but see § 336. c. note 2) : as, —

perpessus est omnia potius quam indicāret (Tusc. ii. 52), *he endured all rather than betray, etc.*

c. A result clause, with or without ut, is often used elliptically, in exclamatory questions. The question may be introduced by the interrogative -ne. Thus, —

quamquam quid loquor? tē ut ūlla rēs frangat (Cat. i. 22), *yet why do I speak?* [the idea] *that anything should bend you!*

egone ut tē interpellem (Tusc. ii. 42), *what, I interrupt you?*

ego tē vidēre nōluerim (Q. Fr. i. 3, 1), *I unwilling to see you?*

REMARK. — The Infinitive, in exclamations (§ 274), usually refers to something actually occurring; the Subjunctive, to something contemplated.

d. The phrase tantum abest, *it is so far* [from being the case], regularly takes two clauses of result with ut; one is *substantive*, the subject of abest; the other is *adverbial*, correlative with tantum. Thus, —

tantum abest ut nostra mīrēmur, ut usque eō difficilēs ac mōrōsī sīmus, ut nōbīs nōn satisfaciāt ipse Dēmōsthēnēs (Or. 104), *so far from admiring my own works, I am difficult and captious to that degree, that not Demosthenes himself satisfies me*. [Here the first ut-clause is the subject of abest (§ 332. a); the second, a result clause, after tantum (§ 319); and the third, after usque eō.]

e. The expressions **facere ut**, **committere ut**, with the subjunctive, often form a periphrasis for the simple verb : as, —

invītus fēcī ut Flāminium ē senātū ēicerem (Cat. Maj. 42), *it was with reluctance that I expelled Flaminius from the senate.*

f. Rarely, a *thought* or an *idea* is considered as a result, and is expressed by the subjunctive with **ut** instead of the accusative and infinitive. (§ 336. 1). In this case a demonstrative usually precedes : as, —

praeclārum illud est, ut eōs . . . amēmus (Tusc. iii. 73), *this is a noble thing, that we should love, etc.*

vērīsimile nōn est ut ille antepōneret (Verr. iv. 11), *it is not likely that he preferred.*

g. A Relative clause of Result with **quīn** is used with verbs or other expressions of *hindering* and the like when these are negated. Thus, —

facere nōn possum quīn . . . (Att. xii. 27), *I cannot avoid, etc.*

ut nullā rē impedīrē quīn (Att. iv. 2, 6), *that I might be hindered by nothing from, etc.*

NOTE 1. — The negative may be expressed (as in the examples above) or merely implied (as in **quis impedit quīn eam**, *who (i.e. nobody) hinders me from going?*).

REMARK. — This usage is found especially with the phrase **nōn dubitō**, *I do not doubt*, and similar expressions : as, —

nōn dubitābat quīn eī crēderēmus (Att. vi. 2, 3), *he did not doubt that we believed him.*

NOTE 2. — **Nōn dubitō**, in the sense of *I do not hesitate*, commonly takes the Infinitive, but sometimes **quīn** with the subjunctive. Thus, —

nec dubitāre illum appellāre sapientem (Lael. 1), *and not to hesitate to call him a sage.*

dubitandum nōn existimāvit quīn proficiscerētur (B. G. ii. 2), *he did not think he ought to hesitate to set out.*

h. Some verbs and expressions may be used either as verbs of *saying* or as verbs of *commanding* or *effecting*. Hence they are variously construed. Thus, —

rēs ipsa monēbat tempus esse (Att. x. 8), *the thing itself warned that it was time.* [Cf. **monēre ut**, *warn to do something.*]

hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās (B. G. vi. 14), *they wish to convince that souls do not perish.*

huic persuādet uti ad hostēs trānseat (B. G. iii. 18), *persuades him to pass over to the enemy.*

NOTE. — The infinitive with subject-accusative in this construction is Indirect Discourse, and is to be distinguished from the simple infinitive sometimes found with these verbs instead of a subjunctive clause.

4. Indicative with Quod.

333. A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consisting of *quod* causal with the Indicative is used when the statement is *regarded as a fact*: as, —

alterum est vitium, quod quidam nimis māgnum studium cōferunt (Off. i. 19), *it is another fault that some bestow too much zeal*, etc. [Here *ut cōferant* could be used, meaning *that some should bestow*; or the accusative and infinitive, meaning *to bestow* (abstractly); *quod* makes it a fact that men *do* bestow, etc.]

quod rediit nōbīs mīrābile vidētur (Off. iii. 111), *that he (Regulus) returned seems wonderful to us.*

NOTE. — The clause with *quod* may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject.

a. In colloquial language, the clause with *quod* sometimes appears as an *accusative of specification*, corresponding to the English *WHEREAS* (cf. § 326. *a*): as, —

quod dē domō scrībīs (Fam. xiv. 2, 3), *as to what you write of the house.*

b. Verbs of *feeling* and the expression of feeling take either *quod*, *quia* (Causal), or the accusative and infinitive (Indirect Discourse): as, —

quod scrībīs . . . gaudeō (Q. F. iii. 1, 9), *I am glad that you write.*

quae perfecta esse vehementer laetor (Rosc. Am. 136), *I greatly rejoice that this is finished.*

REMARK. — *Mīror* and similar expressions are sometimes followed by a clause with *sī*,¹ apparently substantive, but really a protasis (cf. § 331. *c*. 1. note). Thus, —

mīror sī quemquam amīcum habēre potuit (Lael. 54), *I wonder if he could ever have a friend.* [Originally, *If this is so, I wonder at it.*]

¹ Cf. the Greek *θαυμάζω εἰ*.

5. Indirect Questions.

NOTE. — An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause introduced by an Interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt. In grammatical form, *exclamatory* sentences are not distinguished from *interrogative*.

334. (RULE 82.) An Indirect Question takes its verb in the Subjunctive : as, —

quid ipse sentiam expōnam (Div. i. 10), *I will explain what I think.*

[Direct : quid sentiō.]

rogat mē quid sentiam, *he asks me what I think.* [Cf. rogat mē sententiam, *he asks me my opinion.*]

NOTE. — An Indirect Question may be the subject of a verb, the direct object, the secondary object, or an appositive.

The tenses in Indirect Questions follow the rules for sequence of tenses.

a. Indirect Questions referring to future time take the subjunctive of the First Periphrastic conjugation : as, —

prospiciō quī concursūs futūrī sint (Div. in Caec. 42), *I foresee what throngs there will be.* [Direct : quī erunt?]

b. The Deliberative Subjunctive (see § 268 and examples) remains unchanged in an Indirect Question, except in tense : as, —

[quaeritur] utrum Carthāgō diruātur, an Carthāginiēnsibus reddātur (De Inv. i. 17), [the question is] *shall Carthage be destroyed, or restored to the Carthaginians.*

incertō quid peterent aut vitārent (Liv. xxviii. 36), *since it was doubtful (abl. abs.) what they should seek or shun.*

c. In colloquial usage and in poetry the subject of an Indirect Question is often attracted into the main clause as object (*accusative of anticipation*) : as, —

nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit (Fam. viii. 10), *you know how slow Marcellus is.* [For nōstī quam tardus sit Mārcellus. Cf. *I know thee who thou art.*]

REMARK. — In some cases the *Object of anticipation* becomes Subject by a change of *voice*, and an apparent mixture of relative and interrogative construction is the result : as, —

quidam saepe in parvā pecūniā perspiciuntur quam sint levēs (Lael. 63), *it is often seen, in a trifling matter of money, how unprincipled some people are* (some people are often seen through, how unprincipled they are).

d. Indirect Questions often take the Indicative in poetry : as, —

nōn reputat quid labōris est (Plaut. Am. 172), *he does not consider what a task it is.*

e. A few interrogative expressions are used parenthetically in an indefinite sense and do not take a subjunctive. Such are —

nesciō quis (and kindred forms), *I know not who, somebody or other*, etc.
mīrum (nīmīrum) quam, *marvellously* (marvellous how).

Examples are : —

quī istam nesciō quam indolentiam māgnopere laudant (Tusc. iii. 12), *who greatly extol that freedom from pain, whatever that is.*
mīrum quantum prōfuit (Liv. ii. 1), *it helped prodigiously.*

f. An indirect question is occasionally introduced by sī in the sense of *whether* (like *if* in English, cf. § 333. b. Rem.) : as, —

circumfunduntur hostēs sī quem aditum reperire possent (B. G. vi. 37), *the enemy pour round [to see] if they can find entrance.*

NOTE. — This is strictly a Protasis, but usually no Apodosis is thought of, and the clause is virtually an Indirect Question.

g. Forsit, forsitan, forsan, fortasse, fortasse an, *perhaps*, are often followed by the Subjunctive : as, —

forsitan quaerātis quī iste terror sit (Rosc. Am. 5), *you may perhaps inquire what this alarm is.*

NOTE. — The Subjunctive Clause in this case was originally an Indirect Question. Thus, *it would be a chance whether*, etc.

III. INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

335. A Direct Quotation gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer.

An Indirect Quotation adapts the words of the speaker or writer to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted.

I. FORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

336. 1. Verbs and other expressions of *knowing*, *thinking*, *telling*, and *perceiving*¹ govern the Indirect Discourse.

2. (RULE 83.) In the Indirect Discourse the *main clause* of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All *Subordinate* clauses take the Subjunctive. Thus, —

spērō mē liberātum [esse] dē metū (Tusc. ii. 67), *I trust I have been freed from fear.*

[dīcit] esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās plūrimum valeat (B. G. i. 17), *he says there are some whose influence most prevails.* [In direct discourse : sunt nōnnūlli . . . valet.]

NOTE 1. — In the statement of all speech or thought, the Romans tended to use the Indirect Discourse, etc., with verbs of the classes mentioned, but : *inquam*, *said I* (etc.), is appropriated to the Direct Discourse except in poetry.

NOTE 2. — The verb of *saying*, etc., is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in the general drift of the sentence : as, —

ōrantēs ut urbibus saltem — iam enim agrōs dēplōrātōs esse — opem senātus ferret (Liv. xli. 6), *praying that the senate would at least bring aid to the cities — for the fields [they said] were already given up as lost.*

1. Subject Accusative.

a. 1. The Subject of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse must regularly be expressed, even if it is wanting in the direct : as, —

ōrātor sum, *I am an orator* ; dīcit sē esse ōrātōrem, *he says he is an orator.*

NOTE. — But the subject is often omitted, if easily understood : as, —

ignōscere imprudentiæ dīxit (B. G. iv. 27), *he said he pardoned their rashness.*

¹ Such are : (1) *knowing*, sciō, cōgnōscō, compertum habēō, etc. ; (2) *thinking*, putō, exīstimō, arbitror, etc. ; (3) *telling*, dīcō, nūntiō, referō, polliceor, prōmittō, certiōrem faciō, etc. ; (4) *perceiving*, sentiō, comperiō, vidēō, audiō, etc. So in general any word that denotes thought or mental and visual perception or their expression may govern the Indirect Discourse.

REMARK. — After a relative, or *quam* (*than*), if the verb would be the same as that of the main clause, it is usually omitted, and its subject is attracted into the accusative : *as*, —

tē suspicor eisdem rēbus quibus mē ipsum commovērī (Cat. Maj. i), *I suspect that you are disturbed by the same things as I.*

2. When the verb of *saying*, etc., becomes *passive*, the construction may be either Personal or Impersonal (see § 330. *a-d*).

2. Subordinate Clauses.

b. A subordinate clause *merely explanatory* or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation takes the Indicative : *as*, —

quis neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum potestāte administrārī (Cat. iii. 21), *who can deny that all these things we see are ruled by the power of the gods?*

cūius ingeniō putābat ea quae gesserat, posse celebrārī (Arch. 20), *by whose genius he thought that those deeds which he had done could be celebrated.* [Here the fact expressed by *quae gesserat*, though not explanatory, is felt to be true without regard to the quotation : *quae gessisset* would mean, what Marius *claimed* to have done.]

NOTE. — It often depends merely upon the feeling of the writer whether he shall use the Indicative or Subjunctive in such clauses (cf. §§ 340–342).

c. Clauses introduced by a relative which is equivalent to a demonstrative with a conjunction are not properly subordinate, and hence take the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse : *as*, —

Mārcellus requisisse dicitur Archimēdem illum, quem cum audisset interfectum permolestē tulisse (Verr. iv. 131), *Marcellus is said to have sought for Archimedes, and when he heard that he was slain, to have been greatly distressed.*

ūnumquemque nostrū cēsent philosophī mundī esse partem, ex quō [=et ex eō] illud nātūrā cōnsequī (Fin. iii. 64), *the philosophers say that each one of us is a part of the universe, from which this naturally follows.*

NOTE 1. — Really subordinate clauses occasionally take this construction : *as*, —

quemadmodum sī nōn dedātur obses prō ruptō sē foedus habitūrum, sic deditam inviolātam ad suōs remissūrum (Liv. ii. 13), *[he says] as in case the hostage is not given up he shall consider the treaty as broken, so if given up he will return her unharmed to her friends.*

NOTE 2.—The infinitive construction is regularly continued after a comparative with *quam*: as,—

addit sē prius occisum īrī ab eō quam mē violātum īrī (Att. ii. 20, 2), *he adds that he himself will be killed by him, before I shall be injured.*

NOTE 3.—The Subjunctive with or without *ut* also occurs with *quam* (see § 332. *b*).

d. A subordinate clause in the Indirect Discourse occasionally takes the Indicative when the *fact* is emphasized : as, —

factum eius hostis periculum . . . cum, Cimbris et Teutonibus . . . pulsis,
non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus vidēbā-
tur (B. G. i. 40), *that a trial of this enemy had been made when, etc.,
the army seemed, etc.*

3. Tenses of the Infinitive.

336. A. The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is *present*, *past*, or *future*, with reference to the verb of *saying*, etc., by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced. Thus, —

cadō, *I am falling* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dicit} \\ \text{dixit} \end{array} \right\}$ sē cadere, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he says} \\ \text{he said} \end{array} \right\}$ he $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is} \\ \text{was} \end{array} \right\}$ falling.

cadēbam, *I was falling*
 cecidī, *I fell*
 cecideram, *I had fallen*

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{dīcit} \\ \text{dixit} \end{array} \right\} \text{sē cecidisſe, } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he ſays} \\ \text{he ſaid} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{he was falling,} \\ \text{fell, had fallen.} \end{array}$

cadam, *I shall fall* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dīcit} \\ \text{dīxit} \end{array} \right\}$ sē cāsūrum [esse], $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he says he shall fall.} \\ \text{he said he should fall.} \end{array} \right.$

ceciderō, *I shall have fallen* { dicit fore ut ceciderit [rare], *he says he shall have fallen.*
 dīxit fore ut cecidisset [rare], *he said he should have fallen.*

NOTE 1. — All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct. But sometimes continued or repeated action in past time is expressed by the Present Infinitive, which in such cases stands for the Present Indicative of the Direct Discourse, and is often called the *Imperfect Infinitive* (so regularly after *meminī*): thus, —

tē meminī dīcere, *I remember that you said.* [Direct : dīcēbās.]

NOTE 2. — For various ways of expressing the Future Infinitive, see § 147. c.

4. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

336. B. The tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse follow the rule for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 286). They depend for their sequence on the verb of *saying*, etc., by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced.

Thus in the sentence, **dixit sē Rōmam itūrum ut cōnsulem vidēret**, *he said he should go to Rome in order that he might see the consul*, **vidēret** follows the sequence of **dixit** without regard to the Future Infinitive, **itūrum** [**esse**], on which it directly depends.

NOTE 1. — This rule applies not only to the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, but also to that which stands for the imperative, etc. (see examples in § 339), and to that in questions (§ 338).

NOTE 2. — A subjunctive depending on a Perfect Infinitive is commonly in the Imperfect or Pluperfect, even if the verb of *saying*, etc., is in a primary tense (cf. § 287. i). Thus, —

tantum prōfēcisse vidēmur ut ā Graecīs nē verbōrum quidem cōpiā vince-
rēmur (N. D. i. 8), *we seem to have advanced so far that even in*
fullness of words we ARE not surpassed by the Greeks

a. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are often used in dependent clauses of the Indirect Discourse even when the verb of *saying*, etc., is in a secondary tense : as, —

dicēbant . . . totidem Nervīos (pollicērī) quī longissimē absint (B. G.
ii. 4), *they said that the Nervii, who live farthest off, promised as*
many.

NOTE. — This construction comes from the tendency of language to refer all time in narration to the time of the speaker (*Repraesentātiō*). In the course of a long passage in the Indirect Discourse the tenses of the subjunctive often vary, sometimes following the Sequence, and sometimes affected by *Repraesentātiō*. For examples see B. G. i. 13, vii. 20, etc.

5. Conditions in Indirect Discourse.

337. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows:—

1. The Protasis, being a *subordinate clause*, is always in the Subjunctive.

2. The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive.

a. The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of less vivid future conditions (§ 307. *b*) becomes the Future Infinitive. Thus there is no distinction between more or less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse.

Examples of conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are—

1. Simple Present Condition (§ 306).

(dixit) si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn **praescriberet** quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn **oportere** sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri (B. G. i. 36), *he said that if he did not dictate to the Roman people how they should use their rights, he ought not to be interfered with by the Roman people in the exercise of his rights*. [Direct: si nōn praescribō . . . nōn oportet.]

praedicāvit . . . si pāce ūti **velint**, inīcum **esse**, etc. (B. G. i. 44), *he asserted that if they wished to enjoy peace, it was unfair*, etc. [Direct: si volunt . . . est. Present tense kept by *Repraesentātiō* (§ 336. B. a. note).]

2. Simple Past Condition (§ 306.)

nōn dīcam nē illud quidem si māximē in culpā fuerit Apollōnius, tamen in hominem honestissimae cīvitātis honestissimum tam graviter animadvertī causā indictā nōn **oportuisse** (Verr. v. 20), *I will not say this either, that, even if Apollonius was greatly in fault, still an honorable man ought not to have been punished so severely*, etc. [Direct: si fuit . . . nōn oportuit.]

3. Future Conditions (§ 307).

Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque eīs . . . bellum illātūrum, si in eō **manērent**, quod convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannis **pendere**: si id nōn **fēcissent**, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī **abfutūrum** (B. G. i. 36), *he said that he would not give up the hostages to the Aedui, but would not make war upon them if they observed the agreement, etc., and paid tribute yearly; but if they should not do this, the name of brothers to the Roman people would be far from aiding them*. [Direct: reddam . . . inferam . . . si manēbunt . . . pendent: si nōn fēcierint . . . aberit.]

id Datamēs ut audīvit, sēnsit, si in turbam **exisset** ab homine tam neces-sariō sē relictum, **futūrum** [esse] ut cēterī cōnsilium **sequantur** (Nep. Dat. 6), *if it should get abroad that he had been abandoned by a man so closely connected with him, everybody else would follow his example*. [Direct: si exierit . . . sequentur.]

b. In changing a Condition *contrary to fact* (§ 308) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice:—

1. The Protasis always remains unchanged in tense.
2. If the verb of the Apodosis is *active* it takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in -ūrus with fuisse.
3. If it is *passive* or has no supine stem, the periphrasis futūrum fuisse ut (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used.
4. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes Perfect Infinitive.

Examples are —

nec sē superstitem filiae futūrum fuisse, nisi spem ulciscendae mortis ēius in auxiliō commilitōnum habuisset (Liv. iii. 50), *and that he should not now be a survivor, etc., unless he had had hope, etc.* [Direct: nōn superstes essem, nisi habuissem.]

quōrum sī aetās potuisset esse longīnquior, futūrum fuisse ut omnibus perfectīs artibus hominum vīta ērudirētur (Tusc. iii. 69), *if life could have been longer, human existence would have been embellished by every art in its perfection.* [Direct: ērudita esset.]

sī Cn. Pompēius privātus esset, tamen erat dēligendus (Manil. 50), *if P. were a private citizen, still he ought to be chosen, would become dēligendum fuisse.*

NOTE 1. — In Indirect Discourse Present Conditions contrary to fact are not distinguished in the *apodosis* from Past, but the *protasis* may keep them distinct.

NOTE 2. — The periphrasis futūrum fuisse ut is sometimes used from choice when there is no necessity for resorting to it.

NOTE 3. — Very rarely the Future Infinitive is used in the Indirect Discourse to express the Apodosis of a Present Condition contrary to fact. Only four or five examples of this use occur in classic authors: as, —

Titurius clāmābat sī Caesar adesset neque Carnūtēs, etc., neque Eburōnēs tantā cum contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse (B. G. v. 29), *Titurius cried out that if Caesar were present, neither would the Carnutes, etc., nor would the Eburones be coming to our camp with such contempt.* [Direct: sī adesset . . . venīrent.]

6. Questions in Indirect Discourse.

338. (RULE 84.) In the Indirect Discourse a *real* question, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive: a *rhetorical* question, asked for effect and implying its own answer, in the Infinitive. Thus, —

quid sibi vellet? cūr in suās possēssiōnēs venīret (B. G. i. 44), *what did he want? why did he come into his territories?* [Real question. Direct: quid vīs? cūr venis?]

num recentium iniuriarum memoriam [sē] dēpōnere posse (id. i. 14),
could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs? [Rhetorical Question. Direct : num possum?]

NOTE 1. — No sharp line can be drawn between the Subjunctive and the Infinitive in questions in the Indirect Discourse. Whether the question is to be regarded as *rhetorical* or *real* often depends merely on the writer's point of view. Thus, —

utrum partem rēgnī petītūrum esse, an tōtum ēreptūrum (Liv. xlv. 19),
will you ask part of the regal power (he said), or seize the whole?

NOTE 2. — Questions coming immediately after a verb of *asking* are treated as Indirect Questions and take the Subjunctive (see § 334). This is true even when the verb of asking serves also to introduce a passage in the Indirect Discourse. The question may be either real or rhetorical.

NOTE 3. — For the use of tenses, see § 336. B, note 1.

a. A Deliberative Subjunctive in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect : as, —

cūr aliquōs ex suis āmitteret (B. C. i. 72), *why (thought he) should he lose some of his men?* [Direct : cūr āmittam?]

7. Commands in Indirect Discourse.

339. (RULE 85.) All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse : as, —

reminiscerētur veteris incommodī (B. G. i. 13), *remember (said he) the ancient disaster.* [Direct : reminiscere.]

finem faciat (id. 20), *let him make an end.* [Direct : fac.]

REMARK. — This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the hortatory and the optative subjunctive as well.

NOTE 1. — Though these subjunctives stand for independent clauses of the direct discourse, they follow the rule for the sequence of tenses, being in fact dependent on the verb of *saying*, etc. (cf. §§ 286, 336. B, note 1).

NOTE 2. — A Prohibition in the Indirect Discourse is regularly expressed by *nē* with the Subjunctive, even when *nōlī* with the Infinitive would be used in the Direct : as, —

nē perturbārentur (B. G. vii. 29), *do not (he said) be troubled.* [Direct : nōlīte perturbārī. But sometimes nōllet is found in Ind. Disc.]

The following example illustrates some of the foregoing principles in a connected address : —

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populī Rōmānī, et pristinā virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueret, aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contenderent, aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet. — B. G. i. 13.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū cōstitueris atque esse volueris: sīn bellō persequī persevērābis, reminiscere [inquit] et veteris incommodi populī Rōmānī et pristinā virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum eī quī flūmen trānsierant suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut tuae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueris, aut nōs dēspēxeris: nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostrīs didicimus, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contendāmus, aut insidiīs nītāmur. Quārē nōlī committere, ut hīc locus ubi cōstitimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat, aut memoriam prōdat.

II. INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES.

340. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive, (1) when it expresses the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer (*Informal Indirect Discourse*), or (2) when it is an integral part of a Subjunctive clause or equivalent Infinitive (*Attraction*).

1. Informal Indirect Discourse.

341. (RULE 86.) A subordinate clause takes the subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. Thus, —

a. In Subordinate clauses in formal indirect discourse (§ 336). So also in Informal Indirect Discourse in the following cases: —

b. When the clause depends upon another containing a *wish*, a *command*, or a *question* expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse: as, —

animal sentit quid sit quod deceat (Off. i. 14), *an animal feels what it is that is fit.*

hunc sibi ex animō scrūpulum, quī sē diēs noctēsque stimulet ac pungat, ut ēvellātis postulat (Ros. Am. 6), *he begs you to pluck from his heart this doubt that goads and stings him day and night.*

c. When the main clause of a quotation is merged in the verb of *saying*, or some modifier of it : as, —

sī quid dē hīs rēbus dicere vellet, fēcī potestātem (Cat. iii. 11), *if he wished to say anything about these matters, I gave him a chance.*

tulit dē caede quae in Appiā viā facta esset (Milo 15), *he passed a law concerning the murder which (in the language of the bill) took place in the Appian Way.*

d. When a *reason* or an *explanatory fact* is introduced by a relative or by **quod** (rarely **quia**) (see § 321). Thus, —

Paetus omnēs librōs quōs pater suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit (Att. ii. 1, 12), *Pætus presented me all the books which (he said) his father had left.*

REMARK. — Under this head even what the speaker himself thought elsewhere may have the Subjunctive. So with **quod** the verb of *saying* may be in the Subjunctive. (Especially **nōn quia**, etc. See § 321. Rem.)

2. Subjunctive of Integral Part (Attraction).

342. (RULE 87.) A clause depending on a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded *as an integral part of that clause* : as, —

imperat, dum rēs adiūdicētur, hominem ut adservent : cum iūdicātum sit, ad sē addūcant (Verr. iii. 55), *he orders them, till the affair should be decided, to keep the man ; when he is judged, to bring him to him.*
mōs est Athēnīs laudārī in contiōne eōs quī sint in proeliis interfectī (Or. 151), *it is the custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.* [Here *laudārī* = *ut laudentur*.]

a. But a dependent clause, closely connected *grammatically* with a Subjunctive or Infinitive clause, may still take the Indicative, if it is not regarded as a necessary *logical* part of that clause : as, —

nē hostēs, quod tantum multitudīne poterant, suōs circumvenīre possent (B. G. ii. 8), *lest the enemy, because they were so strong in numbers, should be able to surround his men.*

NOTE. — The use of the Indicative serves to emphasize the *fact*, as true. But often no distinction between the two moods is perceptible.

IMPORTANT RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in Case (§ 183).
2. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles agree with their nouns in *gender*, *number*, and *case* (§ 186).
3. A Relative pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in *gender* and *number*, but its *case* depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands (§ 198).
4. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in *number* and *person* (§ 204).
5. Superlatives (more rarely comparatives) denoting order and succession — also **medius**, **cēterus**, **relicus** — usually designate not *what object*, but *what part of it*, is meant (§ 193).
6. The Personal Pronouns have two forms for the genitive plural, that in **-ūm** being used *partitively*, and that in **-ī** oftenest *objectively* (§ 194. *b*).
7. The Reflexive pronoun (**sē**), and usually the corresponding possessive (**suus**), are used in some part of the predicate to refer to the subject of the sentence or clause (§ 196).
8. The Possessive Pronouns are used instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun: (1) always instead of the *possessive* genitive, (2) rarely instead of an *objective* genitive (§ 197. *a*).
9. A Possessive representing a genitive may have a genitive in apposition (§ 197. *c*).
10. Adverbs are used to modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (§ 207).
11. A question of simple fact, requiring the answer YES or NO, is formed by adding the enclitic **-ne** to the emphatic word (§ 210. *a*).
12. When the enclitic **-ne** is added to a negative word, — as in **nōnne**, — an *affirmative* answer is expected. The particle **num** suggests a *negative* answer (§ 210. *c*).

13. The subject of a finite verb is in the NOMINATIVE (§ 173. a).
14. A noun used to limit or define another, and *not* denoting the same person or thing, is put in the GENITIVE (§ 213).
15. The Subjective Genitive is used with a noun to denote (1) the Author or Owner, (2) the Source or the Material, (3) the Quality (§ 214).
16. Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs (*Partitive Genitive*, § 216).
17. Nouns of *action*, *agency*, and *feeling* govern the genitive of the object (*Objective Genitive*, § 217).
18. Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fulness*, *power*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites; verbals in *āx*, and participles in *-ns*, when used as adjectives, govern the Genitive (§ 218. a, b).
19. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, take the Genitive of the object when they are used of a *continued state of mind*, but the Accusative when used of a *single act* (§ 219).
20. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take the Genitive of the Charge or Penalty (§ 220).
21. The DATIVE is used of the object indirectly affected by an action (*Indirect Object*, § 224).
22. Most verbs signifying to *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their contraries; also, to *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, and *spare*, take the Dative (§ 227).
23. Most verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and some with *circum*, take the Dative of the indirect object (§ 228).
24. Many verbs of *taking away*, and the like, take the Dative (especially of a *person*) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§ 229).
25. The passive of intransitive verbs that govern the dative can be used only *impersonally* (§ 146. d). The dative is retained (cf. § 225. e).

26. The Dative is used with *esse* and similar words to denote Possession (§ 231).
27. The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive, to denote the person on whom the necessity rests (§ 232).
28. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected (§ 233. a).
29. The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few adverbs) of *fitness, nearness, service, inclination*, and their opposites (§ 234. a).
30. The Dative is often required, not by any particular word, but by the general meaning of the sentence (*Dative of Reference*, § 235).
31. The Direct Object of a transitive verb is put in the ACCUSATIVE (§ 237).
32. A neuter verb often takes an accusative of kindred meaning (§ 238).
33. Verbs of *naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing*, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object (§ 239. a).
34. Transitive verbs compounded with prepositions sometimes take (in addition to the direct object) a Secondary Object, originally governed by the preposition (§ 239. b).
35. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* may take two Accusatives, one of the *person*, and the other of the *thing* (§ 239. c).
36. The subject of an Infinitive is in the Accusative (§ 173. 2).
37. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative (§ 240. e).
38. Words signifying *separation* or *privation* are followed by the ABLATIVE, with or without a preposition (*Ablative of Separation*, § 243).
39. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, are followed by the Ablative (§ 243. e).
40. The Ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to denote

the *source* from which anything is derived or the *material* of which it consists (§ 244).

41. The Ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express *cause* (§ 245).
42. **Dignus** and **indignus**; **contentus**, **laetus**, **praeditus**, etc., take the Ablative (§ 245. a).
43. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is put in the Ablative with **ā** or **ab** (§ 246).
44. The Comparative degree is followed by the Ablative (signifying **THAN**) without **quam** (§ 247).
45. The Comparative may be followed by **quam**, *than*. When *quam* is used, the two things compared are put in the same case (§ 247. a).
46. The *manner* of an action is denoted by the Ablative, usually with **cum**, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun (§ 248).
47. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the Ablative, regularly with **cum** (§ 248. a).
48. The Ablative is used to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action (§ 248. c. 1).
49. The deponents, **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vescor**, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative (§ 249).
50. With comparatives and words implying comparison the Ablative is used to denote the *degree of difference* (§ 250).
51. *Quality* is denoted by the Ablative with a modifier, usually an adjective or limiting genitive (§ 251).
52. *Price* is expressed by the Ablative (§ 252).
53. The Ablative of Specification denotes that *in respect to which* anything *is* or *is done* (§ 253).
54. A noun or pronoun, with a participle, may be put in the Ablative, to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action (*Ablative Absolute*).

An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the ablative absolute construction (§ 255. a).

55. Time *when*, or *within which*, is expressed by the Ablative ; time *how long* by the Accusative (§ 256).
56. The place *from which* is denoted by the Ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**; the *place to which* (the end of motion) by the Accusative with **ad** or **in** (§ 258. c).
But names of towns or small islands *from which*, as also **domus** and **rūs**, are put in the Ablative without a preposition (§ 258. a).
So also names of towns or small islands *to which*, as also **domus** and **rūs**, are put in the Accusative without a preposition (§ 258. b).
57. The *place where* is denoted by the Ablative with the preposition in (*Locative Ablative*) ; but names of towns and small islands are put in the Locative Case (§ 258. c).
The Locative Case is also preserved in **domī**, **belli**, **militiæ**, **humī**, **foris**, **rūrī**, **terrā marique** (§ 258. d').
58. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with *est* and similar verbs (1) as the *subject*, (2) in *apposition* with the subject, or (3) as a *predicate nominative* (§ 270).
59. Verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the Infinitive without a subject accusative, (*Complementary Infinitive*, § 271).
60. The Infinitive, with subject accusative, is used with verbs and other expressions of *knowing*, *thinking*, *telling*, and *perceiving* (*Indirect Discourse*, see § 272).
61. The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative, in narration and takes a subject in the Nominative (*Historical Infinitive*, § 275).
62. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. In complex sentences, a *primary* tense in the main clause is followed by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive ; a *secondary* tense by the Imperfect or Pluperfect (§ 286).
63. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time as *present*, *past*, or *future* with respect to the time of the verb on which they depend (§ 288).

64. PARTICIPLES denote time as *present*, *past*, or *future* with respect to the time of the verb in their clause (§ 290).
65. The GERUND and the GERUNDIVE are used, in the oblique cases, in many of the constructions of nouns (§ 297).

For particulars, see §§ 298–301.

66. The Former SUPINE (in *-um*) is used after verbs of *motion* to express Purpose (§ 302).
67. The Latter SUPINE (in *-ū*) is used only with a few adjectives, with the nouns *fās*, *nefās*, and *opus*, and rarely with verbs, to denote an action *in reference to which* the quality is asserted (§ 303).
68. The Hortatory SUBJUNCTIVE is used to express an *exhortation*, a *command*, a *concession*, or a *condition* (§ 266).
69. The Subjunctive is used to express a *wish*. The present tense denotes the wish as *possible*, the imperfect as *unaccomplished* in present time, the pluperfect as *unaccomplished* in past time (*Optative Subjunctive*, § 267).
70. The Subjunctive is used in questions implying *doubt*, *indignation*, or an *impossibility* of the thing being done (*Deliberative Subjunctive*, § 268).
71. Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by *nē* with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive, (2) by *nōlī* with the Infinitive, (3) by *cave* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (§ 269. a).
72. The Potential Subjunctive is used to denote an action not as *actually performed*, but as *possible* (§ 311. a).
73. In both Protasis and Apodosis (1) simple conditions take the present and past tenses of the Indicative; (2) future conditions take the future and future perfect Indicative and the present and perfect Subjunctive; (3) conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect and pluperfect Subjunctive (see §§ 306–311).
74. *Dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, and *tantum*, introducing a PROVISO, take the Subjunctive (§ 314).
75. FINAL clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut* (*utī*),

negative **ne** (**ut nē**), or by a Relative (pronoun or adverb) (§ 317).

76. CONSECUTIVE clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by **ut, so that** (negative, **ut nōn**), or by a Relative (pronoun or adverb) (§ 319).
77. A Relative clause with the Subjunctive expresses a characteristic of the antecedent (§ 320).
78. **Dignus, indignus, aptus, and idōneus** take a clause of result with a relative (rarely with **ut**) (§ 320. *f*).
79. The Causal Particles **quod, quia, and quoniam** take the Indicative when the reason is given on the authority of the *speaker or writer*; the Subjunctive when the reason is given on the authority of *another* (§ 321).
80. **Cum** TEMPORAL, meaning *when*, takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Subjunctive, other tenses in the Indicative (§ 325).
81. **Cum** CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE takes the Subjunctive (§ 326).
82. An Indirect Question takes its verb in the Subjunctive (§ 334).
83. In the INDIRECT DISCOURSE the *main clause* of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive (§ 336. 2).
84. In the Indirect Discourse a *real question* is generally put in the Subjunctive; a *rhetorical question* in the Infinitive (§ 338).
85. All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse (§ 339).
86. A Subordinate clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker (*Informal Indirect Discourse*, § 341).
87. A clause depending on a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an *integral part* of that clause (*Attraction*, § 342).

6. ORDER OF WORDS.

343. The Subject usually stands first in the sentence, the Predicate last. Thus, —

Pausāniās Lacedaemonius māgnus homō sed varius in omnī genere vītæ fuit.

The verb is usually placed *last of all*, after all its modifiers. But it is often made *last but one*, followed by some single word of the predicate.

344. In *connected discourse* the word most prominent in the speaker's mind comes first, and so on in order of prominence, corresponding with the emphasis given in English by a graduated stress of voice.

a. In any phrase the determining and most significant word comes first : as, —

1. Adjective and Noun : —

omnēs hominēs decet, EVERY *man ought* (opposed to some who do not).
Lūcius Catilīna nōbilī genere nātus fuit **māgnā** vī et animī et corporis sed **ingeniō** malō prāvōque (Sall. Cat. 5), *Lucius Catiline was born of a NOBLE family, with GREAT force of mind and body, but with a NATURE that was evil and depraved.* [Here the adjectives in the first part are the emphatic words, no antithesis between the nouns being as yet thought of; but in the second branch the *noun* is meant to be opposed to those before mentioned, and so takes the prominent place.]

2. Word with modifying case : —

lacrīmā nihil citius arēscit (Inv. i. 109), *nothing dries quicker than a TEAR.*
nēmō ferē **laudis** cupidus (De Or. i. 14), *hardly any one desirous of GLORY* (cf. Manil. 7, **avidī** laudis, *EAGER for glory*).

b. Numeral adjectives, adjectives of quantity, demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns, and adverbs usually precede the word or words to which they belong: as, —

cum aliquā perturbātiōne (Off. i. 137), *with SOME disturbance.*
hōc ūnō praeſtāmus (De Or. i. 32), *in THIS one thing we excel.*
cēterae ferē artēs, *the OTHER arts.*

c. When **sum** is used as the Substantive verb (see § 172. note), it regularly stands first, or at any rate before its subject : as, —

est viri māgnī pūnīre sontēs (Off. i. 82), *it is the duty of a great man to punish the guilty.*

d. The verb may come first, or have a prominent position either (1) because the *idea* in it is emphatic : as, —

dicēbat idem Cotta (Off. ii. 59), *Cotta used to SAY the same thing* (opposed to others' *boasting*).

idem **fēcit** adulēscēns M. Antōnius (id. ii. 49), *the same thing was DONE by M. Antonius in his youth.* [Opposed to **dixi** just before.]

(2) or because the *statement of the idea* is emphatic : as, —

nisi forte **erunt** digni calamitāte (Off. ii. 62), *unless perchance they REALLY DESERVE their misfortune.*

praesertim cum **scribat** (Panaetius) (id. iii. 8), *especially when he DOES SAY* (in his books). [Opposed to something omitted by him.]

(3) or because the *tense* only is emphatic : as, —

fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium (Æn. ii. 325), *we have ceased to be Trojans, Troy is now no more.*

e. Often the connection of two emphatic phrases is brought about by giving the precedence to the most prominent part of each and leaving the less prominent to follow in inconspicuous places : as, —

plūrēs solent esse causae (Off. i. 28), *there are USUALLY SEVERAL reasons.*

quōs āmisimus civīs eōs Mārtis vīs perculit (Marc. 17), *WHAT fellow-citizens we have LOST, have been stricken down by the violence of war.*

māximās tibi omnēs grātiās agimus (Marc. 33), *we ALL render you the WARMEST thanks.*

f. Antithesis between two pairs of ideas is indicated either (1) by placing the pairs in the same order (*anaphora*) or (2) in exactly the opposite order (*chiasmus*).

(1) **rērum cōpia** verbōrum cōpiam gignit (De Or. iii. 125), *ABUNDANCE of MATTER produces COPIOUSNESS of EXPRESSION.*

(2) **lēgēs** supplicio improbōs afficiunt, dēfendunt ac tuentur bonōs (Leg. ii. 13), *the laws VISIT PUNISHMENTS upon the WICKED, but the GOOD they DEFEND and PROTECT.*

g. A modifier of a phrase or some part of it is often embodied within the phrase (cf. a) : as, —

dē commūni hominum memoriā (Tusc. i. 59), *in regard to the UNIVERSAL memory of man.*

h. A favorite order with the poets is the *interlocked*, by which the attribute of one pair comes between the parts of another: as, —

et superiectō pavidæ nātārunt aequore dāmae (Hor. Od. i. 2. 11).

i. Frequently unimportant words follow in the train of more emphatic ones with which they are grammatically connected, and so acquire a prominence out of proportion to their importance: as, —

dictitābat sē hortulōs aliquōs emere velle (Off. iii. 58), *gave out that he wanted to buy some gardens.* [Here *aliquōs* is less emphatic than *emere*, but precedes it on account of the emphasis on *hortulōs*.]

j. The copula is generally felt to be of so little importance that it may come in anywhere where it sounds well; but usually under cover of more emphatic words: as, —

cōsul ego quæsiṽ, cum vōs mihi essētis in cōsiliō (R. P. iii. 28), *as consul I held an investigation in which you attended me in council.*
falsum est id tōtum (id. ii. 28), *that is all false.*

k. Many expressions have acquired an invariable order: as, —
rēs pūblica; populus Rōmānus; honōris causā; pāce tantī virī.

NOTE. — Thus, *senātus populusque Rōmānus* (S. P. Q. R.) originally stated with emphasis the official bodies, but became fixed so as to be the only permissible form of expression.

l. The Romans had a fondness for emphasizing persons, so that a name or a pronoun often stands in an unduly emphatic place: as, —

[dixit] vēnālīs quidem sē hortōs nōn habēre (Off. iii. 58), [said] *that he didn't have any gardens for sale, to be sure.*

m. Kindred words, as in *figūra etymologica*, often come together: ita sēnsim sine sēnsū aetās senēscit (C. M. 38), *thus gradually, without being perceived, man's life grows old.*

SPECIAL RULES.

345. The following are special rules of arrangement:—

a. 1. Prepositions (except **tenus** and **versus**) regularly precede their nouns; 2. but a monosyllabic preposition is often placed between a noun and its adjective or limiting genitive: as, —

quem ad modum; quam ob rem; māgnō cum metū; omnibus cum cōpiīs; nūlla in rē (cf. § 344. *i*).

b. **Itaque** regularly comes first in its sentence or clause; **enim**, **autem**, **vērō**, **quoque**, never first, but usually second, sometimes third

if the second word is emphatic ; **quidem**, never first, but after the emphatic word ; **nē . . . quidem** include the emphatic word or words.

c. **Inquam**, **inquit** are always used parenthetically, following one or more words. So, often, **crēdō**, **opīnor**, and in poetry **precor**.

d. The negative precedes the word it especially affects ; but if it belongs to no one word in particular, it generally precedes the verb ; if it is especially emphatic, it begins the sentence.

e. In the arrangement of clauses, the relative clause often comes first in Latin, and, if so, usually contains the antecedent noun : as, —

quōs āmīsimus cīvīs, eōs Mārtis vīs perculit (Marc. 17), *those citizens whom we have lost, etc.*

STRUCTURE OF THE PERIOD.

NOTE. — Latin, unlike modern languages, expresses the relation of words to each other by *inflection* rather than by *position*. Hence its structure not only admits of great variety in the arrangement of words, but is especially favorable to that form of sentence which is called a Period. In a period, the sense is expressed by the sentence *as a whole*, and is held in suspense till the delivery of the last word.

An English sentence does not often exhibit this form of structure. It was imitated, sometimes with great skill and beauty, by many of the earlier writers of English prose ; but its effect is better seen in poetry, in such a passage as the following : —

“ High on a throne of royal state, which far
Outshone the wealth of Ormus and of Ind,
Or where the gorgeous East, with richest hand,
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,
Satan exalted sat.” — *Paradise Lost*, Book II. 1-5.

But in argument or narrative, the best English writers more commonly give short, clear sentences, each distinct from the rest, and saying one thing by itself. In Latin, on the contrary, the story or argument is viewed as a whole ; and the logical relation among all its parts is carefully indicated. Hence, —

346. In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed : —

a. In general the main subject or object is put in the main clause, not in a subordinate one (according to § 344) : as, —

Hannibal cum recēnsuisset auxilia Gādēs profectus est, *when Hannibal had reviewed, etc.*

b. Clauses are usually arranged in the order of prominence in the mind of the speaker; so, usually, *cause* before *result*; *purpose*, *manner*, and the like, before the *act*.

c. In co-ordinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (*asyndeton*). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words.

d. A change of subject, when required, is marked by the introduction of a pronoun, if the new subject has already been mentioned. But such change is often purposely avoided by a change in structure, — the less important being merged in the more important by the aid of participles or of subordinate phrases: as, —

quem ut barbari incendium effūgisse vidērunt, tēlis ēminus ēmissis interfēcērunt, *when the barbarians saw that he had escaped, THEY threw darts at HIM and killed HIM.*

celeriter cōfectō negōtiō, in hiberna legiōnēs revertērunt, *the matter was soon finished, AND the legions, etc.*

e. So the repetition of a noun, or the substitution of a pronoun for it, is avoided, unless a different case is required: as, —

dolōrem sī nōn poterō frangere occultābō, *if I cannot conquer the pain, I will hide IT.* [Cf. *if I cannot conquer, I will hide the pain.*]

f. The Romans were careful to close a period with an agreeable succession of long and short syllables. Thus, —

quod scīs nihil prōdest, quod nescīs multum obest (Or. 166), *what you know is of no use, what you do not know does great harm.*

Vowel before another vowel or h short.
 Diphthong long
 vowel formed by contraction long.
 over though short followed by 2
 consonants long syllable

PART THIRD.—PROSODY (RULES OF VERSE).

cheu dius and o he

1. QUANTITY.

1. General Rules.

347. The following are General Rules of Quantity (cf. § 18) :—

a. VOWEL. A vowel before another vowel or h is short : as, vīa, trāhō.

EXCEPTIONS. ¹ *i.* In the genitive form -ius, i is long, except usually in alterius. Thus, utrius, nūlius. It is, however, sometimes made short in verse (§ 83. *b*).

² *2.* In the genitive and dative singular of the fifth declension, e is long between two vowels : as, dīei ; but it is short in fidēi, rēi, spēi ; a is long before i in the old genitive of the first declension : as, aulāi.

³ *3.* In the conjugation of fiō, i is long except when followed by er. Thus, fiō, fiēbam, fiam, but fieri, fierem ; so, also, fit.

⁴ *4.* In many Greek words the vowel in Latin represents a long vowel or diphthong, and retains its original long quantity : as, Trōēs (Τρῳῆς), Thalīa (Θαλέα), hērōās (ἡρώας), āer (ἄηρ).

⁵ *5.* In cheu and dius, and sometimes in Dīāna and ōhe, the first vowel is long.

⁶ *b.* DIPHTHONG. A Diphthong is long : as, foedus, cūi, dēinde.

EXCEPTION. The preposition prae in compounds is generally shortened before a vowel : as, prae-ūstis (Æn. vii. 524), prae-eunte (id. v. 186).

⁷ *c.* CONTRACTION. A vowel formed by contraction (*crasis*) is long : as, nīl, from nīhil ; currūs, genitive for curruis.

But often two syllables are united by Synæresis without contraction : as when pāriētībūs is pronounced paryētībus.

⁸ *d.* POSITION. A vowel, though short, followed by two consonants or a double consonant, makes a long syllable : as, adventus, cortex.

But if the two consonants are a mute followed by l or r, the syllable may be either long or short (*common*) ; as, alacris or alācris ; patris or pātris.

NOTE 1. — Any vowel before i consonant makes a long syllable (except in bliugis, quādrliugis).

NOTE 2. — The compounds of iaciō, though written with one i, commonly retain the long vowel of the prepositions with which they are compounded, as if before a consonant, and lengthen the short as if by Position. (But how the syllables were pronounced is uncertain.) Thus, —

obis hosti (at the end of a hexameter, Æn. iv. 549).

inicit et saltū (at the beginning of a hexameter, Æn. ix. 552).

prōice tēla manū (at the beginning of a hexameter, Æn. vi. 836).

REMARK. — The y or w sound resulting from synæresis has the effect of a consonant in making position : as, abietis (abyetis), fluviōrum (fluviōrum). Conversely, when the semivowel becomes a vowel, position is lost : as, silvæ, for silvæ.

Final Syllables.

348. The Quantity of Final Syllables is determined by the following Rules : —

1. Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long : as, mē, tū, hī, nē.

The attached particles -nē, -quē, -vē, -cē, -ptē, and rē (rēd-) are short ; sē is long. Thus, sēcēdit, exercitumquē rēducit. But rē is often long in rēligiō (relligiō), rētuli (rettuli), rēpuli (reppuli).

2. Nouns and adjectives of one syllable are long : as, sōl, ōs (ōris), bōs, pār, vīs.

EXCEPTIONS. cōr (sometimes long), fēl, lāc, mēl, ōs (ossis), vīr, tōt, quōt.

3. Most monosyllabic Particles are short : as, ān, īn, cīs, nēc. But āc, crās, cūr, ēn, nōn, quīn, sīn — with adverbs in c : as, hīc, hūc, sīc — are long.

4. Final a in words declined by cases is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension ; in all other words final a is long. Thus, eā stellā (nom.), cum eā stellā (abl.) ; frūstrā, vocā (imperat.), postea, trīgintā.

EXCEPTIONS. ēiā, itā, quā, putā (*suppose*) : and, in late use, trīgintā, etc.

5. Final e is short, as in nūbē, dūcītē, saepē. Except —

1. In nouns of the fifth declension : as, fidē (also famē), hodiē (hoi diē), quārē (quā rē).

2. In Greek neuters plural of the second declension : as, cētē.

3. In adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declension, with others of like form : as, altē, miserē, apertē, saepisimē. So, ferē, fermē, probably of same origin.

4. In the imperative singular of the second conjugation : as, vidē.

EXCEPTIONS. To 3 : benē, malē; infernē, supernē. To 4 : sometimes, cavē, habē, tacē, valē, vidē.

6. Final i is long : as in turri, filī, audī.

But it is common in mīhi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi; and short in nisi, quasi, cuī (when making two syllables), and in Greek vocatives, as Alexī.

7. Final o is common; but long in datives and ablatives, also, almost invariably, in verbs, and in nouns of the third declension.

EXCEPTIONS. citō, modō (adverb), ilicō, profectō, dummodō, immō, egō, duō, octō.

8. Final u is long. Final y is short.

9. Final as, es, os, are long; final is, us, ys, are short; as. nefās, rūpēs, servōs (acc.), honōs; hostis, amicūs, Tethys.

EXCEPTIONS. as is short in Greek plural accusatives, as lampadās; and in anās.

es is short in nouns of the third declension (lingual) having a short vowel in the stem¹: as, mīlēs (-ītis), obsēs (-īdis), — except abiēs, ariēs, pariēs, pēs; in the present of esse (ēs, adēs); in the preposition penēs, and in the plural of Greek nouns, as hērōēs, lampadēs.

os is short in compōs, impōs; in the Greek nominative ending, as barbitōs; also, in the old nominative ending of the second declension, as servōs (later, servus).

is in plural cases is long, as in bonis, nōbis, vōbis, omnis (accusative plural).

is is long in fis, sīs, vīs (with quīvis, etc.), velis, mālīs, nōlīs; in the second person singular of the fourth conjugation, as audīs and sometimes in the forms in -eris (perfect subjunctive).

¹ The quantity of the stem-vowel may be seen in the genitive singular.

us is long (by contraction) in the genitive singular and nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension ; and in nouns of the third declension having **ū** (long) in the stem : as, **virtūs** (-**ūtis**), **incūs** (-**ūdīs**). But, **pecūs**, -**ūdīs**.

10. Of other final syllables, those ending in a consonant, except **-c**, are short. Thus, **amāt**, **amātūr** ; but, **istūc**, **ālēc**.

EXCEPTIONS. **dōnēc**, **făc**, **nēc**, sometimes **hīc** ; **āēr**, **aethēr**, **crătēr**, **liēn**, **splēn**.

3. Penultimate Syllables.

349. A noun or adjective is said to *increase*, when in any case it has more syllables than in the nominative singular.

A verb is said to increase, when in any part it has more syllables than in the stem. Thus, **amā-tis** (stem, **amā-**), **tegi-tis** (stem, **tege-**), **capi-unt** (stem, **capi-**).

In such words as **stellārum**, **corpōris**, **amātis**, **tegītis**, the penultimate syllable is called the *increment*. In **itīnērībus**, **amāvērītis**, the syllables with the quantities marked are called the first, second, and third increments of the noun or verb.

NOTE. — In such words as **Iūppiter**, **Iōvis** ; **senex**, **sēnis**, the syllables whose vowel-quantity is marked are called increments. These forms must be referred to lost nominatives from the same stems. So **itineribus** has really only two increments as from **titinus**.

350. In increments of Nouns and Adjectives, **a** and **o** are generally *long* ; **e**, **i**, **u**, **y**, generally *short* : as, —

aetās, **aetātis** ; **honor**, **honōris** ; **servos**, **servōrum** ; **opus**, **opēris** ; **carmen**, **carminis** ; **murmur**, **murmūris** ; **pecus**, **pecūdīs** ; **chlamys**, **chlamydis**. Exceptions are —

a : short in **baccar** (-**āris**), **hēpar** (-**ātis**), **iubar** (-**āris**), **lār** (-**lāris**), **mās** (**māris**), **nectar** (-**āris**), **pār** (**pāris**), **sāl** (**sālis**), **vas** (**vādis**), **đaps** (**đāpis**), **fax** (**fācis**), **anthrax** (-**ācis**).

o : short in neuters of the third declension (except **ōs**, **ōris**) : as, **corpus** (-**ōris**) ; also in **arbor** (-**ōris**), **scrobs** (**scrōbis**), **ops** (**ōpis**), **bōs** (**bōvis**), **memor** (-**ōris**), **Iūppiter** (**Iōvis**), **Hector** (-**ōris**), and compounds of **-pūs** (as, **tripūs**, **-pōdis**).

e: long in increments of fifth declension: as, **diēs**, **diēi**; also in **hērēs** (-ēdis), **lēx** (lēgis), **locuplēs** (-ētis), **mercēs** (-ēdis), **plēbs** (plēbis), **quiēs** (-ētis), **rēx** (rēgis), **vēr** (vēris), **crātēr** (-ēris). But see § 347. 2.

i: long in most nouns and adjectives in **ix**: as, **fēlicia**, **rādicis** (except **filix**, **nix**, **strix**); also in **dīs** (dītis), **glis** (gliris), **lis** (lītis), **vis** (virēs), **Quiritēs**, **Samnitēs**.

u: long in forms from nouns in -ūs: as, **palūs**, **palūdis**; **tellūs**, **tellūris**; **virtūs**, **virtūtis**; also in **lūx**, **lūcis**; [**frūx**], **frūgis**; **fūr**, **fūris**.

351. In the increment of Verbs the characteristic vowels are as follows: —

1. In the first conjugation **ā**: as, **amāre**, **amātur**.
2. In the second conjugation **ē**: as, **monēre**, **monētur**.
3. In the third conjugation **ě**, **ī**: as, **tegěre**, **tegitur**.
4. In the fourth conjugation **ī**: as, **audire**, **auditur**.

EXCEPTION. **dō** and its compounds have **ă**: as, **dăre**, **circumdăbat**.

a. In other verbal increments (not stem-vowels) —

a is always long: as, **moneāris**, **tegāmus**.

e is long: as, **tegēbam**, **audiēbar**.

NOTE. — But **e** is short before -ram, -rim, -rō; in the future personal endings -bēris, -bēre; and sometimes in the perfect -ērunt (as, **stētērunque comae**, Æn. ii. 774).

i is long in forms which follow the analogy of the fourth conjugation: as, **petivī**, **laccessitus** (in *others*, short: as, **monitus**); also in the subjunctive present of **esse** and **velle** (**simus**, **velimus**); and (rarely) in the endings -rimus, -ritis. It is short in the future forms **amābitis**, etc.

o is found only in imperatives, and is long: as, **monētōte**, etc.

u is short in **sūmus**, **volūmus**, **quaesūmus**; in the Supine and its derivatives it is long: as, **solūtūrus**.

b. Perfects and Supines of two syllables lengthen the first syllable: as, **iūvī**, **iūtum** (iūvō), **vidī**, **visum** (videō); **fūgī** (fūgiō).

EXCEPTIONS. **bībī**, **dēdī**, **fīdī**, **scīdī**, **stētī**, **stītī**, **tūlī**; — **cītum**, **dātum**, **ītum**, **lītum**, **quītum**, **rātum**, **rūtum**, **sātum**, **sītum**, **stātum**. In some compounds of **stō**, **stātum** is found long, as **prōstātum**.

c. In reduplicated perfects the vowel of the reduplication is short ; the following syllable is, also, usually short : as, *cēcīdī* (*cădō*), *didīcī* (*discō*), *pūpūgī* (*pungō*), *cūcurrī* (*currō*), *tētendī* (*tendō*), *mōmordī* (*mordeō*). But, *cēcīdī* from *caedō*, *pepēdī* from *pēdō*.

352. The following terminations are generally preceded by a long vowel : —

1. *-brum*, *-crum*, *-trum* : as, *lāvācrum*, *dēlūbrum*, *vērātrum*.
2. *-na*, *-ne*, *-nis* : as, *carīna*, *māne*, *inānis*.
3. *-re*, *-ris*, *-ta*, *-tis* : as, *altāre*, *sālūtāris*, *mōnēta*, *immītis*.

353. The following terminations are preceded by a short vowel : —

1. *-cus*, *-dus* (with some exceptions), *-lus* : as, *rūstīcus*, *cālīdus*, *glādiōlus*.
2. *-tās* (in nouns), *-ter* and *-tus* (in adverbs) : as, *cīvītās*, *fortīter*, *pēnītus*.
3. *-culus*, *-cellus*, *-lentus*, *-tūdō* : as, *fascīcūlus*, *ōcellus*, *lūcūlentus*, *māgnītūdō*.

354. Rules for the quantity of Derivatives are —

a. Forms from the same STEM regularly have the same quantity : as, *āmō*, *āmāvistī* ; *gēnus*, *gēneris*.

b. COMPOUNDS retain the quantity of the words which compose them : as, *oc-cīdō* (*cădō*), *oc-cīdō* (*caedō*), *in-īcus* (*aecus*).


2. RHYTHM.


1. Measures.

355. Rhythm consists in the recurrence in musical sound of accent at regular intervals. These intervals are called MEASURES or FEET.

The most natural measures of musical time consist of either two or three equal parts. But the ancients also distinguished measures of five parts.




REMARK. — In poetry these intervals are taken up by enunciated syllables which in Latin have a definite length or quantity.

a. The unit of length in Prosody is *one short syllable*. This is called a MORA. It is represented by the sign \cup , or may be represented in musical notation by the *quaver* ()




b. A long syllable is regularly equal to two *moræ*, and is represented by the sign — , or may be represented by the *crotchet* ()

356. The measures most frequently employed in Latin verse, together with their musical notation, are the following:—

a. TRIPLE OR UNEQUAL MEASURES ($\frac{3}{8}$).

1. TROCHEE ($\text{—} \cup$ = ): as, *rēgēs*.
2. IAMBUS ($\cup \text{—}$ = ): as, *dūcēs*.
3. TRIBRACH ($\cup \cup \cup$ = ): as, *hōmīnēs*.

b. DOUBLE OR EQUAL MEASURES ($\frac{2}{4}$).

1. DACTYL ($\text{—} \cup \cup$ = ): as, *cōnsūlīs*.
2. ANAPÆST ($\cup \cup \text{—}$ = ): as, *mōnītōs*.
3. SPONDEE ($\text{—} \text{—}$ = ): as, *rēgēs*.

For the more complex measures, see larger grammar.

357. In most cases measures of the same time may be substituted for each other, a long syllable taking the place of two short ones, or two short ones the place of one long one. Thus, a Spondee ($\text{—} \text{—}$) may take the place of a Dactyl ($\text{—} \cup \cup$).

2. The Musical Accent.

358. That part of the measure which receives the *stress of voice* (the musical accent) is called the THESIS; the unaccented part is called the ARSIS.

a. The stress of voice laid upon the Thesis is called the ICTUS (*beat*). It is marked thus: $\text{—} \cup \cup$.

b. The ending of a word within a measure is called *CÆSŪRA*. When this coincides with a rhetorical pause, it is called *the Cæsura* of the verse, and is of main importance as affecting the melody or rhythm

3. VERSIFICATION.

THE VERSE.

359. A single line of poetry — that is, a series of measures (feet) set in a known order — is called a *VERSE*.

a. A verse lacking a syllable at the end is called *CATALECTIC*, that is, having a pause to fill the measure ; when the end syllable is not lacking, the verse is called *ACATALECTIC*, and has no such pause.

b. To divide the verse into its appropriate measures, according to the rules of quantity and versification, is called *scanning* or *scansion* (*scānsiō*, from *scandō*, a *climbing* or advance by steps).

REMARK. — In *reading* verse rhythmically, care should be taken to preserve the measure or time of the syllables, but at the same time not to destroy or confuse the words themselves, as is often done in *scanning*.

c. In scanning, a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word (unless an interjection) is partially suppressed when the next word begins with a vowel or with *h*. This is called *ELISION*.

In reading it is usual entirely to suppress elided syllables. Strictly, however, they should be sounded lightly.

d. A final -m, with the preceding vowel, is suppressed in like manner when the next word begins with a vowel or *h*: this is called *ECTHLIPSIS*: as, —

mōnstrum horrendum, informē, ingēns, cui lūmen ademptum.
—Æn. iii. 658.

e. Elision is sometimes omitted when a word ending in a vowel has a special emphasis, or is succeeded by a pause. This omission is called *HIATUS*. In such cases the final vowel is sometimes shortened.

f. A final syllable, regularly short, is sometimes lengthened before a pause: it is then said to be long by *Diastolē*: as, —

nostrōrum obruimur, — oriturque miserrima caedēs.

g. The last syllable of a verse may be either long or short.

FORMS OF VERSE.

360. A verse receives its name from its dominant or fundamental measure ; as, *Dactylic, Iambic, Trochaic, Anapæstic*; and from the number of measures (single or double) which it contains : as, *Hexameter, Tetrameter, Trimeter, Dimeter*.

REMARK. — Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapæstic verses are measured not by single feet, but by pairs (*dipodia*), so that six Iambi make a *Trimeter*.

361. A Stanza, or Strophe, consists of a definite number of verses ranged in a fixed order.

1. Dactylic Hexameter.

362. The Dactylic Hexameter, or *Heroic Verse*, consists theoretically of six dactyls. It may be represented thus :—

⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ || ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏

or in musical notation as follows :—

|| ♩ || ♩ || ♩ || ♩ || ♩ || ♩ || ♩ ~|

a. For any one of the feet, except the fifth, a spondee may be substituted. The last foot is a trochee standing for a dactyl, but the final syllable is not measured, and the foot is called a spondee.

Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth place ; the verse is then called *spondaic*. Thus in Ecl. iv. 49 the verse ends with *incrēmentum*.

b. The hexameter has always one *principal cæsura* — sometimes two — almost always accompanied by a pause in the sense.

The principal cæsura is usually *after the thesis* (masculine), less commonly *in the arsis* (feminine) of the third foot, dividing the verse into two parts.

It may also be *after the thesis* (less commonly *in the arsis*) of the fourth foot. In this case there is often another cæsura in the second foot, so that the verse is divided into three parts instead of two : as, —

partē fē | rōx || ār | dēnsquē ōcū | līs || et | sībīlā | collā. — *Æn.* v. 277.

REMARK. — Often the only indication of the *principal* among a number of cæsuras is the break in the sense.

c. The introductory verses of the *Æneid*, divided according to the foregoing rules, will appear as follows. The principal cæsura in each verse is marked by double lines : —

Armă vî | rumquē cǎ | nō || Trō | iae quī | primūs āb | ōrīs
 Îtālî | am fā | tō prǒfŭ | gus || Lā | vînăquē | vĕnît
 litōră, | multum ille | et ter | ris || iac | tātŭs ăt | altō
 vî sŭpĕ | rūm sae | vae || mĕmō | rem Iū | nōnīs ōb | irām ;
 multă quō | quē et bel | lō pas | sus || dum | condĕrĕt | urbĕm,
 īfer | retquē dĕ | ōs Lătî | ō, || gĕnŭs | undĕ Lă | tĭnum,
 Albă | nîquē pǎ | trēs, || at | quē altae | moĕnĭă | Rōmae.

The *feminine cæsura* is seen in the following : —

Dīs gĕnĭ | tī pōtŭ | ĕrĕ : || tĕ | nent mĕdĭ | a omnă | silvae.

— *Æn. vi. 131.*

2. Elegiac Stanza.

363. The Elegiac Stanza consists of two lines, — an hexameter followed by a pentameter.¹

The Pentameter verse is the same as the hexameter, except that it omits the last half of the third foot and of the sixth foot. Thus, —

— ∞ | — ∞ | — ∞ || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∞
 ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ~ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ♪ | ♪ ~

a. The Pentameter verse is thus to be scanned as *two half-verses*, the second of which always consists of two dactyls followed by a single syllable.

b. The Pentameter has no Cæsura ; but the first half-verse must always end with a word, followed by a pause to complete the measure.²

c. The following verses will illustrate the forms of the Elegiac Stanza : —

¹ Called *pentameter* by the old grammarians, who divided it, formally, into five feet (two dactyls or spondees, a spondee, and two anapæsts), as follows : —

— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ||

² The time of this pause, however, may be filled by the *protraction* of the preceding syllable : thus, —

— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∞

cum sūbīt | illī | us trīs | tissīmā | noctīs ī | māgō
 quā mīhī | suprē | mum ̸ || tempūs īn | urbē fū |īt,
 cum rēpē | tō noc | tem quā | tot mīhī | cārā rē | liquī,
 lābītūr | ex ōcū | līs ̸ || nunc quōquē | guttā mē |īs.
 iam prōpē | lūx ādē | rat quā | mē dis | cēdērē | Caesar
 fīnībūs | extrē | mae ̸ || iūssērāt | Ausōnī | ae.

— OVID, *Trist.* i. 3.

364-375. For these sections showing other forms of verse, and for the metres of Horace, see the larger grammar.

MISCELLANEOUS.

I. RECKONING OF TIME.

NOTE.—The Roman Year was designated, in earlier times, by the names of the Consuls; but was afterwards reckoned from the building of the City (*ab urbe conditā, annō urbis conditæ*), the date of which was assigned by Varro to a period corresponding with B.C. 753. In order, therefore, to reduce Roman dates to those of the Christian era, *the year of the city is to be subtracted from 754*: e.g. A.U.C. 691 = B.C. 63.

Before Cæsar's reform of the Calendar (B.C. 46), the Roman year consisted of 355 days; March, May, Quīntilis (July), and October having each 31 days; February having 28, and each of the remainder 29. The "Julian year," by Cæsar's reformed Calendar, had 365 days, divided into months as at present. Every fourth year the 24th of February (vi. kal. Mārt.) was counted twice, giving 29 days to that month: hence the year was called *Bissextilis*. The month Quīntilis received the name *Iūlius* (July), in honor of Julius Cæsar; and Sextilis was called *Augustus* (August), in honor of his successor. The Julian year (see below) remained unchanged till the adoption of the Gregorian Calendar.

376. Dates, according to the Roman Calendar, are reckoned as follows:—

- The *first* day of the month was called **Kalendæ** (*Calends*).
- On the *fifteenth* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *thirteenth* of the others, were the **Idūs** (*Ides*), the day of Full Moon.
- On the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *fifth* of the other months, were the **Nōnæ** (*Nones or ninths*).
- From the three points thus determined, the days of the month were reckoned *backwards*, as so many days before the, *Nones*, the *Ides*, or the *Calends*. The point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning, the *second* day being *three* days before, etc.:—

Hence if the given date be Calends, add two to the number of days in the month preceding, — if Nonēs or Ides, add one to that of the day on which they fall; — and from this sum subtract the given date : thus, —

viii. Kal. Feb. (33-8) = Jan. 25.

iv. Nōn. Mār. (8-4) = Mar. 4.

iv. Id. Sept. (14-4) = Sept. 10.

e. The days of the Roman month by the Julian Calendar, as thus ascertained, are given in the following Table : —

<i>January.</i>	<i>February.</i>	<i>March.</i>	<i>April.</i>
1. KAL. IAN.	KAL. FEB.	KAL. MĀRTIAE	KAL. APRĪLĒS
2. IV. Nōn. Iān.	IV. Nōn. Feb.	VI. Nōn. Mārt.	IV. Nōn. Apr.
3. III. " "	III. " "	V. " "	III. " "
4. prid. " "	prid. " "	IV. " "	prid. " "
5. NŌN. IĀN.	NŌN. FEB.	III. " "	NŌN. APRILĒS
6. VIII. Id. Iān.	VIII. Id. Feb.	prid. " "	VIII. Id. Apr.
7. VII. " "	VII. " "	NŌN MĀRTIAE	VII. " "
8. VI. " "	VI. " "	VIII. Id. Mārt.	VI. " "
9. V. " "	V. " "	VII. " "	V. " "
10. IV. " "	IV. " "	VI. " "	IV. " "
11. III. " "	III. " "	V. " "	III. " "
12. prid. " "	prid. " "	IV. " "	prid. " "
13. IDŪS IĀN.	IDŪS FEB.	III. " "	IDŪS APRĪLĒS.
14. XIX. Kal. Feb.	XVI. Kal. Mārtiās	prid. " "	XVIII. Kal. Māiās.
15. XVIII. " "	XV. " "	IDŪS MĀRTIAE	XVII. " "
16. XVII. " "	XIV. " "	XVII. Kal. Aprīlis.	XVI. " "
17. XVI. " "	XIII. " "	XVI. " "	XV. " "
18. XV. " "	XII. " "	XV. " "	XIV. " "
19. XIV. " "	XI. " "	XIV. " "	XIII. " "
20. XIII. " "	X. " "	XIII. " "	XII. " "
21. XII. " "	IX. " "	XII. " "	XI. " "
22. XI. " "	VIII. " "	XI. " "	X. " "
23. X. " "	VII. " "	X. " "	IX. " "
24. IX. " "	VI. " "	IX. " "	VIII. " "
25. VIII. " "	V. " "	VIII. " "	VII. " "
26. VII. " "	IV. " "	VII. " "	VI. " "
27. VI. " "	III. " "	VI. " "	V. " "
28. V. " "	prid. " "	V. " "	IV. " "
29. IV. " "	[prid Kal Mārt.	IV. " "	III. " "
30. III. " "	in leap-year, the	III. " "	prid. " "
31. prid. " "	vi. Kal.(24th) being prid.	" "	(So June, Sept.,
(So. Aug., Dec.)	counted twice.]	(So May, July, Oct.)	Nov.)

NOTE. — Observe that a date before the Julian Reform (B.C. 46) would be found not by the above table, but by taking the earlier reckoning of the number of days in the month.

II. MEASURES OF VALUE, ETC.

377. The money of the Romans was in early times wholly of copper. The unit was the *ās*, nominally a pound in weight, but actually somewhat less. It was divided into twelve *unciae* (*ounces*).

In the third century B.C. the *ās* was gradually reduced to one-half of its original value. In the same century silver coins were introduced, — the *Dēnārius* = 10 asses; and the *Sēstertius* = $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses.

378. The Sestertius was probably introduced at a time when the *ās* had been so far reduced that the value of the new coin ($2\frac{1}{2}$ asses) was equivalent to the original value of the *ās*. Hence, the Sestertius (usually abbreviated to IIS or HS) came to be used as the unit of value, and *nummus*, *coin*, often means simply *sēstertius*. As the reduction of the standard went on, the sestertius became equivalent to 4 asses. Gold was introduced later, the *aureus* being equal to 100 sesterces. The value of these coins is seen in the following table: —

$2\frac{1}{2}$ asses	= 1 sēstertius or nummus (HS),	value nearly 5 cents.
10 asses or 4 sēstertii	= 1 dēnārius	“ “ 20 cents.
1000 sēstertii	= 1 sēstertium	“ “ \$50.00.

NOTE. — The word *sēstertius* is a shortened form of *sēmis-tertius*, *the third one, a half*. The abbreviation IIS or HS = *duo et sēmis*, $2\frac{1}{2}$, *two and a half*.

379. The *Sēstertium* (probably originally the genitive plural of *sēstertius*) was a sum of money, not a coin; the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun: thus, *tria sēstertia* = \$150.00.

When *sēstertium* was combined with a numeral adverb, *centēna milia* (*hundreds of thousands*) was originally understood: thus *deciens sēstertium* (*deciens HS*) = \$50,000. But later *sēstertium* was inflected as a neuter singular, as *deciens sēstertiō*, etc..

In the statement of large sums *sēstertium* is often omitted: thus *sexāgiens* (Rosc. Am. 2) signifies, *sexāgiens [centēna milia] sēstertium* (6,000,000 sesterces) = \$300,000 (nearly).

380. In the statement of sums of money in cipher, a line above the number indicates thousands; lines above and at the sides also, hundred-thousands. Thus HS. DC. = 600 *sēstertii*; HS. $\overline{\text{DC.}}$ = 600,000 *sēstertii*, or 600 *sēstertia*; HS. $|\overline{\text{DC}}|$ = 60,000,000 *sēstertii*.

381. The Roman Measures of Length are the following : —

12 inches (*unciae*) = 1 Roman Foot (*pēs*: 11.65 English inches).

1½ Feet = 1 Cubit (*cubitum*). — 2½ Feet = 1 Degree or Step (*gradus*).

5 Feet = 1 Pace (*passus*). — 1000 Paces (*mille passuum*) = 1 Mile.

The Roman mile was equal to 4850 English feet.

The *Iūgerum*, or unit of measure of land, was an area of 240 (Roman) feet long and 120 broad ; a little less than $\frac{2}{3}$ of an English acre.

382. The Measures of Weight are —

12 *unciae* (*ounces*) = 1 Pound (*libra*, about $\frac{3}{4}$ lb. avoirdupois).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are —

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1. ($\frac{1}{12}$), <i>uncia</i> . | 5. ($\frac{5}{12}$), <i>quīncunx</i> . | 9. ($\frac{3}{4}$), <i>dōdrāns</i> . |
| 2. ($\frac{1}{6}$), <i>sextāns</i> . | 6. ($\frac{1}{2}$), <i>sēmissis</i> . | 10. ($\frac{5}{6}$), <i>dextāns</i> . |
| 3. ($\frac{1}{4}$), <i>quadrāns</i> . | 7. ($\frac{7}{12}$), <i>septunx</i> . | 11. ($\frac{11}{12}$), <i>deunx</i> . |
| 4. ($\frac{1}{3}$), <i>triēns</i> . | 8. ($\frac{2}{3}$), <i>bēssis</i> . | 12. <i>ās</i> . |

The Talent (*talentum*) was a Greek weight (*τάλαντον*) = 60 *librae*.

383. The Measures of Capacity are —

12 cyathī = 1 *sextārius* (nearly a pint).

16 sextārii = 1 *modius* (peck).

6 sextārii = 1 *congius* (3 quarts, liquid measure).

8 congiū = 1 *amphora* (6 gallons).

384. The following are some of the commonest abbreviations found in Latin inscriptions and sometimes in editions of the classic authors.

A., *absolvō*, *antīquō*.

A. U., *annō urbis*.

A. U. C., *ab urbe conditā*.

C., *condemnō*, *comitiālīs*.

cos., *cōnsul* (*cōnsule*).

cos., *cōsulēs* (*cōsulibus*).

D., *dīvus*.

D. D., *dōnō dedit*.

D. D. D., *dat, dicat, dēdicat*.

des., *dēsīgnātus*.

D. M., *dū mănēs*.

eq. Rom., *eques Rōmānus*.

F., *fīlius*, *fāstus*.

Ictus., *iūriscōnsultus*.

Id., *idūs*.

imp., *imperātor*.

I. O. M., *Iovī optimō māximō*.

K., Kal., *Kalendae*.

N., *nepōs*, *nefāstus*.

N. L., *nōn liquet*.

P. C., *patrēs cōscrip̄tī*.

pl., *plēbis*.

pont. max., *pontifex māximus*.

pop., *populus*.

P. R., *populus Rōmānus*.

pr., *praetor*.

proc., *prōcōsul*.

Q. B. F. F. Q. S., *quod bonum fēlix
faustumque sit*.

Quir., *Quirītēs*.

resp., *rēspūblica, respondet*.

S., *salūtem, sacrum, senātus*.

S. C., *senātūs cōsultum*.

S. D. P., *salūtem dīcit plūrimam*.

S. P. Q. R., *Senātus Populusque Rō-
mānus*.

S. V. B. E. E. V., *sī valēs bene est, ego
valeō*.

pl. tr., *tribūnus plēbis*.

U. (U. R.), *utī rogās*.

GLOSSARY

OF TERMS USED IN GRAMMAR, RHETORIC, AND PROSODY.



NOTE. — Many of these terms are pedantic names given by early grammarians to forms of speech used naturally by writers who were not conscious that they were using figures at all — as, indeed, they were not. Thus, when one says, “It gave me no little pleasure,” he is unconsciously using *Litotes*; when he says, “John went up the street, James down,” *Antithesis*; when he says, “High as the sky,” *Hyperbole*. Many were given under a mistaken notion of the nature of the usage referred to. Thus *mēd* and *tēd* (§ 98. *c*) were supposed to owe their *d* to *Paragoge*, *sūmpsī* its *p* to *Epenthesis*. Such a sentence as “See my coat, how well it fits!” was supposed to be an irregularity to be accounted for by *Prolepsis*.

Many of these, however, are convenient designations for phenomena which often occur; and most of them have a historic interest, of one kind or another.

385. I. GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

Anacoluthon: a change of construction in the same sentence, leaving the first part broken or unfinished.

Anastrophe: inversion of the usual order of words.

Apodosis: the conclusion of a conditional sentence (see *Protasis*).

Archaism: an adoption of old or obsolete forms.

Asyndeton: omission of conjunctions (§ 208. *b*).

Barbarism: adoption of foreign or unauthorized forms.

Brachylogy: brevity of expression.

Crasis: contraction of two vowels into one (§ 10. *c*).

Ellipsis: omission of a word or words necessary to complete the sense (§ 177. note).

Enallage: substitution of one word or form for another.

Epenthesis: insertion of a letter or syllable (§ 11. *c*).

Hellenism: use of Greek forms of constructions.

Hendiadys (ἐν διὰ δυοῖν): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun.

Hypallage : interchange of constructions.

Hysteron proteron : a reversing of the natural order of ideas.

Applied to cases where the natural sequence of events is violated in language because the later event is of more importance than the earlier and so comes first to the mind. This was supposed to be an artificial embellishment in Greek, and so was imitated in Latin. It is still found in artless narrative ; cf. " Bred and Born in a Brier Bush " (Uncle Remus).

Metathesis : transposition of letters in a word (§ 111. *d*).

Paragoge : addition of a letter or letters to the end of a word.

Parenthesis : insertion of a phrase interrupting the construction.

Periphrasis : a roundabout way of expression (*circumlocution*).

Pleonasm : the use of needless words.

Polysyndeton : the use of an unnecessary number of copulative conjunctions.

Prolepsis : the use of a word in the clause preceding the one where it would naturally appear (*anticipation*).

Protasis : a clause introduced by a conditional expression (*if, when, whoever*), leading to a conclusion called the *Apodosis* (§ 304).

Syncope : omission of a letter or syllable from the middle of a word.

Synesis (*cōnstrūctiō ad sēnsū*) : agreement of words according to the sense, and not the grammatical form (§ 182).

Tmesis : the separation of two parts of a compound word by other words (*cutting*).

Zeugma : the use of a verb with two different words, to only one of which it strictly applies (*yoking*).

386. II. RHETORICAL FIGURES.

Allegory : a narrative in which abstract ideas figure as circumstances, events, or persons, in order to enforce some moral truth.

Alliteration : the use of several words that begin with the same sound.

Analogy : argument from resemblances.

[*Anaphora* : the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses (§ 344. *f*).

Antithesis : opposition, or contrast of parts (for emphasis, § 344).

[*Antonomasia* : use of a proper for a common noun, or the reverse.

Aposiopesis : an abrupt pause for rhetorical effect.

Catachresis : a harsh metaphor (*abūsiō*, misuse of words).

- Chiasmus*: a reversing of the order of words in corresponding pairs.
Climax: a gradual increase of emphasis, or enlargement of meaning.
Euphemism: the mild expression of a painful or repulsive idea.
Euphony: the choice of words for their agreeable sound.
Hyperbaton: violation of the usual order of words.
Hyperbole: exaggeration for rhetorical effect.
Irony: the use of words which naturally convey a sense contrary to what is meant.
Litotes: the affirming of a thing by denying its contrary (§ 209. c).
Metaphor: the figurative use of words, indicating an object by some resemblance.
Metonymy: the use of the name of one thing to indicate some kindred thing.
Onomatopœia: a fitting of sound to sense in the use of words.
Oxymoron: the use of contradictory words in the same phrase.
Paronomasia: the use of words of like sound.
Prosopopœia: personification.
Synchysis: the interlocked order (§ 344. h).
Synecdoche: the use of the name of a part for the whole or the reverse.

387. III. TERMS OF PROSODY.

- Acatalectic*: complete, as a verse or a series of feet (§ 359. a).
Anaclassis: breaking a rhythm by substituting different measures.
Anacrusis: the unaccented syllable or syllables preceding a verse.
Antistrophe: a series of verses corresponding to one which has gone before (cf. *strophe*).
Arsis: the unaccented part of a foot (§ 358).
Basis: a single foot preceding the regular movement of a verse.
Cæsure: the ending of a word within a metrical foot (§ 358. b).
Catalexis: loss of a final syllable (or syllables) making the series *catalectic* (incomplete, § 359. a).
Contraction: the use of one long syllable for two short (§ 357).
Correption: shortening of a long syllable for metrical reasons.
Diæresis: the coincidence of the end of a foot with the end of a word (§ 358. c).
Dialysis: the use of *i* (consonant) and *v* as vowels (*silua* = *silva*).
Diastole: the lengthening of a short syllable by emphasis (§ 359f).

- Dimeter* : consisting of two like measures.
Dipody : consisting of two like feet.
Distich : a system or series of two verses.
Ecthlipsis : the suppression of a final syllable in *-m* before a word beginning with a vowel (§ 359. *d*).
Elision : the cutting off of a final before a following initial vowel.
Heptameter : consisting of seven feet.
Hexameter : consisting of six measures.
Hexapody : consisting of six feet.
Hiatus : the meeting of two vowels without contraction or elision.
Ictus : the metrical accent (§ 358. *a*).
Irrational : not conforming strictly to the unit of time (§ 356. note).
Logaëdic : varying in rhythm, making the effect resemble prose.
Monometer : consisting of a single measure.
Mora : the unit of time = one short syllable (§ 355. *a*).
Pentameter : consisting of five measures.
Pentapody : consisting of five feet.
Penthemimeris : consisting of five *half-feet*.
Protraction : extension of a syllable beyond its normal length.
Resolution : the use of two short syllables for one long (§ 357).
Strophe : a series of verses making a recognized metrical whole (*stanza*), which may be indefinitely repeated.
Synæresis : *i* (vowel) and *u* becoming consonants before a vowel.
Synalæpha : the same as elision (§ 359. *c*. Rem.).
Synapheia : elision between two verses (§ 359. *c*. Rem.).
Synizesis : the combining of two vowels in one syllable (§ 347. *c*).
Syncope : loss of a short vowel.
Systole : shortening of a syllable regularly long.
Tetrameter : consisting of four measures.
Tetrapody : consisting of four feet.
Tetrastich : a system of four verses.
Thesis : the accented part of a foot (§ 358).
Trimeter : consisting of three measures.
Tripody : consisting of three feet.
Tristich : a system of three verses.

ABBREVIATIONS

USED IN CITING AUTHORS AND THEIR WORKS.



Cæsar :

B. C., *Bellum Civile.*

* B. G., *Bellum Gallicum.*

B. Afr., *Bellum Africanum.*

Catull., Catullus.

Cic., Cicero :

Ac., Acad., *Academica.*

Arch., *pro Archia.*

Att., *ad Atticum.*

Cæc., *pro Caecina.*

Cæl., *pro M. Caelio.*

Cat., *in Catilinam.*

Clu., *pro Cluentio.*

C. M., *Cato Major.*

Deiot., *pro Deiotaro.*

De Or., *de Oratore.*

Div., *de Divinatione.*

Cæcil., *Divinatio in Caecilium.*

Fam., *ad Familiares.*

Fat., *de Fato.*

Fin., *de Finibus.*

Flac., *pro Flacco.*

Font., *pro M. Fonteio.*

Ad Her. [*ad Herennium*].

Inv., *de Inventione.*

Læl., *Laelius.*

Legg., *de Legibus.*

Agr., *de Lege Agraria.*

Lig., *pro Ligario.*

Manil., *pro Lege Manilia.*

Marc., *pro Marcello.*

Mil., *pro Milone.*

Mur., *pro Murena.*

N. D., *de Natura Deorum.*

Off., *de Officiis.*

Or., *Orator.*

Par., *Paradoxa.*

Part. Or., *de Partitione.*

Phil., *Philippicae.*

Planc., *pro Plancio.*

Pis., *in Pisonem.*

Quinct., *pro Quinctio.*

Q. Fr., *ad Q. Fratrem.*

Rabir., *pro Rabirio.*

Rep., *de Republica.*

Rosc. Am., *pro Roscio Amerino.*

Rosc. Com., *pro Roscio Comoedo.*

Sest., *pro Sestio.*

Sulla, *pro Sulla.*

Top., *Topica.*

Tusc., *Tusculanae Disputationes.*

Univ., *de Universo.*

Vatin., *in Vatinium.*

Verr., *in Verrem.*

Hor., Horace :

A. P., *de Arte Poetica.*

Ep., *Epistulae.*

Epod., *Epodes.*

Od., *Odes.*

Sat., *Satires.*

Juv., Juvenal.

Liv., Livy.

Lucr., Lucretius.

Mart., Martial.

Nep., Nepos.

Ov., Ovid :

F., *Fasti.*

M., *Metamorphoses.*

ex P., *Epistulae ex Ponto.*

Trist., *Tristia.*

Pers., Persius.

Plaut., Plautus.

Plin., Pliny, senior :

H. N., *Historia Naturalis.*

Plin., Pliny, junior :

Ep., *Epistulae.*

Prop., Propertius.

Q. C., Q. Curtius.

Quint., Quintilian.

Sall., Sallust :

Cat., *Catilina.*

Jug., *Jugurtha.*

Sen., Seneca :

Ep., *Epistulae.*

Q. N., *Quaestiones Naturales.*

Sil. It., Silius Italicus.

Suet., Suetonius.

Tac., Tacitus :

Agr., *Agricola.*

A., Ann., *Annales.*

H., *Historiae.*

Ter., Terence.

Virg., Virgil :

Æn., *Æneid.*

E., *Eclogae.*

G., *Georgica.*

INDEX OF WORDS AND SUBJECTS.



NOTE. — The numerical references are to sections, with a few exceptions in which the page (p.) is referred to. The letters refer to subsections. The letter *N.* signifies Note; *R.*, Remark. Abl. = ablative; acc. = accusative; adj. = adjective; adv. = adverb; apod. = apodosis; app. = appositive; comp. = comparison or compound; compar. = comparative; constr. = construction; conj. = conjugation or conjunction; dat. = dative; gen. = genitive; gend. = gender; ind. disc. = indirect discourse; loc. = locative; prep. = preposition; subj. = subject or subjunctive; vb. = verb; w. = with. (Other abbreviations present no difficulty.)

A, quantity in increment, 350, 351; quantity of *a* final, 348. *4.*

ā or *o*, primary suffix, 160. *c. i.*

ā, characteristic of decl. I., 32; acc. of Gr. nouns in, 63. *f*; as nom. ending, decl. III., gend., 65. *c.*

ā, in decl. I., 32; stem-vowel of conj. I., 122, 166. *a*; preps. in *-ā*, adv. use of, 261. *d.*

ā (*ab*, *abs*), use, 152. *b*, 260. *b*, 263; compounded with vbs., 170. *a*; with abl. of agent, 246; with place from which, 258; with names of towns, id. *a. N. i*; expressing position, 260. *b*; in comp., with dat., 229; with abl., 243. *b*; with abl. of gerund, 301.

Ability, verbs of, constr., 271; in apod., 308. *c.*

Abbreviations of prænomens, 80. *d*; other abbreviations, 384.

ABLATIVE, *Etymology*; meaning, 31. *f*; in *-ābus*, 36. *e*; of *i*-stems, decl. III., 55. *e*; rules of form, 57; nouns having abl. in *-ī*, 57. *a, b*; of decl. IV., in *-ubus*, 70. *d*; abl. used as supine, 71. *a*; of adjs., decl. III., 87. *a, b*; prepositions followed by, 152. *b*.

ABLATIVE, *Syntax* (§§ 242–255); meaning and classification, 242; Separation, 243; w. vbs. of freedom, etc., id. *a*; w. compounds, id. *b*; w. adjs. of freedom, etc., id. *d*; w. *opus* and *ūsus*, id. *e*.

Source and material, 244; w. participles, id. *a*; w. *cōnstāre*, etc., id. *c*; w. *facere*, id. *d*; w. nouns, id. *e*. Cause, 245; w. *dignus*, etc., id. *a*; *causā*, *grātiā*, id. *c*. Agent, 246. Comparison, 247; *opiniōne*, *spē*, etc., id. *b*; w. *alius*, id. *d*; w. advs., id. *e*. Manner, 248; accompaniment, id. *a*; means, id. *c*; w. *dōnō*, etc., 225. *d*; w. *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., 249. Degree of difference, 250; *quō* . . . *eō*, 106. *c*, 250. *R*. Quality, 251; price, 252; charge or penalty, 220. *b*. Specification, 253. Place, 254; w. verbs and *frētus*, id. *b*. Ablative absolute, 255; adverbial use, id. *c*; replacing subord. clauses, id. *d*; supplying place of perf. act. part., 290. *d*. Abl. of time, 256; of time w. *quam*, 262. *N. 2*; of place from which, 258; names of towns, *domus*, *rūs*, id. *a*; *ex urbe Rōmā*, id. *b. N. 3*; Locative abl., id. *e, f*; way by which, id. *g*; with transitive compounds, 239. *b. N. i*; time within which, 259. *c*; distance of time, id. *d*. Abl. with prepositions, 152. *b, c*, 260–63; with *ex* for part. gen., 216. *c*; with *prō* (*in defence of*), 236. *R.*; with *palam*, etc., 261. *b*; abl. of gerund, 301.

Abounding, words of, w. abl., 248. *c. 2*; w. gen., 223.

Absence, vbs. of, w. abl., 243. *a*.

Absolute use of vb., 175. *b*. N. 2, 237. N.; absolute case, see abl. absolute.

Abstract nouns, *gend.*, 29. *b*, in *pl.*, 75. *c*; endings, 163. *b*, *e*, *f*; w. *adj.*, 187. *c*; abstract quality denoted by *neut. adj.*, 189. *a*.

absum, *constr.*, 231. *a*.

-ābus, in *dat.* and *abl. pl.*, *decl. I.*, 36. *e*.

āc, see atque; āc sī, see ācsī.

Acatalectic verse, 359. *a*.

accēdit ut, 332.

Accent, rules of, 19; in *decl. II.*, 40. *b*; in *comps.* of *faciō*, 142. *b*; musical, 358.

acceptum, 292. N. 2.

accidit, *synopsis*, 145; *constr.*, 332. *a*.

accingō, *constr.*, 225. *d*.

accommodātus, w. *dat.* of *gerund*, etc., 299. foot-n.

Accompaniment, *abl.* of, 248. *a*.

Accomplishment, *vbs.* of, w. *subjunc.*, 332.

ACCUSATIVE, *Use*, 31. *d*; in *-m* and *-s*, 33. *c*; in *-im*, *decl. III.*, 56. *a*, *b*; in *-is* (*pl.*), 58; in *-a*, 63. *f*; *acc.* of *decl. IV.*, used as *supine*, 71. *a*; *neut. acc.* used as *adv.*, 148. *d*.

ACCUSATIVE, *Syntax*, 237-40; w. *verbs* of remembering, 219 and *a*, *b*; and *gen.* w. *vbs.* of reminding, *id.* *c*; w. *impersonals*, 221. *b*, 237. *e*; w. *dat.* 225; w. *compounds* of *ad*, *ante*, *ob*, 228. *a*; *verbs* varying between *acc.* of end of motion and *dat.*, 225. *b*; w. *ad*, for *dat.* 234. *b*; after *propior*, etc., *id.* *e*; after *nouns*, 237. *f*; *direct object*, 237; w. *iuvō*, etc., 227. *a*; *acc.* or *dat.* w. *vbs.*, 227. *b*, *c*; *acc.* w. *verbs* of feeling and taste, 237. *b*, *c*; with *comps.* of *circum* and *trans*, *id.* *d*; *cognate acc.*, 238; two *accusatives*, 239; *acc.* w. *pass.* of *verbs* of asking, etc., 239. *c*. R.; *adverbial use* of, 240. *a*, *b*; *synecdochical acc.*, *id.* *c*; in *exclamations*, *id.* *d*; *duration* and *extent*, *id.* *e*, 256, 257; *end of motion*, 258; *names* of towns, *domus*, *rūs*, *id.* *b*; *Rōmam ad urbem*, *id.* N. 3; *acc.* w. *ante diem*, 259. *e*; *subject* of

inf., 173. 2, 240. *f*, 272, 330; w. *prepositions*, 152. *a*, *c*; w. *prep.* to denote penalty, 220. *b*; w. *ad* w. *refert*, etc., 222. *b*; w. *pridiē*, *propius*, etc., 261. *a*; *acc.* of *gerund*, 300; of *anticipation*, 334. *c*; *subject* in *indirect discourse*, 336. and *a*.

Accusing and acquitting, *vbs.* of, *constr.*, 220.

ācer, *decl.*, 84. *a*; *comp.*, 89. *a*.

-āceus, *adj.*, ending, 164. *g*.

aciēs, *decl.*, 74. *d*.

acquiēsco, with *abl.*, 254. *b*.

ācsī, with *subjunc.*, 312.

Actions, *names* of, 163; *nouns* of, w. *gen.*, 217.

Active voice, 108. *a*, III; *change* to *pass.*, 177. *a*.

Acts, *nouns* denoting, 163. *c*.

acus, *gender*, 69. *a*.

-acus (-ācus), *adj.* ending, 164. *c*.

ad, *use*, 152. *a*; in *comp.*, 170. *a*; in *comp.*, w. *dat.*, 228, 229; in *comp.*, w. *acc.*, 228. *a*; w. *acc.* w. *adjs.*, 234. *b*; *end of motion*, 258, cf. 225. *b*; w. *names* of towns, 258. *b*. N. 2; w. *names* of countries, 258. 2; *meaning near*, 258. *c*. N. 1; in *expressions* of time, 259. *b*; *following its noun*, 263. N.; w. *gerund*, 300.

adamas, *decl.*, 63. *e*.

additur, *constr.*, 332.

adeō (verb), *constr.*, 228. *a*.

adeō ut, 319. R.

-adēs, *patronymic ending*, 164. *b*.

ādimō, *constr.*, 229.

Adjective phrase, 179.

Adjective pronouns, see *Pronouns*.

ADJECTIVES, *Etymology*; *definition*, *introd.* 4; *formed like nouns*, p. 34. *Declension*, 81-87; *decl. I.* and *II.*, 81-83; *decl. III.*, 84-87; *decl. III.*, *three terminations*, 84. *a*; *one termination*, 85. *Comparison*, 89-91; *decl.* of *comparative*, 86; *advs.* derived from *adjs.*, 148; *numeral adjs.*, 94, 95; *derivative adjs.*, 164.

ADJECTIVES, *Syntax and use*; as *advs.*, 88. *d* (cf. 92), 148. *d*, 191; as *nouns*, 88. *a*, 188, 189; *masc. adjs.*, 88. *b*; *adjs.* of *com. gend.*,

88. *b*; nouns used as adjs., 88. *c*, 188. *d*; advs. used as adjs., 188. *e*; participles used as adjs., 291. Agreement of adjs., 186, 187; attribute and predicate, 187. *a*, *b*; use of neut. adjs. 189; two comparatives with *quam*, 192. Adjs. w. adverbial force, 191; adj. pronouns, 195-203. Gen. of adjs. of decl. III. instead of nom., 214. *d*. R. Adjs. w. gen., 218; w. dat., 234; w. acc., 237. *f*; w. inf., 273. *d*; w. supine in -*ū*, 303. Position of adjs., 344. *a*, *b*. Adjective phrase, 179.
- adiuvō*, w. acc., 227. *a*.
- admodum*, use, 93. *d*.
- admoneō*, constr., 219. *c*.
- Admonishing, vbs. of, constr., 330. 2, 331.
- adspargō*, constr., 225. *d*.
- adūlor*, constr., 227. *b*.
- Adverbial acc., 240 *a*, *b*, cf. 238. *a*.
- Adverbial conjunctions, 25. *h*. N.
- Adverbial phrases, 179.
- ADVERBS, defined, introd. 8; formed from adjs., 88. *d*, 92, 148; comparison of advs., 92; numeral advs., 96; correlative advs. used as conjs., 107. Classification of advs., 149. Advs. used as adjs., 188. *e*; adjs. w. adverbial force, 191; adverbial acc., 240. *a*; adverbial abl. abs., 255. *c*. Special uses, 150, 151. SYNTAX, 207; adv. w. nouns, 207. *d*; part. gen. w. advs., 216. *a*. 4; dat. w. advs., 234. *a*; comp. of adv. followed by *quam*, 247. *e*; adv. as protasis, 310. *a*.
- Adversative conjunctions, 154. *a*. 2.
- adversus*, w. acc., 152. *a*; as adv., 261. *d*.
- ae*, diphthong, 1; sound of, 16, 12. *c*.
- aedēs*, sing. and pl., 79. *a*.
- aeger*, decl., 82.
- aemulor*, constr., 227. *b*.
- Aenēadēs*, decl., 37.
- Aenēās*, decl., 37.
- aequālis*, decl., 57. *a*; constr. w. gen., 234. *d*.
- aequō* (abl.), w. comp., 247. *b*.
- aequor*, decl., 49.
- āēr*, decl., 63. *f*; use of pl., 75. *b*.
- aes*, use of pl., 75. *b*.
- aetās*, decl., 54.
- aethēr*, decl., 63. *f*.
- affinis*, decl., 57. *b*; constr. w. gen., 234. *d*.
- Affirmative, expressed by two negatives, 150; *nōnne*, expecting affirm. answer, 210. *c*; ways of saying *yes*, 212. and *a*.
- Agency, nouns of, 162; rel. clause equivalent to, 201. *b*.
- Agent, dat. of, w. gerundives, 232; w. perf. parts., id. *a*; abl. of, 246; agent regarded as means, id. *b*; animal as agent, id. N.
- ager*, decl., 38.
- aggredior*, constr., 228. *a*.
- Agnōmen*, 80. *b*.
- agō*, forms of, omitted, 206. *c*.
- Agreeing, verbs of, with gerundive, 294. *d* (cf. 331. *d*).
- Agreement, def., introd. 181; forms of, 182; of nouns, 183; in appos., 184; in predicate, 185; of adjs., 186; of demonstrative pronouns, 195; of possessive pronouns, 197; of relatives, 198, 199; of verbs, 204, 205.
- āi* for -*ae*, decl. I., 36. *a*; 347. *a*. 2.
- āius* in Prosody, 347. *d*, note 1.
- al* and -*ar*, neuters in (decl. III.), 53. *c*, 57. *a*.
- al*, noun-ending, 164. *i*. 7.
- alacer*, decl., 84. *a*; comp., 91. *d*.
- āle*, noun-ending, 164. *i*. 7.
- aliēnus*, for possessive gen. of *alius*, 83. *b*, 190, 214. *a*.
- aliqui* (-*quis*), decl., 105. *d*; derivation and use, id. N.; meaning, 202. *a*, *b*.
- aliquot*, indeclinable, use, 106. *a*.
- ālis*, -*āris*, adj. endings, 164. *d*.
- alius* decl., 83; gen., id. *b*, cf. 214. *a*; compounds, 83. *b*; *alius* with abl., *āc*, *nisi*, *quam*, 247. *d*.
- alius* . . . *alius*, *alter* . . . *alter*, 203.
- Alphabet, p. 4; vowels and diphthongs, 1; consonants, 2; table of vowels and consonants, 2, 4; early forms of letters, 6.
- alter*, decl., 83; gen. and comps.,

id. *b*; use, 203; reciprocal use, 99. *d*, 203.

alter . . . alter, 203.

altera est res ut, 332.

alteruter, decl., 83. *b*; use, 203. *a*.

Although, how expressed, 313, 320. *e*.

alvos (alvus), gend., 39. *a*.

am-, see amb-.

amb- (am-, an-), inseparable prefix, 170. *b*.

ambāgēs, decl., 59.

ambō, decl., 94. *b*.

āmēns, decl., 87. *a*.

amplius, without quam, 247. *c*.

amissim, acc., 56. *a*.

an-, see amb-.

an-, anne, annōn, in double questions, 211.

Anaphora, 344. *f*.

anceps, decl., 87. *a*.

Anchisēs, decl., 37.

Andromachē, decl., 37.

-āneus, adj. ending, 164. *g*.

animal, decl., 52.

Animals, gend. of names of, 29. *b*, 30. *b*; regarded as means, 246. *b*. *N*.

animī (loc.), w. adjs., 218. *c*. *R*.; w. verbs, 223. *c*.

annālis, decl., 57. *a*.

Answers, forms of, 212.

ant-, ent-, stem endings, 63. *e*.

ante, 152. *a*; compounded w. vbs., 170. *a*; in compounds, w. dat., 228; w. acc., id. *a*; adverbial use of, 261. *d*; followed by quam, 262.

ante diem, 259. *e*.

Antecedent, its use with relative, 198, 200; undefined, constr., 320; see indefinite antecedent.

antecedō, constr., 228. *a*.

anteeō, constr., 228. *a*.

antegredior, constr., 228. *a*.

Antepenult, 19. *def*.

antequam, 327; in ind. disc., 336. *B. a. N. 2*.

Anticipation, acc. of, 334. *c*; becomes nom., id. *R*.

Antithesis, 344. *f*.

anus, gend., 69. *a*.

-ānus, adjs. in, 164. *c*.

Aorist (-hist. perf.), 279.

apage, 144. *f*.

ā parte, 260. *b*.

apertus, comp. of, 89. *e*.

apis, decl., 59.

Apodosis, defined, 304; introduced by correl., id. *b*; may be subord., id. *c*; forms of, 305, 306 ff.; potential subj., 311. *a* and *R*.; subj. of modesty, id. *b*; verbs of necessity, etc., id. *c*; complex apod., id. *d*; apodosis omitted, 312; apod. in ind. disc., 337.

Appointing, verbs of, constr., 239. *a*.

Apposition, see *appositive*.

Appositive, defined, 184; agreement of, 183, 184. *b*; w. locative, id. *c*; gen. as appositive to possessive, id. *d*, 197. *e*; gen. used for app., 214. *f*, so dat., 231. *b*; rel. clause equivalent to appositive, 201. *b*; acc. as app. to a clause, 240. *g*; appositive instead of voc., 241. *a*; app. in connection with inf., 270. *N. 2*.

aptus ad, 234. *b*; aptus, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299, foot-n.; aptus quī, 320. *f*.

apud, 152. *a*; in quoting, 258. *c. 2. N. 2*.

aquālis, decl., 57. *a*.

-ar, nom. ending, decl. III., 51. *c*, 53. *c*, 57. *a*; gend., 65. *c*.

-ar, -āris, nouns in, 57. *a*.

arbor (-ōs), decl., 48. *N*.

arceō, constr., 225. *d. N. 2*.

arctus, gend., 39. *a*.

arcus, gend., 69. *a*.

ārdeō, w. abl., 245. *a. 2*.

-āria, suffix, 164. *i. 2*.

-āris, adj. ending, 164. *d*.

-ārium, noun ending, 164. *i. 3*.

-ārius, adj. ending, 164. *h*; noun, id. *i. 1*.

Arrangement of words, 343-346.

Arts and thesis, 358.

Article, none in Latin, introd. 2. *N*.

artus, decl., 70. *d*.

-ās, in acc. pl. of Gr. nouns, 63. *f*.

-ās, old gen. ending 36. *b*; Gr. nom. ending, 63. *e*; patronymic, 164. *b*. gend. of nouns in, 65. *b*; adjs. in -ās, 164. *c*.

-ās, value of, 377; gen. of, 252. *b*.

Asking, vbs. of, w. two acc., 239. *c*;

w. abl., 239. *c. N. 1* ; w. subjunc. clause, 331.

Aspirates, 2. *a, 3.*

Assertions, direct, in Indic., 112. *a.*

Assimilation of consonants, 11. *c.*

āsis, gen. of value, 252. *b.*

ast, 156. *b.*

-aster, as noun ending, 164. *i. 12.*

Asyndeton, 208. *b, 346. c.*

At, meaning near, 258. *c. N. 1.*

at, use, 156. *b* ; at enim, id. ; at vērō, 208. *c.*

āt-, patril stem ending, 54. 3 ; decl., 59 ; 87. *b.*

āter, decl., 82. *c.*

Athōs, decl., 43.

Atlās, decl., 63. *c, 64.*

atque (āc), use, 156. *a* ; after alius, 247. *d.*

atqui, use, 156. *b.*

atrōx, decl., 85. *a.*

Attraction of case of relative, 199. *a.*

Attraction, subjunctive of, 340, 342.

Attributive adjective defined, 186. *a* ; number, 186. *d* ; takes gender of nearest noun, 187. *a.*

-ātus, adj. ending, 164. *f.*

audācter, comp., 92.

aula, decl., 37.

ausus as pres. part., 290. *b.*

aut, use, 156. *c* ; 212. *R.*

autem, use, 156. *b, k* ; 345. *b.*

Author w. apud, 258. *c. N. 2.*

avis, decl., 57. *b.*

-āx, verbal adj. ending, 164. *l* ; adjs. in, with gen., 218. *b.*

baccar, decl., 57. *a.*

Bargaining, verbs of, constr. ; gerundive, 294. *d* ; clause, 331. *d.*

basis, decl., 64.

Beginning, verbs of, constr., 271.

Believing, verbs of, with dat., 227.

bellī, locative use of, 258. *d.*

bellum, decl., 38.

bellus, comp., 91. *d. 2.*

Belonging, adjs. of, w. gen., 234. *d.*

bene, comparison, 92 ; compounds of, constr., 227. *c.*

Benefiting, verbs of, constr., 227.

-ber, names of months in, decl., 84. *a.*

bi-color, decl., 87. *d, f*

bi-corpor, 85. *b. N.*

-bilis, verbal adj. ending in, 164. *m.*

bipennis, decl., 87. *b.*

Birds, gen. of names of, 29. 2.

Birth or origin, nouns of, derivation, 164. *b* ; participles of, with abl., 224. *a.*

bonus, comparison, 90 ; w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. foot-n.

bōs, decl., 60. *b, 61.*

bri-, stems ending in, 51. *b* ; adjs. in, 84. *a.*

-brum, suffix, 163. *d.*

-bulum, suffix, 163. *d.*

-bundus, verbals in, 164. *p* ; w. acc., 237. *f.*

būris, decl., 56. *a.*

Buying, verbs of, constr., 252. *d.*

C for **g**, in early use and as abbreviation, 6 ; for **qu**, 7 ; gen. of nouns in -**c**, 65. *c* ; quantity of final syllables ending in, 348. 10.

caedēs, decl., 59.

caelēs, decl., 87. *b.*

Caere, decl., 57. *d.*

caesius, comp., 91. *d.*

Cæsura, 358. *b* ; masc. and fem., 362. *b* ; bucolic cæsura, id.

Calendar, Roman, 376.

Calends, 376. *a.*

campester, decl., 84. *a.*

canālis, decl., 57. *b.*

canis, decl. and stem, 47. *c, 51. a.*

Capacity, measures of, 383.

capitis, gen., with verbs of accusing, 220. *a.*

caput, decl., 46.

Capys, decl., 63. *g, 64.*

Cardinal numbers, 94, replaced by distributives, 95. *b, d* ; inflection of id. *a-e* ; with **ex**, 216. *c.*

cārē, comp., 92.

carō, decl., 61.

cārus, compared, 89.

Case constructions, *N.*, p. 161.

Case-endings, final vowels in, 33. *g* ; table, 34.

Cases, defined, 31 ; position of modifying case, 344. *a. 2* ; agreement in, 183 ; case of rel. pron., 198, 199. *a* ; same case after as before

- certain conj., 208. *a.* Construction of Cases, 213-263; Genitive, 213-223; Dative, 224-236; Accusative, 237-240; Vocative, 241; Ablative, 242-255; time and place, 256-259; cases with preps., 260.
- Catalectic verse, 359. *a.*
- causā, w. gen., 223. *e.* 245. *c*; w. gen. of gerund, 318.
- Causal clauses, w. indic. or subj., quod, quia (cf. N. 3), quoniam, 321; w. quandō, id. N. 3; w. quī, 320. *e*; with cum, id. *f*; nōn quia, nōn quod, etc., in the denial of a reason, 321. *R.*; causal clause replaced by part., 292; by abl. abs., 255. *d.* 2.
- Causal conjunction, 154. *a.* 3; particles, 321.
- Cause, abl. of, 245.
- Cause, adverb of, 149. *c.*
- Caution and effort, vbs. of, constr., 331. *e.*
- cave, in prohibitions, 269. *a*; nē omitted after, 331. *f.* *R.*
- caveō, constr., 331.
- ce, enclitic, 100, 101. *N.*
- Ceasing, vbs. of; w. complem. inf., 271.
- cēdō, constr., 226. *N.* 2.
- celeber, decl., 84. *a.*
- celer, forms, 84. *a.* *c.*
- cēlō, w. acc., 239. *d.*
- Celtibēr, decl., 41. *d.*
- cēnseō, constr., 331 and *d.*
- certē, certō, use, 151. *c*; in answers, 212. *a.*
- cētē, Greek pl., 39. *b.*
- cetera, adverbial use, 240. *b*; -us, use, 193; -ī, use, 203. *a.*
- ceu, use, 312.
- ceus, ad., ending, 164. *g.*
- Characteristic, clause of, 320.
- Characteristic, expr. by participle, 292.
- Characteristic vowel, 32, 351.
- Charge and penalty, gen. of, 220.
- chelys, decl., 63. *g.* 64.
- Chiasmus, 344. *f* and *N.*
- Choosing, vbs. of, w. 2 acc., 239. *a.*
- ci and ti, interchange of, 12. *a.*
- cinium, noun ending, 163. *f.*
- ciō, diminutive ending, 164. *a.* *R.*
- cip-, stems in, decl. III., 45.
- circā, circum, circiter, use, 152. *a*; as advs., 261. *d.*
- circā, after a noun, 293. *N.*; w. gerund, 300.
- circum, compounds w. vbs., 170. *a*; dat. w. such comps., 228; acc., 237. *d.*
- circumdō, constr., 225. *d.*
- circumfundō, constr., 225. *d.*
- Circumstances of act, 255 and *d.* 5; participle implying, 292.
- cis, citerior, 91. *a.*
- Cities, gen. of names of, 29. 2 and *b.*
- citrā, after its noun, 263. *N.*
- cīvis, -ēs, decl., 51. *a.*
- clādēs, decl., 59.
- clam, constr., 261. *c.*
- Classes, names of, gen. of, 28 *d*; used in plu., 76. 2.
- Clauses, defined, introd. 17; kinds of, 180; replaced by abl. abs., 255. *d*; used as nouns with gen., 214. *d*; dependent, syntax of, 316-342 incl.; conditional, 316; final, 317, 318; consecutive, 319, 320; causal, 321; temporal, 322-328; substantive, 329-339 incl.; infinitive clauses, 330; substantive clauses of purpose, 331; of result, 332; indic. with quod, 333; indirect questions, 334; indirect discourse, 335-342.
- clāvis, decl., 57. *b.*
- clienta, 85. *c.*
- coepī, 143. *a.*
- Cognate acc., 237. *c.* *N.*, 238, 240. *a.*
- Cognomen, 80. *a.*
- Collective noun with pl. verb, 205. *c.*
- colus, gen., 69. *a.*
- com- (con-), compounded w. vbs., 170. *a*; such take dat., 228.
- Combinations of words, 13.
- comētēs, decl., 37.
- comitium, comitia, 79. *a.*
- comitor, constr., 227. *b.*
- Command, see Imperative; in hortatory subj., 266.
- Commanding, vbs. of, w. dat., 227; w. inf., 330. 2 and *b.* 2; w. subj., 331. *a* (cf. 332. *h*).

- Command, expressed by *inv.*, 269; for condition, 310. *b*; in indir. disc., 339; in informal ind. disc., 341. *a*.
- commiseror, w. acc., 221. *b*.
- committō ut, 332 and *e*.
- Common gender, 30; adjs. of, 88. *b*.
- Common syllables, 18. *e*, 347. *d*.
- commonefaciō, -fiō, constr., 219. *c*.
- commoneō, constr., 219. *c*.
- commūnis, w. gen., 218.
- commūtāre, constr., 252. *c*.
- Comparative conjunctions, 154. *b*. 2, 155; in conditions, 312.
- Comparative suffix, of advs., 148. *d*.
- Comparatives, decl., 86; stem, id. *a*; neut. sing. of comp. adj. used *as adv., 92; meaning of, 93. *a*; two comparatives, 192; comp. and positive w. *quam*, id.; abl. w. comp., 247; *quam* w. comp., id. *a*; compar. w. *quam* (*ut*), *quam* *quī*, 320. *c*, 332. *b*.
- Comparison, conjunctions of, 208. *a*.
- Comparison of adjs., 89; irregular, 90; defective, 91; w. *magis* and *māximē*, 89. *d*; of advs., 92; prepositions implying, with *quam*, 262.
- Comparison, particles of, *tamquam*, *quasi*, etc., constr., 312.
- Complementary infinitive, 271; has no subject, id. *N*; pred. noun or adj. after, id. *c*. *N*; inf. partly subject, partly complementary, 270. *b*.
- Completed action, tenses of, 115; in the pass., 147. *b*; use of, 279.
- compleō, constr., 248. *c*. *R.*, 223.
- Complex conditional sentences, 311. *d*.
- Complex sentence, 180. *b*.
- complūrēs, complūria, 86. *b*.
- compos, decl., 87. *b*, *d*.
- Composition, all word-formation a process of, p. 104.
- Compound sentence, defined, 180.
- Compound stems, imaginary, 164. *r*.
- Compound suffixes, 160. *b*, 161.
- Compound verbs, 170; comps. of *faciō*, 142. *a*, *b*.
- Compound words, defined, 168; how formed, 168-170.
- Compounds of prep., w. dat., 228; of *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, 229; w. acc., 237. *d*, 239. *b*; quantity of, 354. *c*.
- con-, see com-.
- Conative present, 276. *b*; imperfect, 277. *c*.
- concēdō, constr., 331 and *c*.
- Concession, hortatory subj. of, 266 and *c* (cf. 313. *a*, *i*); particles of, 313; *quamvis*, *ut*, *nē*, 313. *a*; *licet*, id. *b*; *etsi*, etc., id. *c*; *cum*, id. *d*; *quam-quam*, id. *e*, *g*; *quamvis*, w. indic., id. *g*; vbs. of, w. *ut*, 331. *c*; abl. abs. for concess. clause, 255. *d*. 3; concession implied in part., 292; *quī* concessive, 320. *e*.
- Concessive clauses, see Concession.
- Concessive conjunctions, 154. *b*. 3; foll. by adversative, 156. *b*. *N*; particles, use of, 313.
- Conclusion, see Apodosis.
- Concords, the four, 182.
- concor, decl., 85. *b*, 87. *a*.
- Condemning, vbs. of, constr., 220.
- Conditional clauses, defined, 180. *d*.
- Conditional conjunctions, 154. *b*. 1.
- Conditional sentences, defined, 180. *d*; protasis and apodosis, 304; classification, 305; Pres. and Past, nothing implied, 306; Future conditions, 307; fut. more vivid, id. *a*, *c*; fut. less vivid, id. *b*, *c*; perf. indic. in fut. cond., id. *e*; Contrary to fact, 308; indic. in cont. to fact condition, id. *b*, cf. *c*; General condition, 309; condition disguised, 310; as part., etc., id. *a*; as exhortation or command, id.; protasis omitted, 311; Potential Subjunc., id. *a*; Subjunc. of Modesty, id. *b*; vbs. of necessity, etc., id. *c*; complex conditions, id. *d*; Particles of Comparison (conclusion omitted), 312; Concessive clauses, 313; Proviso, 314; use of *si* and its comps., 315; conditional relative clauses, 316; temporal, 322, 327. *b*; conditional sentences in ind. disc., 337.
- Conditional Particles, 312.
- cōnfidō, constr., 254. *b*.
- Conjugation, defined, 26. Conjugation of verbs, 122-147; how distinguished, 122, *a*; regular forms

- of, 122. *c*; mixed forms, id. *d*; parallel forms, 134; stem-vowels of conjugations, 122-125; paradigms of the four regular conjugations, pp. 72-84.
- Conjunctions, defined, introd. 10; classes of, 154; use of, 156; correlative use, id. *h*; conj. repeated, id. SYNTAX of conj., 208; omitted, id. *b*; use together, id. *e*.
- Coniunctivus modestiae*, 311. *b*.
- cōnor, *w. inf.*, 331. *e*. 1; cōnor sī, id. *N*.
- Consecutive clauses, defined, 180. *e*; of charact. and result, 319, 320.
- Consecutive conjunctions, 154. *b*.
- cōnsequor ut, 332.
- cōnsistere, *w. abl.*, 244. *c*, 254. *b*.
- Consonants, classification, 2; changes, 11; omission, id. *b*; insertion, id. *c*, 124. *a*. *N*.; dissimilation, 11. *d*; assimilation, id. *e*; pronunciation, 16, 17.
- Consonant stems of nouns, decl. III., 44-50; stems apparently ending in two consonants, 54. 1; cons. stems of adjs., 85; case-forms, 87; of verbs, 166. *a*. 3.
- Consonant suffixes (primary), 160. *c*. 2.
- cōnsors, decl., 87. *a*.
- cōnstāre, *w. abl.*, 244. *c*.
- cōnstituō, constr., 331. *d*.
- Cōnstrūctiō ad sēsum*. See *Synesis*.
- Constructions of cases, 213-263 (see under *abl.*, etc.).
- cōnsuēvi, use, 279. *e*.
- cōnsul, decl., 49.
- cōnsulāris, decl., 57. *a*.
- cōnsulō, *w. dat. or acc.*, 227. *c*.
- Contention, words of, constr., 229. *c*, 248. *b*.
- contentus, *w. abl.*, 254. *b*; *w. perf. inf.*, 288. *e*.
- continēri, *w. abl.*, 244. *c*.
- contingit ut, 332.
- Continued action, tenses of, 115.
- Continuing, vbs. of, *w. compl. inf.*, 271.
- contrā, use, 152. *a*, 188. *e*. 2; as adv., 261; position, 263. *N*.
- Contracted forms, *vīn*, *scīn*, 13. *c*; gen. in -ī, dat. and abl. in -īs, 40. *b*.
- Contracting, vbs. of, *w. gerundive*, 294. *d*.
- Contraction of vowels, 10. *b*; quantity, 18. *c*; in prosody, 347. *c*; of syllables, 355. *d*.
- Contrary to fact, conditions, 308; in ind. disc., 337. *b*.
- conveniō, *w. acc.*, 228. *a*.
- Co-ordinate conjunctions, 154. *a*; co-ord. clauses, 180. *a*; co-ord. words without conj., 208. *b*; *w. conj.*, id.
- Copula, 172. *N*., 176. *a*; position of, 344. *j*.
- Copulative conjunctions, 154. *a*. 1; constr. after, 208; use of, 208. *b*.
- Copulative verbs, 172. *N*., 176. *a*.
- corpus, decl., 49. *
- Correlatives, 106, 107; rendered by *as*, 106. *b*; by *the . . . the*, id. *c*; advs. of place, 149. *a*; conj., 156. *h*, 208. *d*; correlative in main clause, *w. final clause*, 317. *a*.
- Countries, names of, *gend.*, 29. 2 and *b*; as end of motion, and place from which, 258.
- Crāsis*, 347. *c*.
- crātēr, decl., 63. *f*.
- crēdibilī, *w. comparative*, 247. *b*.
- crēdō, position of, 345. *c*.
- Crime or charge, *gen. of*, 220.
- crum, noun-ending, 163. *d*.
- cucumis, decl., 56. *a*.
- cūiās, cūius, 105. *f*.
- cūiusmodī, 215. *a*.
- culum, noun suffix, 163. *d*.
- culus, dim. ending, 164. *a*.
- cum, quom (conj.), form, 104. *f*; meaning, 156. *g*; cum . . . tum, 107, 156. *h*, 208. *d*; with clause for part., 290. *c*, *d*, 326. *b*; causal, 321; concess., 313. *d*; causal or concess., 326; temporal, 322, 325; sequence, 287. *e*. *N*.; in ind. disc., 336. *B. a. N*. 2.
- cum (prep.), 152. *b*; joined as enclitic with pronouns, 99. *e*, 104. *c*, *e*; in comp., see *com*; with *abl.* of manner, 248; with *abl.* of accompaniment, 248. *a*; with words of contention, 248. *b*; with words of exchange, 252. *c*. *N*.; *w. abl.* of gerund, 301.

-cumque, added to relatives, 105. *a* and *N.*; temporal particles with, 322.

-cundus, verbal adj. ending, 164. *p.*

cup-, stem-ending, 45.

cupiō, constr., 331. *b* and *N.*

cūrō, constr., 331; cūrā (imv.), use, 269. *g.*

-cus, nouns in, decl. IV., 70. *d*; -cus, suffix, 164. *i. g.*

Customary action, 277, 309. *b.*

Dactyl, 356. *b.*

Dactylic verse, 360; hexameter, 363; elegiac stanza, 363.

damnās, indecl. adj., 87. *f.*

Daphnē, decl., 37.

Daphnis, decl., 63. *i.*, 64.

daps, increment of, 350.

Daring, vbs. of, w. compl. inf., 271.

Dates, how expressed, 259. *e.*, 376.

DATIVE, defined, 31. *c*; in -āi, decl. I., 36. *a*; in -ābus, decl. I., 36. *e*; in -is for -ūs, decl. II., 40. *b*; in -ubus, decl. IV., 70. *d*; in -ī (of ūnus, etc.), 83.

DATIVE, *Syntax*, 224-236. Indirect object, 224; uses of, id; with transitives, 225; use of dōnō, etc., id. *d*; in pass., 225. *e*; with intransitives, 226; with phrases, id. *a*; like gen., id. *b*; with intransitives, verbs meaning *favor*, etc., 227; verbs having dat. or acc., 227. *c*; with verbal nouns, id. *d*; with comps. of *satis*, etc., id. *e*; with comps. of prep. *ad*, *ante*, etc., 228; with comps. of *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, 229; poetic use, 229. *c*; with passive used impersonally, 230. Of Possession, 231; with comps. of *esse*, id. *a*; with *nōmen est*, id. *b*. Of Agency, 232. Of Service, 233; with adjs. or adverbs, 234; with adjs. of fitness, etc., 234. *a*. Of Reference, 235; ethical dat., 236. With words of contention (poetic), 248. *b*. Of End of Motion, 258. *N.* 1; w. infin., 272. *a*; dat. of gerund, 299.

Dativus commodi aut incommodi, 235. *N.*

dē, use, 152. *b*; in comp. w. vbs., 170. *a*; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 229; in comp. w. vbs., w. abl., 243. *b*; w. abl. instead of part. gen., 216. *c*; w. vbs. of reminding, 219. *c. N.*; w. abl. to denote the crime, 220. *c*; w. place from which, 258; position of dē, 263. *N.*; dē w. abl. of gerund, 301.

dea, decl., 36. *e.*

dēbeō, in apod., 308. *c.*

dēbuī, w. pres. inf., 288. *a.*

decet, w. acc., 237. *e*; in apodosis, 308. *c.*

Declarative sentence, 171. *a*; how expressed in ind. disc., 336.

Declension defined, 26; characteristics of, 32; general rules for, 33; terminations, 34. Of Nouns, I., 35-37; II., 38-43; III., 44-67; IV., 68-71; V., 72-74; decl. V. comp. with I., 74. *b*. Of Adjs., decl. I.-II., 81-83; decl. III., 84-85; of comparatives, 86; of participles, 85. *a, b.*

Decreeing, verbs of, 331. *d.*

dēdī, quantity of penult, 351. *b.*

Defective nouns, 75; in number, 76; of decl. IV., 71. *b*; of decl. V., 74. *d.*

Defective adjectives, 87. *f.*

Defective comparison, 91.

Defective verbs, 143, 144.

Defective verb-forms, 110, 143, 144.

dēfendō, constr., 229. *c.*

dēficiō, constr., 227. *a.*

Definite perfect, 115. *c. I.*, 279; sequence of, 287. *a.*

Definitions elementary, introd. 18.

Definitions of *Syntax*, 171-181; of figures in grammar, rhetoric, and prosody, 387.

dēfīt, 142. *c.*

dēgener, 85. *b. N.*, 87. *a.*

Degree, adverbs of, 149. *c.*

Degrees of Comparison, 89.

Degree of difference, abl. of, 250; distance expressed by, 257. *b.*

deinde, dēnique, in enumerations, 151. *d.*

dēlectat, constr., 237. *e.*

dēlectō, w. acc., 227. *a.*

dēlector, w. abl., 254. *b.*

- Deliberative subjunctive, 268 ; in indir. questions, 334. *b* ; in indir. disc., 338. *a*.
- Delivering, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 294. *d*.
- Dēlos*, decl., 43.
- delphīn*, decl., 63. *a*.
- Demanding, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 294. *d*.
- Demonstrative adverbs, as correlatives, 107 ; equivalent to demonstr. pron. w. prep., 207. *a*. Position, 344. *b*.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 100-102 ; decl., 101 ; of 2d pers., id. *c*. Syntax, 195 ; in relative clause, 201. *e*. N. Position, 344. *b*.
- dēnārius*, value of, 377.
- Denominative verbs, 165, 166.
- Dependent clauses, subj. used in, 265. *b*.
- Deponent verbs defined, 111. *b* ; paradigms, 135 ; participles, id. *a* ; fut. inf., id. *c* ; used reflexively, 135. *e* ; in passive sense, id. *f* ; semi-deponents, 136.
- Depriving, constr. with verbs of, 243. *a*.
- Derivation of Words, 157-170.
- Derivative forms of nouns, 162, 163 ; of adjs., 164 ; of verbs, 166, 167.
- Derivative verbs, defined, 165.
- Derivatives, quantity of, 354.
- dēs*, nouns in, 164. *b*.
- Description, imperf. used in, 115. *b* ; description implied in part., 292.
- Descriptive abl., see abl. of quality.
- dēses*, decl., 87. *b*.
- Desiderative verbs (in *-uriō*), 167. *e*.
- Desire, adjs. of, w. gen., 218. *a*.
- dēspērō*, constr., 227. *b*.
- dēterior*, comp. of, 91. *d*.
- Determinative compounds, 168. *b*.
- Determining, vbs. of, constr., 331. *d*.
- deus*, decl., 40. *f*.
- dexter*, comp. 90.
- dī*- see *dis*.
- Diaeresis*, 358. *c*.
- Diastolē*, 359. *f*.
- dic*, imperative, 128. *c*.
- dicō*, forms of, omitted, 206. *c*.
- dictō*, w. comp., 247. *b*.
- dicus*, adjs. in, comparison of, 89. *c*.
- Didō*, decl., 63. *h*, 64.
- diem dicere*, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. *a*.
- diēs*, decl., 72 ; gender, 73 ; form *diī*, 74. *a*.
- Difference, abl. of, degree of, 250.
- difficilis*, comparison, 89. *b* ; constr., 303. *R*.
- dignor*, with abl., 245. *a*. 2.
- dignus*, with abl., 245. *a* ; with relative clause, 320. *f*.
- Diminutive endings, with comparatives, 89. *f* ; nouns and adjectives, 164. *a* ; verbs, 167. *d*.
- Diphthongs, 1 ; sounds of, 16, 17 ; quantity, 18. *b*, 347. *b*.
- Direct object, 177, 237.
- Direct question, defined, 210.
- Direct quotation, 335.
- Direct reflexive, 196. *a*. 1.
- Direction, 235. *b*.
- dis* (*dī*), inseparable prefix, 170. *b*.
- Disjunctive conjunctions, case of noun after, 208.
- Dissimilation, 11. *d*.
- dissimilis*, comp., 89. *b*.
- Distance, acc. or abl., 257. *b* ; of time, 259. *d*.
- Distributive numerals, 95 ; use, 95. *a*, *b*.
- Distributive pronouns, 202. *d*, *e*.
- diū*, comp., 92.
- dīves*, decl., 85. *b*, 87. *d*.
- divūm* (*dīvōm*), for *deōrum*, 40. *f*.
- dō*, with inf., 273. *a*.
- dō*, nouns in, gend., 65. *b*.
- doceō*, constr., 239. *c*.
- domī*, locative, 258. *d*.
- domus*, gend., 69. *a* ; decl., 70. *f* ; double stem of, 70. *f* ; locative form, 70. *g*, p. 30. foot-n.
- domum*, 258. *b* ; *domō*, id. *a*.
- dōnec*, constr., 328.
- dōnō*, double constr. of, 225. *d*.
- dōs*, decl., 54. 2.
- Double consonants, 3. *a*, 18. *d*.
- Double questions, 211 ; answers to, 212. *b*.
- Doubting, vbs. of, constr., 319. *d*.
- Doubtful gender, 30. *a*.
- Dubitative subj., see Deliberative.

dubitō an, nōn dubitō quīn, 332.
g. R.; nōn dubitō, *w. inf.*, id.
N. 2.

dūc, imperative, 128. *c.*

dum, with present, 276. *e*; with past,
 id. *N.*; with clause for pres. and
 perf. partic., 290. *c, d*; *w. subjunc-*
tive of proviso, 314, 328; of pur-
 pose, 328.

dummodo, 314, 328.

duo, decl., 94. *b.*

dūplī, with verbs of condemning,
 220. *a.*

Duration, acc. of, 240. *e*, 256; abl.
 of, 256. *b.*

-dus, participle in. See Gerundive.

Duty, vbs. of, in apod., 308. *c.*

dux, decl., 46.

e, inserted in decl. II., 42; abl. of
 neuters in, 57. *a*, 3; final, quan-
 tity of, 348. 5; *ē*, stem-vowel, conj.
 II., 122; *ē*, stem-vowel, conj. III.,
 122. *c.*

e as adv. ending, 148. *a, c.*

-*e* neuters in, decl. III., 57. *a*, 65. *c.*

-*e*, abl. of adjs. of 2 and 3 termina-
 tions, 84. *b. N.*, 85, 87. *a.*

ē in stem of decl. V., 72.

ē (preposition). See *ex*.

-*ē*, Gr. voc., 63. *i*; in gen. of decl.
 V., 74. *a*; in dat., id.

-*ē* for *ae* (*oe*), 12. *c*, 16.

eā causā, 317. *a.*

Early forms of alphabet, 6-7.

ebur, decl., 49.

ecquis, decl., 105. *d*; meaning, *i*.

Ecthlipsis, 359. *d.*

edō (*eat*), conj., 140.

Effecting verbs of, with perf. part.,
 292. *d*; with *ut*-clause, 332. *h.*

efficiō ut, 332.

effieri, 142. *c.*

effigiēs, decl., 74. *d.*

Effort, verbs of, with perf. part.,
 292. *d*; with clause of result,
 331. *e.*

egēs, decl., 85.

egeō, constr., 223, 243. *f.*

ego, decl., 98.

ei, diphthong, 1; sound of, 16, 17.

-ēis, patronymic, 164. *b.*

-ēius, patronymic, 164. *b.*

-ēius, adj. ending, 164. *c.*

ēiusmodi, 101. *a*, 215. *a.*

Electra, decl., 37.

Elegiac stanza, 363.

elephāns, 63. *e.*

-ēlis, -ēnus, adj. endings, 164. *c, d.*

Elision, 359. *c.*

Ellipsis, 177. *c. N.*

Elliptical sentence, 177. *c. N.*

-ellus, diminutive ending, 164. *a.*

ēluviēs, decl., 74. *d.*

Emphasis, 344.

Enclitics, accent, 19. *c*; quantity,
 348. 1; cum, 99. *e*, 104. *c, e*; -met,
 -te, -pte, 99. *f*; -pse, 101. *N.*; -que,
 see under that word.

End of motion, acc. of, 258; *w. vbs.*
 that also take dat., 225. *b*; dat. of,
 258. *N. 1*; two or more places as
 end of motion, 259. *h.*

Endings, signification of, 161-167;
 endings of verb, 117. 2, 118. See
 Personal Endings and Termina-
 tions.

English derivatives from Lat., spell-
 ing of, 15; Eng. words cognate
 with Lat., id.

English method of pronunciation, 17.
enim, use, 156. *d*; position, 156. *h*,
 345. *b.*

-ēnsimus (or -ēsismus), numeral adj.
 ending, 94. *N.*

-ēnsis, gentile ending, 164. *c.*

Enumeration, primum . . . deinde,
 151. *d.*

-ēnus, adj. ending 164. *c.*

Envy, verbs of, *w. dat.*, 227.

eō, used *w. supine* in -um, 302. *R.*

eō, used with quō, 106. *c*; *w. com-*
par., 250. *R.*; approaching abl. of
 cause, 250. *N.*

eō cōnsiliō ut, 317. *a.*

Epicene nouns, 30. *b.*

Epistolary tenses, 282.

epitomē, decl., 37.

equester, decl., 84. *a.*

-er, nom. ending, decl. II., 41, 42;
 decl. III., 53. *b*, 54. 1; *gend.*, 65.
a; -er in adjs., 82, 84. *a*; comp.
 of these, 89. *a.*

ergā, *w. acc.* after adjs., 234. *c.*

ergō, use, 156. *e*; *w. gen.*, 223. *e.*

-ernus, adj. ending, 164. *e.*

ero-, noun stems in, decl. II., 41;
ēro- adj. stems in, 82. *a*.
ES, root of *esse*, 11. *a*.
-ēs, in nom. pl. of Gr. nouns, 63. *f*;
 gen. of nouns in, 65. *a*.
-ēs, nom., gen., 65. *b*; formation,
 163. *a*.
-ēs, gen. of Greek nouns in; decl. II.,
 43. *a*; gen. ending, decl. V., 74. *a*.
esse, conj., 119; compounds of, see
 Irregular verbs; case after, 176. *b*;
 dat. of poss. w., 231; future part.
 w., 293. *a, c*; position of forms of,
 344. *c, f*.
est, united with other words, 13. *b*;
est quī, 320. *a*; **est cum**, 322. *R*;
est ut, 322. *a, 2*.
Esteeming, verbs of, constr., 239. *a*.
-ester (-estris), adj. ending, 164. *c*;
 a noun-ending, 164. *i, 12*.
et, use, 156. *a*; **et . . . et**, 156. *k*;
et repeated or omitted, 208. *b. 1*.
etenim, use, 156. *d, 208. c*.
Ethical dative, 236.
etiam, use, 151. *a*; in answers, 212. *a*.
etiāmsi, concessive, 313. *c*.
etsi, use, 156. *i*; 313. *c*.
-ētum, noun-ending, 164. *i. 8*.
ETYMOLOGY, 4-123.
Euphonic change, see **Phonetic**
variations.
-eus, Greek names in, 43; **-eus**
 (-ēus), patronymic ending, 164. *b*;
 adj. ending, 164. *c, g, i, 10*.
ēvenit ut, 332. *a*.
ex (ē), 152. *b*; use, 260. *b, 244. a*.
R.; in compounds, 170. *a, 243. b*;
 abl. w., instead of part. gen., 216.
c; expressing position, 260. *b*; to
 express place from which, 258;
 after its noun, 263. *N*.; w. abl. of
 gerund, 301.
excellō, w. dat., 227. *a*.
Exchanging, vbs. of, 252. *c*.
Exclamation, form of, 210. *c. R*.;
 acc. in, 240. *d*; w. infin., 274;
 nom. in, 241. *c*.
Exclamatory sentences, 171. *c*; acc.
 in, 240. *d*; nom. in, 241. *c*.
Exclamatory questions, 332. *c*.
Existence, general expressions of,
 320. *a*.
exlēx, defect., 87. *f. 3*.

Expecting, hoping, etc., vbs. of, w.
 infin. clause, 330. *f*.
expēsum, 292. *N. 2*.
Explosives, see **Mutes**.
exsiliō, exsultō, w. abl., 245. *a. 2*.
expēs, defect, 87. *f*.
exsultō, w. abl., 245. *a. 2*.
exteri, use, 91. *b*.
exterior, 91. *b*.
exuō, constr., 225. *d*.

fac, inv., 128. *c, 142*; use, 269. *g*;
fac nē, in prohibition, 269. *a*.
faciēs, decl., 74. *d*.
facilis, comp., 89. *b*; constr., 303. *R*.
faciō, forms of, omitted, 206. *e*; w.
 abl., 244. *d*; accent of comp. of,
 19. *d. facere ut*, 332 and *e*.
Factitative verbs, 175. *b. N*.
-factō, in compounds, 169. *a*.
faenebris, decl., 84. *a. N*.
fallit, w. acc., 237. *e*.
falsus, comp., 91. *d*.
famēs, abl. of, 57. *c*.
familiāris, decl., 57. *b*.
familiās, in *pater familiās*, etc., 36. *b*.
fās, w. supine in -ū, 303.
faux, decl., 54. 2, 79. *c*.
Favor, verbs of, w. dat., 227.
Fearing, verbs of, w. inf., 271; (*nē*,
ut), 331. *f*.
febris, decl., 56. *b, 57. b*.
Feeling, nouns of, with gen., 217;
 impersonal verbs of, 146. *b, 221. b*;
animī, with ads. of, 218. *c. R*.; gen.
 with verbs of, 221; *animī*, w. vbs.
 of, 223. *c*; acc. with, 237. *b*; with
 quod-clause, 333. *b*.
Feet in Prosody, 355-357.
fēlix, comp., 89.
Feminine, rule for gender, 29. *b*.
-fer, compounds of, 41; decl., 82.
fer, imperative, 128. *c*.
ferō, conj., 139; *acceptum (expēn-*
sum) ferre, 292. *N. 2*.
Festivals, plural names of, 76. *1*.
-ficus, ads. in, comparison of, 89. *c*.
fidēs, decl., 72.
fidō (cōfidō), semi-deponent, 136;
 with 'abl., 254. *b*.
fidus, comp., 91. *d*.
fieri, constr. with abl., 244. *d*.
Fifth declension, 72-74.

filia, decl., 36. *e*.
filius, voc., 40. *c*.
 Filling, words of, with abl., 248. *c*. 2.
 Final Clauses, defined, 180. *e*;
 constr. of, 317, 318; as subst.
 clauses, 331.
 Final conjunctions, 154. *b*. 5, 6.
 Final syllables, rules of quantity,
 348.
finis, decl., 57. *b*.
 Finite verb, defined, 173. *N*.; subject
 of, 173. *i*.
fiō, conj., 142; in compounds, id.
 b; defective compounds of, id. *c*;
 quantity of *i* in, 347. *a*. 3.
 First declension, 35-37.
 First conjugation, prin. parts, 122.
 c; formation, 166. *a*; paradigms,
 pp. 72-75; verbs of, 130; verbs
 of, how formed, 166. *a*.
fiſus, as pres. part., 290. *b*.
fit ut, 332. *a*.
 Fitness, adjs. of, w. dat., 234. *a*, *b*.
flāgitō, constr., 331.
flocē, gen. of value, 252. *b*.
 For, when expressed by *prō*, 236. *R*.
fore, 147. *c*, *fore ut*, 288. *f*.
forem, 119. *b*.
forēs, pl. only, 76. 3.
 Forgetting, vbs. of, 219; w. inf., 271.
 Formation of words, 157-170.
 Forms of the verb, 117 ff.
forsitan (*fors sit an*) (*forsan*), 311. *a*.
 N. 3.
 Fourth Conjugation, prin. parts,
 122. *c*; paradigm, p. 81; verbs,
 how formed, 166. *d*.
 Fourth Declension, 68-71.
 Fractional expressions, 97. *d*, 382.
 Freedom, adjs. of, with abl., 243. *d*;
 vbs. of, 243. *a*.
 Frequentative verbs, 167. *b*.
frētus, with abl., 254. *b*.
 Fricatives, 3. *a*.
frūgī, as adj., 87. *f*; comparison,
 90; constr., 233. *a*. *N*.
fruur, *fungor*, with abl., 249; gerun-
 dive, 296. *R*.
fugit, w. acc., 237. *e*.
 Fulness, adjs. of, 218. *a*.
fūnebris, decl., 84. *a*. *N*.
fungor, see *fruur*.
fūr, decl., 54. 2.

Future Conditions, 307; in ind.
 disc., 337. *a*.
 Future Tense, use, 115. *a*. 1, 278;
 of infinitive pass., how formed,
 147. *c*; indicative for imper., 264.
 c, 269. *f*; of imperative, 269. *d*;
 uses of, 278; in indirect questions,
 334. *a*; fut. ind. for imv., 269. *f*.
 Future Perfect, 115. *a*. 1; use of,
 281; represented in subj., 286. *R*.;
 in conditions, 307. *c*.
 Future Infinitive, how formed, 110.
 d.; expressed with *fore* or *futūrum*
 esse, 288. *f*; (rarely) in contrary
 to fact conditions in ind. disc.,
 337. *N*. 3.
 Future Participle, use, 113. *b*, 290,
 293, 308. *d*; fut. pass. part., 294.
 Future Perfect Subjunc. wanting,
 110. *a*.
 Future Subjunctive wanting, 110. *a*.
futūrum esse ut, see *fore ut*; *futūrum*
 fuisse ut, 337. *N*. 3.

G (the character), 6.

Games, plural names of, 76. *i*.
gaudeō, conj., 136; with abl., 254.
 b; w. *quod* or ind. disc., 333. *b*.
 Gems, gender of, names of, 29. *b*,
 39. *a*.

Gender, kinds of, 28; general rules
 for, 29; common, doubtful, epi-
 cene, 30; nouns, decl. I., gend.,
 35; decl. II., 39; nouns, decl.
 III., gend. according to endings,
 65; of nouns, decl. IV., 69; decl.
 V., 73; Syntax, agreement in
 gend., 181; of appositives, 184.
 b; of adjs., 186; adjs. with nouns
 of different genders, 187, cf. 189.
 c; of rel., 199. *b*.

General conditions, defined, 304. *d*;
 constr. of, 309; relatives in,
 316. *a*.

General truths after past tense (in
 sequence of tenses), 287. *d*; in
 pres., 276; in general condition;
 309. *a*.

GENITIVE, *Etymology*. Meaning, 31.
 b; terminations of, 32; plural in
 -um, 33; gen. in -āi and -ās, decl.
 I., 36. *a*, *b*; in -i for ii, decl. II.,
 40. *b*; in -i of prop. nouns of decl.

- III., 43. *a*; gen. plur. in -ūm (-ōm), for -ōrum, 40. *e*; -um for -ium, decl. III., 59; -ōs for -is, 63. *f*; gen. plur. in -um, 70. *c*; in -ī or -ē for ēī, decl. V., 74. *a*; of adjs. in -ius, 83; gen. plur. in -ium or -um, 87. *c, d*.
- GENITIVE, *Syntax*, 213-223; general use, 213. Subjective gen., 214. Possessive gen., id. *a-d*; in appos. w. poss. pron., 197. *e*; compared w. dat., 231. *R*; gen. in predicate, 214. *c, d*; gen. of adj. for neut. nom., 214. *R*; gen. of substance or material, 214. *e*; for appositive, 214. *f*; gen. of quality, 215. Partitive, 216. Objective gen., 217; w. adjs., 218, 234. *d*; w. verbs of memory, 219; charge and penalty, 220; of feeling, 221; w. impers., miseret, etc., 221. *b*; w. refert and interest, 222; of plenty and want, 223; of exclamation, 223; w. potior, id. *a*; w. other vbs., id. *b*; w. egeō and indigeō, 223, 243. *f*; gen. replaced by dat., 226. *b*; of value, 252. *a, b*; gen. of gerundive, 298.
- genius, voc. of, 40. *c*.
- gēns, or family, names, 80. *a*.
- Gentile adjectives, 164. *c*.
- gentilis, 57. *a*.
- genū, decl., 68; gend., 69. *b*.
- genus, decl., 49.
- ger, compounds of, 41.
- Gerund, form, 109. *b*; use, 114. *a*; gerundive used instead, 296.
- SYNTAX, 295-301; gen. of, 298; pred. use, purpose, id. *R*; w. obj. gen., id. *a*; dat. of, 299; in law phrases, etc., id. *b*; acc. of, 300; abl. of, 301; gerund in apposition, 301. *R*.
- Gerundive, meaning and form, 113. *d*; of dep. verb, 135. *d*; use as part. or adj., 294; of ūtor, id. *c*; to denote purp. after certain vbs., id. *d*; used for gerund, 296. Gerundive constructions in cases, gen., 298; dat., 299; acc., 300; abl., 301. Impersonal w. esse, w. acc., 237. *g*.
- Giving, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 294. *d*.
- glaciēs, decl., 74. *d*.
- glīs, decl., 54. *z*.
- glōrior, w. abl., 254. *b*.
- Gnomic perfect, 279. *c*.
- gō, nouns in, gend., 65. *b*.
- gracilis, decl., 87. *f*; comp., 89. *b*.
- Grammar, how developed, p. 124.
- Grammatical gender, 28. *a*.
- grātiā, w. gen., 223. *e, 245. c*; w. gen. of gerund, 318.
- Greek accusative (*synecdochical*), 240. *c*.
- Greek nouns, decl. I., 37; decl. II., 43; decl. III., 63, 64.
- Greek proper names, quantity of, 347. *a. 5*.
- Groups of words, conjuncts. w., 208. *b. 2*.
- grūs, decl., 60. *a*.
- Guilt, adjs. of, w. gen., 218. *a*.
- H (breathing), 3. *b*; omitted in sound, 11. *b. 1*; omitted in spelling, 12. *b*; in Prosody, 347. *a, 359. c*.
- habeō, with infinitive, 273. *a*; with perfect participle, 292. *c*; future imperative habētō in sense of *consider*, 269. *e*.
- habilis, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299, foot-n.
- haereō, w. dat., 227. *e*; w. abl., id. 3. *N*.
- Happening, verbs of, constr., 332. *a*.
- Have, perf. with origin, 292. *c*, foot-n.
- havē (avē), defective verb, 144. *f*.
- Having, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 294. *d*.
- hebes, decl., 87. *a*; comp., 89.
- Help, verbs of, with dat., 227.
- Heroic verse, 362.
- hērōs, decl., 64.
- Hesitation, clauses of, w. quīn, 319. *d*; verbs of, constr., 271.
- Heteroclite adjs., 87. *f*.
- Hexameter verse, 362.
- Hiātus, 359. *e*.
- hic, 100. *b*; decl., 101; use, 102, *a, f*; quantity, 348. 10, Ex.
- hiemps (for hiems), 11. *c*.
- hilaris (-us), 87. *f*.
- Himself (ipse, sē), 102. *N*.

Hindering, verbs of, with *nē* or *quōminus*, or *Inf.*, 331. *e.* 2 ; 332. *g.*

Hindrance, verbs of, with *quōminus*, 319. *c* ; with negatives, followed by *quīn*, 332. *g.*

Historical infinitive, 275.

Historical present, 276. *d* ; followed by primary or secondary tenses, 287. *e.*

Historical perfect, 115. *c.* 2, 279.

hodiē, loc. form, 74. *c.*

honor (-ōs), decl., 50.

Hoping, verbs of, with infinitive clause, 330. *f.*

horizōn, decl., 63. *d.*

Hortatory subjunctive, 266 ; in concession, *id.* *c* (cf. 313. *i*) ; in proviso, 314 ; in obligation, 266. *e* ; w. force of protasis, 310. *b.*

hortor, constr., 331.

hospes, decl., 87. *b.*

hospita (fem. of *hospes*), 85. *c.*

hūiusmodī, 101. *a.*

humī, 40. *a.*, locative use of, 258. *d.*

humilis, comp., 89. *b.*

Hundreds, how declined, 94. *d.*

I, as vowel and as cons., p. 5, 4.

i, primary suffix, 160. *c.* 1.

i, in Greek voc., 63. *i*, 64 ; for *ē* in conj. II., 126. *b.* 2 ; for *-ē* in conj. III., 126. *c.* 1 ; vbs. in *iō*- of conj. III., *id.* *e* ; in verb replaced by cons., 123. *b.* 1 ; inserted in verb stem, *id.* 2 ; suppressed in *obicit*, etc., 10. *d* ; *i* (*single*) in gen. of nouns in *-ius* (*-ium*), 40. *b* ; in gen. of noun in *-ēs*, 43. *a* ; in abl. of decl. III., 57 ; in neut. nom., 65. *c* ; in gen. decl. IV., 70. *a* ; in gen., dat., decl. V., 74. *a* ; in dat. of *ūnus*, etc., 83.

-ī, in perfect, 118. *N.*

i-stems. decl. III., 51-59 ; confused, p. 23, foot-n. ; signs of, 55 ; in adjectives, 84 ; cases retaining *-i*, 84. *b*, cf. 55, 57, 87. *a.*

-ia, nom., acc. pl. decl. III., 55. *b* ; of ads., 84. *b.*

-ia for *-iēs*, decl. V., 74. *b.*

-ia, ending of abstract nouns, 163. *e.*

lambus, 356. *a.*

-ībam for *-iēbam*, conj. IV., 128. *e.*

-ībō for *-iam*, 128. *e.* 1.

-icius, 164. *g.*

Īctus, 355. *R.*, 358. *a.*

-icus, *-icius*, 164. *c*, *h*, *g.*

id-, stem ending, 63. *b.*

id genus, 240. *b.*

id quod, 200. *e.*

id temporis, 216. *a.* 3 ; 240. *b.*

idcircō, as correl., 156. *c*, 317. *a.*

idem, decl., 101 ; derivation, 100. *b* ; used emphatically, 195. *c* ; equiv. to adv., *id.* *e.*

Ides (13th or 15th of month), how reckoned, 376. *b.*

-idēs, (*idēs*) in patronymics, 164. *b.*

idōneus, comparison, 89. *d* ; w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299, foot-n.

idōneus quī, 320. *f.*

Īdūs, decl. IV., gender, 69. *a.* See *Ides*.

-idus, verbal adj. ending, 164. *l.*

-ie, in voc. of ads. in *-ius*, 81. *a.*

iēns (part. of *eō*), decl., 85. *b.*

-ier in inf. pass., 128. *e.* 4.

-iēs, in decl. V. = *-ia*, decl. I., 74. *b.*

-iēs, abstr. ending, 163. *e.*

igitur, meaning, 156. *e* ; position, *id.* *k.*

ignis, decl., 57. *b.*

-īi (or *-ī*), in gen. decl. II., 40. *b* ; of ads., 81. *a.*

-ile, noun-ending, 164. *i*, 6.

-ilis, *-ibilis*, verbal adj. ending, 164. *m.*

-ilis, nominal adj. ending, 164. *d.*

Illative conjunctions, 154. *a.* 4.

ille, forms, 100. *a* ; decl., 101 ; use, 102. *b*, *f* ; combined with *-ce*, 101.

illic, decl., 101.

-illō, verbs ending in, 167. *d.*

illus, diminutive ending, 164. *a.*

illustris, decl., 84. *a*, *N.*

-im, accus. ending, decl. III., 55, 56.

-im in pres. subj., 128. *d*, 2.

imber, decl., 51. *b*, 54, 57. *b.*

immāne quantum, 334. *e.*

immō, how used, 209. *d.*

Imperative mood, 108. *b* ; tenses of, 110. *c* ; how used, 112. *c* ; w. *iam* *dūdum*, 276. *a*, *N.* 2 ; in commands, 269 ; 3d pers., 269. *c* ; forms in indir. disc., 339 ; fut., 269. *d*, *e* ; *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*, 128. *c* ; some

- verbs used chiefly in, 144. *f*; various periphrases for *imv.*, 269. *f, g*; Imperative as protasis, 310. *b*.
 Imperative Sentence, 171. *d*.
 Imperfect tense, defined, 115. *b*; use, 277; in descriptions, *id. a*; with *iam diū*, etc., *id. b*; inceptive and conative, *id. c*; of *surprise*, *id. d*; in dialogue, *id. e*; equals *could*, etc., *id. g*; epistolary, 282; represented by perf. subj., 287. *b. 3*; imperf. subj., sequence, 287. *f, g*.
imperō, constr., 331.
 Impersonal construction of pass. w. infin. clause, 330. *a. 2, b. 1, c*.
 Impersonal Verbs, synopsis of, 145; classified, 146; passive of intransitives, 146. *d, 230*; impersonals, *miseret*, etc., with gen., 221. *b*; *libet*, *licet*, with dat., 227. *e*; acc. w. *decet*, etc., 237. *e*.
impertiō, constr., 225. *d*.
impetrō, constr., 331.
impleō, constr., 223, 248. *c. R*.
implicō, constr., 225. *d*.
impōnō, constr., 260. *a*.
in, neg. prefix, 170. *c*.
in, prep., use, 152. *c*; comp., w. vbs., 170. *a*; *in*, w. acc., 259. *b*; w. acc., penalty, 220. *b*; vbs. comp., w. dat., 228; *in* w. acc., w. adjs., 234. *c*; in citations, 258. *c. N. 2*; place where, 258. *c. 1*; in idioms of time, 259. *b*; w. abl. of gerund, 301.
in-, 63. *a*.
in, primary suffix. See *an*.
 Inceptive or Inchoative verbs, 167. *a*.
 Inclination, adjs. of, constr., 234. *a, c*.
inclutus, comp., 91. *d*.
 Incomplete action, tenses of. See *Continued action*.
 Increment, defined, 349; of nouns and adjs., 350; of verbs, 351.
 Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 29. *c*.
 Indefinite antecedent, relative with, with subj., 320. *a*. and *N*.
 Indefinite pronouns, decl., 104, 105. Syntax, 202, 203; indef. relative may introduce conditional clause, 304. *a. 316*.
 Indefinite subject omitted, 206. *b*; use of 2d person for, 266. *a*; in general conditions, 309. *a*; *licet clārum fieri*, 272. *a. N*.
 Indefinite value, 252. *a, b*.
 Indicative mood, 108. *b*; how used, 112. *a, 264*; in apod. of conditions contrary to fact, 308. *b, c, 311. c*; in causal clauses, 321; in clause with *quod*, 333.
indigeō, with gen., 223, 243. *f*.
indignus, with abl., 245. *a*; w. *quī* and subjunc., 320. *f*.
 INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 335; list of verbs that take, p. 296, foot-n.; direct and indir. quotation, 335. Moods in ind. disc., 336; verb of saying implied, *id. N. 2*. Subj. acc., *id. a*. Subord. clause when explanatory, *id. b*; clauses w. rel. which is equiv. to demonstr., *id. c*. Tenses of infin. in ind. disc., 336. *A*; tenses of subj., 336. *B*; subj. depending on perf. inf., 336. *B. N. 2*; pres. and perf. after secondary tense (*Repraesentatiō*), *id. a*. Conditional sentences in ind. disc., 337; Questions in ind. disc., 338; Deliberative subj. in, *id. a*; Commands in ind. disc., 339; prohibition, *id. N. 2*. Informal ind. disc., 340, 341.
 Indirect Questions, defined, 210. *a*; syntax, 334; fut. tense in, *id. a*; deliberative subj. in, *id. b*; indic. in, *id. d*.
 Indirect quotation, 335.
 Indirect object, 177, 224, 225, 226, 227.
 Indirect reflexive, 196. *a, i*.
induō, double constr. of, 225. *d*.
ineptus, constr., 299. foot-n.
inermis or *-us*, 87. *f*.
infera, comp., 91. *b*.
inferi, use, 91. *b*.
inferior, comparison, 91. *a*.
 Infinitive used as noun, gender, 29. *c*; with gen., 214. *d*. See also *Infinitive Mood*, *Syntax*.
 INFINITIVE MOOD, *Etymology*, 108. *b*; tenses of, 110. *d*; how used, 112. *d*; pass. in *-ier*, 128. *e. 4*; fut. inf. of deponents, 135 *c*; subject in acc., 173. 2, 240. *f*.

- INFINITIVE MOOD**, *Syntax*, 270-275; used as subject, 270; complementary inf., 271; verbs having subj. or infin., id. *a*, cf. 331; inf. for subjunc. clause, 331. *g*; with subject acc., 272; case of predicate noun, id. *b*; inf. of purpose, 273; w. adjs., in poetry, id. *d*; of result, id. *g*; in exclamations, 274 (sequence, 287. N. 1). Historical inf., 275. Tenses of inf., 288; perf. instead of pres., id. *d*, *e*; fore ut, etc., for fut. inf., id. *f*. Inf. in indir. disc., 336; tenses, 336. *A*.
- Infinitive Clauses**, as subj. or obj., 330; w. pass. verbs, id. *a-d*. See also Indirect Discourse. Cf. also 272.
- infitiās**, use, 258. *b*. *R*.
- Inflection**, defined, 20; of decl. and conjugation, 26.
- Informal Indirect Discourse**, 340, 341.
- infrā**, use, 152. *a*.
- ingēns**, decl., 87. *a*; comp., 91. *d*.
- Inherited differences of form**, 8. I; in vowels, 9. *a-d*; transposition of vowel and liquid, id. *d*.
- iniüssū**, defect., 71. *b*.
- inops**, decl., 87. *a*, *d*.
- inquam**, inquit, 144. *b*; position of, 345. *c*; in direct quotation, 336. N. 1.
- Inseparable particles**, 170. *b*.
- Insertion of consonants** (*p* in *sūmp-sī*), 11. *c*.
- insidiae**, dat. with, 227. *d*.
- inspergō**, constr., 225. *d*.
- instar**, w. gen., 223. *e*.
- instō**, constr., 331.
- insulam**, ad, 258. *b*. N. 3.
- Instrument**, abl. of, 248. *c*.
- Instrumental**, abl. constructions, 242.
- Integral part**, subjunc. of, 340-342.
- Intensive pronoun**, 100, 102. *e*. and N., 195. *f-l*.
- Intensive verbs**, 167. *b* (cf. *c*).
- inter**, use, 152. *a*; in comp., 170. *a*; vbs. comp. with, 228; position, 263. N.; *inter sicāriōs*, 220. *b*
- inter**, w. gerund, 300.
- inter sē** (reciprocal), 99. *d*, 196. *f*.
- interclūdō**, constr., 225. *d* and N. 2.
- interdicō**, constr., 225. *d*, N. 1.
- interest**, constr., 222; with ad, id. *b*.
- interior**, comp., 91. *a*.
- Interjections**, def., 25; list, p. 104; w. dat., 235. *e*.
- Interlocked order of words**, 344. *h*.
- Intermediate Clauses**, *Syntax* of, 340-342.
- Interrogative advs.**, use, 210. *e*; position, 344. *b*.
- Interrogative particles**, list of, 149. *d*; use, 210.
- Interrogative pronouns**, 104, 105; use, 210. *e*; position, 344. *b*.
- Interrogative sentences**, 171. *b*; forms of, 210-212.
- intrā** (interior), 91.
- Intransitive verbs**, 175. *a*, 177 and N.; used impersonally in pass., 146. *d*; dat. with, 226 ff.; used transitively, w. acc. and dat., 227. *f* (cf. 237. *e*. N.).
- inus**, adj. ending, 164. *c*.
- inūtilis**, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. foot-n.
- invictus**, comp., 91. *d*.
- invidia**, w. dat., 227. *d*.
- invitus**, comp., 91. *d*.
- iō**, noun-ending, 163. *b*; gend., 65. *b*.
- iō**, verbs in, conj. III.; paradigm, p. 80; conj. IV., p. 81; derivation, 166. *d*.
- ipse**, decl., 101; use, 102. *e* and N., 195. *f-l*; used instead of reflexive, 196. *a*, 2. N. and *i*.
- irī**, in fut. infin. pass., 141, 147. *c*.
- Ironical statement not diff. in form from question**, 210. *b*. N.
- is**, decl., 101; use, 102. *d*, *f*, 106; use emphatically, 195. *c*; used instead of reflexive, 196. *a*, 2. N. and *i*.
- is**, nom. ending, gend., 65. *b*; **-is**, patronymic, 164. *b*.
- is**, **-iss**, **-sis**, dropped in perf., 128. *b*.
- is**, nom. and acc. pl., decl. III., 58 (cf. p. 23, foot-n.); of adjs., 84. *b*, 87. *c*; Greek nom. ending, 63. *c*.
- is**, **itis**, stems in, 59.
- Islands**, names of, loc. use, 258. *c*, 2 and R.; to which, 258. *b*, from which, *a*.

-issō, verbs ending in, 167. *c*.
 iste, decl., 101; use, 102. *c*.
 istic, decl., 101.
 ita, correl. with *ut*, 107; in answers, 212. *a*; *ita ut*, 319. *R*.
 itaque, accent, 19. *c*; compared with *ergō*, 156. *e*; used with *ergō*, 208. *e*; position of, 345. *b*.
 iter, stem of, 60. *c*.
 Iterative verbs (-tō, -itō, -sō), 167. *b*.
 -itō, verbs in, 167. *b*.
 -ītus, adj. ending, 164. *f*.
 -ium, noun-ending, 163. *f*, 164. *i*.
 11.
 -ium, gen. plur., decl. III., 55. *a*; of adjs., 84. *b*, 85, 87. *c*.
 -ius, gen. sing. ending, 83; quantity, 347. *a*. 1.
 -ius, adjs. in, gen., voc., 81. *a*; formation of adjs. in, 164. *g*, *m*.
 īvus, verbal adj. ending, 164. *k*.

J (the character), 4. N.

iam, use, 151. *b*; w. imperf., 277. *c*.
 iamdiū, w. pres., 276. *a*; w. imperf., 277. *b*.
 iamdūdum, w. pres., 276. *a*; w. imperf., 277. *b*; w. imperative, 276. *a*. N. 2.
 iecur, decl., forms from different stems, 60. *c*.
 iubar, decl., 57. *a*.
 iubeō, w. acc., 227. *a*; w. inf., 271. *b*, 330. 2. and *b*, 2., 331. *a*.
 iucundus, constr., 303. *R*.
 iūgerum, measure, 381.
 Julian Calendar, 376, head-n.; 376. *e*.
 iungō, w. abl. or dat., 227. *e*, 248. *a*. *R*.
 Iūppiter, stem and decl., 60. *b*; plural, 75. *a*.
 iūssū, defect., 71. *b*.
 iūstō, w. compar., 247. *b*.
 iuvat, w. acc., 237. *e*.
 iuvenis, masc. adj., 88. *b*; how compared, 91. *c*; decl., 59.
 iuvō, with acc., 227. *a*.
 iūxtā, position, 263. *N*.

Kalendae, 376. a.

Kindred signification, acc. of, 238.

Knowing, verbs of, w. acc. and inf., 271, 272, 330. 1.
 Knowledge, adjs. of, w. gen., 218. *a*.

L, nouns in -l, gend., 65. *c*; adj. stems in -l, 85.

Labials, 3.

labōrō, w. abl., 245. *a*. 2.

lacus, decl., 68; dat. and abl. pl. in -ubus, 70. *d*.

laedō, constr., w. acc., 227. *a*.

laetor, laetus, w. abl., 254. *b*.

lampas, decl., 63. *f*, 64.

lateō, w. acc., 239. *d*.

latet, w. acc., 237. *e*.

latifundium, 168. *b*.

Learning, verbs of, w. inf., 271.

-lēns, -lentus, see -olēns, -olentus.

lēō, decl., 49.

Leōnidās, decl., 37.

Letters, classification of, 1-5.

levis, decl., 84; comp., 89.

leviter, comp., 92.

liber, adj., decl., 41. *c*.

Liber, decl., 41. *c*.

liberī, noun, 41. *c*, 76. 2.

libet, impers., 146. *c*; w. dat., 227. *e*.

licet, impers., synopsis, 145; use, 146. *c*; w. dat., 227. *e*; w. predicate dat., 272. *a*; w. subjunctive, meaning *although*, 313. *b*; licet

eam, licet mē ire, licet mihi ire, 331. *i* and N. 3.

Likeness, adjs. of, w. dat., 234. *a*; w. gen., id. *d*.

Limiting word, meaning of, 178. *b*.

Linguals, 3.

linter, decl., 51. *b*, 54. 1.

Liquids, 3. *a*; stems of, decl. III., 48-50.

-lis, adjs. in, comp., 89. *b*.

Litotes, 209. *c*.

-lium, noun ending, 163. *f*.

Locative abl., 254, 258. *c*. 1; idiomatic use, id. *a*.

LOCATIVE case, 31. *h*; in abl., 242; of decl. I., 36. *c*; decl. II., 40. *a*; decl. III., 62; decl. IV. (domī), 70. *g*, foot-n.; decl. V., 74. *c*; forms, 258. *c*. 2, *d*. With abl. in apposition, 184. *c*; relative adverb used to refer to, 201. *f*; animī, 218. *c*. *R*.

223. *c*; locative used to express *where*, 258. *c*; *domi*, etc., id. *d*.
locō, abl. without prep., 258. *f*. 1.
locō, verb, constr., 260. *a*.
locum capere, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. *a*.
 Long and Short, see Quantity.
longius, without *quam*, 247. *c*.
lynx, decl., 63. *f*.
- M**, final, elision of, 359. *d*.
mācte virtūte, use and constr., 241. *d*.
magis, as sign of comparative, 89. *d*; comps. of, w. *quam*, 262. *N*.
māgnī, gen. of value, 252. *a*.
māgnus, comparison, 90.
 Main clause, defined, 180. *b*.
māiestātis, with words of accusing, etc., 220. *a*.
māior nātū, 91. *c*.
māiōrēs, signification of, 76. 2.
 Making, verbs of, constr., 239. *a*.
male, comp., 92; compounds of, with dat., 227. *e*.
mālō, conj., 138.
malus, comparison, 90.
mandō, constr., 331.
māne, defect. noun, 57. *c*.
maneō, with abl., 254. *b*.
mānsuētus, 169. *c*.
manus, decl., 68; gender, 69.
 Manner, adv. of 148. Abl. of, hard to distinguish from specification, 253. *N*. Manner implied in part., 292.
 Manner, abl. of, 248. and *R*.
mare, decl., 57. *a*, 59.
marī, loc., 258. *d*.
mās, decl., 54. 2.
 Masculines, rules for gender, 29.
 Masculine adjectives, 88. *b*.
 Material, adjectives denoting, 164. *g*; gen. of, 214. *e*, *f*; abl. of, 244. and *c-e*.
māximē, as sign of superl., 89. *d*.
 Means, nouns denoting, 163. *c*; abl. of, 248. and *c*; participle implying means, 292.
 Measure, gen. of, 215. *b* (cf. 257. *a*).
 Measures in Prosody, 355-357; names of, 356; contracted or resolved, 357.
- Measures of value, 377-380; of length, 381; of weight, 382; of capacity, 383.
medeor, *medicor*, with dat. or acc., 227. *b*.
mediocris, decl., 84. *a*. *N*.
 Meditative verbs, 167. *c*.
medius, (*middle part of*), 193.
melior, decl., 86.
melius est, tense of infin. after, 288. *e*.
meminī, conj., 143. *c*; in pres. sense, 143. *N*., 279. *e*; imperative of, 269. *e*; *meminī* with pres. infin., 336. *A*, *N*. 1.
memor, decl., 87. *a*.
 Memory, adjs. of, constr., 218. *a*; verbs of, constr., 219.
-men, *-mentum*, noun-endings, 163. *c*; *-men*, gen., 65. *c*.
mēns, decl., 59.
meridiēs, gen., 73.
-met (enclitic), 99. *f*.
 Metathesis, 124. *a*. *N*.
 Metre, see Prosody.
metuō, with dat. or acc., 227. *c*; w. subjunc., 331. *f*; with inf., 271.
meus, decl., 98. 3; syntax of, 197. *a*, 214. *a*. 2.
 Middle voice, 240. *c*. *N*.
 Mile, English feet in, 381.
miles, decl., 46.
 Military expressions, dat. in, 233. *b*; abl. of accomp. without *cum*, 248. *a*. *N*.
militiae (locative), 258. *d*.
mille (*mīlia*), decl. and constr., 94. *e*.
minimē, compar., 92; use, 93. *e*; w. neg. force, 209. *e*; in answer ("no"), 212. *a*.
ministrō, w. infin., 273. *a*.
minor nātū, 91. *c*.
minōris, gen. of value, 252. *a*, *d*.
minus, compar., 92; use, 93. *e*; with *sī* and *quō*, = *not*, 209. *e*; constr. without *quam*, 247. *c*.
-minus, *-mnus*, verbal adjective endings, 164. *n*.
mīror sī, 333. *b*. *R*.
mīrum quam (*quantam*), with indicative, 334. *e*.
misceō, with abl. or dat., 227. *e*. 3 *N*., 248. *a*. *R*.
miser, decl., 82; comp., 89. *a*.

miserē, comp., 92.
 misereor, with gen., 221. *a*.
 miserēscō, with gen., 221. *a*.
 miseret, 146. *b*; with gen. and acc., 221. *b*; other constr., *c*.
 miseror, with acc., 221. *a*.
 -mnus, see -minus.
 Modesty, subjunc. of, 311. *b*.
 Modification of subj. or pred., 178.
 Modifiers, position of, 343, 344; of negative, 345. *d*.
 modo . . . modo, 208. *d*.
 modo (modo nē) with subjunctive of proviso, 314.
 molāris, decl., 57. *a*.
 moneō, conj., p. 76; constr., 219. *c*, 238. *b* and *N*.
 -mōnia, -mōnium, noun-endings, 163. *c*.
 Monosyllables, quantity, 348. 1-3.
 Months, gender of names of, 29. *a*; decl. of names of in -ber, 84. *a*; names of, 376, head-*n*.; divisions of, in Roman Calendar, 376.
 Moods, names and uses of, 108. *b*, 112. Syntax of, 264-275.
 Moods in temporal causes, how distinguished, 323.
 Mora, in Prosody, 355. *a*.
 mōrigerus, decl., 82. *a*.
 mōs est ut, 332.
 Mother, name of w. prep., 244. *a*. *R*.
 Motion, how expressed, 225. *b*, 229. *a*, 243. *b*; indicated by compounds, 237. *d*; implied, 259. *g*.
 Motion, end of, see End of Motion.
 Motive, how expressed, 245. *b*.
 Mountains, names of, gender, 29. *a*.
 muliebris, decl., 84. *a*. *N*.
 multā nocte, 193. *N*.
 Multiplication expressed by distributives, 95. *c*.
 Multiplicatives, 97.
 multum (-ō), comp., 92.
 multus, comparison, 90.
 mūs, decl., 54, cf. 54. 2.
 mūsica (-ē), decl., 37.
 Musical accent, 358.
 mūtāre, constr., 252. *c*.
 Mutes, 2, 3; mute stems, decl. III., 44-47; apparent, 47. *a*, 54.
 mýthos, decl., 43.

N, 2. *b*; *n adulterīnum*, id.
 N as final letter of stem (leōn-), 48.
 nāis, decl., 64.
 nam (enclitic), in questions, 210. *f*.
 nam, namque, use, 156. *d*, 208. *c*.
 Names of men and women, 80.
 Naming, vbs. of, w. two accs., 239. *a*.
 Nasals, 2. *b*, 3.
 nātālis, decl., 57. *b*.
 nātū (māior, minor), 91. *c*.
 nātus, etc., w. abl. of source, 244. *a*.
 nāvis, decl., 57. *b*.
 -nā, -nt, vowel short before, 18. *f*.
 -ndus, verbal adj. ending, 164. *o*; gerundive in, 113. *d*.
 -ne (enclitic), use in questions, 210. *a-d*; in double questions, 211; w. force of nōnne, 210. *d*; orig. meaning, id. *N*.; in exclamatory questions, 332. *c*; quantity, 348. 1.
 nē, neg. of hortatory subj., 266. *R*.; w. subjunctive of proviso, 314. *a*; in prohibitions, 269. *a*; in concessions, 313. *a*; in final clauses, 317; = nēdum, 317. *c*. *R*.; in substantive clauses, with verbs of hindering, 331. *e*. 2; of fearing, id. *f*; omitted after cave, id. *R*.
 nē nōn, w. vbs. of fearing, 331. *f*.
 Nearness adjs. of, with dat., 234. *a*; w. gen., id. *d*.
 nec enim, 156. *d*.
 Necessity, verbs of, with perf. pass. inf., 288. *d*; in apodosis, 308. *c*, 311. *c*.
 necne in double questions, 211.
 nēdum, 317. *c*. *R*. and *N*.
 nefās, with latter supine, 303.
 Negation, perfect preferred in, 279. *d*.
 Negative answer, 210. *c*; 212 and *a*.
 Negative particles, list of, 149. *e*; two negatives, 150, 209. *a*; use of, 209; form different from English, 209. *b*; neg. answers, 212; neg. proviso, 314. *a*; neg. condition, 315. *a*; purpose, 317; result, 319. *a*, *d*, *R*.; position of, 345. *d*.
 negō, better than dicō . . . nōn, 209. *b*.
 negōtium dō ut, 331.

nēmō, use of, 202. *f*; *nēmō nōn*, 150. *b*.
neque (*nec*), and *not*, 156. *a*; *neque enim*, use, 156. *d*; *neque* after a neg., 209. *a*.
nequam, in decl., 87. *f*; comparison of, 90.
nequeō, conj., 144. *g*.
nē . . . quidem, use, 151. *e*; after *nōn*, 209. *a*; position of, 345. *b*.
nēquis, decl., 105. *d*.
nesciō quis, use, 202. *a*; as indefinite without subj., 334. *e*.
-neus, adj. ending, 164. *g*.
 Neuter acc. as adv., 148. *d*.
 Neuter adjs., special uses of, 189.
 Neuter verbs, see Intransitive Verbs.
 Neuter gender, general rule for, 29. *c*; cases alike in, 33. *b*; endings of decl. III., 65. *c*.
 Neuter pron. as cognate acc., 238. *b*.
 Neuter passives, 136.
 Neuter verbs, 175, 176; with cognate acc., 238; having passive sense, with *ab*, 246. *a*.
 Neuter passives, 136.
nī, nisi, use of, 315. *a*.
-nia, -nium, noun-endings, 163. *f*.
niger, decl., 82.
nihil, contr. to *nīl*, 347. *c*.
nihilī, gen. of value, 252. *b*.
nīmīrum quam, used as indefinite without subjunc., 334. *e*.
ningit, 146. *a*.
nisi and *sī nōn*, 315. *a*; *nisi sī*, id. 2; *nisi vērō* (*forte*), id. *b*.
nītor, with *abl.*, 254. *b*.
nix, plur., 75. *b*.
No, in answers, how expressed, 212.
nōlī, in prohibitions, 269. *a*.
nōlō, conj., 138; part., as dat. of reference, 235. *c*.
nōmen, decl., 49; *nōmen*, denoting gens., 80. *a*.
nōmen est, with pred. dat., 231. *b, c*.
 Nominal adjectives, 164. *a-k*.
 NOMINATIVE defined, 31. *a*; how formed from stem, 32. *b*; nom. suffix, 160. *c*; neut. pl. nom. and acc. alike, 33. *b*; in decl. II., 38; in decl. III., 44, 45, 48, 51; of neuters, i-stems, 51. *c*; in u-stems, decl. IV., 68; in e-stems, decl. V., 72.

NOMINATIVE, *Syntax*: as subject, 173. *i*; in predicate, 176, *b*, 185; verb-agreement with, 204; used for vocative, 241, *a*; in exclamations, id. *c* (cf. 240. *d*); with *opus* in predicate, 243. *e*. *R*; nom. of gerund supplied by inf., 295. *R*.
nōn, compounds of, 150. *a, b*; in answers, 212. *a*.
nōn dubitō quīn, 319. *d*; 332. *g*. *R*.
nōn modo, after a negative, 209. *a*.
nōnne, in questions, 210. *c*.
nōn nēmō, nōn nullus, etc., 150. *a*.
nōn quia, nōn quod, nōn quō, nōn quīn, etc., 156. *f*, 321. *R*.
nōn satis, 93. *c*.
 Nones (*nōnae*), 376. *c*.
nōs, decl., 98. *i*; for *ego*, 98. *i. b*.
noster, for poss. gen., 99. *a*, 197. *a*.
nostrī, as objective gen., 99. *c*, 194. *b*.
nostrū, as partitive gen., 99. *b*, 194. *b*.
 novendecim, 94. *c*.
 Noun and adj., forms of verb, 109.
 Nouns defined, 25. *a*; indecl., *gend.*, 29. *c*; declension of, 32-78; derivative forms of, 161-163; used as adjectives, 88. *c*, 188. *d*; rule of agreement, 183; w. part. gen., 216. *a*; w. obj. gen., 217; governing acc., 237. *f*; noun as protasis, 310. *a*.
 Nouns of agency, 161; formation, 162.
nox, decl., 54.
-ns, as adjective ending, 85. *a*; participles in, decl., 85, 87. *d*; w. gen., 218. *b*; w. acc., id. *N. i* and 2.
-nt, stems in, decl., 87. *b*.
nūbēs, decl., 52.
nūbō, with dat., 227. *e*.
nullus, decl., 83.
num, force of, 210. *c*; in indirect questions, id. *f*.
 Number, 31; nouns, defect. in, 75, 76; variable in, 79. *a*; peculiar uses, id. *b, c*; number in verbs, 108. *d*; agreement in, 181; with appositives, 184. *a*; with adjs., 186, 187. *d*; with verbs, 204, 205. *c*.
 Numeral advs., 96.
 Numerals, 94-97; cardinals and

- ordinals, 94; distributives, 95; advs., 96; others, 97. Position of numerals adjs., 344. *b*.
numquis, decl., 105. *d*; meaning and form, id. *i*.
nunc, compared with *iam*, 151. *b*.
nunc . . . *nunc*, 208. *d*.
nurus, gend., 69. *a*.
-nus, adj. ending, 164. *d*.

o for *u* after *u* or *v*, 7; in decl. II., 38. *N*.
-ō in nom., gend., 65. *a*.
-ō, *-ōnis*, noun-ending, 162. *c*, 164. *q*.
o-stems, decl. II., 38; in adjs., 82, 83; verbs from *o*-stems, 166. *a*. 2.
Ō sī, w. subjunc. of wish, 267. *b* and *N*. 1.
ob, use, 152. *a*; in comp., 170. *a*; in comp. w. vbs., w. dat., 228; to express cause, 245. *b*; w. gerund, 300.
obēō, constr., 228. *a*.
 Obeying, vbs. of, 227; w. acc., id. *a*.
 Object cases, 177. *b*.
 Object clauses, infin., 330; subj., 331, 332.
 Object defined, 177; becomes subject of pass., id. *a*, 237. *a*; acc. of direct w. dat. of indir. obj., 225; secondary obj., 239. 2; obj. of anticipation, 334. *c*.
 Objective case expressed in Latin by gen., dat., acc., or abl., 177. *b*.
 Objective compounds, 168. *c*.
 Objective genitive, *meī*, etc., 99. *c*; defined, 213. 2; with nouns, 217; with adjs., 218.
 Obligation, unfulfilled, hort. subj., 266. *e*.
 Oblique cases, 31. *g*.
obvius (*obviam*), as apparent adj., 188. *e*. 1; with dat., 228. *b*.
ōcior, comp., 91. *d*.
 Occasion, expressed by participle, 292.
octōdecim, 94. *c*.
ōdī, conj., 143. *a*; w. meaning of present, 279. *e*.
oe, written *e* (long), 12. *c*.
offendō, constr., 228. *a*.
-olēns, *-olentus*, adj. endings, 164. *k*.
ollus (*ille*), 100. *a*.

-olus, diminutive ending, 164. *a*.
 Omission, of consonant, 11. *b*; of possessive, 197. *c*; of antecedent, 200. *c*.
omnēs; *nōs omnēs* (instead of *omnēs nostrūm*), 216. *e*.
-ōn, Greek ending, decl. II., 43.
-ōn, gen. plur., decl. II., 43. *c*.
-ōn, nom. ending, 63. *c*, *d*.
ōn, stem ending, 63. *c*.
ont, nom. *-ōn*, 63. *d*.
operā, with gen., 246. *b*.
operam dō, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. *a*; with subjunc., 331.
 Operations of nature, 146. *a*.
opiniōne, with compar., 247. *b*.
opinor, position of, 345. *c*.
oportet, 146. *c*; with acc. of object, 237. *e*; in apod., 308. *c*; imperfect refers to present, plupf. to past, 311. *c*. *R*; w. subjunc. or inf., 331. *i*.
oportuit, w. pres. inf., 288. *a*.
oppidum, ad, 258. *b*. *N*. 3.
oppugnō, w. acc., 228. *a*.
ops, decl., 46.
 Optative subj. (*wish*), 267; w. *uti-nam*, etc., id. *b*; *velim*, etc., w. subjunc., equiv. to, id. *c*.
optimātēs, 54. 3, 76. 2.
opus and *ūsus*, w. abl., 243. *e*; as pred. nom., id. *R*; w. participle, 292. *b*; w. supine in *-ū*, 303.
-or, noun-ending, 163. *a*.
-or or *-ōs*, nom. ending, 48; gend., 65. *a*.
Ōrātiō oblīqua, see Indirect Discourse.
 Order of words, 343-346.
 Ordinal Numbers, 94; decl., 94. *f*.
-ōrius, adj. ending, 164. *h*.
ōrō, constr., 331.
Orpheus, decl., 43.
-ōs, nom. ending, 48. *N*; gend., 65. *a*.
os, stem of comparatives, 86. *a*.
-os for *-us*, in nom. sing., decl. II., 38. *N*; as Greek ending, 43; as gen. ending, decl. III., 63. *f*.
os, *ossis*, decl., 61.
-ōsus, *-olēns*, *-olentus*, adj. endings, 164. *k*.
ovat (defective), 144. *e*.
ovis, decl., 57. *b*.

- P**, parasitic after **m** (*sūmpsī*), 11. *c*.
paenitet, 146. *b*; constr., 221. *b, c*.
palam, as apparent adj., 188. *e*. 3;
 with abl., 207. *b*, 261. *b*.
Palatals, 3; stems, decl. III., gender,
 66. *e*.
palūster, decl., 84. *a*.
Panthūs, vocative of, 43. *b*, 63. *i*.
pār, decl., 85. *b*, 87. *a*; with gen.,
 234. *d*; w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299.
 foot-*n*.
Parallel verb-forms, 134.
Parasitic sounds, 11. *c*.
parātus, with infin., 273. *b*.
Pardoning, verbs of, with dat., 227.
parēlion, decl., 43.
Parisyllabic nouns of decl. III., 53.
a; adjectives, 84.
partem, adverbial use, 240. *b*.
parte, locative use, without preposi-
 tion, 258. *f*.
particeps, decl., 87. *b, d*.
**Participial clause implying condi-
 tion**, 310. *a*.
PARTICIPLES, defined, 25; compari-
 son of, 89. *e*; number of, 109. *a*;
 how used, 113; as adjs., id. *e*; as
 nouns, id. *f*; used predicatively
 as adjs., id. *g*; parts. in *-ns*, used
 as adjs., with gen., 218. *b*; clause
 equivalent to part., 201. *b*; parts.
 in abl. absolute, 255.
PARTICIPLES, *Syntax*, 289-293;
 agreement, 186. *N*.; meaning and
 form, 289; tenses, 290; present
 in special use, id. *a*; pres. pass.
 part., how supplied, id. *c*; perf.
 act., how supplied, id. *d*; parts.
 of deponent verbs, 135. *a, b*, 290.
b, d; adjective use, 291; predi-
 cate use, 292; with *opus*, id. *b*;
 perf. with *habeō*, id. *c*; present
 with *faciō*, id. *e*; future part., 293;
 with past tenses of *esse*, id. *c*;
 gerundive, use as part. or adj.,
 294; future part., in indirect ques-
 tions, 334. *a*; part. as protasis,
 310. *a*.
Particles defined, 27; forms and
 classification, p. 96; interrogative,
 149. *d*; negative, id. *e*, 209; in
 compounds, 170; *Syntax*, 207-
 212; use of interrogative particles,
 210. *a, d*; conditional particles,
 304. *a*, 315; particles of compari-
 son, 312.
Particular conditions defined, 304. *d*.
partior, conj., 135.
Partitive numerals, 97. *c*.
Partitive genitive, 216; *nostrū*,
 etc., 99. *b*.
Parts of Speech, 25.
partus, decl. 70. *d*.
parum, comp., 92; meaning, 93. *e*.
parvī, gen. of value, 252. *a*.
parvus, comp., 90.
Passive voice, 108, *a*; forms wanting
 in, 110. *b*; signification, 111; re-
 flexive meaning, id. *a*; deponents,
 111. *b*; passive used impersonally,
 141. *a*, 146. *d*; 230, 330. *a-c*, 331. *h*.
pater familiās, decl., 36. *b*.
patiēns, comp. of, 89. *e*.
pator, constr., 331. *c*.
Patrials in -ās, decl., 54. 3, 87. *b*.
Patronymics (-ades, -ides, -ēus, etc.),
 164. *b*.
pauper, decl., 87. *b*.
pecū, gend., 69. *b*.
pecūniae, gen., w. vbs. of accusing,
 220. *a*.
pedester, decl., 84. *a*.
pelagus (plur. *pelagē*), gend. of, 39. *b*.
pelvis, decl., 57. *b*.
Penalty, gen. of, 220; abl. of, id. *b*.
Penātēs, decl., 54. 3 (cf. 76. 2).
penes, following noun, 263. *N*.
Pentameter verse, 363.
Penult, defined, 19; rules of quan-
 tity, 349-354.
penus, gend., 69. *a*.
per, prep., 152. *a*; w. acc. of agent,
 246. *b*. Adverbial prefix, w. adjs.,
 170. *c* (cf. 93. *d*); w. verbs, 170.
c. N.
Perceiving, verbs of, constr., 272, 330.
perendiē (loc.), 74. *c*.
Perfect participle, used to form
 tenses, 110. *b*; other uses, 113. *c*.
 1; of deponents, 135. *b*; used as
 nouns, retain adv., 207. *c*; dat. of
 agent with, 232. *a*; abl. w. *opus*
 and *ūsus*, 243. *e*, 292. *b*.
PERFECT TENSE distinguished from
 imperf., 115. *b, c*; perf. def. and
 perf. hist., id. *c*, 279; stem, how

- formed, 124; contracted perf., 128.
a, b; perf. subj. in *-sim*, 128. *c*. 3;
 irreg. forms of conj. II., 131.
- PERFECT TENSE**, *Syntax*. Perf. Ind.,
 use, 279; in fut. conditions, 307. *e*;
 in general conditions, 279. *b*, 309.
c; gnomic perf., 279. *c*. Perf.
 Subj., hortatory, 266. *N*.; in pro-
 hibitions, 266. *b*, 269. *a*; optative,
 267. *a*; in fut. conditions, 307. *c*;
 potential, 311. *a*. Perf. Inf., in
 exclamations, 274. *N*.; special uses,
 288. *d, e*; in indir. disc., 336. *A*.
N. I. Sequence of Tenses, perf.
 ind., 287. *a*; subjunc., id. *b, c*; inf.,
 336. *B. N. 2*.
- Periclēs**, decl., 63. *i*.
- Period**, 346; note on, id. headnote.
- Periphrastic conjugations**, 113. *b. N.*,
d. N.; paradigms, 129; periphras-
 tic forms in conjugation, 147; use
 in contrary to fact apodosis, 308. *d*;
 in ind. questions, 334. *a*.
- Permission**, vbs. of, constr., 331. *c*.
- permittō**, w. dat., 227. *e*.
- permūtō**, w. abl., 252. *c*.
- pernox**, decl., 87. *f*.
- perpes**, decl., 87. *a*.
- Persēs**, decl., 37.
- Person**, 108. *d*; agreement, 181; of
 vbs., 204 and *a*; with different
 persons, 205. *a*; order of the three
 persons, id.
- Personal constr. of passive with in-**
finite, 330. *a, b, d*.
- Personal endings**, 116, 117. 2.
- Personal pronouns**, 98, 99. *Syntax*,
 194; omitted, 194. *a, 206. a*; gen.
 pl., 194. *b*; 3d pers., 206. *b, 174; 2*.
- persuādeō**, constr., 331.
- Persuading**, verbs of, with dat.,
 227.
- pertaesum est**, 221. *b*.
- pēs**, comps. of, decl., 87. *d*.
- petō** with **ab**, 239. *c. N. I*; w. sub-
 junc., 331.
- ph** only in Greek words, 2. *a, 3*.
- Phonetic variations**, 8; vowels, 10;
 consonants, 11; phonetic method
 of pronunciation, 16.
- Phrase**, defined, 179.
- Phrases**, neut., 29. *c*; adverbial
 phrases, 179; phrases limited by
- gen., 214. *d*; phrase or clause in
 abl. abs., 255. *b*.
- Physical qualities**, abl. 251. *a*.
- piget**, constr., 221. *b*.
- Pity**, verbs of, constr., 221. *a*.
- pius**, comp., 89. *d, 91. d*.
- Place**, advs. of, 149. *a*; relations of,
 require prep., 229. *a, 258. a, c*;
 place of birth, abl., 244. *b*; place
 where, 254, 258. *c, d*; place to or
 from which, 258; prep. when
 omitted, 258, *a, b, f, g*; locative
 case, 258. *c. 2, d, e*.
- Placing**, vbs. of, constr., 260. *a*.
- Plants**, gend. of names of, 29. *b*.
- plaudō**, w. dat., 227. *e*.
- Pleasing**, verbs of, constr., 227.
- Plenty**, verbs of, constr., 223, 248. *c*.
- plēnus**, construction, 223, 248. *c. R*.
- plex**, numeral adjectives in, 97.
- pluit** (impers.), 146. *a*; used person-
 ally, id. *N*.
- Pluperfect Indicative**, use of, 280;
 epistolary, 282; plup. indic. in
 conditions cont. to fact, 308. *c*;
 in general conditions, 309. *c*. Plup-
 perf. Subj., hortatory, 266. *e*; op-
 tative, 267; in conditions, 308
 (sequence, 287. *f*); potential, 311.
a. N. 2.
- Plural**, wanting in decl. V., 74. *d*;
 used in sense different from sing.,
 75. *a-c, 79. c*; pl. alone used, 76;
 neut. pl. of adjs., 189. *b*.
- Plurālia tantum**, 76.
- plūris**, gen. of value, 252. *a, d*.
- plūs**, decl., 86. and *b*; comp., 90;
 without *quam*, 247. *c*.
- poenitet**, see *paenitet*.
- poēma**, decl., 47. *b*.
- pōnō**, w. abl., 260. *a*.
- por-**, prefix, 170. *b*.
- porticus**, gend., 69. *a*.
- portus**, decl., 70. *d*.
- Position**, expressed by **ab, ex**, 260. *b*.
- Position in Prosody**, 18, 347. *d*.
- Possession**, how expressed, 99. *a*;
 dat. of, 231; compared w. gen.,
 id. *R*.
- Possessive compounds**, 168. *d*.
- Possessive genitive**, 214. *a-c*; dat.
 of reference used instead, 235. *a*.
- Possessive pronouns**, 99. *a*; w. gen.

- in appos., 184. *d*; agreement, 197; instead of gen., id. *a*; special meanings, id. *b*; omission, id. *c*; used substantively, 190. *a*, 197. *d*; used for gen., 214. *a*; for obj. gen., 217. *a*.
- Possibility, vbs. of, in apodosis, 308. *c*.
- post, vbs. comp. w., w. dat., 228.
- post, adverbial use of, 261. *d*; with *quam*, 262.
- postera, comp., 91. *b*; posterī, 91. *b*.
- posterior, 91. *a*, *b*.
- Postpositive conjunctions, 156. *k*.
- postquam (posteaquam), in temporal clauses, 324.
- postrēmō, in enumerations, 151. *d*.
- postridiē, with gen., 223. *e*; with acc., 207. *b*, 261. *a*; with *quam*, 262.
- postulō ab, 239. *c*. N. 1; postulō ut, 331.
- Potential subjunctive, 311. *a*.
- potior (adj.), comp., 91. *d*.
- potior (verb), with gen., 223. *a*, 249. *a*; w. abl., 249; gerundive, 296. *R*.
- potius, comp., 92.
- potuī, w. pres. infin., 288. *a*.
- Power, adjs. of, w. gen., 218.
- Practice, vbs. of, 167. *c*.
- prae, 152. *b*; in comp., 93. *d*; in comp., w. dat., 228; in comp., w. *quam*, 262. N. 1; quantity of, in compounds, 347. *b*.
- praeceps, decl., 85. *b*, 87. *a*.
- praecipio, constr., 331.
- Praenōmen, 80. *a*; abbreviations, id. *d*.
- praepes, decl., 87. *d*.
- praestōlor, constr., 227. *b*.
- praesum, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299. *a*.
- praeter, use, 152. *a*.
- praeterit, w. acc., 237. *e*.
- precor, constr., 331.
- Predicate, p. 124; defined, 172; modified, 178; pred. noun or adj., 172. N., 176; case, 176. *b*; pred. nom., etc., 185; pred. noun referring to two or more sing. nouns, id. *b*; adjective, 186. *b*, *c*, *d*; agreement in, 187. *a*, *b*; in rel. clause, 199; pred. adj. in neut. pl., 187. *c*; pred. adj. in relative clause, 200. *d*; pred. acc., 239 and *a*; adj. as pred. acc., id. N. 1; pred. acc. becomes pred. nom. in the pass., id. N. 2; predicate gen. 214. *c*, *d*; predicate use of participles, 292.
- Predicate noun or adj. after inf., 270. N. 2, 271. *c*, 272. *a*. 2 and N., *b*.
- Prepositions, defined, introd.; list of preps. w. acc., 152. *a*; w. abl., id. *b*; with either, id. *c*; compounded w. vbs. and adjs., 170. *a*, *c*; noun w. prep., instead of obj. gen., 217. *c*; in composition w. vbs., w. dat., 228, 229; acc. in compos. 239. *b*; w. abl. of separation, 243. *b*; prep. omitted in relations of place, 258. *a*, *b*, *f*, *g*; use of, 260-263; preps. following the noun, 263. N.; usual position of, 345. *a*.
- Present Participle, decl., 85; use, 113. *a*.
- Present tense, with iam diū, etc., 276. *a*; conative, id. *b*; for fut., id. *c*; historical, id. *d*; with dum, id. *e*; in quotations, id. *f*; sequence, 286, 287. *e*, *h*; pres. inf. w. potuī, etc., 288. *a*; participle, 290-292. Pres. inf. in ind. disc. referring to past time, 336. A. N. 1.
- Present subjunc. in -im, 128. *e*. 2.
- Preteritive verbs, 143. N., 279. *e*.
- Preventing, vbs. of, constr., 225. *c*. N. 2.
- Price, abl. or gen., 252.
- prīdiē, form, 74. *c*; with gen., 223. *e*; with acc., 207. *b*; constr. as prep. or adv., 261. *a*; with *quam*, 262.
- Primary suffixes, defined, 159, 160.
- Primary tenses, 285. 1, 286.
- primipilāris, decl., 57. *a*.
- Primitive verbs, 165.
- prīmō, primum, meanings, 151. *d*.
- prīmōris, defect., 87. *f*.
- prīnceps, decl., 87. *b*.
- Principal parts of verb, 122. *b*, *d*.
- prior, comparison, 91.
- prius, with *quam*, 262; priusquam in temporal clause, 327.
- Privation expressed by abl., 243.

prō, 152. *b*; in comp., w. dat., 228; to express *for*, 236. *R*.
probō w. dat., 227. *e*; 232. *c*. *N*.
procērus, decl., 82. *a*.
procul with abl., 261. *b*.
prohibeō, constr. of, 225. *d*.
Prohibitions, 266. *b*, 269 and *a*, *b*.
N.; in ind. disc., 339. *N*. 2.
Promising, etc., verbs of, 330. *f*.
Pronominal roots, 157, 159; as primary suffixes, *id*.
PRONOUNS defined, introd.; decl. of, 98–105; personal and reflexive, 98; gen., how used, 99. *a–c*; demonstrative, 100–102; relative, interrog., and indef., 103–105; pron. contained in verb-ending, 174. 2.
PRONOUNS, *Syntax*, 194–203; Personal, 194; Demonstrative, 195; *idem*, *id*. *c*, *e*; *ipse*, *id*. *f–l*; Reflexive, 196; Possessive, 197; Relative, 198; Relative, in protasis, 316; Indefinite, 202. *Prons.* w. part. gen., 216. *a*; Position of prons., 344. *l*, 345. *e*.
Pronunciation, Roman method, 16; English method, 17.
prōnūntiō, constr., 331.
prope, comp., 91. *a*; use, 152. *a*.
Proper names, 80; plur., 75, 76. 1.
Proper nouns, def., introd.
properus, decl., 82. *a*.
propinquus, with gen., 234. *d*.
proprior (proprius), comparison, 91. *a*; constr., 234. *e*, 261. *a* and *N*.
Proportional numerals, 97. *a*.
Propriety, vbs. of, in apodosis, 308. *c*, 311. *c*.
proprius, with gen., 234. *d*.
propter, use, 152. *a*; position, 263. *N*.; denoting *motive*, 245. *b*.
PROSODY, 347–375.
prōspiciō, w. dat. or acc., 227. *c*.
Protasis (see Conditional Clauses), 304 ff.; loose use of tenses in Eng., 305. *R*.; relative in prot., 316; temporal particles in, 322; *ante-quam*, *priusquam*, in, 327. *b*; prot. in ind. disc., 337. 1.
Protecting, vbs. of, constr., 225. *d*.
N. 2.
prōvideō, w. dat. or acc., 227. *c*,

Proviso, subj. used in, 266. *d*; introduced by *modo*, etc., 314; result clause as, 319. *b*, 320. *d*.
proximē, constr., 207. *b*, 261. *a*, 234. *e*.
proximus, constr., 234. *e*.
-pse, -pte (enclitic), 99. *f*, 101. *N*.
pūbēs, decl., 87. *e*.
pudet, 146. *b*; constr., 221. *b–c*.
puer, decl., 38 (cf. 41. *a*).
puppis, decl., 56. *b*, 57. *b*.
Purpose, infin. of, 273; expressed by gerundive after certain vbs., 294. *d*; by gerund or gerundive as predicate gen., 298 *R*.; ways of expressing, 318. Clauses of, 180. *e*; defined and classified, 317; use of *quō* in, *id*. *b*; main clause omitted, *id*. *c*; *nēdum*, *id*. *R* and *N*. Substantive clauses of, used after certain verbs, 331; of wishing, *id*. *b*; of permitting, *id*. *c*; of determining, *id*. *d*; of caution, etc., *id*. *e*; of fearing, *id*. *f*.
Purpose or end, dat. of, 233.
puter, decl., 84. *a*.
quā . . . quā, 208. *d*.
quadrupēs, decl., 87. *d*.
quae res (or *id quod*), 200. *e*.
quaerō, constr. (*ex* or *dē*), 239. *c*. *N*. 2; w. subjunc., 331.
quaesō, conj., 144. *d*.
quālis, 105. *g*.
Qualities (abstract), *gend.*, 29. 2.
Qualities of an object compared, 192.
Quality, adjs. of, 164. *l*; gen. of, 215, 251. *a*; to denote price, 252. *a*, *b*; abl. of, 251 (cf. 215. *N*.).
quam, with superlative, 93. *b*; correlative w. *tam*, 107; with comparatives, 247. *a*, *e*; after *alius*, *id*. *d*; w. compar. of advs., *id*. *e*; with *ante*, *post*, 262; with subj. after comparatives, 320. *c*; followed by result-clause, 332. *b*; in indirect questions, 334. *e*; in indirect discourse, 336. *a*. *R*., *c*., *N*. 2.
quamdiū, 328. *N*. 1.
quamlibet, concessive, 266. *c*, 313.
quam quī, quam ut, with subj., 320. *c*.
quamquam, use, 156. *i*; with indic.,

313. *e*; introducing a proposition = *and yet*, id. *f*; w. subj., id. *g*.
quam sī, 312.
quamvis, use, 156. *i*; subj. with, 266. *c*, 313. *a*, *g*.
quandō (interrog.), meaning, 156. *g*; indef., id.; temporal, 322.
quantī, gen. of price, 252. *a*.
Quantity, gen. of adjs. of, denoting price, 252. *a*.
Quantity in Prosody, marks of, 5; general rules of, 18, 347; final syllables, 348; penultimate syllables, 349-354.
quantō, w. *tantō*, 106. *c*, 250. *R*.
quantum (with *mīrum*), in indirect questions, 334. *e*.
quantumvis, concessive, 313.
quantus, 105. *g*.
quasi, with primary tenses, 312. *R*.
quassō (intensive), 167. *b*.
-que (enclitic), added to indefinites, 105. *e*; as conjunction, use, 156. *a*, 208. *b*, 3; quantity, 348. *I*.
quēō (defective), 144. *g*.
Questions, direct, in indic., 112. *a*, 210-212; double questions, 211; question and answer, 212; result clause in exclam. questions, 332. *c*; mood in indirect question, 334; in indirect discourse, 338; in informal ind. disc., 341. *a*.
quī (relative), decl., 103; (interrog. and indef.), 104 and *a*; in compounds, 105; *quī* = *ut is*, with subj., 317, 319; *quī* causal and concessive, 320. *e*.
quī (adverbial), 104. *c*.
quicum, 104. *c*.
quia, use, 156. *f*; causal, 321; w. verbs of feeling, 333. *b*; in intermediate clauses, 341. *d*.
quicumque, decl., 105. *a*.
quidam, decl., 105. *c*; meaning of, 202. *a*; with *ex*, 216. *c*.
quidem, use, 151. *e*; with *is* or *idem*, 195. *c*; position of, 345. *b*.
quilibet, decl., 105. *c*; use, 202. *c*.
quīn, w. indic. equivalent to command, 269. *f*; in result-clause (= *quī nōn*), 319. *d*; w. verbs of hindering, 332. *g*; *nōn dubitō quīn*, 332. *g*. *R*.
quīnquātrūs, gend., 69. *a*; pl. only, 76. *I*.
quippe, with relative clause, 320. *e*. *N*.; with *cum*, 326. *N*. *I*.
Quiritēs, 79. *c*.
quis, decl., 104; distinguished from *quī* in use, id. *a*. and *N*.; compounds of (*aliquis*, etc.), 105; *quis* with *sī*, *num*, *nē*, 105. *d*; indef. use of, 202. *a*.
quis est quī, 320. *a*.
quīs, dat. or abl. plur., 104. *d*.
quisnam, 105. *i*.
quispiam, 105. *c*; use of, 105. *d*. *N*., 202. *a*.
quisquam, decl., 105. *c*; use, 105. *d*. *N*., id. *h*, 202. *b*, *c*.
quisque, form and decl., 105. *e*; use with superlative, 93. *c*; in general assertions, 202. *d*; in dependent clause, id. *e*; with plural verb, 205. *c*, 2.
quisquis, decl., 105. *b*.
quīvīs, decl., 105. *c*; use, 202. *c*.
quō, approaching abl. of cause, 250. *N*.
quō, in final clauses (= *ut eō*) with subj., 317. *b*; *nōn quō*, 321. *R*.
quō . . . eō, 106. *c*; to denote deg. of difference, 250. *R*.
quoad (purpose, etc.), 328.
quod for *id quod*, 200. *e*. *N*.
quod (conj.), 156. *f*; mood with, 321; in indirect discourse, id. *a*; subst. clause with, 333; as acc. of specification, id. *a*; with verbs of feeling, id. *b*; *quod* in intermediate clauses, 341. *d* and *R*.
quod sciam (proviso), 320. *d*.
quod sī, use, 156. *b*, 240. *b*.
quom (see *cum*), 7, 156. *g*.
quōminus (= *ut eō minus*), w. vbs. of hindering, 317. *b*. *N*. *I*, 319. *c*, 331. *e*.
quoniam, meaning, 156. *f*; in causal clauses, 321.
quoque, use, 151. *a*; position, 345. *b*.
quot, indeclinable, 106. *a*.
Quotation, forms of, w. *apud* and *in*, 258. *c*, 2. *N*. 2; direct and indir., 335.
quotus quisque, 105. *e*.
quu- (*cu-*), 7.

R subst. for **s** between sonants, 11.
a; **r**- in adj. stems, 85; **rr**- in noun
 stems, 48.

ratus, as pres. part., 290. *b*.

rāvis, decl., 56. *a*.

re- or **red-** (prefix), 170. *b*.

Receiving, vbs. of, w. gerundive,
 294. *d*.

Reciprocal (*each other*), how ex-
 pressed, 99. *d*, 196. *f*.

recorder, with acc., 219. *b*.

red- see **re-**.

Reduplication, 124. *c*, 158. *c*; lost in
fidī, etc., 124. *c*. *N*.; rule for
 quantity, 351. *c*.

refert, with gen. or possessive adj.,
 222¹ other constr., id. *b*.

Reference, object of, 218.

Reference, pronouns of, 195. *a*;
 commonly omitted, id. *b*; dative
 of, 235; gen. of specification,
 218. *c*.

Reflexive pronouns, 98. 2. *a*, *b*, 102.
e. *N*.; Syntax of, 196; of 1st and
 2d person, id. *h*.

Reflexive verbs (deponent or pas-
 sive), 135. *e*; use of passive, 111.
a; with object acc., 240. *N*.

Refusing, vbs. of, w. **quōminus**,
 319. *c*.

Regular verb, 121-136.

Relationship, nouns of, 164. *b*.

Relative adjectives, w. gen., 218,
 with *a*, *b*.

Relative adverbs, used correlatively,
 107; used to connect independent
 sentences, 201. *e*; = pronoun with
 prep., 207. *a*; referring to loca-
 tive, 201. *f*; used instead of rel.
 pron., id. *f*. 2, 207. *a*; used in
 relative clauses of purpose, 317;
 of result, 319; position, 201. *c*.

Relative clauses, defined, 180. *c*; w.
 relative advs., 201. *h*. Syntax,
 316-328; conditional, 316; final,
 317, 318; consecutive, 319; char-
 acteristic, 320; causal, 321; tem-
 poral, 323-328; rel. clauses in
 ind. disc., 340; position of rel.
 clause, 345. *e*.

Relative pronouns, decl., 103; forms
 how distinguished from interroga-
 tive and indef., 104. *a*; compounds

of, 105. Syntax, 198-201; rules
 of agreement, 198, 199; w. two
 antecedents, 198. *a*; rel. in agree-
 ment w. appos., etc., 199; use of
 the antecedent, 200; special uses
 of rel., 201; never om. in Lat.,
 201. *a*; pers. of verb agreeing w.,
 204. *a*; abl. of rel. after comp.,
 247. *a*. *R*.; position, 345. *e*.

reliquus, use, 193; **reliqui**, use,
 203. *a*.

Remembering, vbs. of, constr., 219;
 w. inf., 271.

Reminding, vbs. of, constr., 219. *c*.

Removing, vbs. of, w. abl., 243. *a*.

[**rēn**], decl., 54. 2.

repetundārum, 220. *a*.

Repeated action as general condi-
 tion, 309. *b*.

Repraesentātiō, 276. *d*. *N*.; in ind.
 disc., 336. *B*. *a*.

Requesting, vbs. of, constr., 330. 2.

rēs, decl., 72.

Resisting, vbs. of, constr., 227,
 319. *d*.

Resolution of syllables in Prosody,
 357.

Resolving, verbs of, constr. (subjunc.
 or inf.), 331. *d*.

restat, with **ut**, 332. *a*.

restis, decl., 56. *b*.

Restriction in subjunctive clause,
 320. *d*.

Result, clauses of, 180. *e*; sequence
 of tenses in, 287. *c*; infin. of, 273.

g. Subjunctive with relatives or
ut, 319; negative result with **ut**
nōn, etc., id. *a*, *d*. *R*.; result clause
 equivalent to proviso, id. *b*; with
quōminus, id. *c*; with **quān**, id. *d*; of
 characteristic, 320; with expres-
 sions of existence and non-exis-
 tence, id. *a*; with **ūnus** and **sōlus**,
 id. *b*; with comparatives, id. *c*;
 with **dignus**, etc., id. *f*. Subst.
 clauses of result after **faciō**, etc.,
 332; as subject, id. *a*; after **quam**,
 id. *b*; in exclamatory questions,
 id. *c*; **tantum abest ut**, id. *d*;
 thought as result, id. *f*.

Result, nouns denoting, 163. *e*.

rēte, decl., 57. *a*.

rēx, decl., 46.

Rhetorical questions in ind. disc., 338.

Rhythm, development of, nature of, 355.

Rhythmical reading, 359. R.

ri-, adj. stems in, 84. *a*.

rivalis, decl., 57. *b*.

Rivers, names of, gender, 29. *a*.

ro- stems, decl. II., 38; adj. stems, 82.

rogō, constr. of, 239. *c* and R.; w. subjunc., 331.

Roman method of pronunciation, 16.

Root, defined, 22, 157; root used as stem, 158.

rr-, as stem ending, 48. *c*.

rt-, stems in, decl., 87. *b*.

rūrī, locative, 62, 258. *d*.

rūs, constr., 258. *a*, *b*, *d*.

S changed to r, 11. *a*; -s as sign of nom., 32. *b*, 38, 44, 72, 85; -s, noun ending, decl. III., gen., 65. *b*; s suppressed in verb-forms, 128. *b*.

s- as stem ending, 60. *d*; of adjs., 85. *b*, N.; of comparatives, 86. *a*.

s as suffix of perfect, 124. *b*.

sacer, comp., 91. *d*.

saepe, comp., 92.

Salamis, decl., 63. *a*.

salūber, decl., 84. *a*.

salūtem, 240. *d*. N.

salvē, defective, 144. *f*.

sānē quam, 334. *e*.

sapiēns, decl., 57. *b*.

satagō, with gen., 223. N.

satis, comp., 92; compounds of, with dat., 227. *e*; nōn satis, 93. *e*; satis est (satis habeo), with perf. infin., 288. *e*.

satur, genitive of, 41. *b*; decl., 82; comp., 91. *d*.

Saying, verbs of, constr., 330; in passive, id. *a*, *b*, 336.

Scanning, 359. *b*.

scīn, contracted form for scīsne, 13. *c*.

sciō, imperative of, 269. *e*.

scīscō, constr., 331.

scītō, scītōte, imperative forms, 128. *d*, 269. *e*.

-scō (inceptive), verbs ending in, 167. *a*.

scrobs, decl., 54. 2.

sē- or sēd-, insepar. prefix, 170. *b*.

sē, reflexive, decl., 98. 2. *b*; use, 196; inter sē, 99. *d*, 196. *f*.

Second Conjugation, prin. parts., 122. *c*; paradigm, p. 76; verbs of, 131; derivation, 166. *b*.

Second Declension, nouns, 38-43; accent of gen. and voc. of nouns in -ius, 40. *b*.

Secondary accent, 19. *b*. N.

Secondary object, 239. 2.

Secondary suffixes, defined, 159.

Secondary tenses, 285; rule for use of, 286; perf. def. more commonly secondary, 287. *a*; perf. subj. in clauses of result used after, 287. *c*; hist. pres., id. *e*; imperf. and pluperf. subj., id. *f*, *g*; present used as if secondary, by *synesis*, id. *h*.

secundum, 152. *a*.

secūris, decl., 56. *b*, 57. *a*.

secus, indecl. noun, use, 240. *b*.

secus (adv.), comp., 92.

secūtus (as pres. part.), 290. *b*.

sed-, see sē-.

sed compared with vērum, etc., 156. *b*.

sēdēs, decl., 59.

sedīle, decl., 52.

Selling, vbs. of, 252. *d*.

sēmentis, decl., 56. *b*, 57. *b*.

Semi-deponents, 136.

sēminecī, defect., 87. *f*.

Semi-vowels, i and v (u), 4.

senātī, senātuos, forms of gen. in decl. IV., 70.

senex, decl., 60. *c*, 61; adj. masc., 88. *b*; comparison, 91. *c*.

sēns, as participle of esse, 119. *a*.

Sentence, defined, 171; simple or compound, 180 (compare Note, p. 124); incomplete, 206.

Separation, dat. of, after comps. of ab, dē, ex, and after adimō, 229; abl., 243; gen. for. abl., 223, 243. *f*.

Sequence of tenses, 285-287; in ind. disc., 336. B; in conditional sentences, in ind. disc., 337. *b*.

sequor, conj., 135.

sērā nocte, 193. N.

seriēs, decl., 74. *d*.

Service, adjs. of, w. dat., 234. *a*.

- Service, dat. of, 223. *a*.
 Serving, verbs of, with dat., 227.
servus (*servos*), decl., 38.
sēstertium, *sēstertius*, 377-379; how written in cipher, 380.
seu (*sive*), 156. *c*, 315. *c*.
Sharing, adjs. of, with gen., 218. *a*.
 Showing, verbs of, with two accs., 239. *a*.
sī, w. subj. of wish, 267. *b*. N. 1; *sī* and its compounds, use, 304. *a*, 315; *sī nōn* distinguished from *nisi*, 315. *a*; *sī*=*whether*, 334. *f*; *miror sī*, 333. *R*.
 Sibilants, 3.
sic, correl. with *ut*, 107, 319. *R*.; with *sī*, 304. *b*.
 Significant endings, 161-164.
-silis, adj. ending, 164. *m*.
silvester, decl., 84. *a*.
-sim, old form of perf. subj., 128. *e*. 3.
similis, comparison, 89. *b*; with gen. and dat., 234. *d* and 2.
Simois, decl., 64.
 Simple sentences, 180.
simul with abl., 261. *b*.
simul, *simul atque* (*ac*), 324.
simul . . . simul, 208. *d*.
sīn, 304. *a*.
Singularia tantum, 75.
sinō, constr., 331. *c*.
-siō, noun-ending, 163. *b*.
siquis, decl., 105. *d*.
-sis-, dropped in perf., 128. *b*.
sitis, decl., 52. cf. 56. *a*.
 Situation or direction, 235. *b*.
sive (*seu*) . . . *sive*, use, 156. *c*, 315. *c*.
 Smell, verbs of, with acc., 237. *c*.
-sō, verbs in, 167. *b*.
-sō, old form of fut. perfect, 128. *e*. 3.
socrus, gend., 69. *a*.
sōdēs (*sī audēs*), 13. *c*.
soleō, semi-dep., 136.
solitō, with comp., 247. *b*.
solitus as pres. part. 290. *b*.
sōlus, decl., 83; with relative clause, 320. *b*.
 Sonants, 2. *a*.
-sor, see *-tor*.
Sōracte, decl., 57. *d*.
 Source, expressed by abl., 244.
-sōria, noun-ending. 164. *i*. 4; *-sōrius*, adj. ending, id. *h*; *-sōrium*, noun-ending, id. *i*. 5.
Sospita, fem. adj. form, 85. *c*.
 Sounds, see Pronunciation.
 Space, extent of, expressed by acc., 257.
 Sparing, verbs of, with dat., 227.
spē, with comp., 247. *b*.
 Special verb-forms, 128.
speciēs, decl., 74. *d*.
 Specification, gen. of, with adjs., 218. *c*; acc. of, 240. *c*; abl. of, 253.
specus, gend., 69. *a*.
 Spelling, variations of, 12.
spēs, decl., 72. *N*.
 Spirants, 3. *a*.
 Spondaic verse, 362. *a*.
 Spondee, 356. *b*.
 Stanza or Strophe, 361.
statuō, constr., 260. *a*; w. inf. or subjunc., 331. *d*.
 Statutes, fut. inv. in, 269. *d*. 3.
stella, decl., 35.
 Stems, defined, 21; classified, 157; how formed from root, 23, 159; how found in nouns, 32. *a*; *ā*-stems, decl. I., 35; adjs., 81; *o*-stems, decl. II., 38 and *N*.; adjs., 81; in decl. III., mute stems, 44; liquid-stems, 48; vowel-stems, 51; *u*-stems, decl. IV., 68; in *tu-*, 71; of verb, 117. 1; present, perfect, and supine, 121; perf. stem, 124; supine stem, 125. Tenses arranged by stems, synopsis, 127.
stō, w. ablative, 254. *b*.
strigilis, decl., 57. *b*.
strix, decl., 54. 2.
 Structure of Latin sentences, 346. head-*n*.
struēs, decl. 59.
studeō, w. dat., 227. *e*.
suadeō, w. dat., 227.
sub, use, 152. *c*; in comp., w. dat., 228; of time, 259. *b*.
sub-, in comp. w. adjs., 93. *c*, 170. *c*; w. verbs, 170. *a*, *c*. *N*.
subeō, w. acc., 228. *a*.
 Subject, p. 124; defined, 172; how expressed, 173, 174; modified, 178; vb. agrees w., 204; two or more subjs., 205; subj. omitted, 206;

- accusative, 272; in indirect discourse, 336; position of subject, 343.
- Infinitive clauses (infin.), 270, 330; subject, 331. head-n., 332. head- (subjunc. 100-106. defined, 213. 1; n. and a, d. 106. defined, 213. 1; Subjective genitive, deum, use, 214.
- Subjunctive mood, 108. *b*; tense wanting in, 110. *a*; how used and translated, 112. *b*; tenses how used, 115. *d*. Classification of uses, 265 (cf. footnote); general use, 265; hortatory subj., 266; optative subj., 267; deliberative, 268; tenses of subj., 283-287; temporal clauses, 323; potential subj., 311. *a*; subj. of modesty, id. *b*; subj. in ind. disc., 336; in informal ind. disc., 341; of integral part, 342.
- subolēs, decl., 59.
- Subordinate clauses, defined, 180. *b*; use, 316-328; in ind. disc., 336, 339.
- Subordinate conjunctions, 154. *b*.
- Substance, gen. of, 214. *e*; abl. of, 244.
- Substantive clauses, 329-334; nature and classes of, 329; Infin. clauses, 330; clauses of Purpose, 331; of Result, 332; Indic. w. quod, 333; Indirect Questions, 334; adj. w. subst. clauses, 189. *d*.
- Substantive use of adjs., 188; of possessive prons., 190. *a*, 197. *d*.
- Substantive verb (esse), 172. *N*.
- subter, 152. *c*; use, 260. *d*.
- suētus, w. infin., 273. *b*.
- Suffixes, 159; primary, examples of, 160; significant, 161-164.
- sui, decl., 98. *b*; use, 196; w. gen. of gerund., 298. *a*.
- sum, conj., 119; as copula, 172. *N*.; as substantive vb., id.; omitted, 206. *c*; w. dat. of possession, 231; position, 344. *c*, *f*.
- summus (top of), 193.
- sunt qui, 320. *a*.
- suovetaurilia, 168. *a*.
- supellex, decl., 60. *c*.
- super, 152. *c*; use, 260. *c*; in comp., 170. *a*; in comp., w. dat., 228.
- supera, comp., 91. *b*; superi, id.
- superior, comparison, 91. *b*.
- Superlative, in -rimus, 89. *a*; of adjs. in -lis, id. *b*; with m̄ximē, id. *d*; of eminence, 93. *b*; with quam, vel, or ūnus, id.; with quisque, id. *c*; denoting order, succession, 193.
- superstes, decl., 87. *a*, *b*.
- Supine, noun of decl. IV., 71. *a*; use of, 114. *b*; stem, 121. *c*; formation, 125. Formē Supine, use of, 302; Latter, 303; as abl. of specification, 253. *a*.
- supplex, decl., 87. *b*, *d*.
- supplicō, w. dat., 227. *e*, 3.
- suprā, use of, 152. *a*.
- sūra, noun-ending, 163. *b*.
- Surds, 2. *a* and 3.
- suriō, vbs. in, 167. *e*.
- sus, phonetic form of -tus, 71; noun-ending, 163. *b*.
- sūs, decl., 60. *a*, 61.
- suus, use, 196.
- Swearing, vbs. of, constr., 238. *c*, 330. *f*.
- Syllables, rules for division of, 14; long and short, 18.
- Synæresis, 347. *c*.
- Syncope, 10. *c*.
- Synecdoche, defined, see Glossary.
- Synecdochical accusative, 240. *c*.
- Synesis, defined, 182. *a*; in gend. and number, 187. *d*; in sequence of tenses, 287. *h*.
- Synopsis of tenses (amō), 127; of impersonal verbs, 145.
- Syntactic compounds, 170.
- SYNTAX, 171-346; historical development of, *N*, p. 124; outline, pp. 124, 125. Important rules of Syntax, pp. 305 ff.
- Syntaxis and parataxis, p. 124.
- T, t(-s), supine stem ending, 125.
- t, nouns in, gend., 65. *c*.
- ta, primary suffix, 160. *c*, 2, 162. *b*.
- taedet, impersonal, 146. *b*; constr., 221. *b*, *c*.
- Taking away, vbs. of, 229.
- Talent, value of, 382.
- tālis, 105. *g*, 106.
- tālis ut, etc., 319. *R*.

- tam**, correl. with **quam**, 107; correl. with **ut**, 319. R.
tamen, 156. *i*, *k*; as correlative, id. *i*.
tametsi, concessive use, 156. *i*, 313. *c*.
tamquam, in conditional clauses, 312; with primary tenses, id. R.
tandem, in questions, 210. *f*.
tanti, gen. of value, 252. *a*, *d*.
tantō following **quantō**, 106. *c*, 250. R.
tantum, with subjunctive of **proviso**, 314.
tantum abest ut, 332. *d*.
tantus, 105. *g*, 106; **tantus ut**, 319. R.
-tās, **-tia**, noun-endings, 163. *e*.
Taste, verbs of, with acc., 237. *c*.
tāt-, as stem ending, 54. 2.
-te (enclitic), 99. *f*.
Teaching, vbs. of (two accs.), 239. *c*.
tegō, conj., p. 78.
Telling, vbs. of, constr., 272, 330, B. I.
Temporal clauses, defined, 180. *c*, 322-328; as protasis, 322; two uses, 323; w. **postquam**, etc., 324; w. **cum**, 325; w. **antequam** and **priusquam**, 327; w. **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, 328; replaced by abl. absolute, 255. *d*.
Temporal numerals, 97. *b*.
tempus est abire, 298. N.
Tendency, adjs. denoting, 164. *l*.
TENSES, 108. *c*; of passive voice, 111; of participles, 113; classification, meaning and use, 115; of the ind., id. *a-c*; of the subj., id. *d*; endings, 118; synopsis of, 127; of ind., 264. *a*.
TENSES, *Syntax*, 276-288; Present tense, 276; Imperfect, 277; Future, 278; of Completed action, 279-281; Epistolary tenses, 282; of subjunctive, 283-285; sequence of, 285-287; tenses of the infinitive, 288; tense emphatic, 344. *d*. 3; tenses of inf. in ind. disc., 336. *a*; tenses of subj. in ind. disc., 336. *b*; affected by *repraesentātiō*, id. *a*; in condition in ind. disc., 337.
tenus, constr., w. gen., 223. *e*; w. abl., 260. *e*; position, 263. N., 345. *a*.
-ter, adv. ending, 148. *b*, *c*.
teres, decl., 87. *a*; comp., 91. *d*.
Terminations of nouns, 34; of verbs, 118. See Endings.
-ternus, as adj. ending, 164. *e*.
terrā marique, 258. *d*.
terrester, decl., 84. *a*.
Tetrameter, Iambic, 366. *a*.
Than, how expressed, 247.
The as correlative, 106. *c*.
Thesis and Arsis, 358.
Thinking, vbs. of, constr. with acc. and inf., 272, 330. B. I.
Third conjugation, of verbs, prin. parts, 122. *c*; paradigm, p. 78; in **-iō**, paradigm, p. 80; derivation of vbs. in **-uō**, 166. *c*.
Third declension, of nouns, 44-67; mute stems, 44-47; liquid-stems, 48-50; vowel-stems, 51-59; case forms, 56; peculiar forms, 60, 61; Greek nouns, 63, 64; rules of gender, 65.
Though, see *Although*.
Thought, considered as result, 332. *f*.
Threatening, vbs. of, 227, 330. *f*.
-tia (**tiēs**), noun-ending, 163. *e*.
-ticus, adj. ending, 164. *g*.
tigris, decl., 64.
-tilis, adj. ending, 164. *m*.
-tim, adverbs in, 56. *a*. 3.
Time (see **Temporal Clauses**), 264. *a*; 284.
Time, advs. of, 149. *b*.
Time, duration of, 256 and *b*; time *when*, 256; corresponding to Eng. *place*, 259. *a*; time during or within which, w. ordinal, id. *c*; distance of time, id. *d*; abl. abs. to denote time, 255, and *d*. 1.
Time, mode of reckoning, 327 ff.
timeō, w. dat., or acc., 227. *c*; with subjunctive, 331. *f*.
-timus, adj. ending, 164. *e*.
-tiō, noun-ending, 160. *b*, 163. *b*.
-tiō (**-siō**), **-tūra**, **-tūs** (**-tūtis**), noun-endings, 163. *b*.
-tium, noun-ending, 163. *f*.
-tīvus, verbal adj. ending, 164. *l*.
-tō, **-itō**, frequent verbs in, 167. *b*.
To (so as to), 319. *d*. R.
Too . . . to, 320. *c*. N.
-tor (**-sor**), **-trix**, nouns of agency in, 162. *a*; used as adjs., 88. *c*, 188. *d*.

-tōria, noun-ending, 164. *i. 4.*
 -tōrium, noun-ending, 160. *b.*; 164. *i. 5.*
 -tōrius, adj. ending, 160. *b.*; as noun-ending, 164. *h.*
 tot, use, 106 and *a.*
 totidem, use, 106. *a.*
 tōtus, decl., 83; nouns w., in abl. without prep. (*place where*), 258. *f. 2.*
 Towns, names of, gend., 29. *b.*, 39. *a.*; names of towns in -e, decl., 57. *d.*; locative of, 258. *c. 2.*; as place from which, id. *a.*; as place to which, 258. *b.*
 trāiciō, constr., 239. *b. R.*; trāiectus lōra, id.
 trāns, 152. *a.*; comps. of, w. acc., 237. *d.*; w. two accs., 239. *b* and *R.*
 Transitive adjectives, 218.
 Transitive verbs, 175. *b.*, 177; absolute use, 175. *b. N. 2.*; how translated, 177. *c.*; w. dat., 255.
 Transposition of vowel and liquid, 9. *d.*, 124. *a. N.*; of consonants, 11. *d.*
 Trees, names of, gend., 29. *b.*
 trēs, decl., 94. *c.*
 tri-, stem ending of nouns, 51. *b.*, 54. *i.*; of adjs., 84. *a.*
 Tribe, abl. of, 244. *b. N.*
 Tribach, 356. *a.*
 tribūlis, decl., 57. *a. 2.*
 tribus, gend., 69. *a.*; decl., 70. *d.*
 tridēns, decl., 57. *b.*
 trirēmis, decl., 57. *b.*
 -tris, adj. ending, 164. *e.*
 triumphō, w. abl., 245. *a. 2.*
 -trix, see -tor.
 Trochaic verse, 360.
 Trochee, 356. *a.*
 -trum, noun-ending, 163. *d.*
 Trusting, vbs. of, constr., 227.
 tū, decl., 98. *i* (see tūte, tūtimet).
 -tū, -sū, supine endings, 114. *b.*
 -tūdō, -tūs, noun-endings, 163. *e.*
 tulī (-tetuli), 139; quantity, 351. *b.*
 Ex.
 -tum, -sum, supine endings, 114. *b.*
 tum, correl. w. cum, 107, 156. *h.*
 tum . . . tum, 208. *d.*
 -tūra, -tūs, noun-ending, 163. *b.*
 -turiō, vbs. in, 167. *e.*
 turris, decl., 52 (cf. 56. *b.*).

-turnus, adj. ending, 164. *e.*
 -tus, adj. ending, 164. *f.*; noun-ending, 71, 163. *e.*
 tussis, decl., 56. *a.*
 tūte, 99. *f.*; tūtimet, 99. *f.*
 Two accusatives, 239.
 Two datives, 233. *a.*
 U (v), as consonant, 4; not to follow u or v, 7.
 u-stems, of nouns, decl. III., 60. *a.*, 61; decl. IV., 68; of verbs, 166. *a. 3, c.*
 ūber, decl., 85. *b.*, 87. *e.*
 ubi, in temporal clauses, 322, 324.
 ubiubi, 105. *b.*
 -ubus, in dat. and abl. pl., decl. IV., 70. *d.*
 -uis (-uos), in gen., decl. IV., 70. *a.*
 -ūlis, adj. ending, 164. *d.*
 ūllus, decl., 83; use, 105. *h.*, 202. *b.*; *c.*
 ūltior, comparison, 91. *a.*
 ūltrā, 152. *a.*; following noun, 263. *N.*
 -ulus, diminutive ending, 164. *a.*; verbal adj. ending, id. *l.*
 -ūm for -ārum, 36. *d.*; for -ōrum, 40. *e.*; -ūm in gen. pl. of personal prons., 194. *b.*; -ūm for -ium, decl. III., 59; in gen. pl. of adjs., 87. *d.*; for -uum, decl. IV., 70. *c.*
 Undertaking, vbs. of, w. gerundive, 294. *d.*
 Unorganized forms of expression, p. 124.
 unquam, use, 105. *h.*
 ūnt-, stem ending, 63. *c.*
 ūnus, decl., 83; meaning, 94. *a.*, 95. *b.*
 ūnus quī, w. subj., 320. *b.*
 ūnus quisque, decl., 105. *e.*; use, 202. *d.*
 uo, suffix, see va.
 -uō, vbs. in, 166. *c.*
 -uos, see -uis.
 -ur, nouns in, 65. *c.*
 urbs, decl., 54; use in relations of place, 258. *b. N. 3.*
 Urging, vbs. of, with ut, 331.
 -uriō, desiderative verbs in. See -turiō.
 -urnus, adj. ending, 164. *e.*
 -ūrus, fut. part. in, 113. *b.*, 293; w. fuī, 293. *c.*, 308. *d.*; in ind. ques-

- tions, 334. *a*; -ūrus fuisse, in ind. disc., 337. *b*.
- us, nom. ending, decl. II., 38, 39;
-us for -er in Gr. nouns, decl. II., 43. *b*; gend., 65. *c*; decl. IV., 68;
gend., 69; neut. ending, 163. *a*.
- ūs, Gr. nom. ending, 63. *e*.
- Use, adjs. of, constr., 234. *b*.
- usquam, use, 105. *k*.
- usque, w. acc., 261. *a*.
- ūsus (*need*), w. abl., 243. *e*.
- ut (uti), correlative w. ita, sic, 107;
to denote concession, 266. *c*, 313.
a; w. optative subjunc., 267. *b*;
in clauses of purp., 317; of result,
319; ut nē, id. *a*; ut nōn, etc.,
319. *d*. R.; ut temporal, 322, 324;
verbs followed by clauses w. ut,
331, 332; omission after certain
verbs, 331. *f*. R., *i*. N. I and 2;
w. verbs of fearing, 331. *f*; used
elliptically in exclamations, 332. *c*.
- ut, utpote, quippe, w. relative clause,
320. *e*. N. I; w. cum, 326. N.
- ut primum, 324.
- ut semel, 324.
- uter, interrog. and indef. pron., 104. *g*.
- ūter, decl., 51. *b*, 54. *i*.
- uterque, form and decl., 105. *e*; use,
202. *d*; constr. in agreement and
as partitive, 216. *d*.
- utervis, use, 202. *c*.
- uti, utinam, w. subj. of wish, 267. *b*.
- ūtilis, w. dat. of gerund, etc., 299.
foot-n.
- utpote quī, 320. *e*. N.
- ūtor, etc., w. abl., 249; gerundive
use of, 294. *c*. N., 296. R.
- utrum . . . an, 211 and *d*.
- utī, constr., 312 and R.
- ūtus, adj. ending, 164. *f*.
- utut, 105. *b*.
- uus, rare nom. ending, decl. IV.,
70. *b*; verbal adj. ending, 164. *i*.
- V** (*u*), p. 4; 4, 7; omitted, 11. *b*; in
tenuis, 16. N.; suffix of perf., 124.
a; suppressed in perf., 128. *a*; *v*
often om. in perf. of eō and its
comps., 141. *b*; *v* by synæresis,
347. *c*.
- va, primary suffix, 160. *c*. 2.
- vafer, comp., 91. *d*.
- valdē, use, 93. *d*.
- Value, gen. of indefinite, 252. *a*.
- Value, measures of, 377-380.
- Variable nouns, 78, 79 (cf. 74. *b*).
- Variations, see Phonetic Variations
and Inherited Differences.
- Variations of Spelling, 12.
- vās, decl., 60. *d*.
- vātēs, decl., 59.
- ve, vel, use, 156. *c*, 212. R.
- vel (see -ve), w. superl., 93. *b*.
- velim, vellem, subj. of modesty, 311.
b.
- velim, vellem, w. subjunc. (= opt.),
267. *c* (= imv.), 269. *g*.
- vellem, see velim.
- veluti, velutī, 312.
- vēneō (vēnum eō), 258. *b*. R.
- vēnerat = aderat, 279. *e*.
- VERBS, Etymology.** Verb, defined,
introd.; inflection, 108-110; noun
and adj. forms of, 109; signifi-
cation, of forms, 111-115; per-
sonal endings, 116; forms of the
verb, 117, 118 (note on origin and
hist. of vb.-forms, p. 95); table
of endings, 118; the three stems,
121; regular verbs, 122-136; the
four conjugations, 122 and *a*;
prin. parts of, 122. *b*, *c*; mixed
verbs, id. *d*; deponents, 135;
semi-deponents, 136; irregular
verbs, 137-142; defective, 143,
144; impersonal, 145, 146; peri-
phrastic forms, 147; compound
verbs, 170; vowels in comp. verbs,
170. *a*. N. Derivation of verbs,
165-167.
- VERBS, Syntax.** Subject implied
in ending, 174. 2; rules of agree-
ment, 204-206; verb omitted,
206. *c*; rules of Syntax, 264-342.
Cases w. vbs., see under Accusa-
tive, etc. Position of verb, 343,
344. *d*, *j*. (See under the names of
the Moods, etc.)
- Verba sentiendī et declārandī*, 272,
330, 336; passive use of, 272. R.
330, *a-c*; in poets and later writ-
ers, id. *d*.
- Verbal nouns with dat., 227. *d*.
- Verbal nouns and adjs. with reflex-
ive, 196. *d*.

Verbal adjectives, 164. *l-p*; in *-āx*, with gen., 218. *b*.

Verbal roots, 157. *i*.

vereor, with gen., 223. *b*. *i*; w. subjunc., 331. *f*.

veritus, as pres. part., 290. *b*.

vērō, 156. *b*, *k*; in answers, 212. *a*; position of, 345. *b*.

Verse, 359.

Versification, 359-362; forms of verse, 360.

versus, position of, 345. *a*.

vertō, constr., 252. *c*.

verū, gen., 69. *b*; decl., 70. *d*.

vērū or vērō, use, 156. *b*, *k*.

vescor, with abl., 249; gerundive, 294. *c*. *N*., 296. *R*.

vesper, decl., 41. *b*.

vesperī (loc.), 41. *b*, 258. *d*.

vester, 98. *3*.

vestrī as obj. gen., 99. *c*, 194. *b*.

vestrū as part. gen., 99. *b*, 194. *b*, cf. *N*.

vetō, w. acc. and inf., 271. *b*, 330. *2*, and *b*. *2*.

vetus, decl., 85. *b*, 87. *e*; comparison, 89. *a*, 91. *d*.

vicem, adverbial use of, 240. *b*.

videō ut, 331.

videor, with dat., 232. *c*.

vin (visne), 13. *c*.

vir, decl., 38, 41. *b*.

virgō, decl., 49.

virus, gender of, 39. *b*.

vīs, stem, 54. *2*; decl., 61.

viscera, 79. *c*.

visō, 167. *e*, *N*.

vocālis, decl., 57. *b*.

VOCATIVE, 31. *e*; form, 33. *a*; in *-ī* of nouns in *-ius*, decl. II., 40. *c*, *d*; of adjs. in *-ius*, 81. *a*; of Greek nouns, 43. *b*. *Syntax*, 241.

Voices, 108. *a*, 111; middle voice, id. *a*, 135. *e*.

volō, and comps., conj., 138; w. infin., 271 and *N*.; part. of, as dat. of reference, 235. *c*; w. perf. part., 288. *d*, 292. *d*. *N*.; w. subj. or inf., 331. *b* and *N*.

volucer, decl., 84. *a*.

volucris, decl., 59.

-volus, adj. in, comparison, 89. *c*.

vōs, 98. *i*.

voster, etc., see vester.

vōtī damnātus, 220. *a*.

Vowels, *i*; long and short, how marked, 5; inherited differences in, 9; contraction, 10. *b*; syncope, id. *c*; insertion, id. *d*; dissimilation, 11. *d*; pronunciation, 16, 17; long and short, 18; quantity of final vowels in case endings, 33. *g*; vowel modified in noun-stems, decl. III., 45; lengthened in root, 124. *d*, 158. *b* and *N*.

Vowel-changes, 10.

Vowel-suffixes (primary), 160. *c*. *i*.

Vowel-stems, decl. III., 51-59.

vulgus (volgus), gen., 39. *b*.

-vus, verbal adj. ending, 164. *i*.

W, not in Latin alphabet, p. 4.

Want, words of, with abl. 243; with gen., 223, 243. *f*.

Way by which (abl.), 258. *g*.

Weight, measures of, 382.

Whole, gen. of, 216; numbers expressing the whole, 216. *e*.

Wills, fut. inv. in, 269. *d*. *3*.

Winds, gender of names of, 29.

Wish, expressed by subj., 267; as a condition, 310. *b*; wish in informal ind. disc., 341. *b*.

Wishing, verbs of, with inf., 288. *d* (cf. 271. *a*); with subst. clause of purp., 317, 331. *b*; with acc. and infin., 330. *3*, 331. *b*.

Without, with verbal noun, 292. *N*. *i*.

Women, names of, 80. *c*.

Words, formation of, 157-170; arrangement of, 343-346.

X, nom. ending, 44; gen., 65. *b*.

-y, noun-ending, gen., 65. *c*.

Year, p. 327; months of, 327, 328; date, 259. *e*, 376.

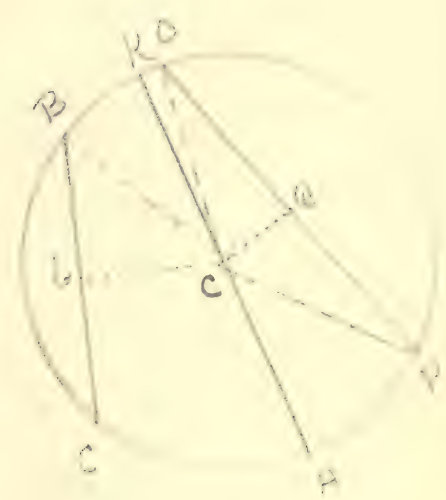
Yes in Lat., 212.

-ys, nom. ending, 63. *g*, 46; gen., 65. *b*; quantity, 348. *9*.

Cor. 4. If great circle

if AB passes through CG, DP, BC

$\angle APL, PL, CB, CB, L, LQ$



I. Aeneas
Anchises
Andromache
Aeneader

II. Delos
Panthus

III. Simois
Corys
Dido
Aeneas

THIS BOOK IS

arr on
ne (rene
an (anne)

14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED
LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

ar.

1899.

MAR 1 9 '64 - 11 AM

REC'D LD

JUN 3 1962

6 Jun '64 JS

12 Apr '63 MH
REC'D LD

REC'D LD

APR 16 1963

JUN 1 '64 - 1 PM

3 NOV '63 PY

29 OCT '64 RB

REC'D LD

FEB 1 '64 - 12 M

REC'D LD

9 Mar '64 CB

FEB 2 '65 - 8 AM

IN STACKS

FEB 24 1964

ne (neene)

ne r

ne an
ne (neene)

Elaine Skatone

Chap. 4.5.

984548

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

utrum an an

utrum an an

utrum an an

ne an

ne neene

ne neene

